# Workshop Manual

## Audi A5 Sportback 2010 ➢

## General body repairs, interior

Edition 10.2017

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

## Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2017 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

# Contents

00 - Technical data . . . . . 1
1 Safety precautions . . . . . 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components . . . . . 2
1.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system . . . . . 4
1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) . . . . . 4
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags . . . . . 5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags . . . . . 5
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) . . . . . 6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version . . . . . 6
1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version . . . . . 7
1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident . . . . . 7
1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident . . . . . 9
1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered . . . . . 10
1.12 Checking seat belts . . . . . 10
1.13 Checking belt . . . . . 10
1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) . . . . . 11
1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle . . . . . 12
1.16 Functional check of belt buckle . . . . . 12
1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate . . . . . 12
1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident . . . . . 12
1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) . . . . . 13
1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident . . . . . 13
1.21 Interior mirror . . . . . 14
2 Repair notes . . . . . 15
2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring . . . . . 15
2.2 Contact corrosion . . . . . 15

68 - Interior equipment . . . . . 16
1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels . . . . . 16
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels . . . . . 16
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side) . . . . . 18
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim . . . . . 19
1.4 Exploded view - glove box . . . . . 20
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side) . . . . . 21
1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert . . . . . 22
1.7 Removing and installing dash panel cover (passenger side) . . . . . 23
1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (top) . . . . . 23
1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom) . . . . . 24
1.10 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism . . . . . 24
1.11 Removing and installing glove box . . . . . 25
1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid . . . . . 27
1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid . . . . . 27
2 Equipment . . . . . 28
2.1 Exploded view - sun visors . . . . . 28
2.2 Removing and installing sun visor . . . . . 29
2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor . . . . . 29
2.4 Removing and installing grab handle . . . . . 30
3 Centre console . . . . . 31
3.1 Exploded view - centre console . . . . . 31

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear) . . . 35
3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover . . . 36
3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) . . . 36
3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front) . . . 36
3.6 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front) . . . 37
3.7 Removing and installing centre console insert . . . 37
3.8 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front) . . . 38
3.9 Removing and installing air vent in centre console (rear) . . . 38
3.10 Removing and installing centre console . . . 39
3.11 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console . . . 40
3.12 Removing and installing cup holder . . . 41
3.13 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear) . . . 41
3.14 Removing and installing bracket for centre console . . . 43

**4 Centre armrest (front) . . . 44**
4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front) . . . 44
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) . . . 45
4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section) . . . 45
4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm . . . 46

**5 Interior mirror . . . 47**
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror . . . 47
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror . . . 48
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off . . . 49
5.4 Switching compass display on and off . . . 50
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone . . . 50
5.6 Calibrating digital compass . . . 50
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles . . . 51
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map . . . 51
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 57

**69 - Passenger protection . . . 59**

**1 Seat belts . . . 59**
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points . . . 59
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) . . . 61
1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 62
1.4 Exploded view - belt buckle (front) . . . 63
1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear) . . . 64
1.6 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) . . . 64
1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 66
1.8 Removing and installing belt guide (front) . . . 68
1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) . . . 69
1.10 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) . . . 70
1.11 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) . . . 70
1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster . . . 71
1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) . . . 72
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) . . . 73

**2 Child seat anchors . . . 75**
2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front) . . . 75
2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear) . . . 76
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front) . . . 77
2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear) . . . 77

**3 Airbag system . . . 79**
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system . . . 79

**4 Airbag control unit . . . 81**
4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit . . . 81

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 81
**5 Battery isolation igniter . . . 85**
5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter . . . 85
5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter . . . 85
**6 Airbag (driver side) . . . 89**
6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side) . . . 89
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters . . . 91
6.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 98
**7 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 101**
7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side) . . . 101
7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters . . . 102
7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side . . . 104
**8 Side airbags . . . 106**
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front) . . . 106
8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear) . . . 107
8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter . . . 107
8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter . . . 109
8.5 Deactivating side airbag (rear) . . . 111
8.6 Activating side airbag (rear) . . . 113
8.7 Sticker for deactivated side airbag (rear) . . . 115
**9 Curtain airbags . . . 116**
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag . . . 116
9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter . . . 117
**10 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 121**
10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags . . . 121
10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 . . . 122
10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 . . . 124
10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 . . . 126
**11 Seat position sensor . . . 128**
11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor . . . 128
11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor . . . 128
**12 Belt-fastened recognition system . . . 133**
12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 . . . 133

**70 - Trim, insulation . . . 138**
**1 Door trim (front) . . . 138**
1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front) . . . 138
1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim . . . 141
1.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 142
1.4 Removing and installing bracket for treble loudspeaker . . . 142
1.5 Removing and installing trim for armrest (front) . . . 143
1.6 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 144
1.7 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 144
1.8 Removing and installing armrest (front) . . . 147
1.9 Removing and installing door puller (front) . . . 147
1.10 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 148
1.11 Removing and installing switch trim for driver seat memory operating unit E97 . . . 148
**2 Door trim (rear) . . . 149**
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear) . . . 149
2.2 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 150
2.3 Removing and installing trim for armrest (rear) . . . 151
2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 151
2.5 Removing and installing armrest (rear) . . . 153

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing door puller (rear) . . . 154
**3 Dash panel . . . 155**
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel . . . 155
3.2 Exploded view - dash panel . . . 157
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side) . . . 160
3.4 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen . . . 160
3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 161
3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch . . . 163
3.7 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio/navigation system . . . 163
3.8 Removing and installing trim for entry and start authorisation button . . . 163
3.9 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert . . . 164
3.10 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 164
3.11 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting . . . 169
3.12 Removing and installing dash panel vents . . . 169
3.13 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre) . . . 171
**4 Central tube for dash panel . . . 172**
4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel . . . 172
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel . . . 173
4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket . . . 177
4.4 Removing and installing glove box bracket . . . 177
**5 Passenger compartment trim panels . . . 178**
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels . . . 178
5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim . . . 180
5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim . . . 182
5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim . . . 183
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim . . . 184
5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim . . . 185
5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering . . . 186
5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf . . . 187
5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 187
5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim . . . 189
5.11 Removing and installing trim cover for A-pillar trim . . . 191
5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim . . . 191
5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 193
5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 195
5.15 Removing and installing foot rest . . . 196
5.16 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 197
5.17 Removing and installing rear shelf . . . 198
**6 Luggage compartment trim panels . . . 199**
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels . . . 199
6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim . . . 202
6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor . . . 203
6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 204
6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top) . . . 205
6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim . . . 206
6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 206
6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) . . . 207
6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim . . . 208
6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring . . . 209
6.11 Removing and installing bracket for fastening ring . . . 209
6.12 Removing and installing bag hook . . . 210
6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 210
6.14 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor . . . 212
6.15 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor . . . 212
6.16 Removing and installing frame for loading aid . . . 213

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.17 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well . . . 213
6.18 Removing and installing tail light cover . . . 214
6.19 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock . . . 214
**7 Roof trim panels . . . 215**
7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim . . . 215
7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner . . . 216
7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner . . . 216
7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body . . . 219

**72 - Seat frames . . . 222**
**1 Overview - seat versions . . . 222**
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions . . . 222
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand . . . 224
**2 Front seats . . . 227**
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 229
2.2 Exploded view - front seat . . . 234
2.3 Exploded view - modular wire routing . . . 244
2.4 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side) . . . 245
2.5 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side) . . . 247
2.6 Exploded view - seat height adjustment unit and seat height adjuster . . . 249
2.7 Exploded view - actuators for seat, backrest and head restraint adjustment . . . 250
2.8 Exploded view - torsion bar . . . 251
2.9 Exploded view - backrest cover panel . . . 252
2.10 Exploded view - front seat backrest . . . 255
2.11 Exploded view - head restraint . . . 256
2.12 Exploded view - seat pan . . . 260
2.13 Exploded view - spring mat . . . 261
2.14 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjuster . . . 262
2.15 Exploded view - seat rake adjuster . . . 263
2.16 Exploded view - seat depth adjuster . . . 264
2.17 Exploded view - storage compartment . . . 265
2.18 Exploded view - lumbar support . . . 266
2.19 Exploded view - seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function . . . 268
2.20 Exploded view - control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating . . . 269
2.21 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjustment motor . . . 270
2.22 Exploded view - backrest adjustment motor . . . 271
2.23 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor . . . 272
2.24 Exploded view - seat rake adjustment motor . . . 273
2.25 Overview - seat cushion and backrest fans . . . 274
2.26 Removing and installing front seat . . . 275
2.27 Unplugging and plugging in connectors . . . 284
2.28 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 286
2.29 Connector point connectors . . . 289
2.30 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat . . . 289
2.31 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 291
2.32 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 292
2.33 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 295
2.34 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 297
2.35 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 301
2.36 Removing and installing actuator for backrest and head restraint adjustment . . . 304
2.37 Removing and installing backrest cover panel . . . 305
2.38 Removing and installing trim for outer backrest frame . . . 310
2.39 Removing and installing spring mat . . . 311
2.40 Removing and installing seat height adjuster . . . 313
2.41 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 314

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.42 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle . . . 316
2.43 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment . . . 317
2.44 Removing and installing lever for engaging Bowden cable and spring for seat longitudinal adjustment . . . 319
2.45 Repairing seat longitudinal adjuster, renewing connecting rod . . . 321
2.46 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator . . . 325
2.47 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle . . . 325
2.48 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster . . . 326
2.49 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster . . . 327
2.50 Removing and installing trim for seat depth adjuster . . . 331
2.51 Removing and installing seat rail cover . . . 333
2.52 Removing and installing spindle cover (seat rail) . . . 335
2.53 Removing and installing trim (sill side) . . . 336
2.54 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side) . . . 340
2.55 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) . . . 341
2.56 Removing and installing torsion bar . . . 342
2.57 Removing and installing bearing for torsion bar . . . 346
2.58 Riveting pop rivet nut for retaining plate for DVD player to outer backrest frame . . . 348
2.59 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player . . . 349
2.60 Removing and installing storage compartment . . . 350
2.61 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function . . . 352
2.62 Removing and installing retainer for seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function . . . 354
2.63 Removing and installing control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating . . . 355
2.64 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor . . . 357
2.65 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor . . . 357
2.66 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor . . . 361
2.67 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor . . . 366
2.68 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit . . . 368
2.69 Removing and installing lumbar support . . . 368
2.70 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 375
2.71 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 376
2.72 Removing and installing seat cushion fan . . . 377
2.73 Removing and installing backrest fan (top) . . . 378
2.74 Removing and installing backrest fan (bottom) . . . 378

**3 Rear seats . . . 380**

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats . . . 380
3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism . . . 382
3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide . . . 383
3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest . . . 384
3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest . . . 386
3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats . . . 389
3.7 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 391
3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 391
3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 392
3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 393
3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest . . . 394
3.12 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 395
3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch . . . 396
3.14 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch . . . 396
3.15 Checking floor panel for retainers and wire frame of seat bench and correcting any deformations . . . 397
3.16 Removing and installing cover for centre bracket . . . 397
3.17 Removing and installing retaining clip . . . 398
3.18 Removing and installing centre bracket . . . 399
3.19 Removing and installing outer bearing . . . 399

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.20 Removing and installing inner bearing . . . 400
3.21 Removing and installing side padding . . . 400
3.22 Removing and installing trim frame . . . 400
3.23 Removing and installing intermediate padding . . . 401
3.24 Removing and installing trim for cup holder . . . 401
3.25 Removing and installing cup holder . . . 402
3.26 Removing and installing storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) . . . 403
3.27 Removing and installing cover . . . 404
3.28 Removing and installing bracket . . . 405
3.29 Removing and installing lid . . . 406
3.30 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest bracket . . . 407
3.31 Removing and installing cover for rear seat backrest bracket . . . 408

**74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 410**

**1 Covers and padding on front seats . . . 410**
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding . . . 410
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding . . . 414
1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding . . . 416
1.4 Overview - seat heating elements . . . 417
1.5 Overview - backrest heating elements . . . 421
1.6 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 422
1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 428
1.8 Separating seat pan cover and padding . . . 436
1.9 Separating backrest cover and padding . . . 441
1.10 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding . . . 444
1.11 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 . . . 447
1.12 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 . . . 452

**2 Covers and padding on rear seats . . . 454**
2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding . . . 454
2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding . . . 460
2.3 Overview - seat heating elements . . . 461
2.4 Overview - backrest heating elements . . . 462
2.5 Removing and installing cover and padding . . . 463
2.6 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch . . . 467
2.7 Removing and installing upper and lower padding (backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment) . . . 467
2.8 Detaching cover from padding . . . 468
2.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding . . . 472
2.10 Removing and installing head restraint trim . . . 475
2.11 Removing and installing long-arm spring for head restraint . . . 475
2.12 Removing and installing seat heating elements . . . 475
2.13 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 476

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 00 – Technical data

## 1 Safety precautions

(ARL005474; Edition 10.2017)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 4

⇒ “1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 4

⇒ “1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 5

⇒ “1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 5

⇒ “1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version”, page 7

⇒ “1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident”, page 7

⇒ “1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident”, page 9

⇒ “1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 10

⇒ “1.12 Checking seat belts”, page 10

⇒ “1.13 Checking belt”, page 10

⇒ “1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 12

⇒ “1.16 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 12

⇒ “1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 12

⇒ “1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident”, page 12

⇒ “1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)”, page 13

⇒ “1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident”, page 13

⇒ “1.21 Interior mirror”, page 14

## 1.1 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

**Note**

*Pyrotechnic components are:*

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

The reproduction of this document for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization is not allowed. Offenders are liable for the payment of damages. All rights reserved in the event of the grant of a patent, utility model or design. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

### Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

**Special notes for belt tensioners**

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

**When performing repairs on vehicles with start/stop system, note the following:**

> **WARNING**
>
> *Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.*
>
> - *On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically if it needs to.*
> - *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch off ignition, if required switch on ignition again).*

## 1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.

- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

**WARNING**

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example air-bags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

## 1.4 Additional safety regulations for side air-bags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or any other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag and sensor mat.

## 1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.

- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- Folding may be possible, provided you are careful not to cause damage (in particular to protective cover).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.

## 1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling de-

### activation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the front passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fabric layer and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

## 1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

**Note**

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to two side airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R for side airbags, driver's airbags, front passenger's airbags and/or belt tensioners which together have triggered not more than twice.*
- *After the third activation the fault display will show “Control unit defective”.*

**Airbag control unit must be renewed:**

- If driver's/front passenger's airbag has been triggered (except with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R)“ ” ⇒ page 8
- After side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioners have been triggered three times
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

**Always renew the following:**

- All triggered airbag units
- Battery isolation igniter - N253-

**If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:**

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

**If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:**

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

**If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:**

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Additionally:**

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered

- ♦ All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- ♦ Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- ♦ Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

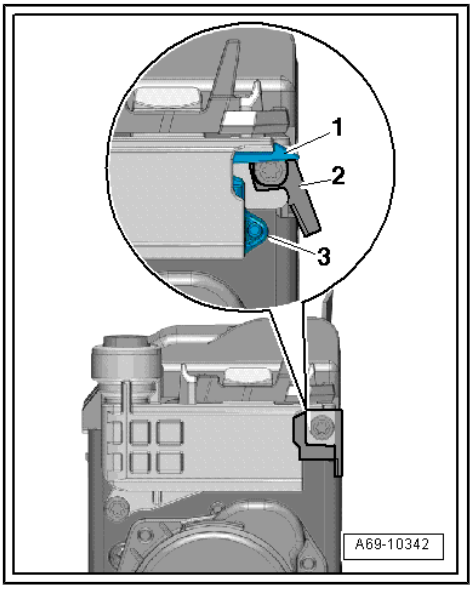
– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. “Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed”.

**Note**

- ♦ *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- ♦ *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- ♦ *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ page 10 .*
- ♦ *Triggered belt force limiters can be identified by the following characteristics:*
- ♦ *The pin -1- and the lug -3- have come out of the housing of the belt force limiter on the automatic belt retractor.*
- ♦ *The tab -2- is no longer in a vertical position, but is facing outwards at an angle.*




– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

## 1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

**It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.**

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

**If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:**

- ♦ Central tube for dash panel: It must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit

so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.

- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

**If driver's airbag has been triggered:**

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

## 1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

## 1.12 Checking seat belts

**WARNING**

*A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.*

**Points to check:**

- Checking belt ⇒ page 10
- Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 11
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 12
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 12
- Checking guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 12
- Checking securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 12
- Checking child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 13

**Caution**

*If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.*

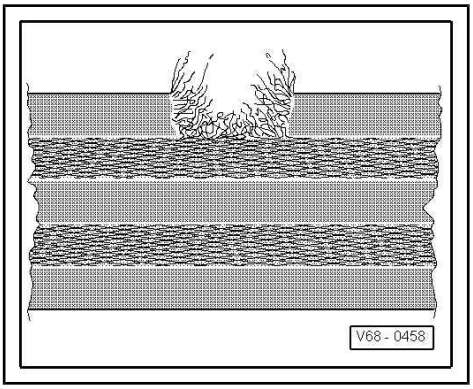
## 1.13 Checking belt

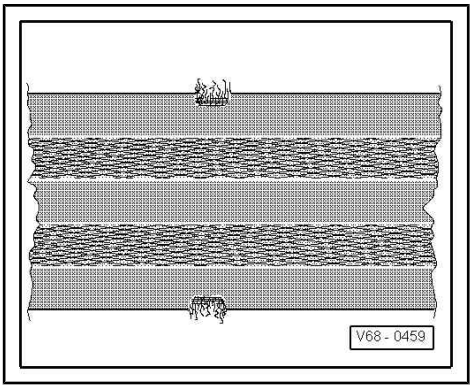
**Procedure**

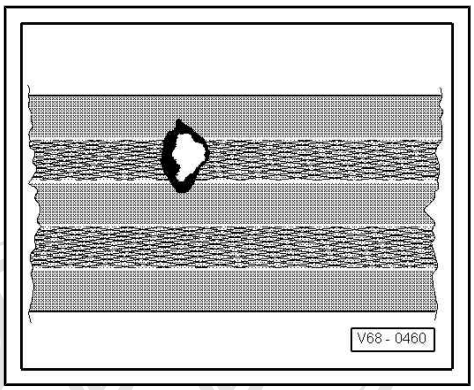
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .




- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

## 1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

♦ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the belt retractor.

**First check**

– Pull belt out of belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Second check**

**WARNING**

*For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.*

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

• If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

## 1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

• If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

## 1.16 Functional check of belt buckle

**Checking belt buckle**

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

**Checking release function**

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

**WARNING**

*Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.*

## 1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

• If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)

♦ No height adjuster operation

- ♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- • If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- • If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- • Renew anchorage points.

**Note**

*In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.*

## 1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

**To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).**

**Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:**

- ♦ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

**Correct function**

- ♦ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ♦ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

**Deactivating**

- ♦ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- ♦ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.
- • If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

## 1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

**Points to check:**

- ♦ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ♦ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ♦ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ♦ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.21 Interior mirror

**WARNING**

- *The glass used for the interior mirror consists of several layers and includes electrolyte. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

**Caution**

*If liquid electrolyte escapes from the mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 2 Repair notes

⇒ “2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 15

⇒ “2.2 Contact corrosion”, page 15

## 2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

## 2.2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

**Please note:**

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 68 – Interior equipment

## 1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels”, page 16

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 18

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 19

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 20

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 21

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert”, page 22

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing dash panel cover (passenger side)”, page 23

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)”, page 23

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)”, page 24

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 24

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing glove box”, page 25

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 27

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 27

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels

**1 - Centre console**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 31

**2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 18

**3 - Trim**

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 19

**4 - Central tube**

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 172

**5 - Dash panel**

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 2 *.*

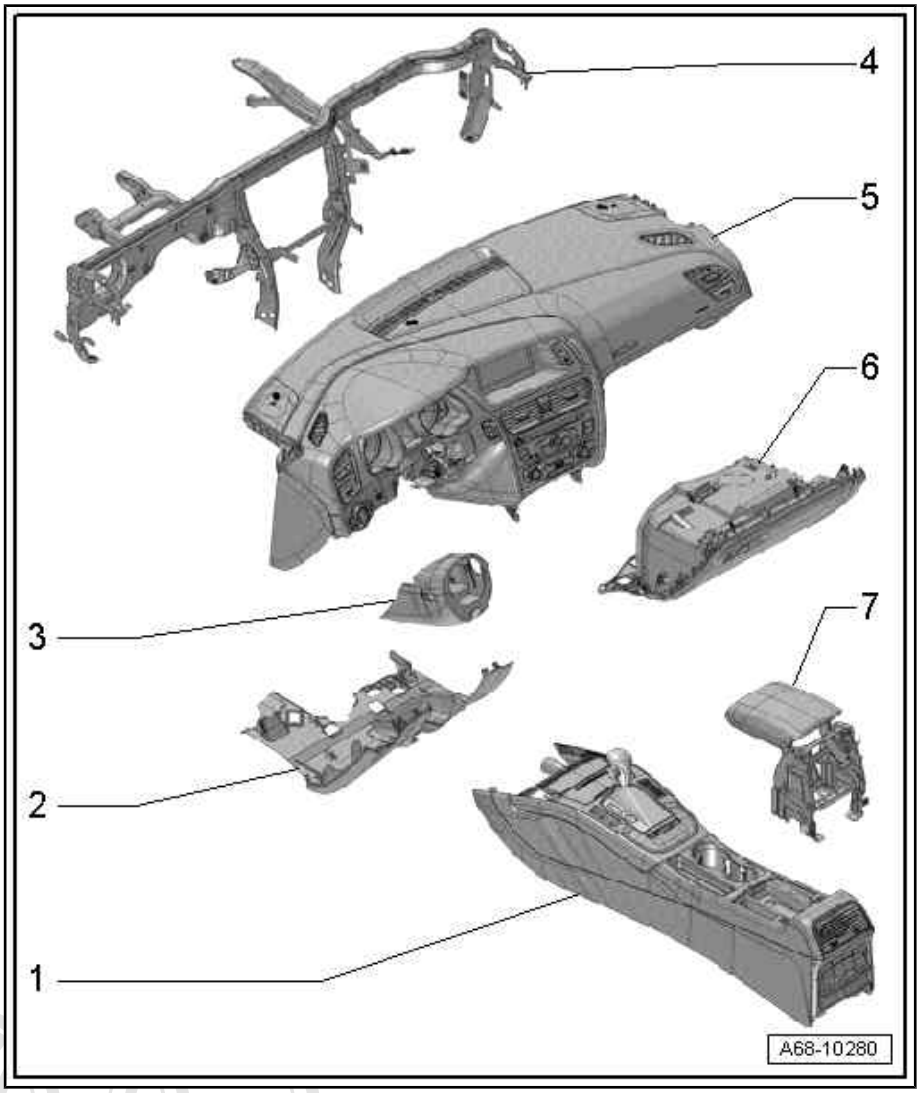
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 157

**6 - Glove box**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 20

**7 - Centre armrest (front)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 44




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)

**1 - Bolt**
- ❑ 3 Nm

**2 - Cover (side)**
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

**3 - Clip**
- ❑ Insert in foot rest

**4 - 16-pin connector - T16-**
- ❑ Diagnostic connector

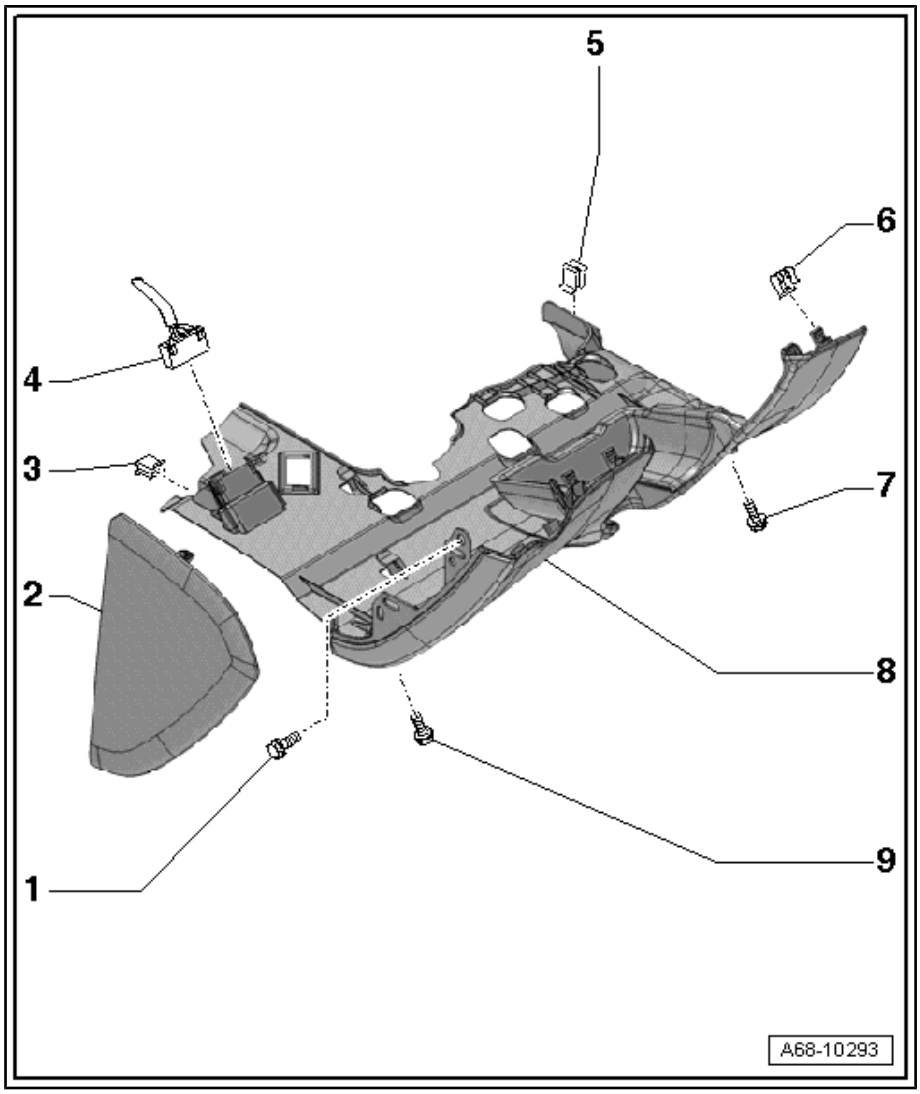
**5 - Clip**
- ❑ Insert in air conditioning unit

**6 - Spring clip**
- ❑ For dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Press into dash panel

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 3 Nm

**8 - Dash panel cover (driver side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

**9 - Bolt**
- ❑ 3 Nm




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim

**1 - Trim cover**
- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22

**2 - Trim (top)**
- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

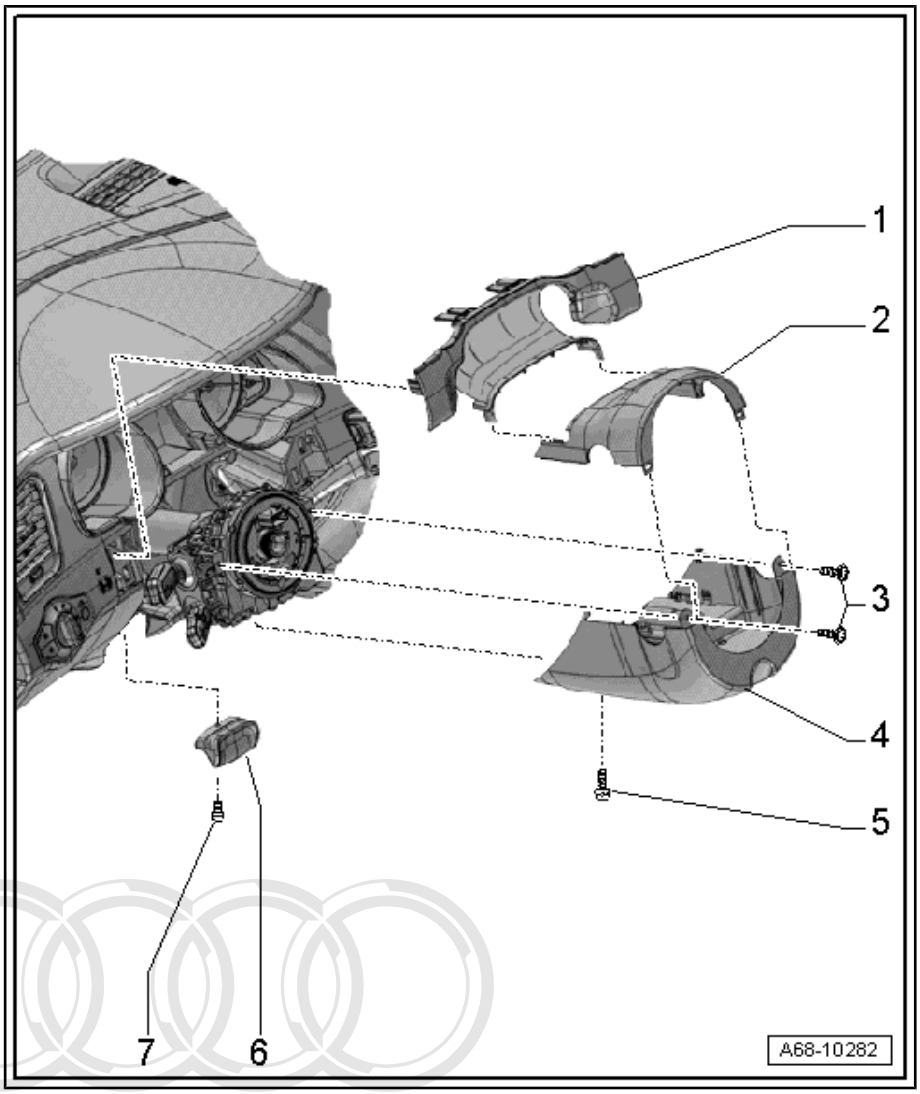
**3 - Bolts**
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

**4 - Trim (bottom)**
- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

**5 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

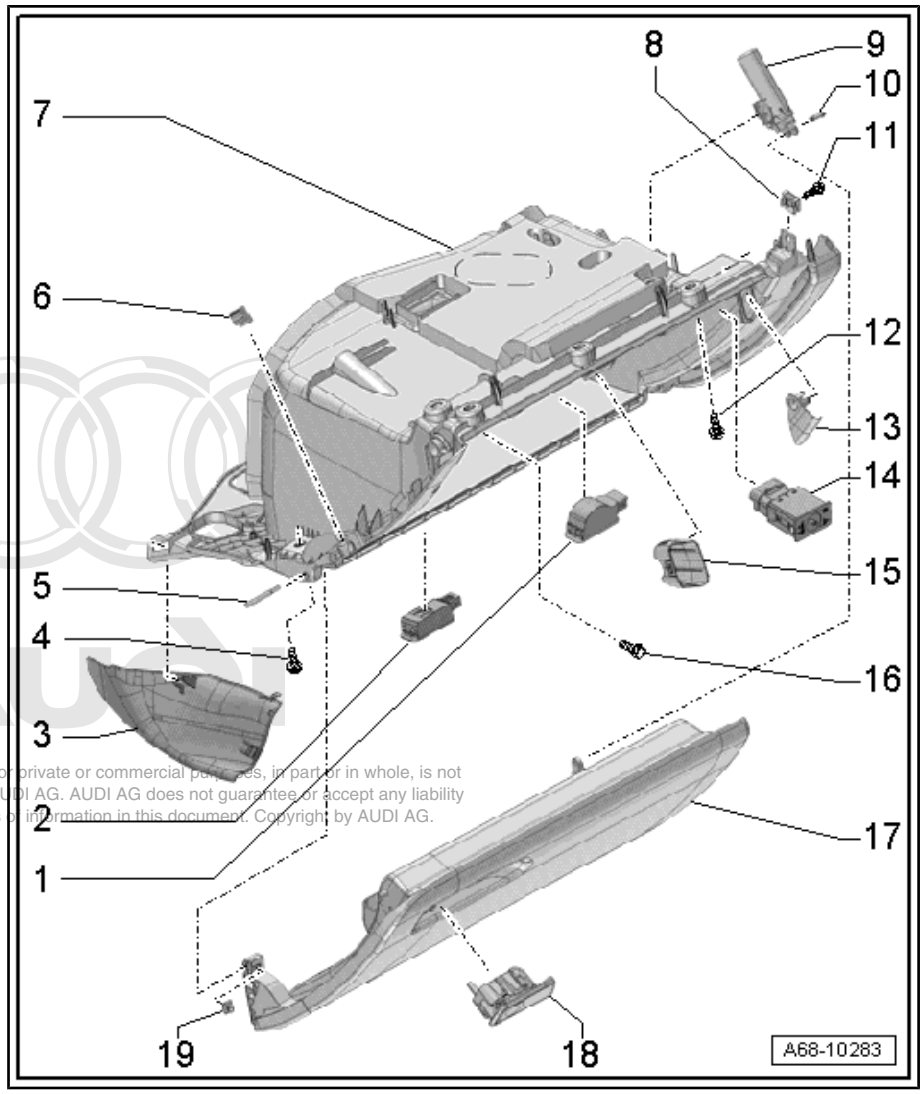
**6 - Handle**
- ❑ For steering column adjustment
- ❑ Depending on version

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 3 Nm




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.4 Exploded view - glove box




**1 - Glove box light - W6-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing glove box light - W6-

**2 - Footwell light**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front footwell illumination bulb -L151- / -L152-

**3 - Dash panel cover (passenger side)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**5 - Hinge pin**

- ❑ For securing glove box lid

**6 - Rubber buffer**

- ❑ For glove box
- ❑ 6x

**7 - Glove box**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

**8 - Speed nut**

**9 - Cushioning element**

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ With glove compartment light switch - E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

**10 - Hinge pin**

**11 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3 Nm

**12 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3x or 5x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 3 Nm

**13 - Mounting**

- ❑ For striker pin

**14 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-**

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

**15 - Bracket**

**16 - Bolt**

- ❑ Number depending on equipment version
- ❑ 3 Nm

**17 - Glove box lid**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

**18 - Glove box opening mechanism**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

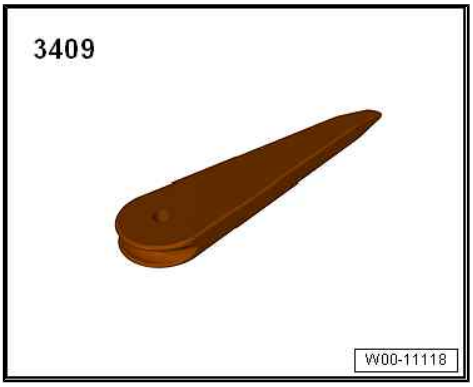
**19 - Bump stop**

- ❑ For glove box lid

## 1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove bolt -1- at side.

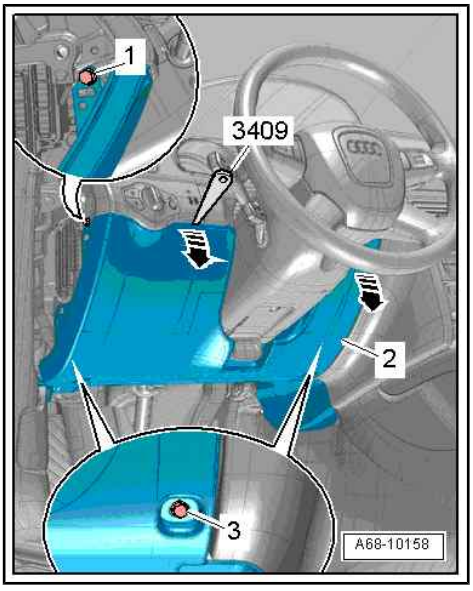
– Remove bolts -3- at bottom.

– Unclip top edge of dash panel cover (driver side) -2- from dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Unclip 16-pin connector - T16- (diagnostic connector).

– Equipment version with footwell light: Unplug electrical connector.

– Detach dash panel cover (driver side).



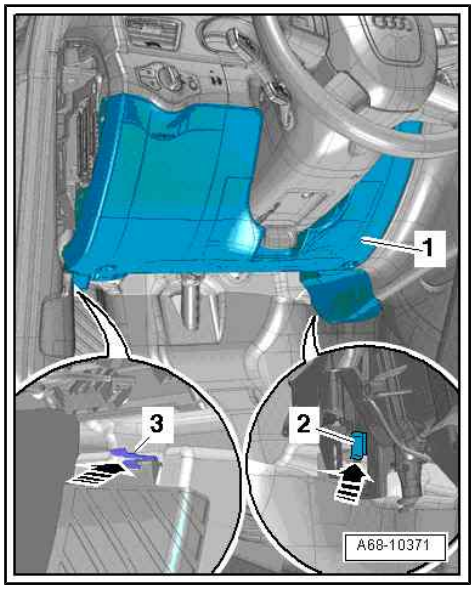

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert dash panel cover (bottom) -1- in clip -3- at foot rest and in clip -2- at air conditioning unit -arrows-.

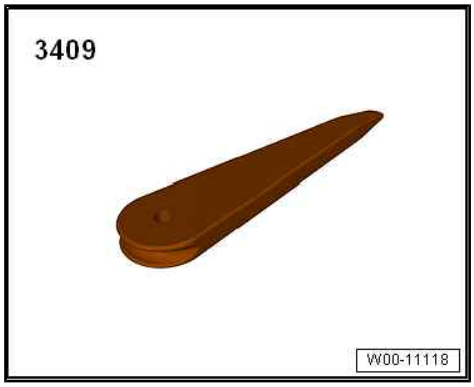
**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 18




## 1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




### Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

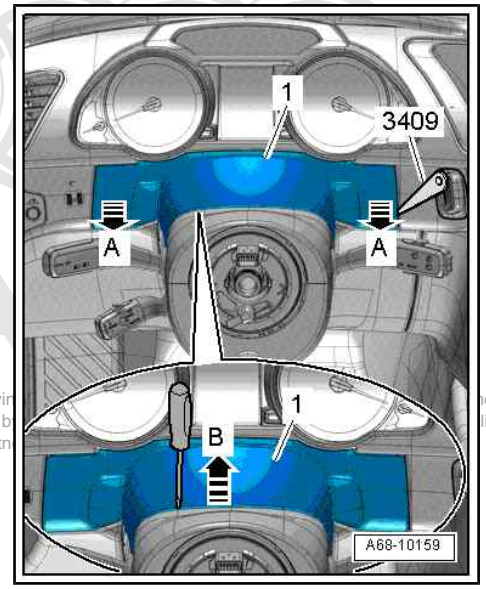
– Unclip trim cover -1- for instrument cluster from dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows A-.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully unclip trim cover from trim (top) for steering column switch module -arrow B-.

### Installing

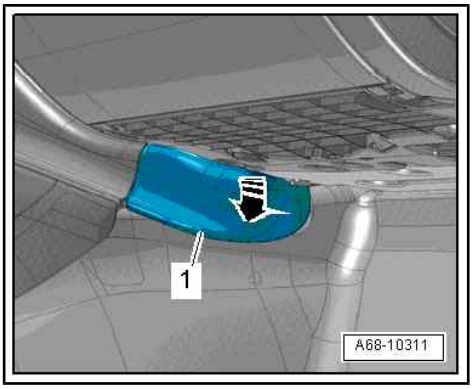
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on trim cover until clips engage fully in mounting points.




Protected by copyright. Copyir
permitted unless authorised b
with respect to the correctn

## 1.7 Removing and installing dash panel cover (passenger side)




### Removing

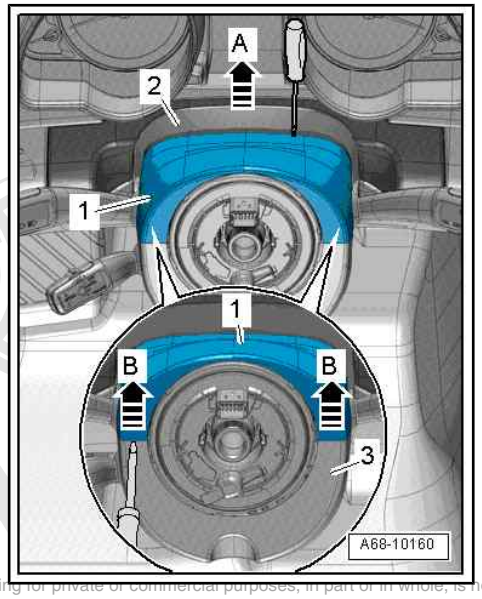
– Unclip dash panel cover (passenger side) -1- from glove box -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on dash panel cover (passenger side) until it engages audibly.

## 1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)




### Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

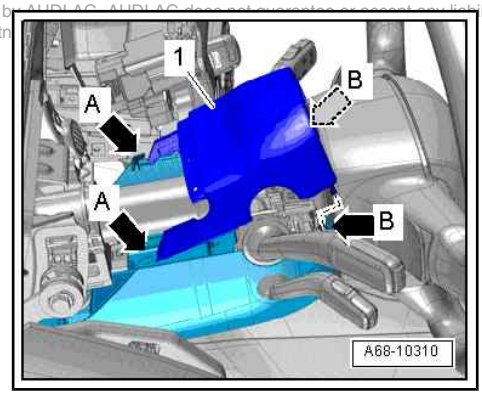
– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully unclip trim cover -2- from trim (top) -1- for steering column switch module -arrow A-.

– Turn steering wheel 90° to one side from straight ahead position.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully prise trim (top) off trim (bottom) -3- for steering column switch module -arrows B-.

– Disengage trim (top) at trim (bottom) for steering column switch module and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctn




### Installing

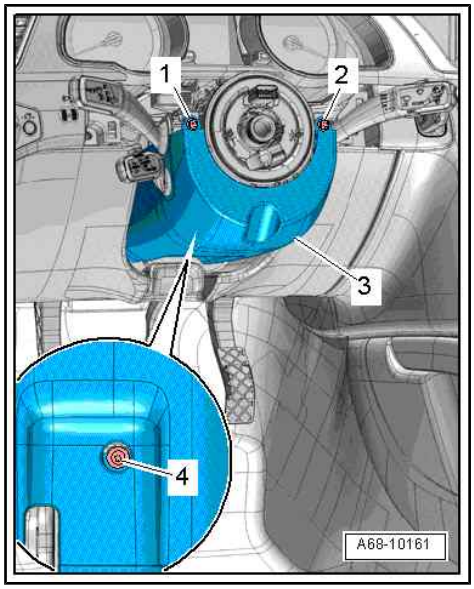
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Start by engaging trim (top) -1- in trim (bottom) -arrows A-.

– Make sure that lug on trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab on trim (top) -arrows B-.

## 1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

### Removing




– Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module ⇒ page 23 .
– Turn steering wheel 90° to one side from straight ahead position.
– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

**Note**

*If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .*

– Unscrew bolt -4- and detach trim (bottom) -3- for steering column switch module.

### Installing

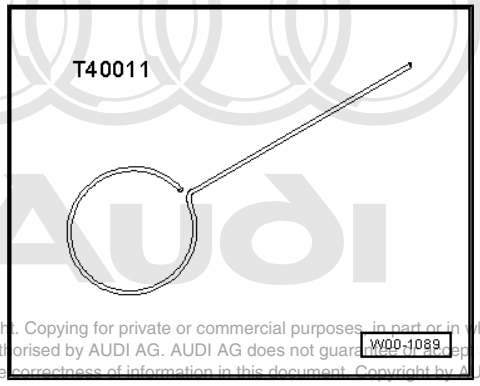
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 19

## 1.10 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

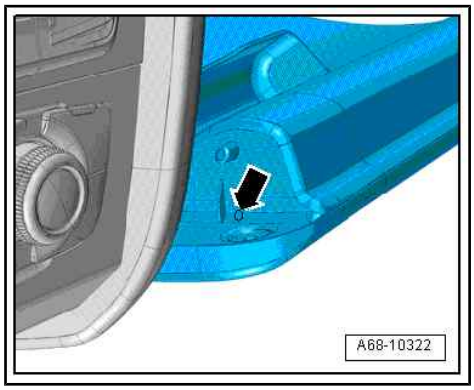
◆ Locking pin - T40011-



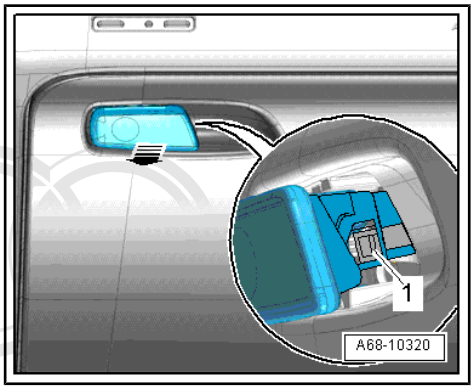

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

– Insert locking pin - T40011- through opening -arrow- in side of glove box lid and release retaining hook for glove box opening mechanism.



– At the same time, release second retaining hook -1- on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver.
– Take glove box opening mechanism out of glove box lid -arrow-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press in glove box opening mechanism until it engages audibly.

## 1.11 Removing and installing glove box

### Removing

**WARNING**

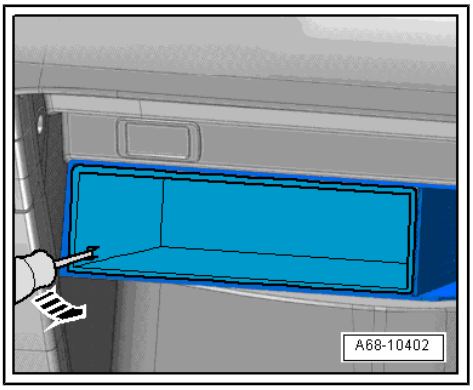
*Risk of airbag being triggered.*

*Risk of injury.*

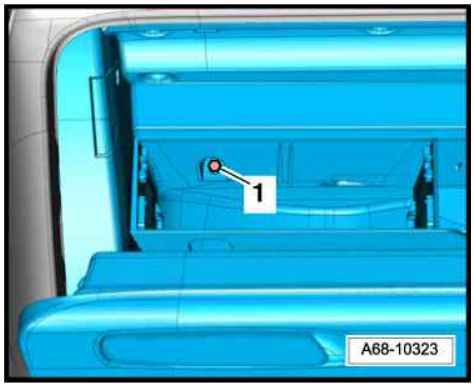
- *Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.*
- *If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.*
- *If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .*
- *If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

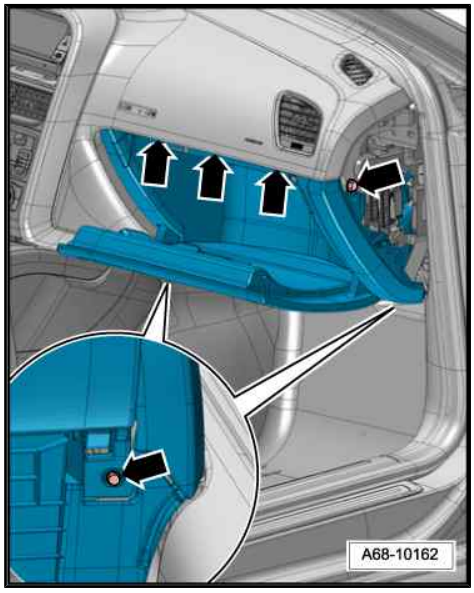
– Switch off ignition.
– Equipment version with storage compartment in glove box: Release retaining hooks (left and right) using a screwdriver -arrow- and pull storage compartment out of glove box.
– Equipment version with CD drive: Remove CD drive ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; DVD/CD changer; Removing and installing CD changer .



– Remove bolt -1- (top, side).




– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 160 .
– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows-.




**Note**

*The number of bolts depends on the equipment version.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull glove box out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.
– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices; Removing and installing connection for external audio sources - R199- .

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

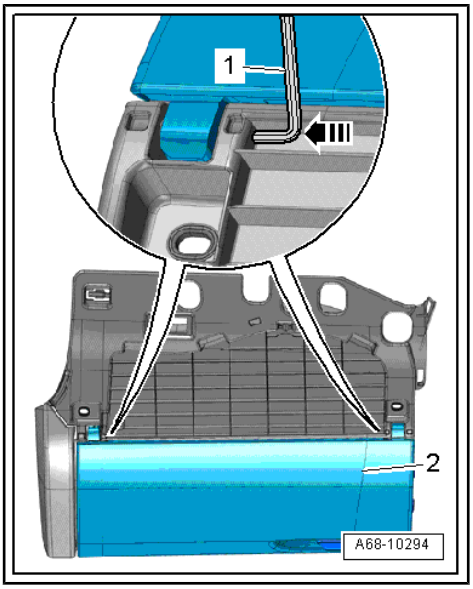
– Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 20

## 1.12 Removing and installing glove box lid




### Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

– Pull hinge pin out of cushioning element ⇒ page 27 .

– Set down glove box with top resting on a soft surface.

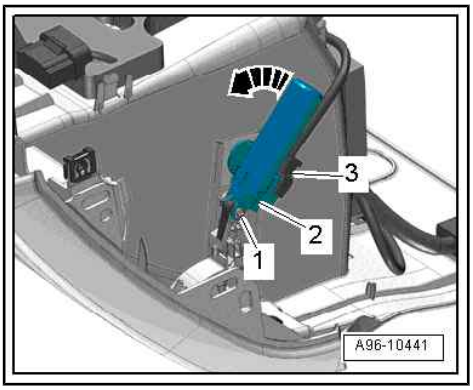
– Use a 4 mm Allen key -item 1- (or another suitable tool) to knock out hinge pins (left and right) -arrow-.

– Detach lid -2- from glove box.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid




### Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 160 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage dash panel fuse holder (right-side) and push to one side ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Removing and installing fuse carrier in dash panel (right-side) .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Pull out hinge pin -1- .

– Release switch -2- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

# 2 Equipment

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 28

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 29

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page 29

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 30

## 2.1 Exploded view - sun visors

**1 - Expanding cap**
- ❑ Clipped into sun visor

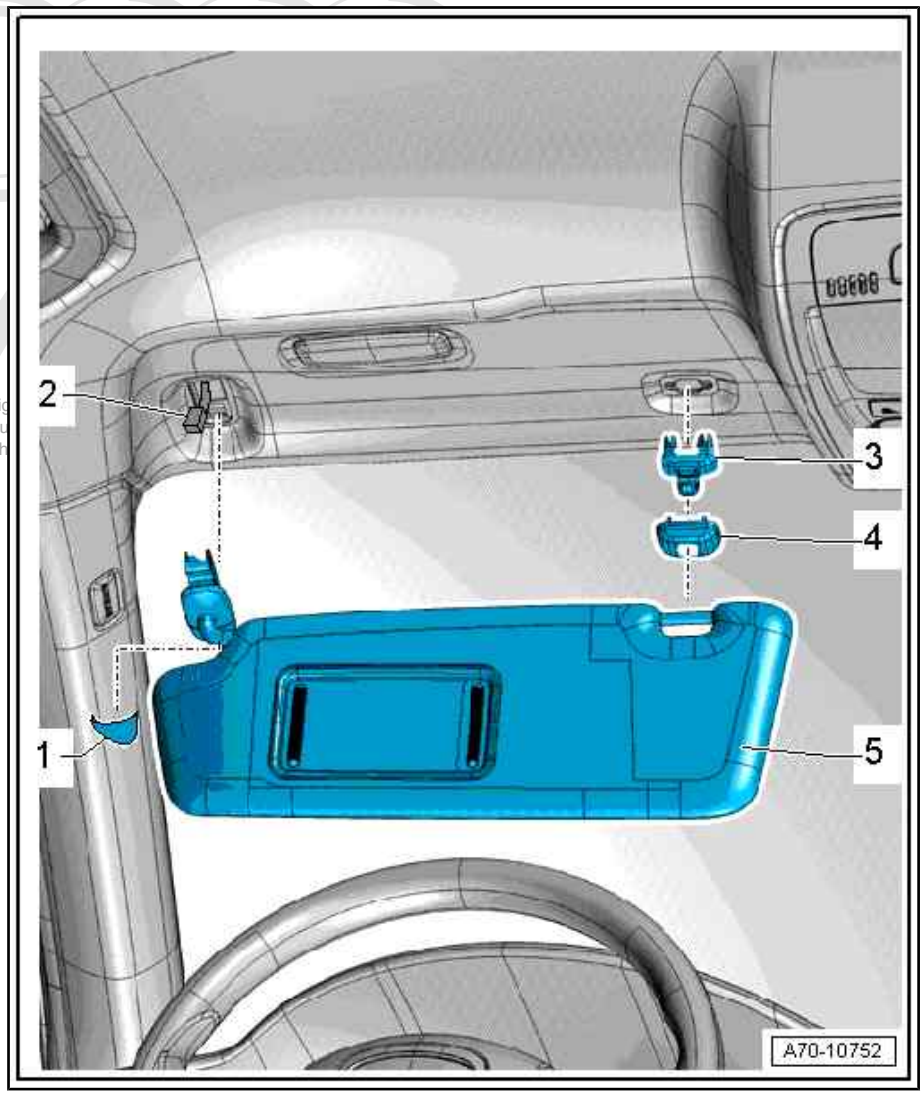
**2 - Electrical connector**
- ❑ Depending on version

**3 - Centre bracket**
- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 29

**4 - Cap**
- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

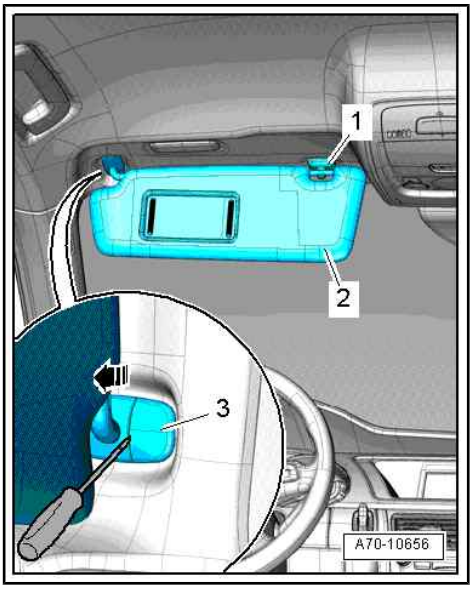
**5 - Sun visor**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 29

Protected by copyrig
permitted unless au
with respect to th



## 2.2 Removing and installing sun visor

### Removing




– Disengage sun visor -2- in centre of vehicle at centre bracket -1- for sun visor.
– Use a screwdriver to unclip expanding cap -3-.
– Swivel bracket for sun visor downwards -arrow- and take out.
– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

### Installing

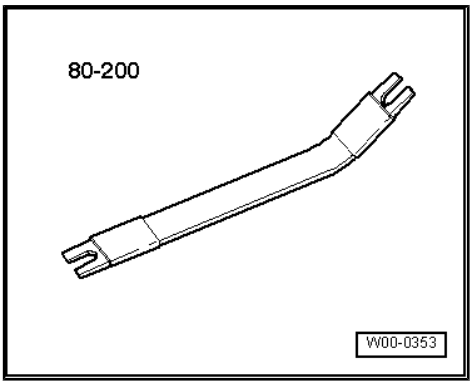
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage lug on bracket for sun visor in opening in moulded headliner.
– Press on expanding cap for sun visor until it engages fully.

## 2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

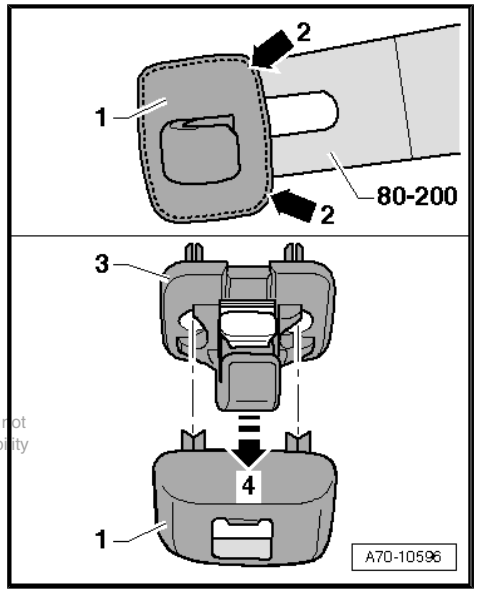



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Disengage sun visor in centre of vehicle at centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.

– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor. To do so, slide removal lever - 80 - 200- only approx. 1 mm under cap -arrows 2-.




**Note**

*Inserting removal lever - 80 - 200- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -3- -arrow 4-

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

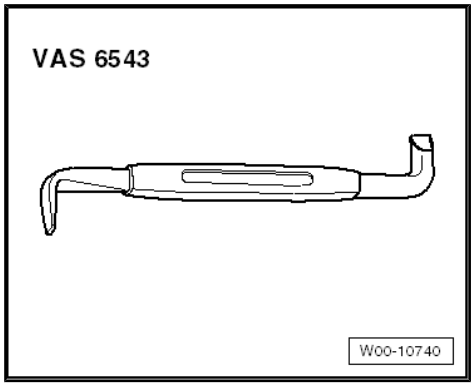
**Note**

*When inserting centre bracket for sun visor, take care not to damage fasteners.*

## 2.4 Removing and installing grab handle

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

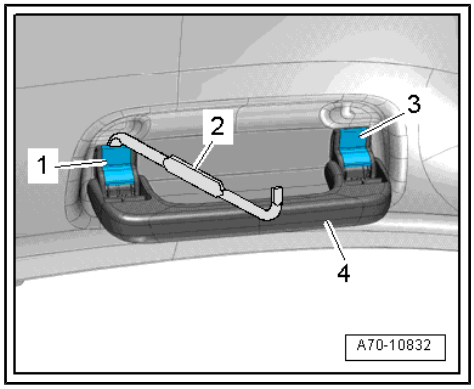
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-




**Removing**

**Caution**

***Unclip expanding caps -1- and -3- only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).***




– Unclip expanding caps -1- and -3- as far as detent using angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- -item 2-.

– Take roof grab handle -4- out of cut-out in body.

**Installing**

– Insert roof grab handle in cut-out in body.

– Press on expanding caps for roof grab handle until they engage fully.

# 3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 31

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 35

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover”, page 36

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)”, page 36

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 36

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front)”, page 37

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 37

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)”, page 38

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing air vent in centre console (rear)”, page 38

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing centre console”, page 39

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 40

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 41

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)”, page 41

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing bracket for centre console”, page 43

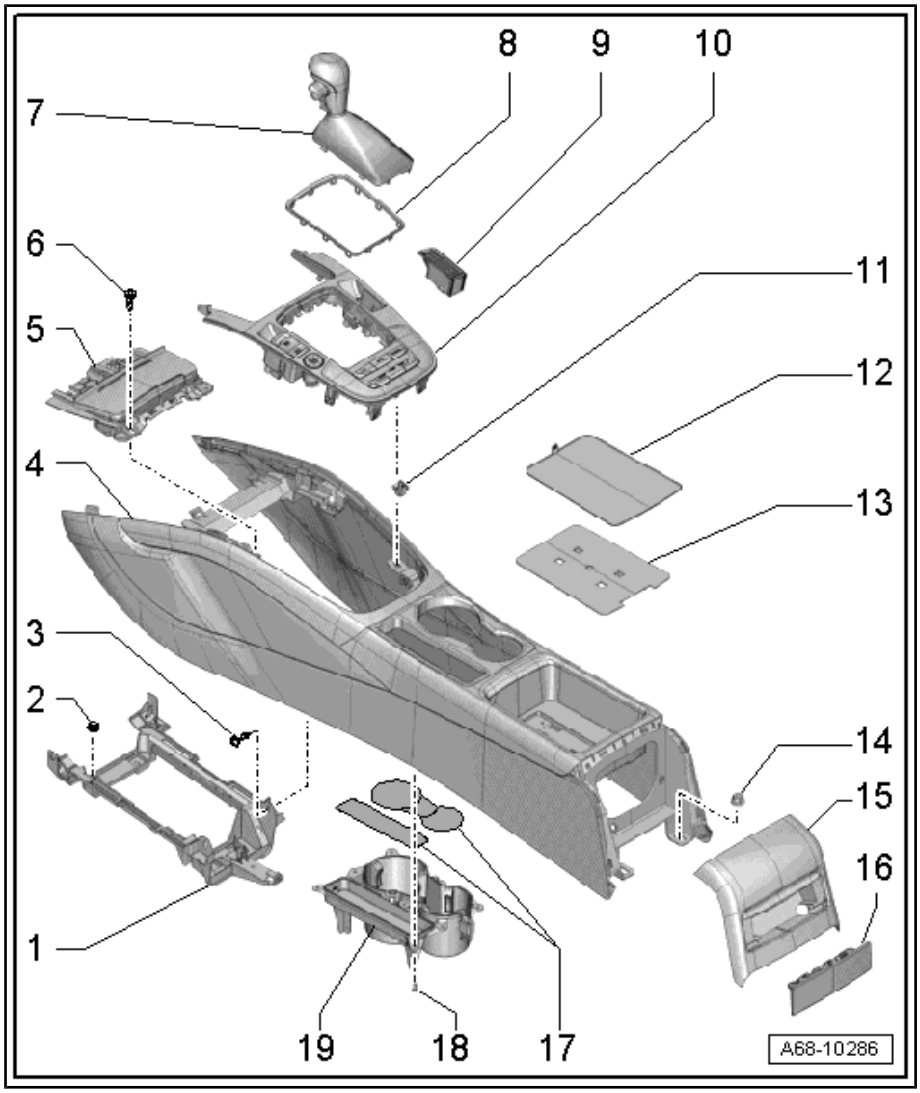
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.1 Exploded view - centre console

⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - centre console without front centre armrest”, page 31

⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - centre console with front centre armrest”, page 33

### 3.1.1 Exploded view - centre console without front centre armrest




**1 - Bracket**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43

**2 - Nut**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

**3 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**4 - Centre console**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

**5 - Ashtray (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Removing and installing trim for ashtray ⇒ page 37

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**7 - Gear lever or selector lever**

- ❑ Removing and installing gear lever ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing selector lever ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism

**8 - Trim frame**

**9 - Coin holder**

**10 - Insert**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37
- ❑ Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380-

**11 - Clip**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Fit on insert for centre console

**12 - Mat insert**

**13 - Support**

**14 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

**15 - Cover**

- ❑ For centre console

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36

**16 - Ashtray (rear)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36

**17 - Mat inserts**

**18 - Bolt**

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

**19 - Cup holder**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41

## 3.1.2 Exploded view - centre console with front centre armrest

**1 - DC/AC converter with socket, 12 V - 230 V - U13-**

- ❑ Equipment version; only in conjunction with centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket

**2 - Cup holder**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41

**3 - Bracket**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43

**4 - Nut**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**6 - Bolt**

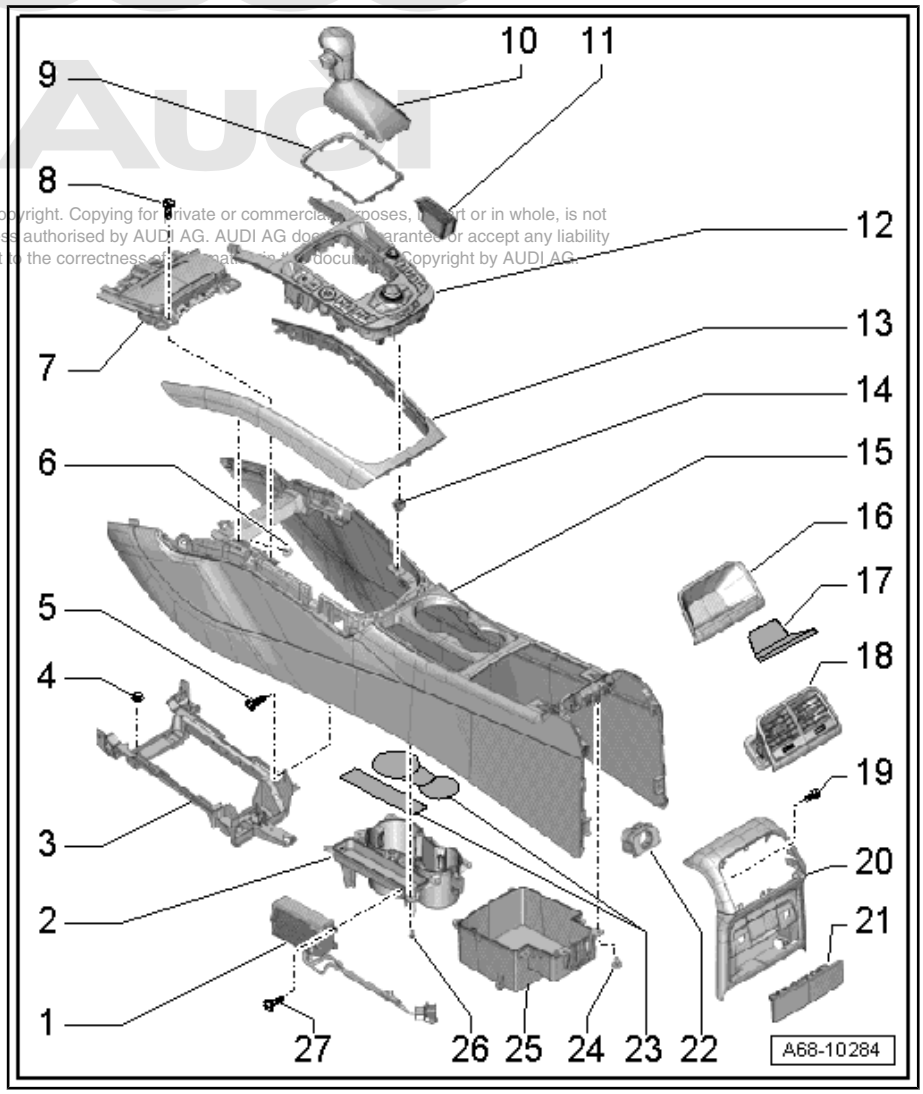
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 41

**7 - Ashtray (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Removing and installing trim for ashtray ⇒ page 37

**8 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm




Audi
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**9 - Trim frame**

**10 - Gear lever or selector lever**

- ❑ Removing and installing gear lever ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing selector lever ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism

**11 - Coin holder**

**12 - Insert**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37
- ❑ Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380-

**13 - Trim panel**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40

**14 - Clip**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Fit on insert for centre console

**15 - Centre console**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

**16 - Storage compartment (rear)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41

**17 - Mat insert**

**18 - Vent (rear)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 38

**19 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**20 - Trim (rear)**

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35

**21 - Ashtray (rear)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36

**22 - 12 V socket**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Removing and installing 12 V socket 3 - U19-

**23 - Mat inserts**

**24 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

**25 - Storage compartment**

- ❑ Depending on version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of translations made from the original German source text.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 38

**26 - Bolt**

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

**27 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket

## 3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

**Removing**

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment (rear) in centre console ⇒ page 41 .

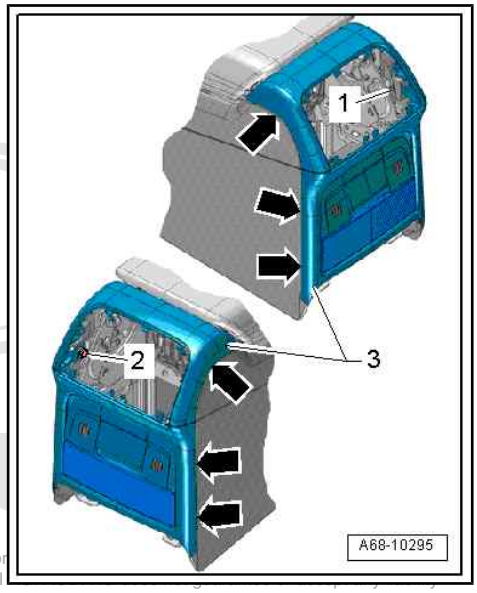
– Equipment version with vent: Remove vent (rear) ⇒ page 38 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Starting at bottom, use a small screwdriver to carefully unclip trim -3- at sides -arrows-.

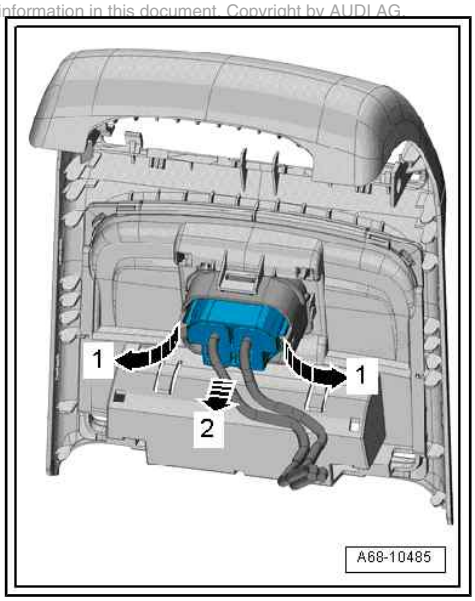
– Swivel trim upwards; at the same time release retaining tab -1- and detach from centre console.

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors.




Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Equipment version with DC/AC converter with socket, 12 V - 230 V - U13- : Release retaining tabs -arrows 1- and detach 230 V socket -arrow 2-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert trim at top, swivel downwards and clip in.

– Press centre console trim (rear) onto centre console until it engages audibly.

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 31**

## 3.3 Removing and installing centre console cover

**Removing**

– Starting at bottom, use a small screwdriver to carefully unclip cover -1- at sides -arrows-.

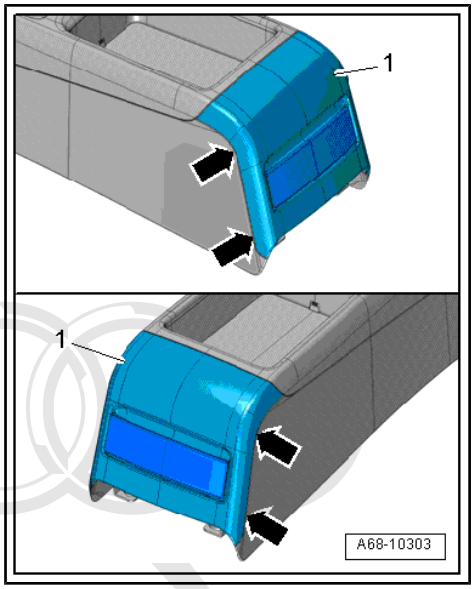
– Swivel trim upwards and detach from centre console.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert trim at top, swivel downwards and clip in.

– Press cover for centre console onto centre console until it engages audibly.




## 3.4 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)

**Removing**

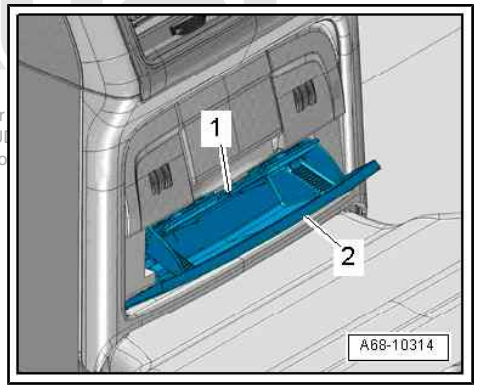
– Open ashtray (rear).

– Press trim -1- downwards and take out ashtray (rear) -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness o

**Installing**

– Insert ashtray (rear) in bottom of centre console and close it.




## 3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front)

**Removing**

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 37 .

– Remove bolts -4- and -5-.

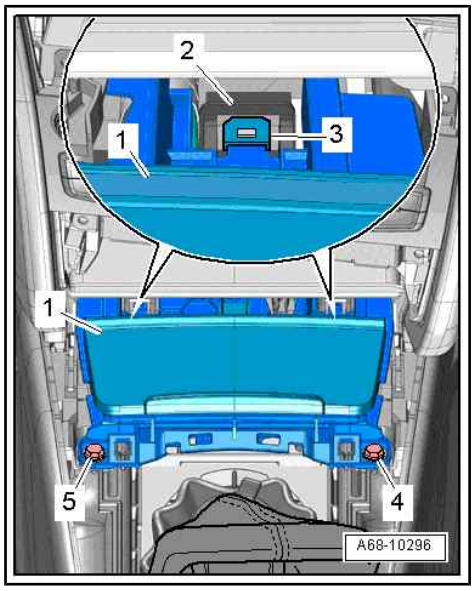
– Take ashtray -1- out of mounting -2- towards rear and unplug electrical connector for cigarette lighter.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert ashtray (front) -1- with rubber grommet -3- in mounting -2-.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31



## 3.6 Removing and installing ashtray trim (front)

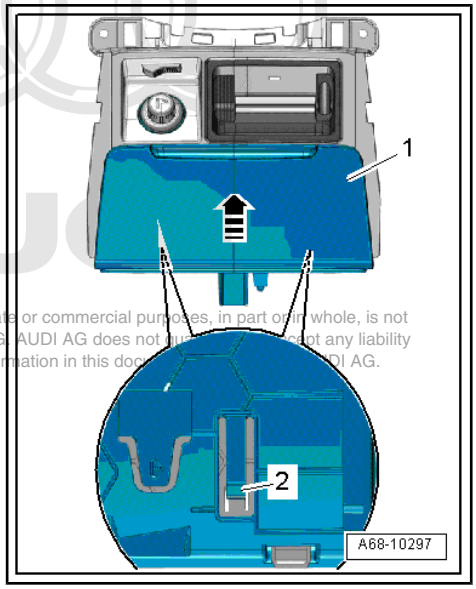
### Removing

– Remove ashtray (front) ⇒ page 36 .

– Open lid of ashtray.

– Use a small screwdriver to lift catches -2- on underside.

– Detach trim -1- from lid of ashtray by pressing trim in direction of -arrow-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

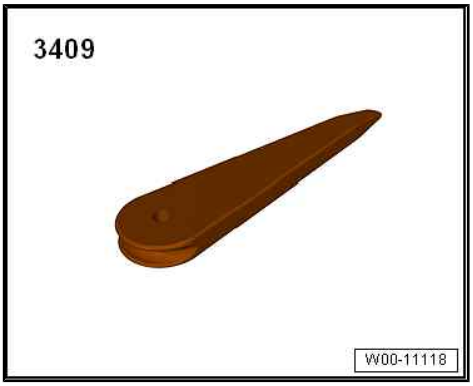
– Press on trim for lid of ashtray until it engages audibly.

The reproduction of this information for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

## 3.7 Removing and installing centre console insert

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



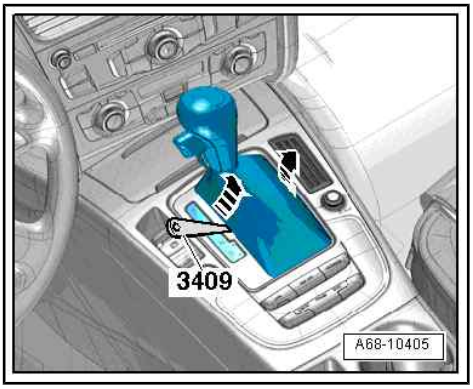

### Removing

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to “S”.

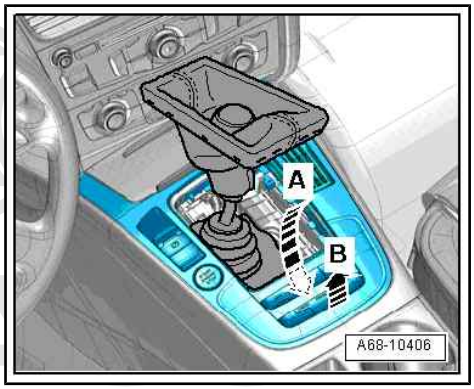
– Switch off ignition.

– Remove Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Use removal wedge - 3409- or a small screwdriver to carefully prise out selector lever/gear lever boot at side -arrows- and fold upwards.



– Protect trim panel for centre console all around insert for centre console with adhesive tape to avoid damaging surfaces.




**Caution**

*If too much force is applied when lifting insert for centre console, there is a risk of damaging catch on entry and start authorisation button - E408- as electrical wiring leading to button is relatively short. Carefully release and pull insert for centre console upwards.*

– Reach beneath insert for centre console -arrow A- and carefully lift insert out of centre console -arrow B-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and carefully take out insert for centre console by lifting over selector lever/gear lever.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

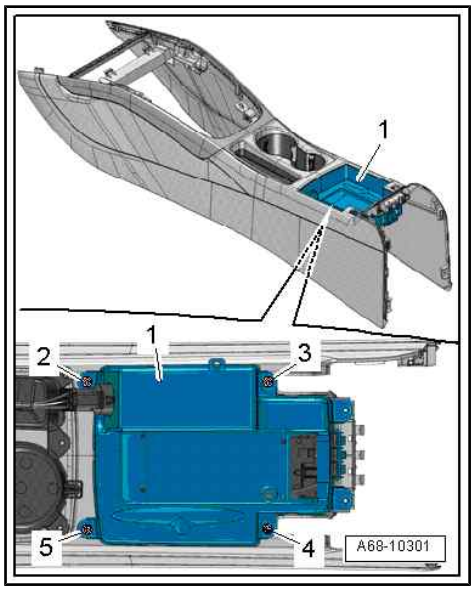
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on insert for centre console until it engages audibly.

## 3.8 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)

**Removing**

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .
– Remove bolts -2 ... 5- and detach storage compartment -1- downwards.
– Equipment version with telephone/mobile phone: Remove telephone/mobile phone unit ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Overview of fitting locations - telephone system .




**Installing**

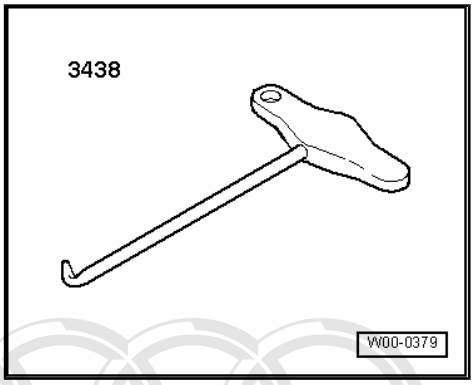
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31

## 3.9 Removing and installing air vent in centre console (rear)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Hook - 3438-



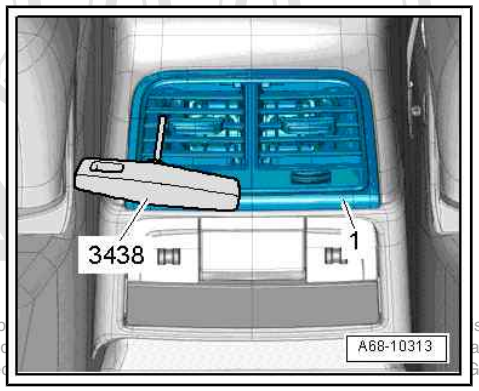

**Removing**

**Note**

*A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -3438- .*

– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening using hook - 3438- .

– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector.




Copyright. Copyright. Cop s not permitted unless authorised ability with respect to the corre .

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When inserting vent in centre console, make sure air duct engages properly.

– Insert vent at bottom, swivel upwards and press into opening as far as it will go.

## 3.10 Removing and installing centre console

**Removing**

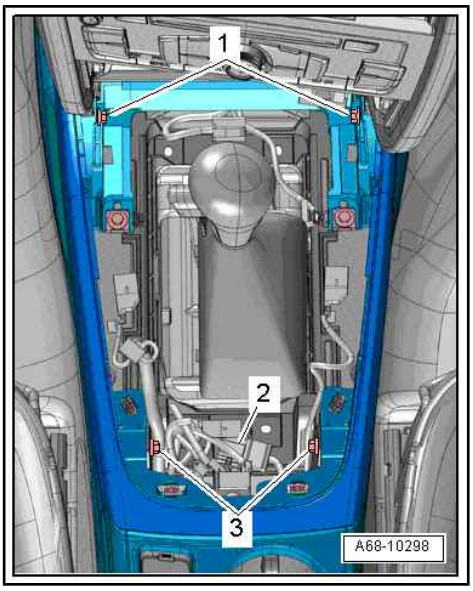
– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 37 .

– Remove ashtray (front) ⇒ page 36 .

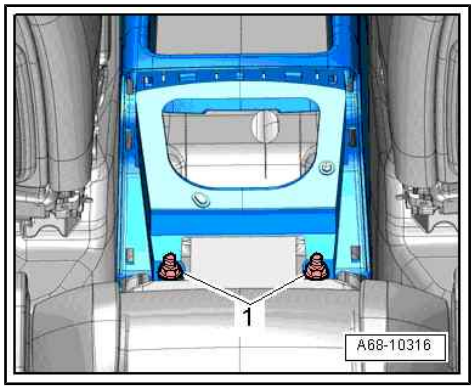
– Equipment version with 12 V socket: Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.

– Equipment version with centre armrest (front): Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 45 .



– Equipment version without centre armrest (front): Remove trim for centre console ⇒ page 36 and remove nuts -1-.
– Equipment version with telephone/mobile phone: Unplug electrical connectors.
– Lift centre console, pull it out of dash panel towards rear and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

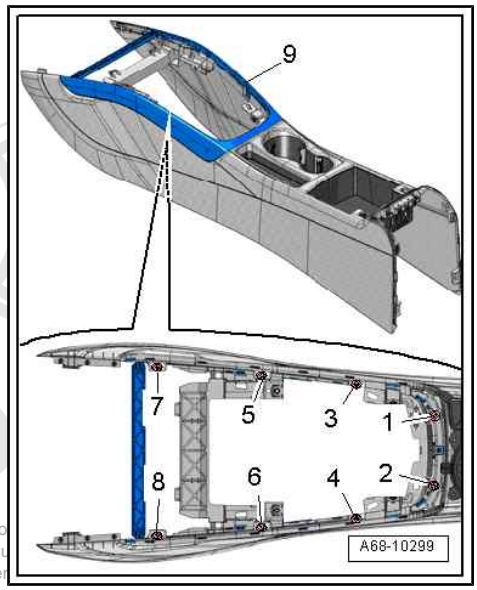
– Make sure centre console is flush with dash panel.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31

## 3.11 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

**Removing**

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .
– Remove bolts -1 ... 8- and detach trim panel for centre console -9-.



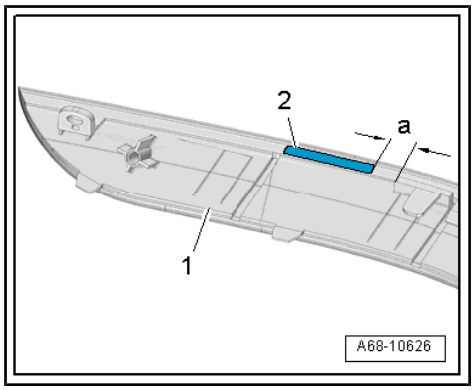

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

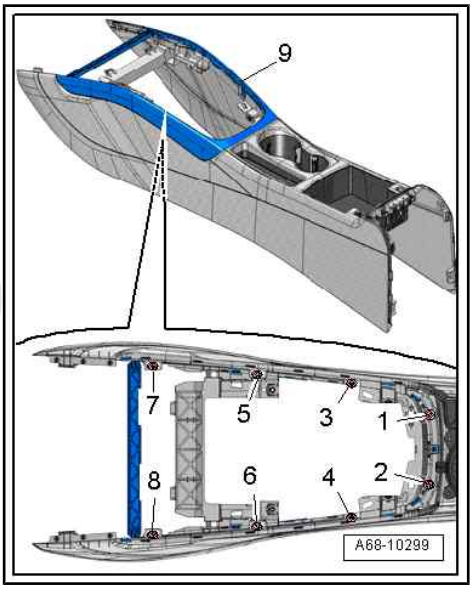
– Attach felt strips (45 x 8 mm) -item 2- on both sides with distance -a- to edge at trim panel -1- for centre console.

• Dimension -a- = 7 mm



– Tighten bolts in sequence -1 ... 8-.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31



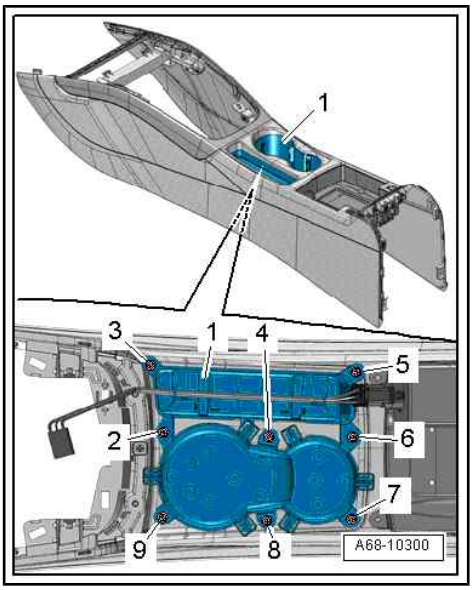

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.12 Removing and installing cup holder

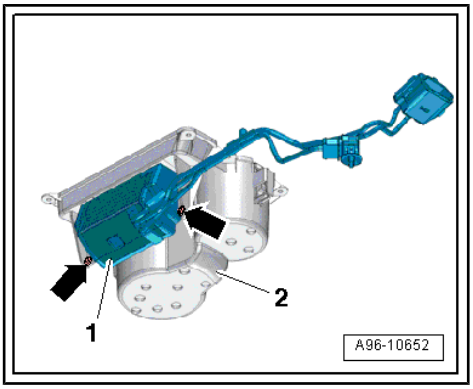
**Removing**

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .

– Remove bolts -2 ... 9- and detach cup holder -1- downwards.




– Equipment version with DC/AC converter with socket, 12 V - 230 V - U13- : Remove bolts -arrows- and detach DC/AC converter with socket -item 1- from cup holder -2-.




**Installing**

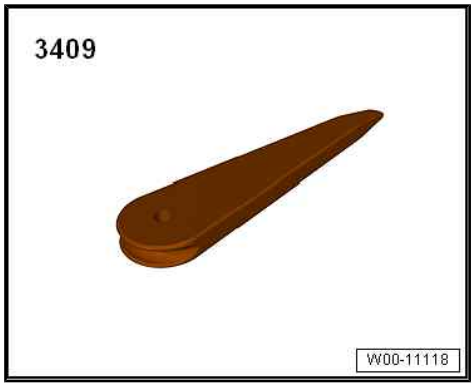
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31 **and** ⇒ **Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket**

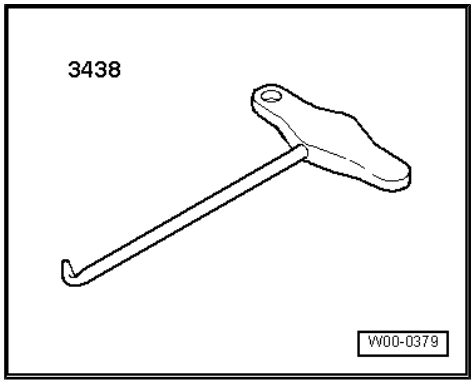
## 3.13 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

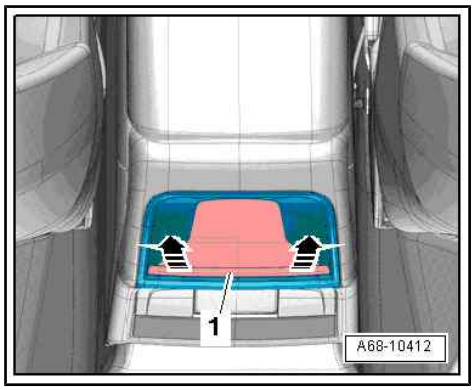



♦ Hook - 3438-

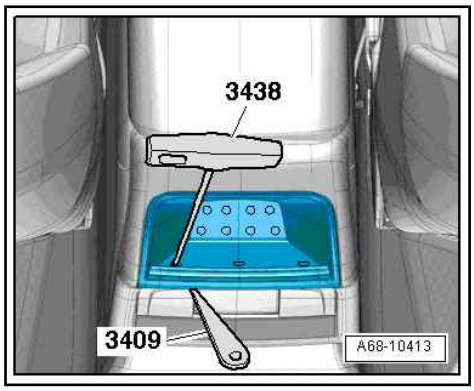



**Removing**

– Carefully pull mat insert -1- off retaining lugs -arrows-.




– Apply hook - 3438- at holes in bottom of storage compartment and at the same time insert removal wedge - 3409- into gap between storage compartment and centre console.




– Disengage storage compartment all around and detach.

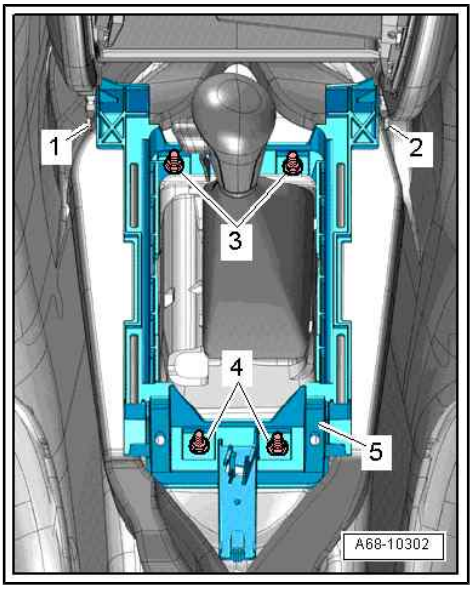
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert storage compartment at bottom, swivel upwards and press into opening as far as it will go.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.14 Removing and installing bracket for centre console




### Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .

– Equipment version with aerial for entry and start authorisation: Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- .

– Remove nuts -3- and -4-.

– Disengage bracket -5- at lugs -1- and -2- and remove.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 31

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 4 Centre armrest (front)

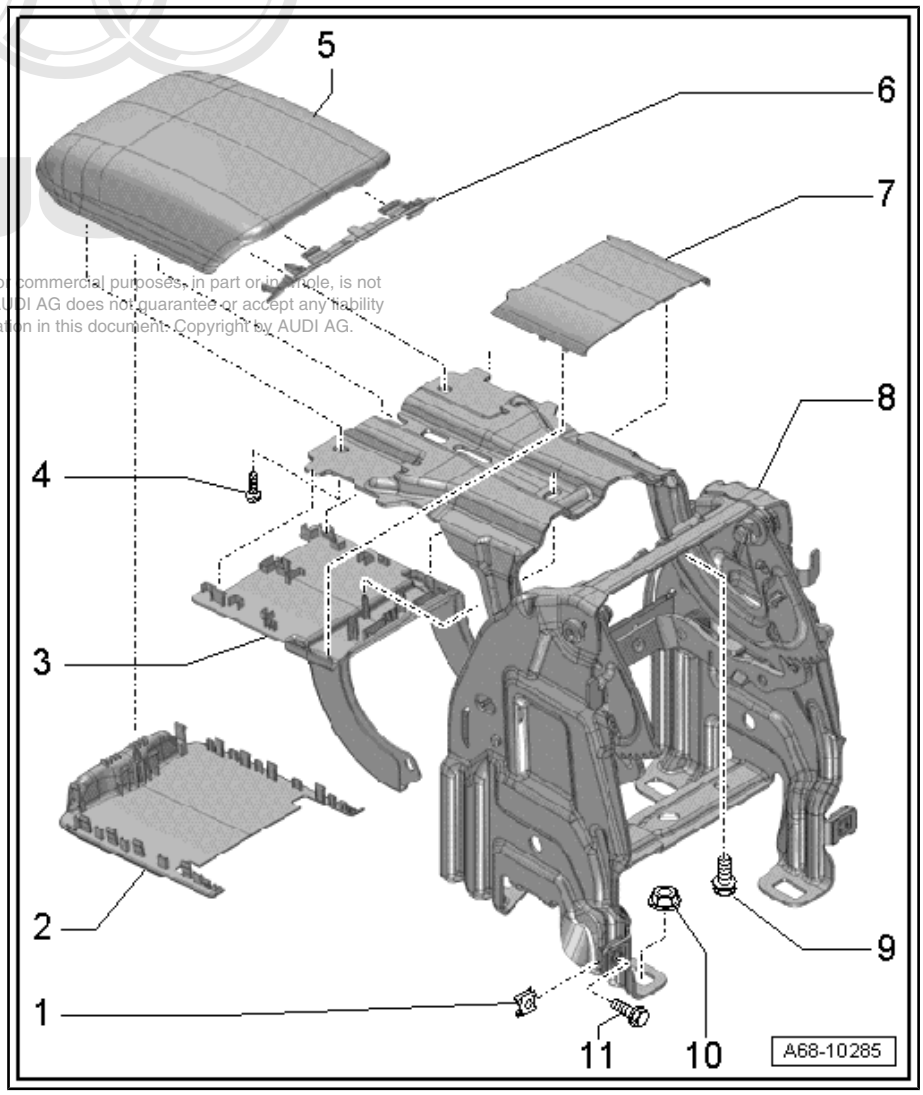
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 44

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 45

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 45

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm”, page 46

## 4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)




**1 - Speed nut**
- ❑ 2x

**2 - Cover**
- ❑ Clipped to -item 5-

**3 - Trim (bottom)**
- ❑ For hinge arm
- ❑ Clipped to -item 7- and -item 8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46

**4 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.2 Nm

**5 - Padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45

**6 - Trim**

**7 - Trim (top)**
- ❑ For hinge arm
- ❑ Clipped to -item 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46

**8 - Support bracket**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45

**9 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

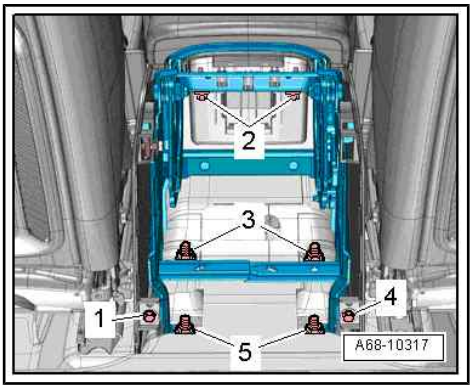
**10 - Nut**
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

**11 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

### Removing




– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 35 .
– Equipment version with vent: Remove air duct for rear vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
– Equipment version with telephone/mobile phone: Move clear electrical connectors on bracket.
– Remove bolts -1, 2, 4-.
– Remove nuts -3- and -5-.
– Press up centre console and disengage centre console (top) at armrest support bracket.
– Pull armrest support bracket upwards, guide it over studs and take it out to rear.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 44

## 4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

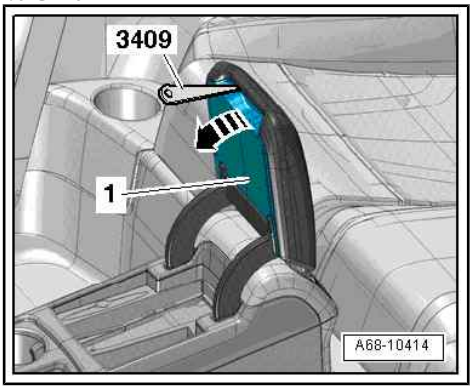
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



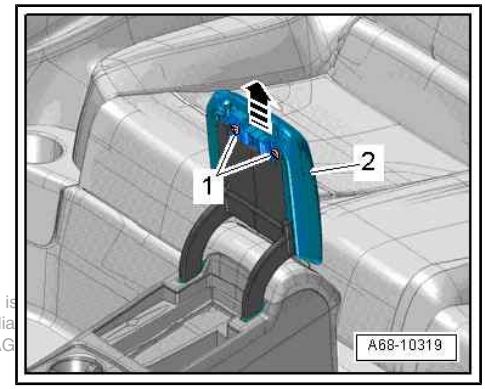

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing




– Use removal wedge - 3409- to carefully unclip cover -1- from padding -arrow-.

– Remove bolts -1- and detach padding -2- upwards from hinge arm -arrow-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage padding at hinge arm and tighten bolts.

– Press on cover until it engages audibly.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 44

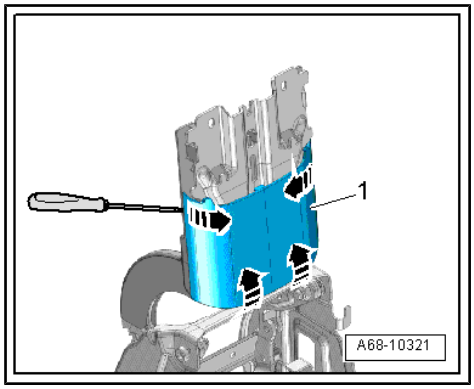
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any lia
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

## 4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm

**Removing**

– Remove padding for centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 45 .

– Use a small screwdriver to carefully unclip trim (top) -1- from hinge arm and trim (bottom) -arrows-.



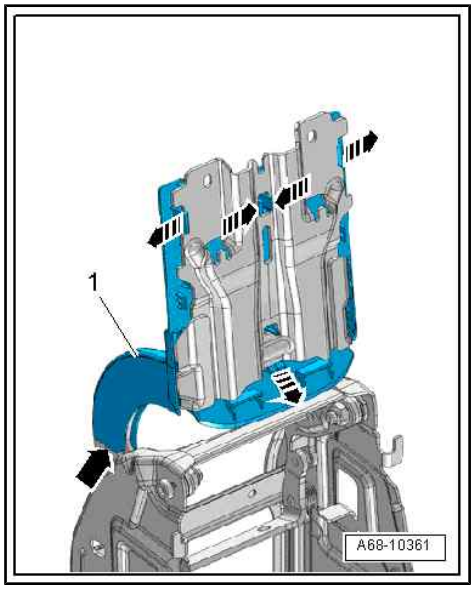

– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 35 .

– Open centre armrest (front).

**Note**

*For greater clarity, centre armrest (front) has been removed in illustration.*

– Use a screwdriver to unclip trim (bottom) -1- from hinge arm for centre armrest (front) -arrows-.




**Installing**

– Press on trim until it engages audibly.

# 5 Interior mirror

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 47

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 48

⇒ “5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 49

⇒ “5.4 Switching compass display on and off”, page 50

⇒ “5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 50

⇒ “5.6 Calibrating digital compass”, page 50

⇒ “5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 51

⇒ “5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 51

⇒ “5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 57

## 5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror

**1 - Cover (front)**
- ❑ For mirror base

**2 - Interior mirror**
- ❑ Different versions available; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Position at 30° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing

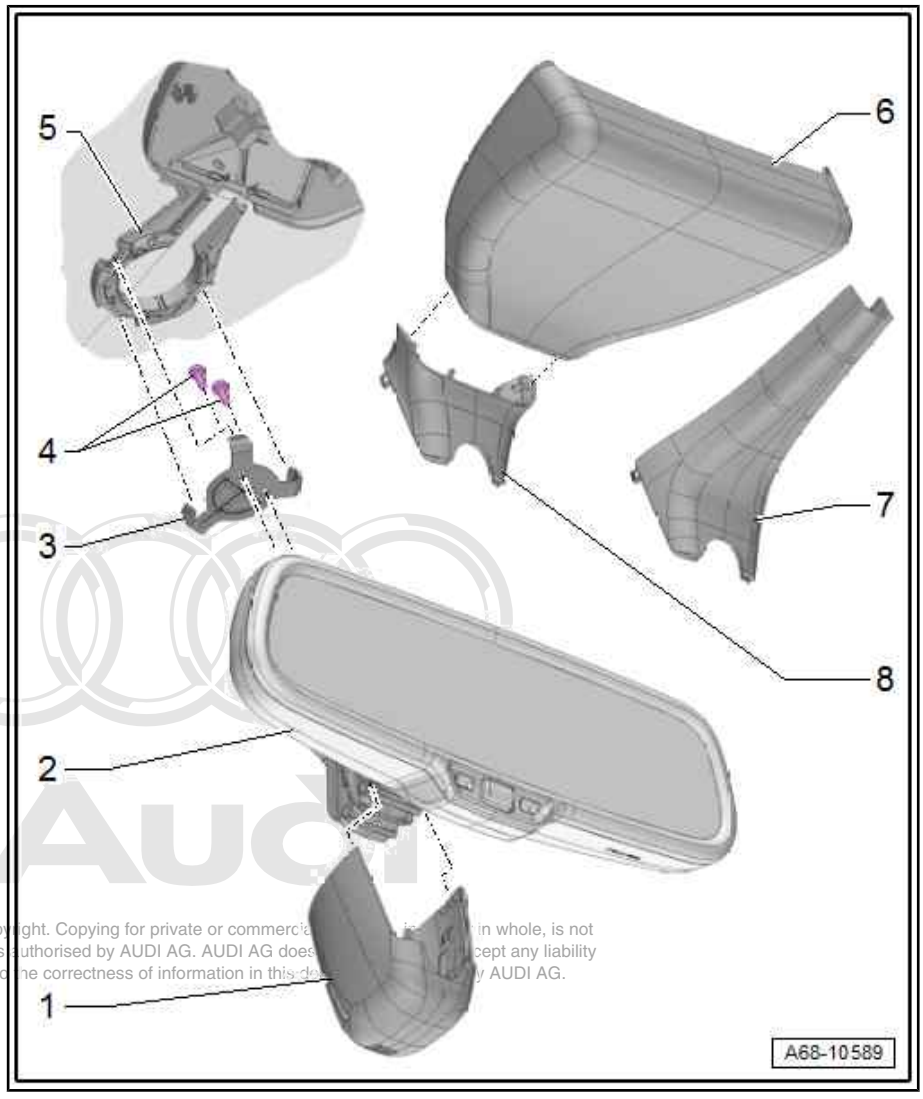
**3 - Retaining clip**
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Different versions available; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renew after removing interior mirror

**4 - Bolts**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

**5 - Retaining plate**
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

**6 - Cover**
- ❑ Interior mirror with optional equipment

**7 - Cover (rear)**
- ❑ For mirror base




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not make any warranty with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Except any liability by AUDI AG.

❑ Interior mirror without optional equipment

**8 - Cover (rear)**

❑ For mirror base

❑ Interior mirror with optional equipment

## 5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

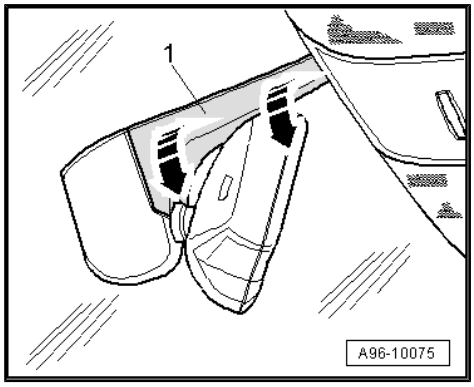
**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ page 14*

– Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).

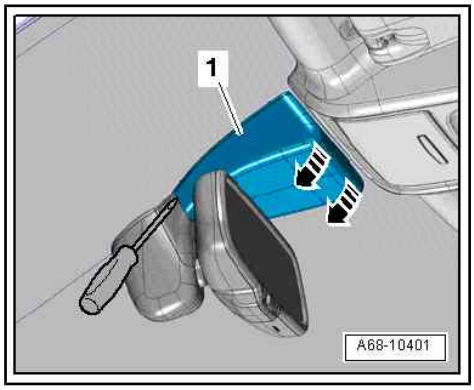
– Prise cover -1- off mirror base -arrows-.



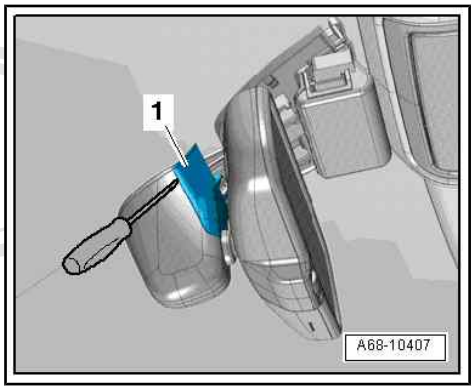

**Interior mirror with optional equipment:**

– Unclip cover (rear) -1- -arrows-.

– Disengage cover using a screwdriver and detach.



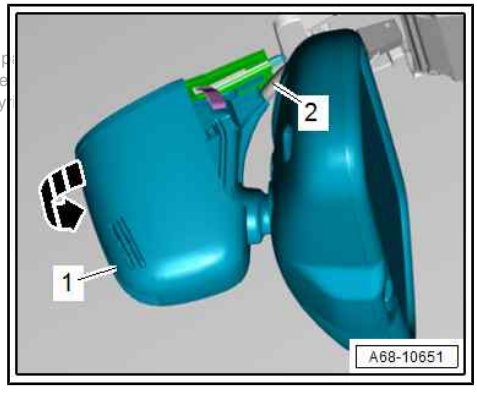

– Unclip cover -1- at mirror base and detach.




**All mirror versions (continued):**

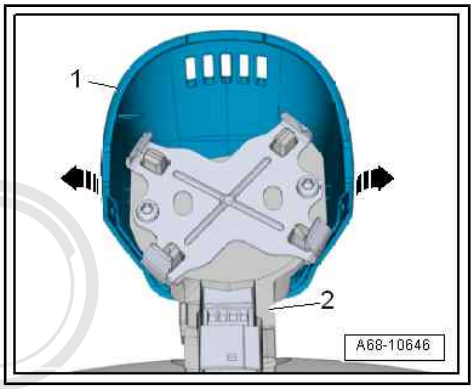
– Take electrical connector -2- out of bracket and unplug.

– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach from retainer.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



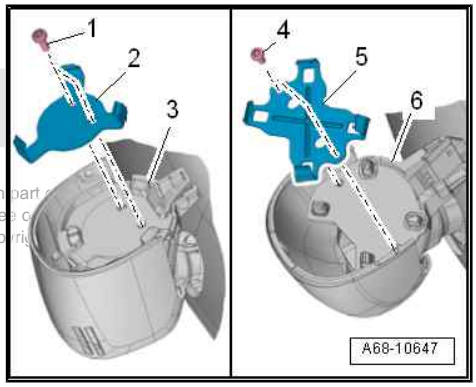

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- for interior mirror after removing; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Fit interior mirror at 30° angle to installation position.

– Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.



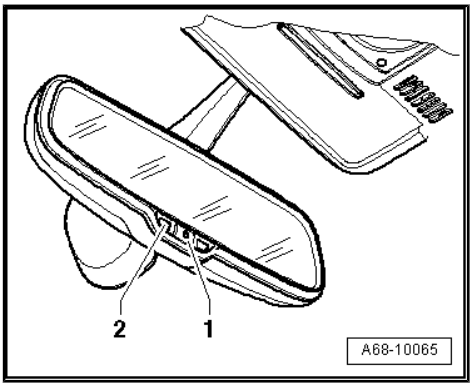

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “on”: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “off”: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.



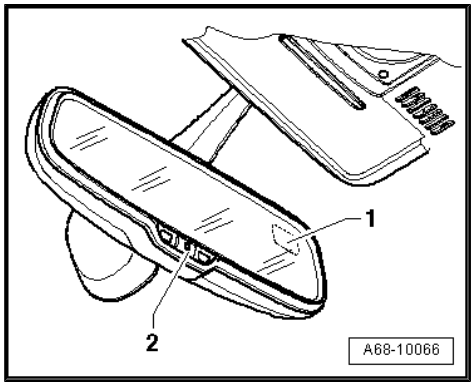

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- Please note that the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear window blind is retracted.

## 5.4 Switching compass display on and off

– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.




## 5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

**It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:**

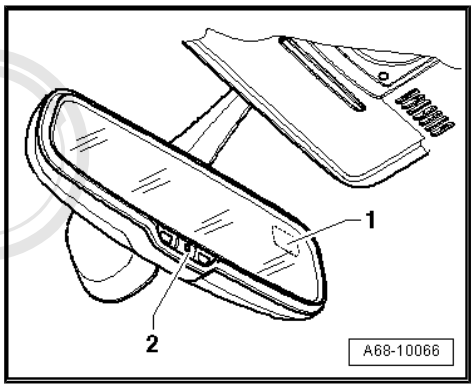
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

**Setting magnetic deflection zone:**

– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.

– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.

– Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:




♦ Europe ⇒ page 51

♦ North America ⇒ page 52

♦ South America ⇒ page 53

♦ Asia ⇒ page 54

♦ Africa ⇒ page 55

♦ Australia ⇒ page 56

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 50 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

## 5.6 Calibrating digital compass

**It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:**

- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

**In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:**

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.

- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

**Calibrating digital compass:**

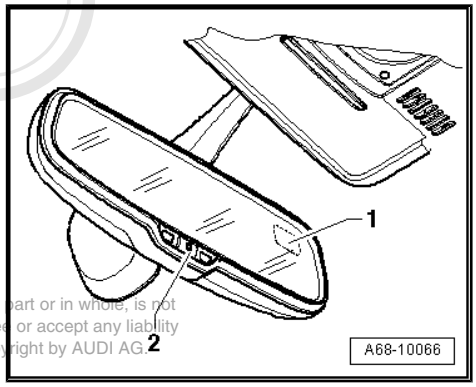
– Switch on ignition.

- Compass display -1- should show “C”.

– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.

– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.

– After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ page 49 .




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

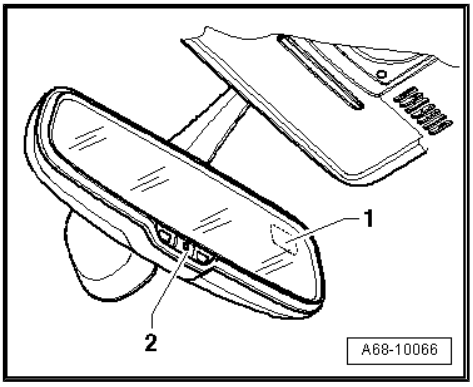
## 5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

**It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:**

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

**Note**

- *On recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors - Y7- , the sensor for the magnetic deflection zone is no longer fitted in the mirror base, but in the mirror housing. Only these mirrors can and MUST be adjusted to right-hand or left-hand drive.*
- *Recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors - Y7- can be identified by pressing and holding button -2- for longer than 12 seconds; “L” or “A” will appear on the display of these mirrors.*




– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).

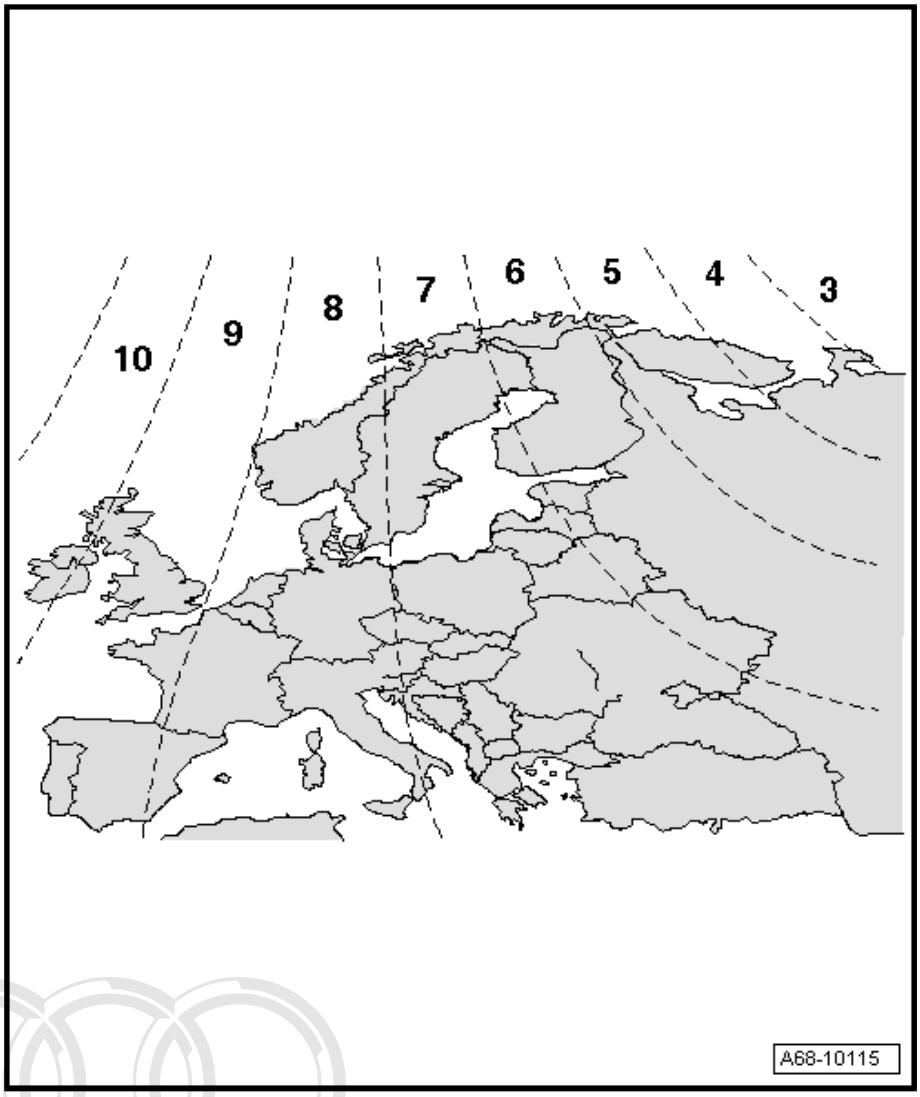
– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.

– After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 50 .

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 49 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

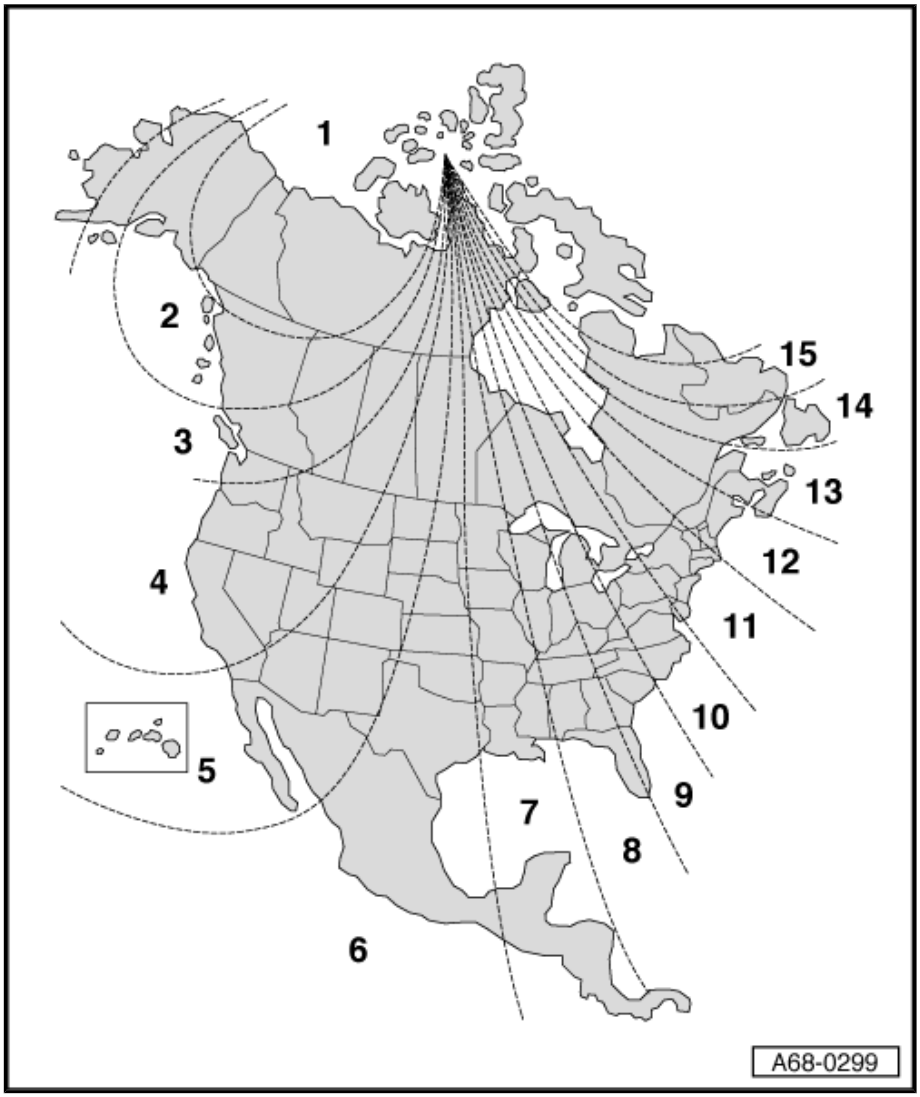
## 5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

**Europe**



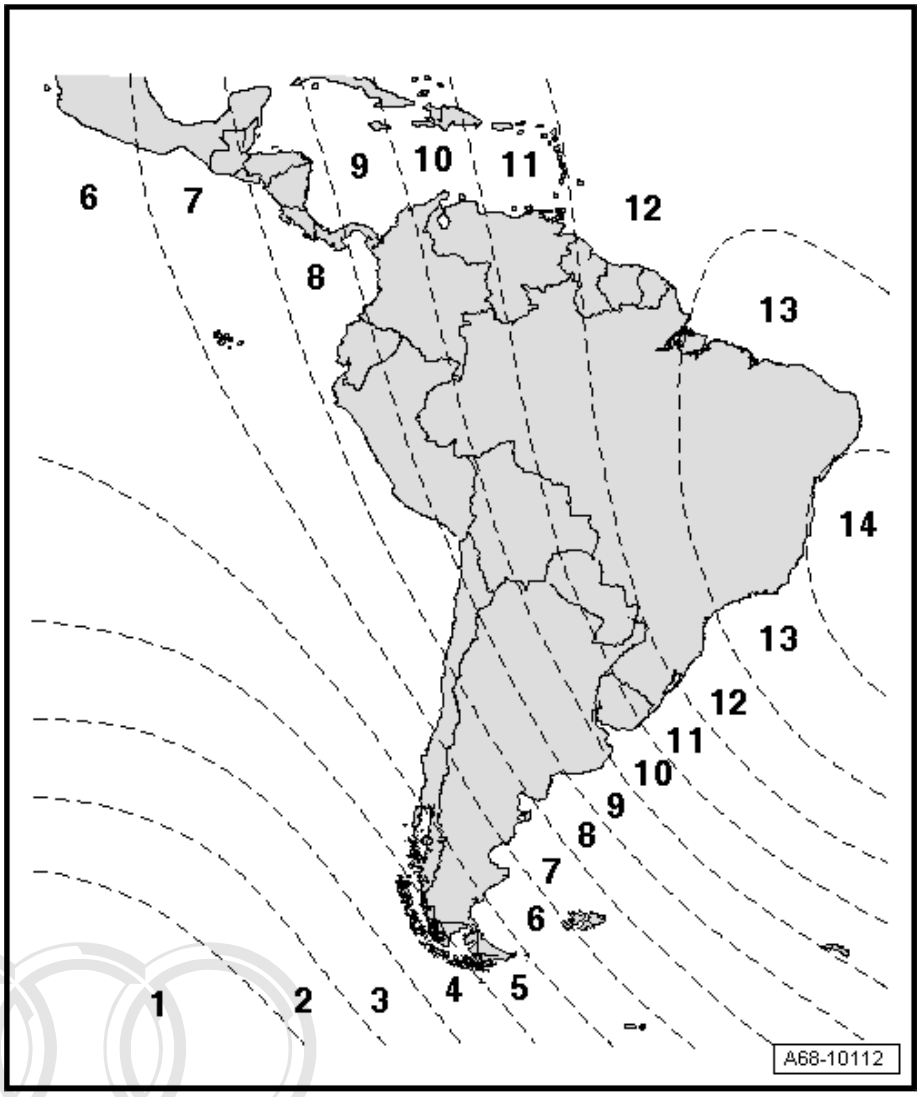

North America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



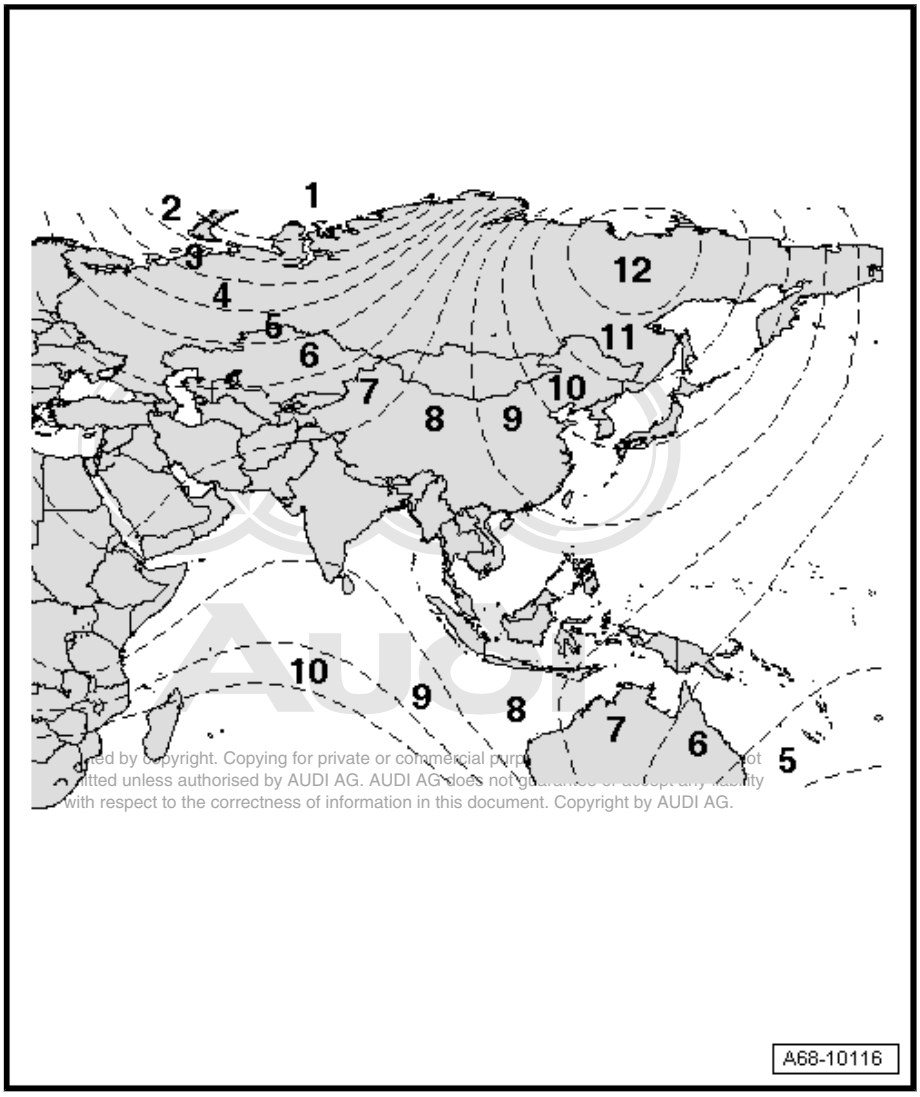

**South America**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



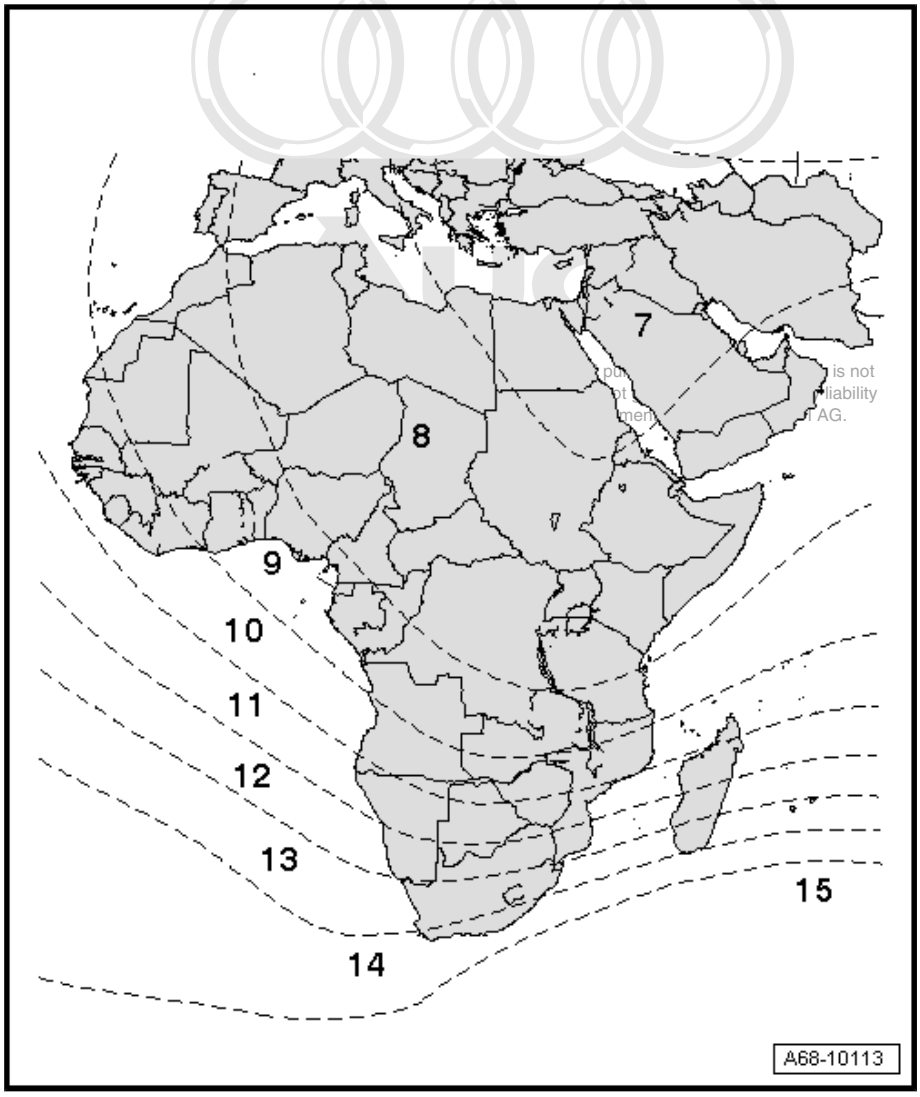

Asia

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



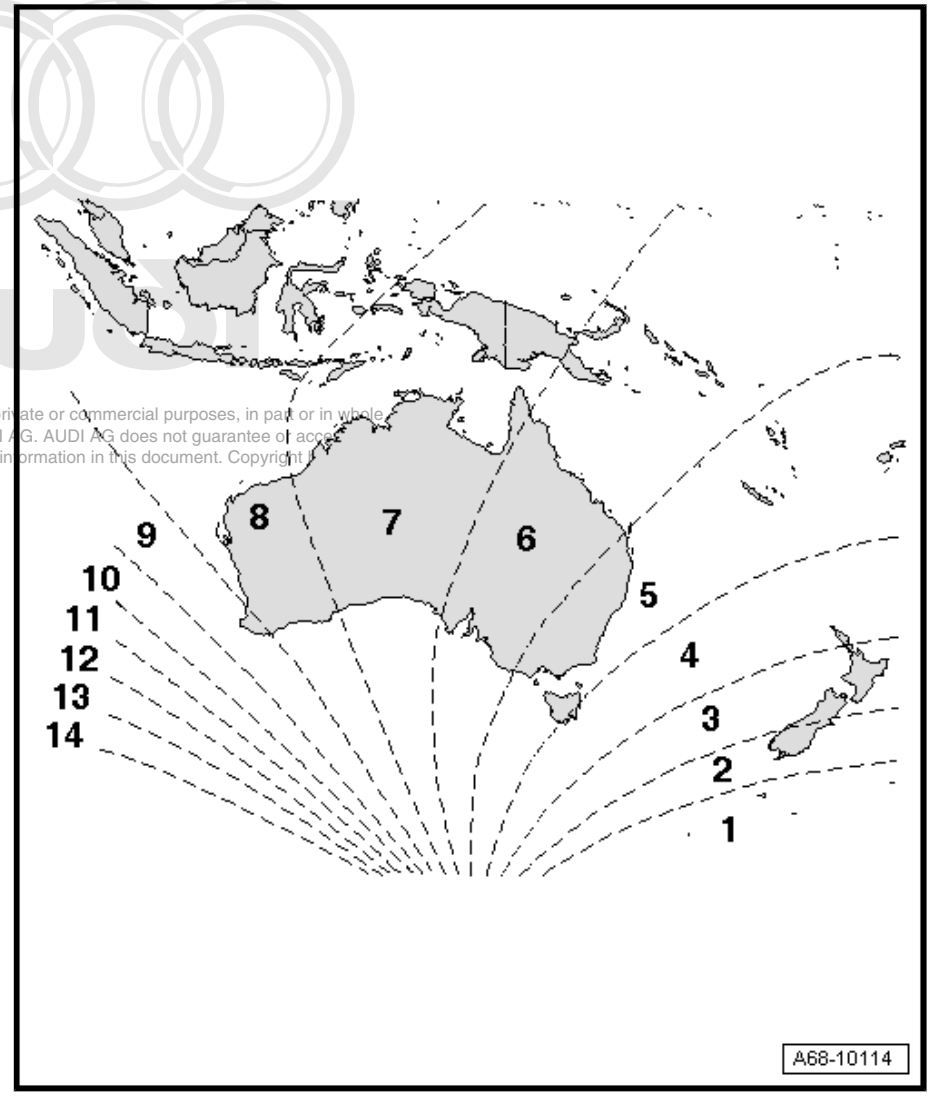

ted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp ot
itted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu ty
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Africa**




**Australia**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




## 5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

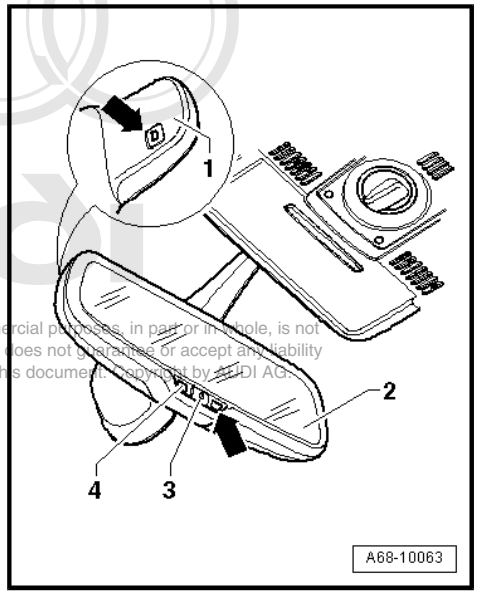
- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.
- Doors and glove box are closed.
- Interior lights are off.

**Test sequence**

– Cover photosensor -arrow- on housing side -1-.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor on mirror side -2-.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 69 – Passenger protection

## 1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 59

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 61

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 62

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 63

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 64

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 64

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 66

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 68

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 69

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)”, page 70

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 70

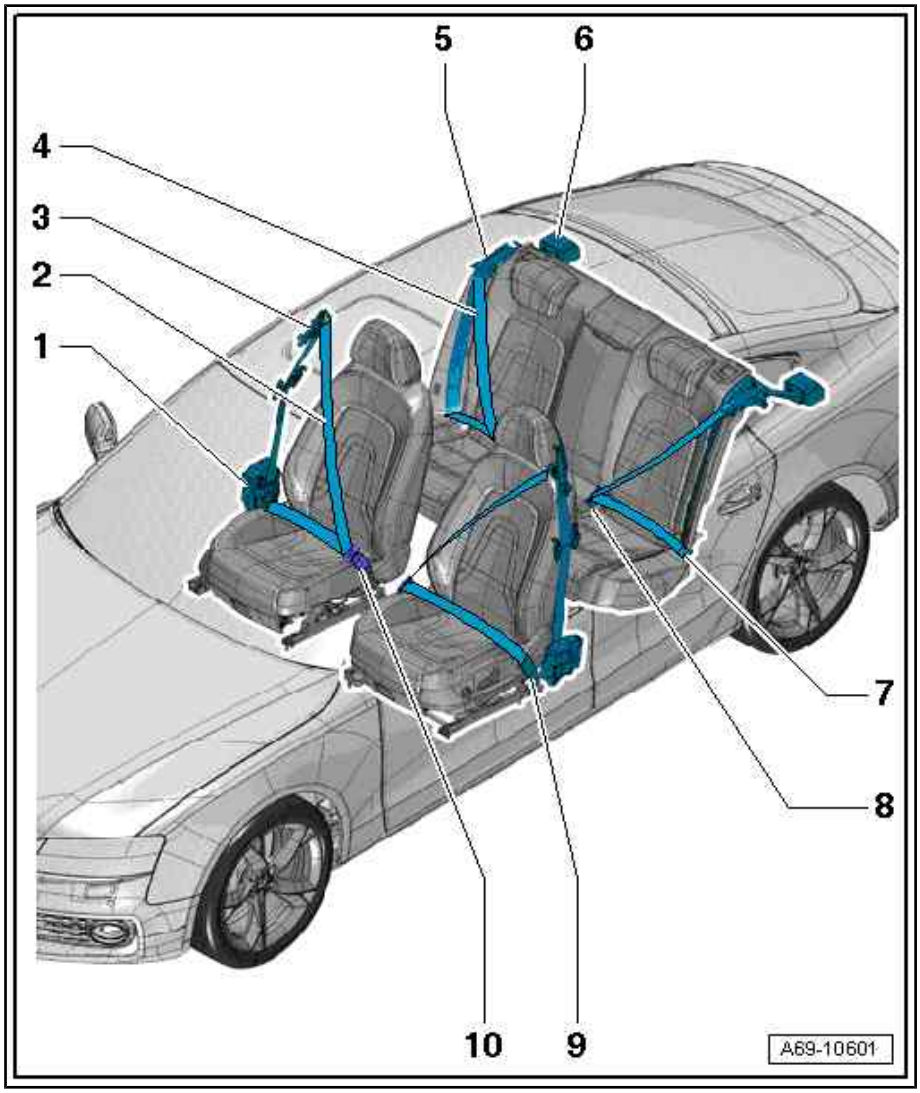
⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 71

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 72

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 73

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points




with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Automatic belt retractor**

- For three-point seat belt (front)
- Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 61

**2 - Three-point seat belt (front)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 61

**3 - Belt height adjuster**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 61

**4 - Three-point seat belt (rear)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 62

**5 - Belt guide (rear)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 62

**6 - Automatic belt retractor**

- For three-point seat belt (rear)
- Country-specific version: driver side with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- Country-specific version: passenger side with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 62

**7 - Belt end fitting (rear)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 62

**8 - Belt buckle anchorage point (rear)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 64

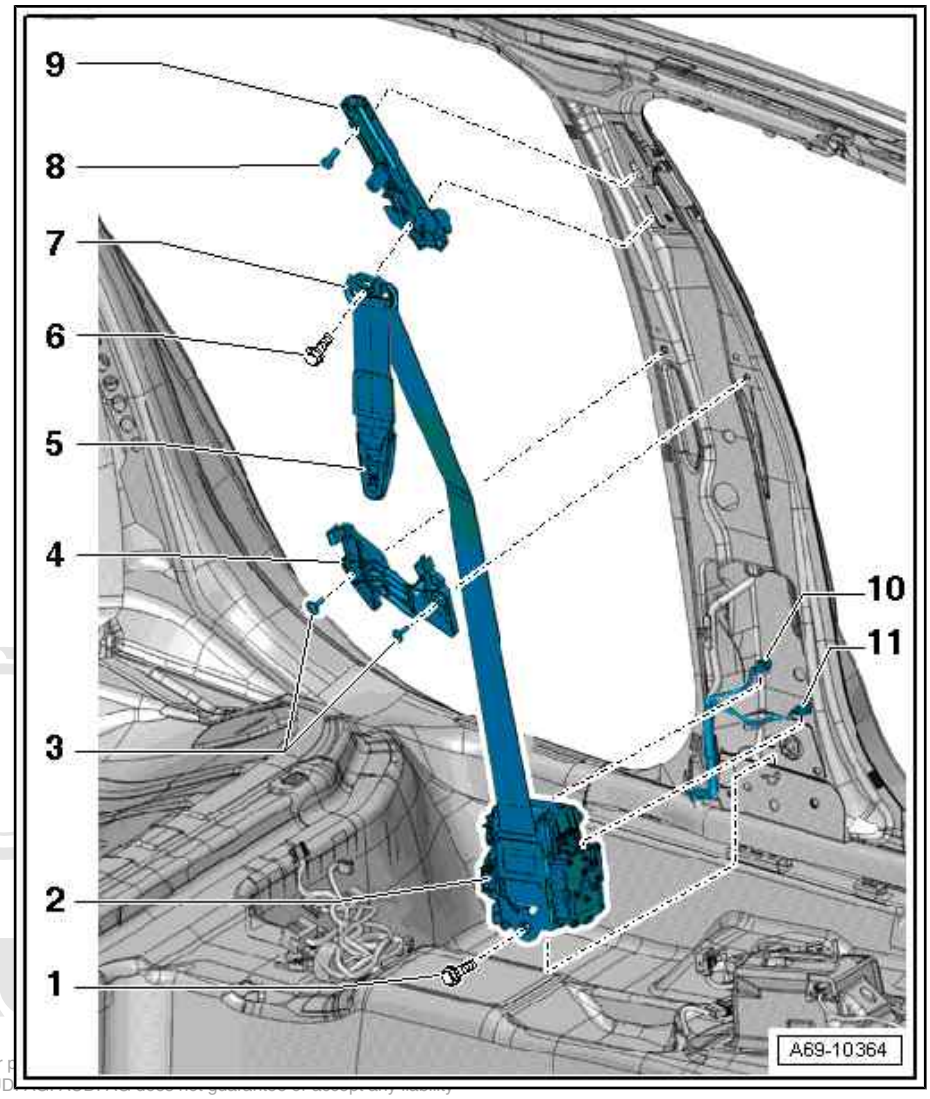
**9 - Belt end fitting (front)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 61

**10 - Belt buckle anchorage point (front)**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 63

## 1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)




**1 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

**2 - Automatic belt retractor**

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 64

**3 - Bolt**

- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 5 Nm

**4 - Belt guide (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

**5 - Belt end fitting (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

**7 - Belt guide fitting**

**8 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 27 Nm

**9 - Belt height adjuster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

**10 - Electrical connector**

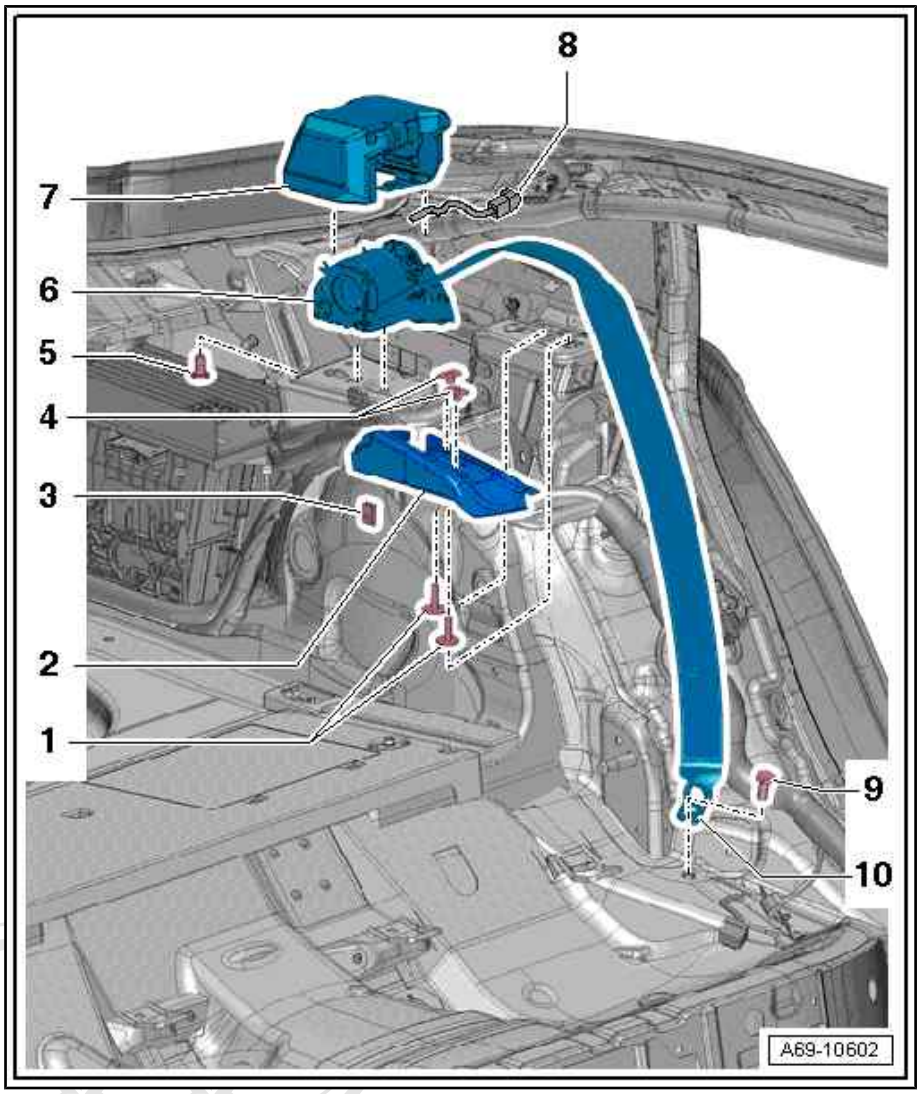
- ❑ For driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ For front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 64

**11 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ For front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 64

## 1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)




**1 - Bolts**

- ❑ When removing and installing belt guide, never change position of bolts (set by manufacturer)

**2 - Belt guide (rear)**

- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69

**3 - Speed nut**

**4 - Nut**

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

**6 - Automatic belt retractor**

- ❑ Depending on country-specific version: with or without rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Depending on country-specific version: with or without rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 66

**7 - Noise insulation**

- ❑ For automatic belt retractor

**8 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ Depending on country-specific version: for rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Depending on country-specific version: for rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-

**9 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

**10 - Belt end fitting (rear)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

Copyright AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.4 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

**1 - Belt buckle (front)**

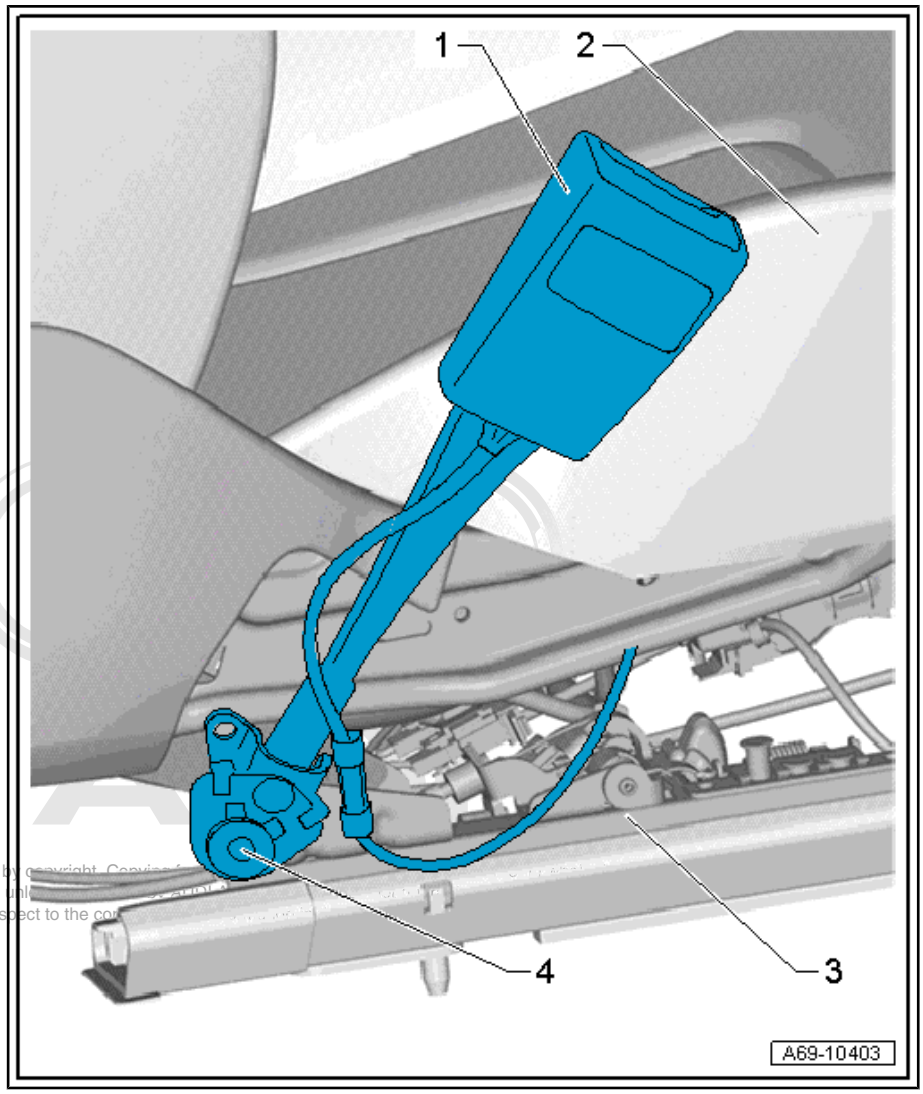
- ❑ Driver side: with driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and installing belt buckle ⇒ page 72
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 73

**2 - Front seat**

**3 - Seat frame**

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 33 Nm




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)

**1 - Cover**
- ❑ For belt buckle
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

**2 - Seal**

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

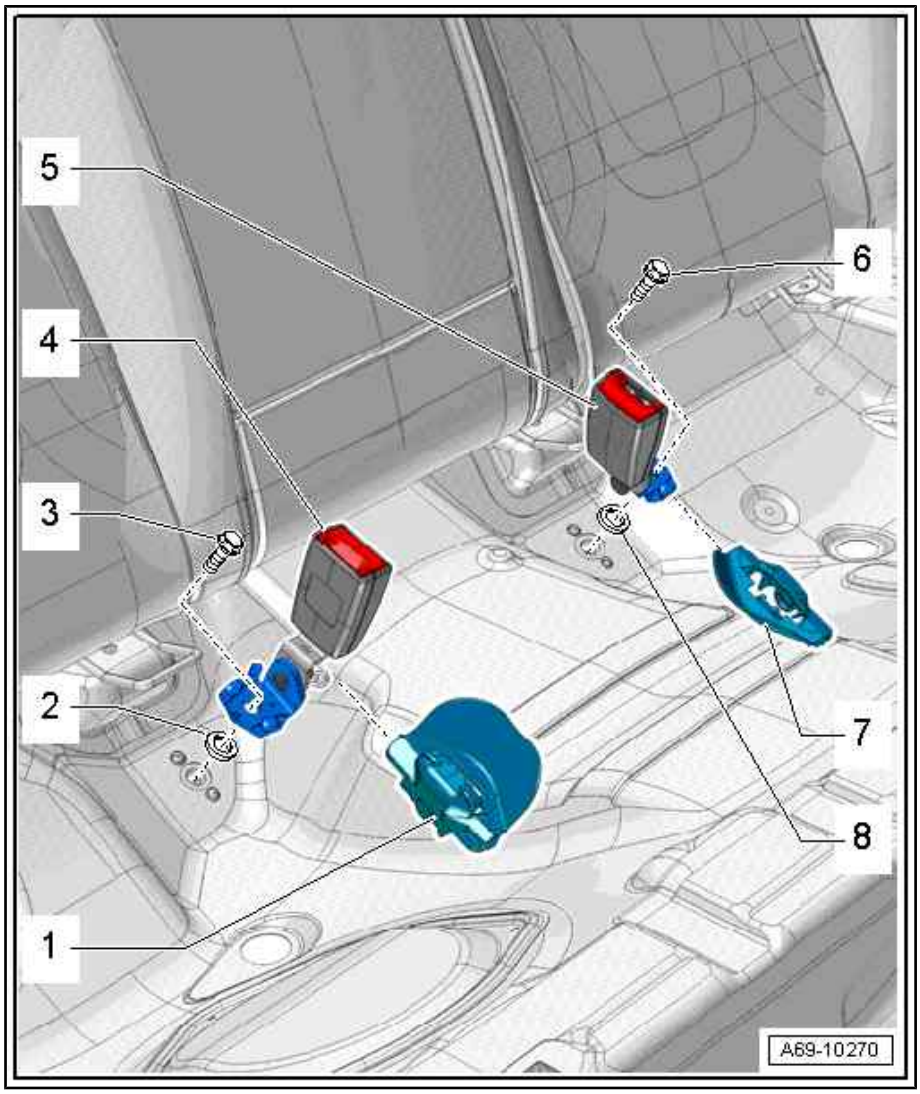
**4 - Belt buckle (right-side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 73
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

**5 - Belt buckle (left-side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 73
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

**6 - Bolt**
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 45 Nm

**7 - Cover**
- ❑ For belt buckle
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

**8 - Seal**




## 1.6 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

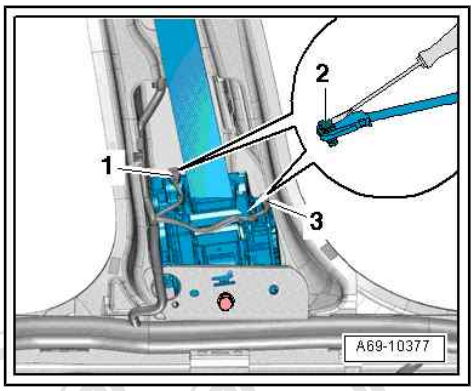
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 70 .
– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 191 .
– Thread belt out of B-pillar trim (top).
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 193 .

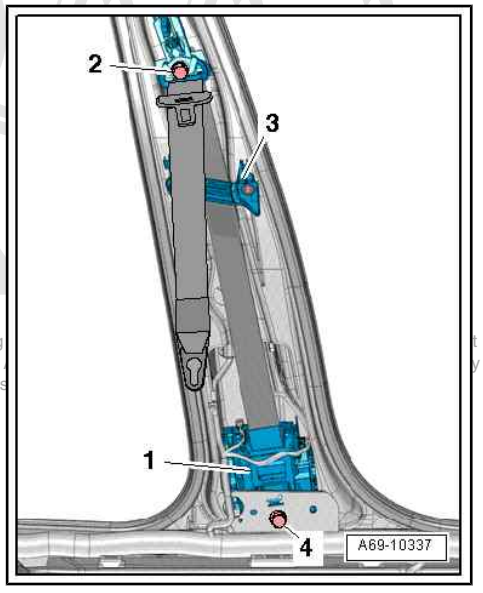
**WARNING**

***Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Release connector locking elements -2- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connectors for belt force limiter -item 1- and for belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 3-.
– Disengage electrical wiring at belt tensioner and move clear.




– Remove belt guide (front) -3- ⇒ page 68 .
– Unscrew bolts -2- for belt guide fitting.
– Remove bolt -4- and take belt tensioner -1- out of mounting.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

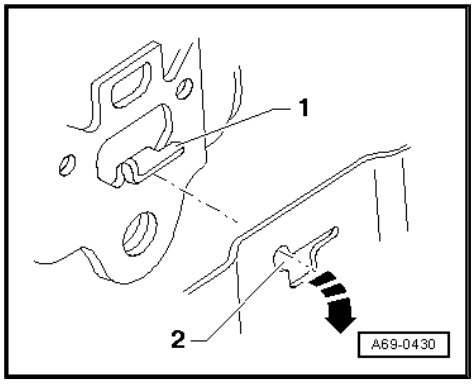
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Insert belt tensioner with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.




**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– After installing three-point seat belt (front passenger side), check child seat restraint function (country-specific version) of belt ⇒ page 13 .

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 61

## 1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 70 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 210 .

– Detach noise insulation for automatic belt retractor.

**Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Switch on ignition.

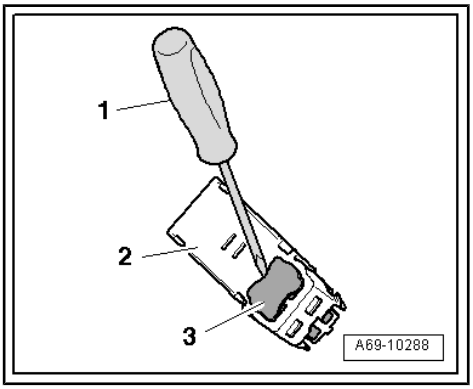
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

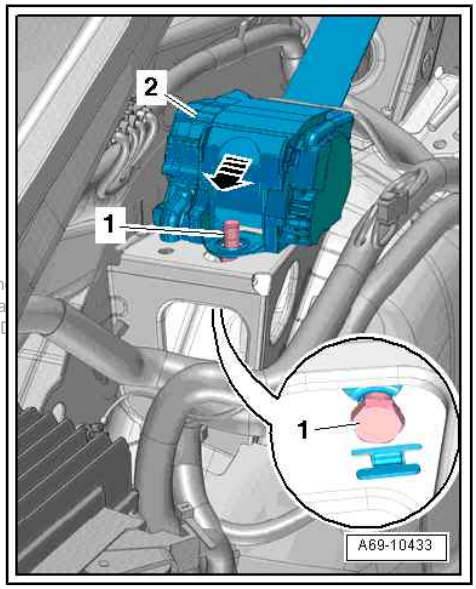
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector.
– To do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to release connector locking element -3- and unplug electrical connector -2-.




**Continued for all vehicles:**

– Slacken off bolt -1-.
– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- -arrow- and detach.



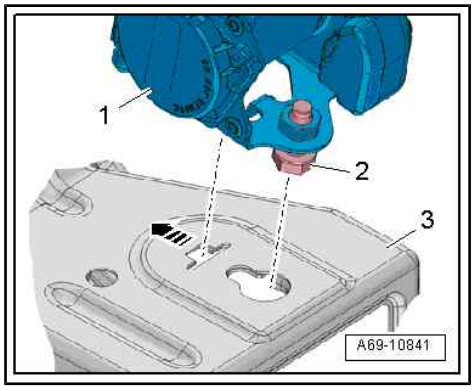

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

**Installing**

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.




**Country-specific version with rear belt tensioner igniter:**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. The reproduction, distribution and public reproduction of this whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. Any liability for the correctness, completeness or currentness of the contents is excluded. Trademarks are protected. © AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Continued for all vehicles:**

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 62**

## 1.8 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

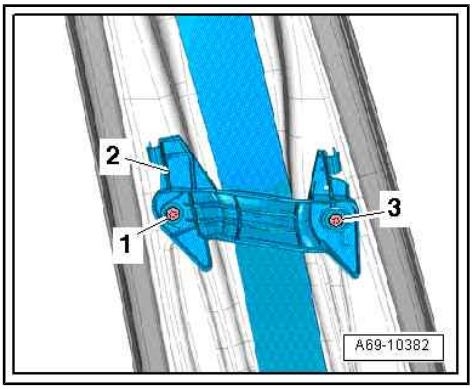
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 193 .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -3- and detach belt guide (front) -2-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that belt is not trapped or damaged.

– Lay belt in recess in belt guide (front) -2-.

– Insert centring pin of belt guide (front) in holes in B-pillar and tighten bolts -1- and -3-.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 61

## 1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

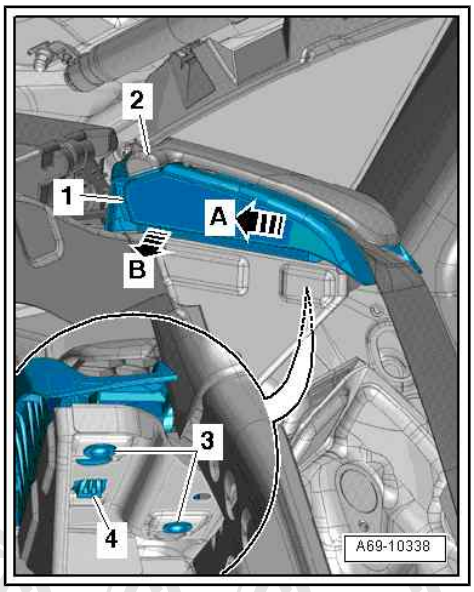
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing

**Caution**

- ***When removing and installing belt guide -1-, never turn bolts -3-. They have been set by the manufacturer.***
- ***Renew entire belt guide if damaged.***




– Remove side padding ⇒ page 400 .

– Equipment version with side airbag (rear): Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 109 .

– Remove foam element below belt guide.

– Press retaining hooks -4- on belt guide upwards and hold.

– Slide belt guide -1- to rear -arrow A- until bolt heads -3- can be disengaged from bracket at body.

– Slightly lift C-pillar trim -item 2- and take out belt guide sideways towards interior of vehicle -arrow B-.

– Outer belt guide (rear): Unplug electrical connector for rear parking aid warning buzzer - H15- .

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -1- and position belt guide on bracket.

– Insert belt guide with bolt heads -3- in guide elements at bracket.

– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

– Pull belt guide forwards until retaining hook engages audibly.

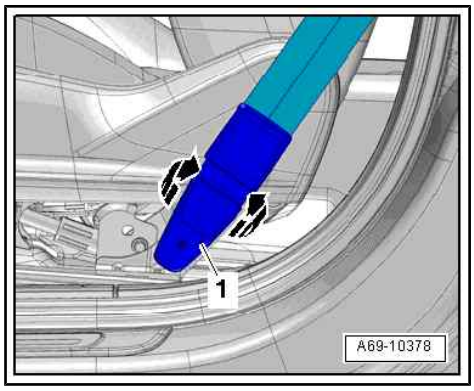
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.10 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

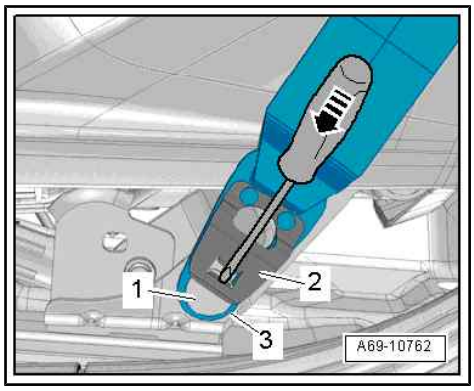
### Removing




– Move front seat as far forwards as it will go.
– Unclip cover -1- at belt end fitting -arrows- and fold upwards.

**Caution**

- *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
- *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*



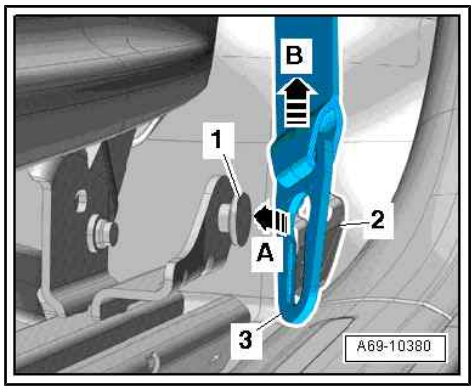

– Insert small screwdriver into opening on spring -arrow- and release retaining tab on spring -2-.
– Slide belt end fitting -3- downwards and disengage at stud -1-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Caution**

- *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
- *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage belt end fitting -3- at stud -1- arrow A- and pull upwards -arrow B- until retaining tab on spring -2- engages audibly at stud head.

## 1.11 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

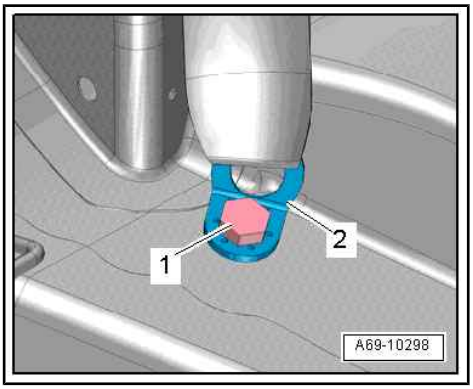
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

• Recess in attachment surface for belt end fitting must be positioned above lugs on floor panel.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 62

## 1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing

– Operate belt height adjustment button and move belt height adjustment slide to bottom position.

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 191 .

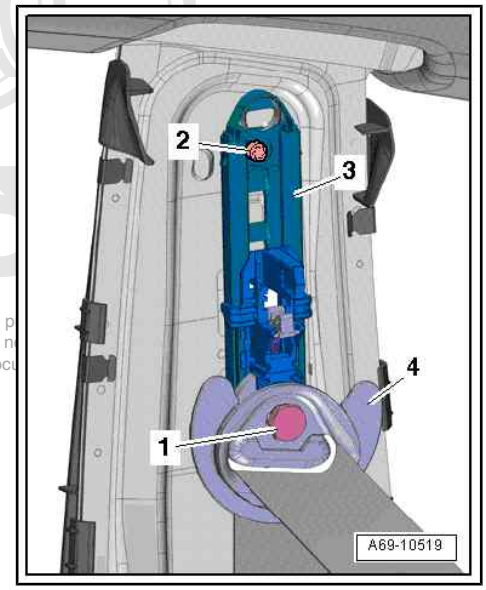
– Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Detach guide fitting -4- with belt.

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Lift belt height adjuster -3- off B-pillar.

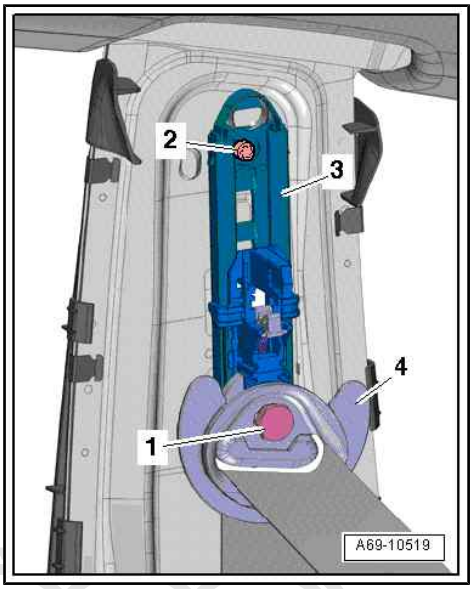



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
to the correctness of information in this docu

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.




**Note**

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*

– Engage belt height adjuster -3- in B-pillar.

– Tighten bolt -2-.

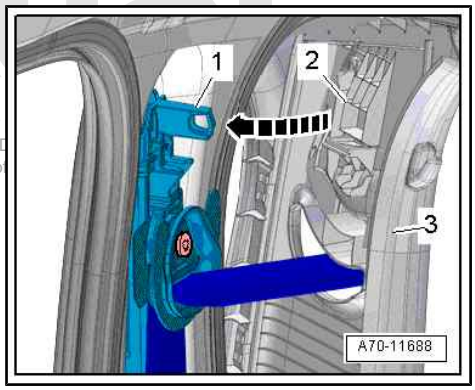
– Install guide fitting -4- and tighten bolt -1-.

**Note**

- *Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim (top).*
- *Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.*

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness o

**When using a new belt height adjuster:**

– After fitting B-pillar trim (top), press slide firmly upwards.

• This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

**All belt height adjusters (continued):**

– The following functions must be tested successfully:

• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the five possible positions (including top position).

• Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.

• After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.

If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 61

## 1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

**Removing**

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat

⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- and move wiring clear.
– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach belt buckle -1-.

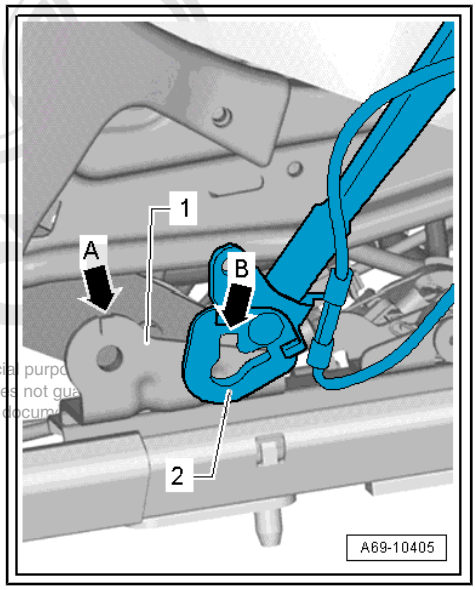
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew bolt for belt buckle.

**Installation position for belt buckle (front)**

– Position belt buckle -2- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- at seat frame -1-.




**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 63

## 1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

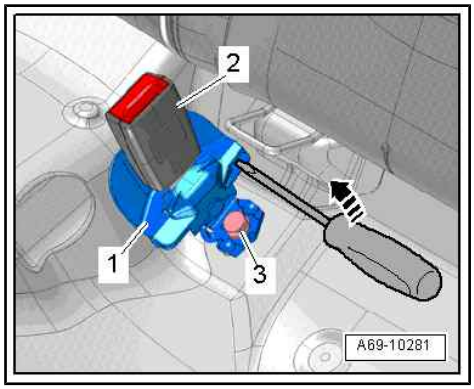
### Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– If fitted, release fastener for cover using a screwdriver -arrow-.

– Unfasten cover -1- for belt buckle and detach.

– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach belt buckle -2-.




### Installing

– Renew bolt for belt buckle.

– Insert bolt -3- in belt buckle -2-.

– Slide seal over bolt thread from below.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Align belt buckle with direction of travel when bolting on.

• Recesses at belt buckle attachment surface must be positioned over locating lugs on floor panel.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 64

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 2 Child seat anchors

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 75

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 76

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 77

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)”, page 77

## 2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)

**1 - Speed nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew if retainer is damaged

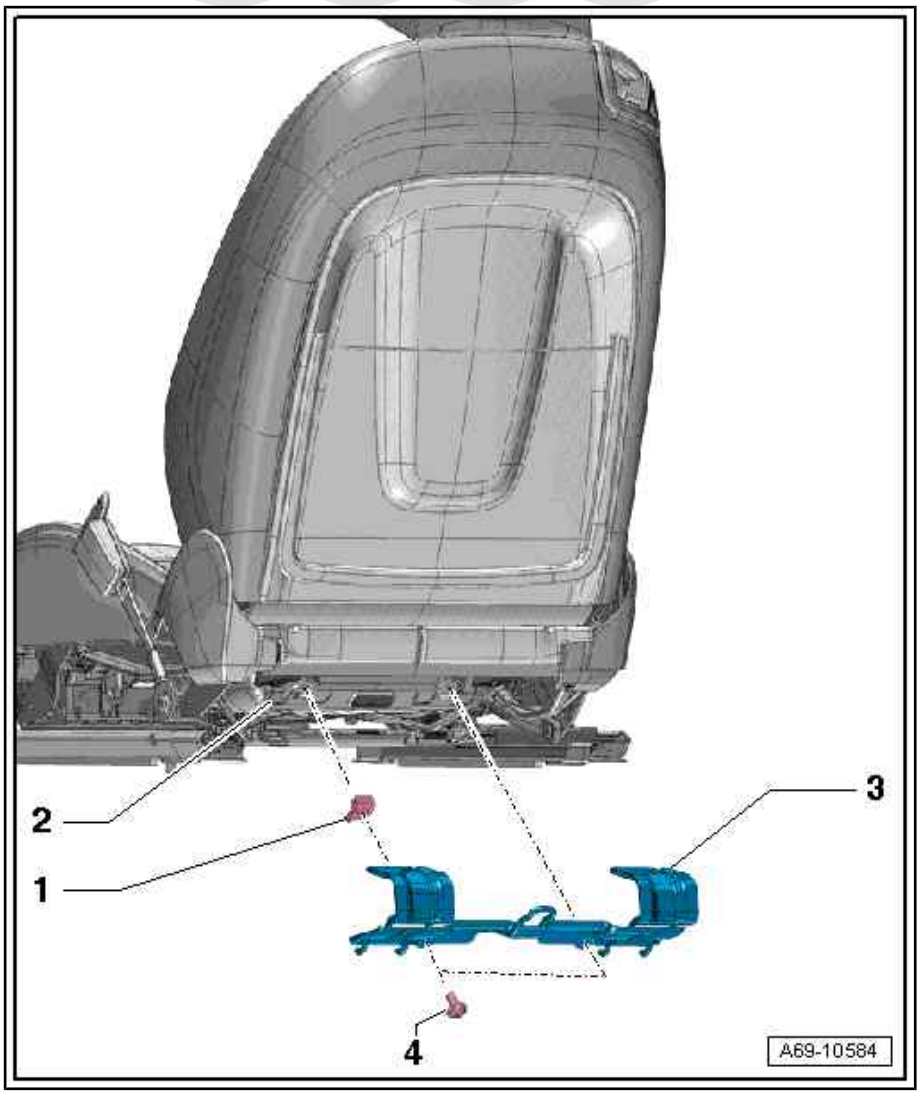
**2 - Seat pan**

**3 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**

- ❑ Front passenger’s seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew if retainer is damaged
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm



## 2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

**Note**

*The ISOFIX child seat anchoring points are welded to the floor of the vehicle.*

**1 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**

**2 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**

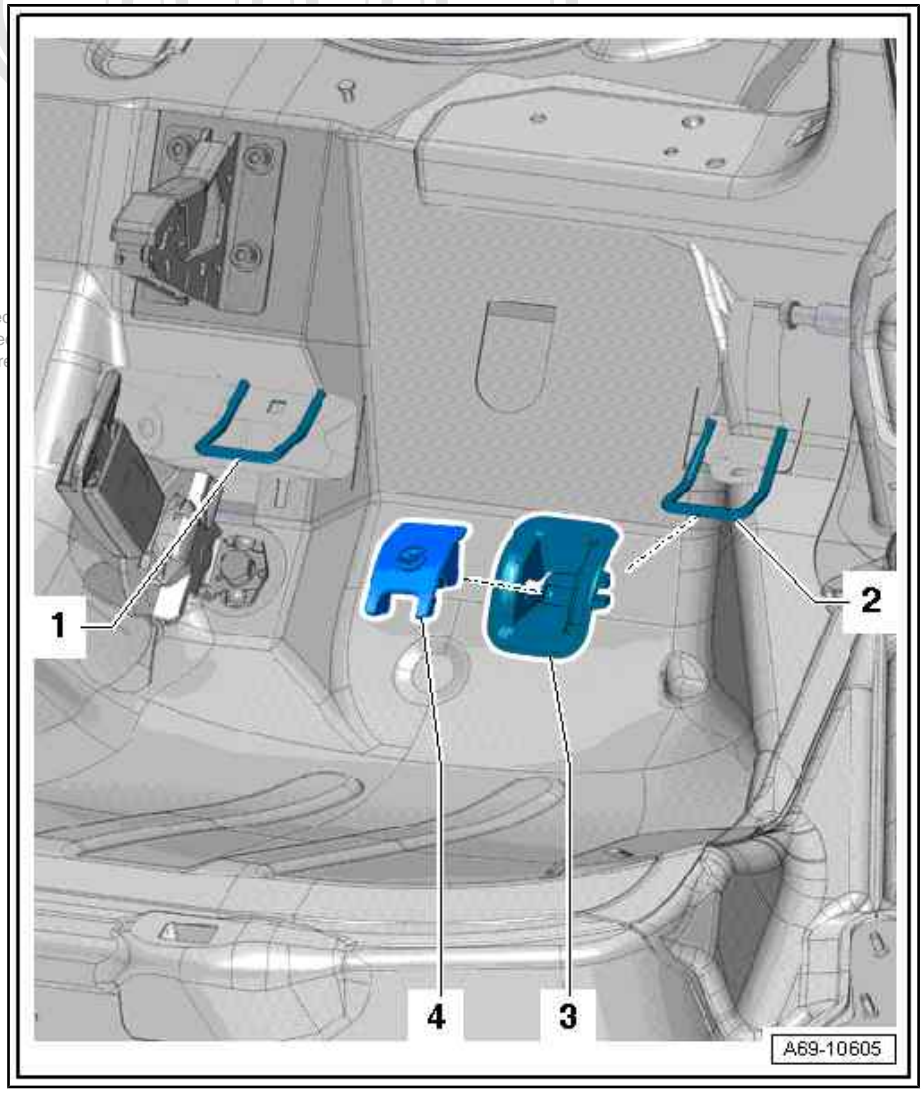
**3 - Guide**

- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

**4 - Cover**

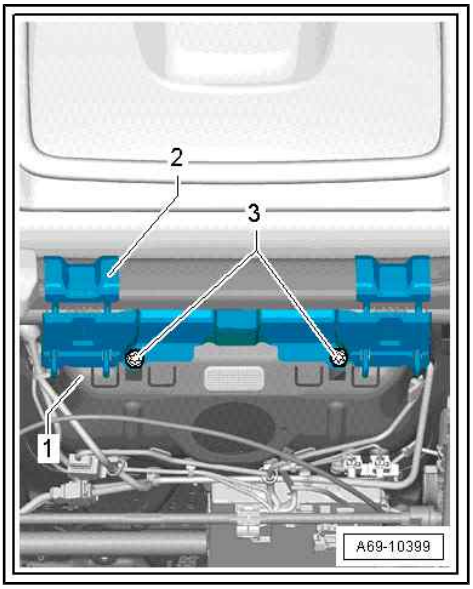
- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

Protected
permitte
with re



## 2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

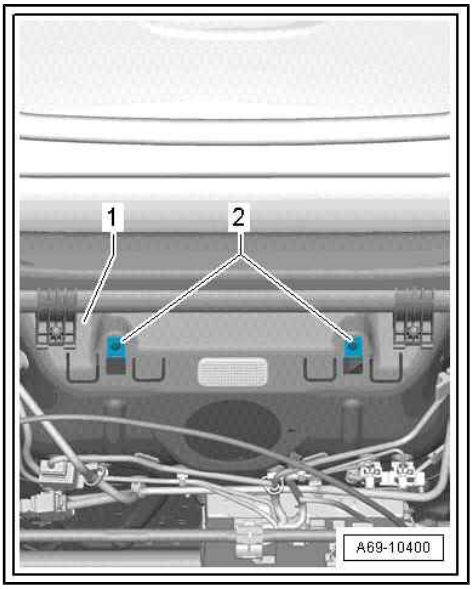
### Removing




– Move seat upwards and forwards as far as it will go.
– Remove bolts -3-.
– Detach ISOFIX child seat anchor -2- from seat pan -1- towards rear.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

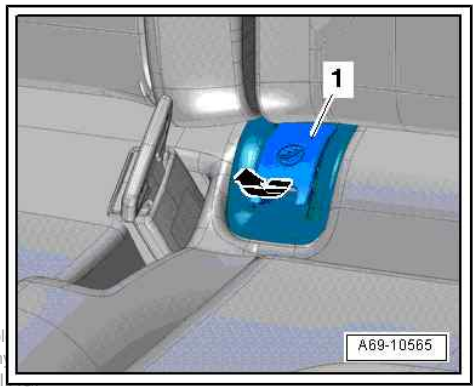



– Check bolts and speed nuts -2- on seat pan -1- and renew if damaged.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 75

## 2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

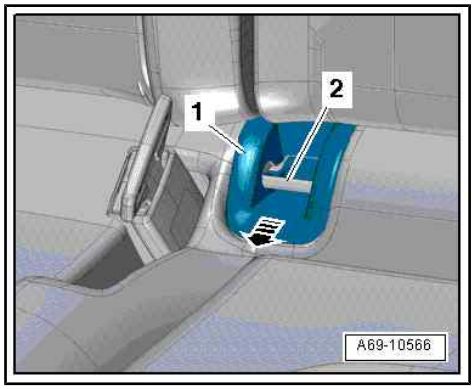
### Removing




– Unclip cover -1- for ISOFIX child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whol
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept an
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

– Press guide -1- for ISOFIX child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.
– Take guide for ISOFIX child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.



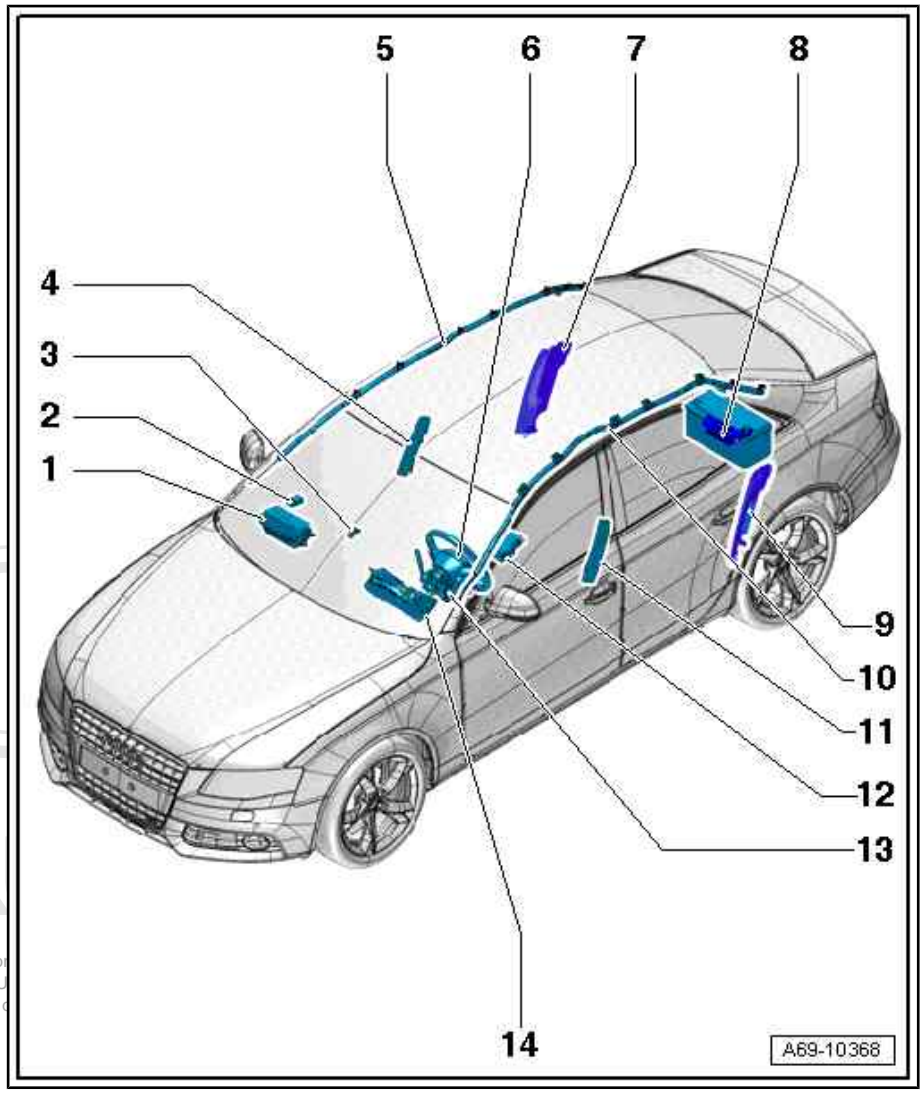

**Installing**

– Guide and cover for ISOFIX child seat anchor must be seated securely in anchor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 3 Airbag system

## 3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system




**1 - Airbag (front passenger side)**

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 101
- Can be disabled and activated via key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

**2 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-**

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

**3 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-**

- Fitted in same housing as hazard warning lights button - E229-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
With respect to the correctness

**4 - Side airbag (front passenger side)**

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 106

**5 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)**

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 116

**6 - Airbag (driver side)**

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 89

**7 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)**

- Depending on version
- With rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- Exploded view of folding rear seat backrest ⇒ page 107
- Disabling and activating ⇒ page 111

**8 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 85

**9 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)**

- Depending on version
- With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- Exploded view of folding rear seat backrest ⇒ page 107
- Disabling and activating ⇒ page 111

**10 - Curtain airbag (driver side)**

- With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 116

**11 - Side airbag (driver side)**

- With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 106

**12 - Airbag control unit - J234-**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 81

**13 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-**

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

**14 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-**

- Fitting location: in instrument cluster ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2-
- Cannot be renewed separately

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 4 Airbag control unit

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 81

⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ", page 81

## 4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

**1 - Airbag control unit - J234-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 81
- ❑ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

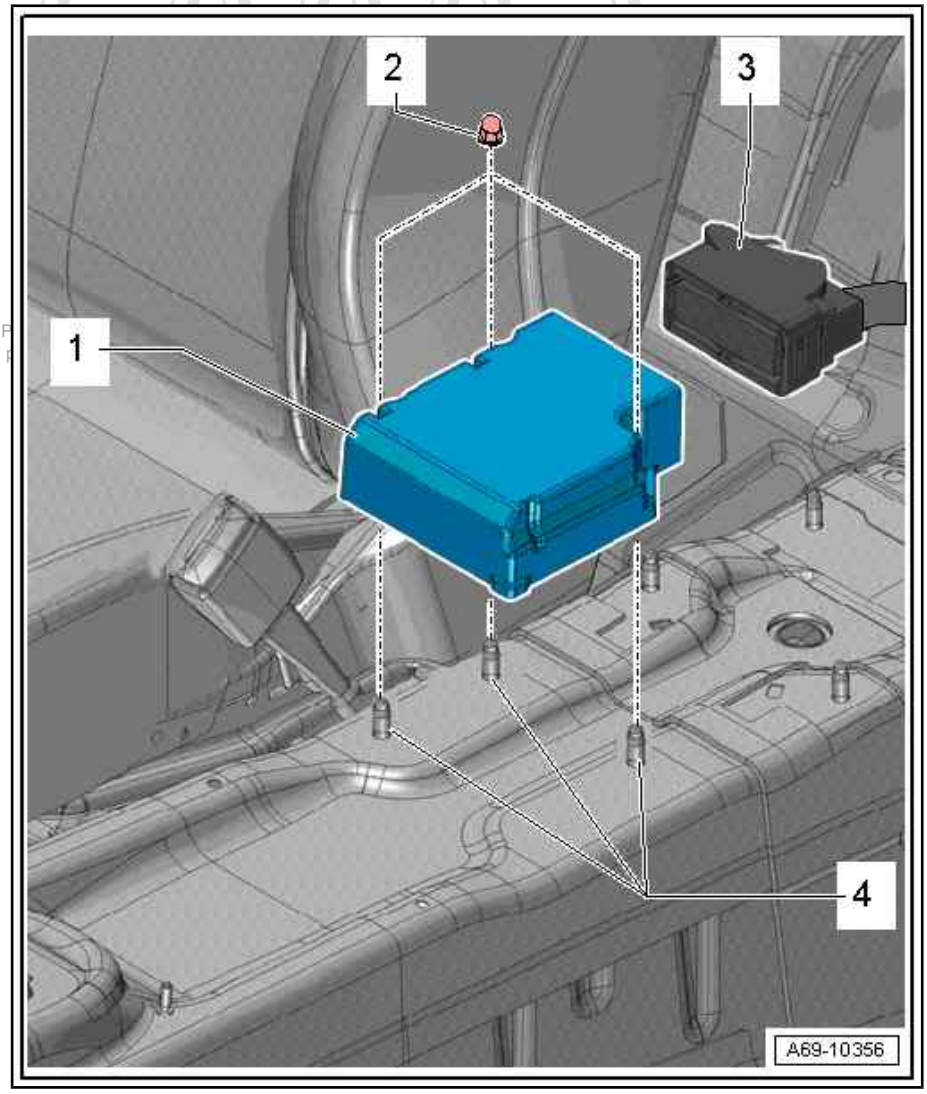
**2 - Nut**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

**3 - Electrical connector**

**4 - Threaded pins**

- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit




## 4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

**Removing**

**WARNING**

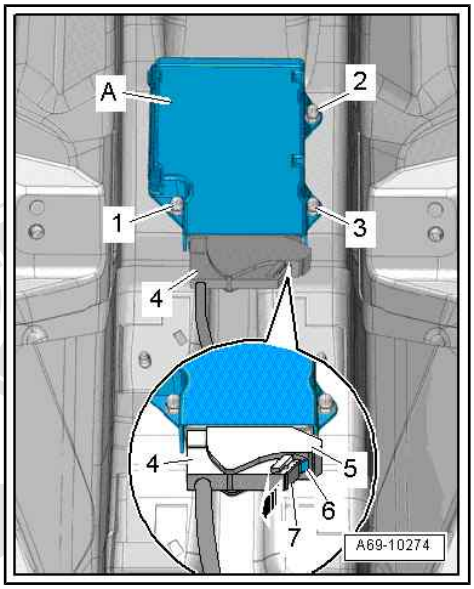
*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Switch on ignition.

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to S.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .
– Remove bracket for centre console ⇒ page 43 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .




**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Fold up floor covering above airbag control unit. If applicable, cut open floor covering along perforation.
– Slide locking element -7- in direction of -arrow- at connector.
– Press release button -6-, open catch -5- at connector and unplug connector -4-.
– Unscrew nuts -1 ... 3- and detach airbag control unit -A- from studs.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Installing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 2*** .
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *An earth connection for the airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing the housing to the body.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 81

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 85

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 85

## 5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

**1 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-
- ❑ Releasing and unplugging ⇒ page 88

**2 - Nuts**

- ❑ 15 Nm

**3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-**

- ❑ Only available together with -item 4-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

**4 - Fuse holder A - SA-**

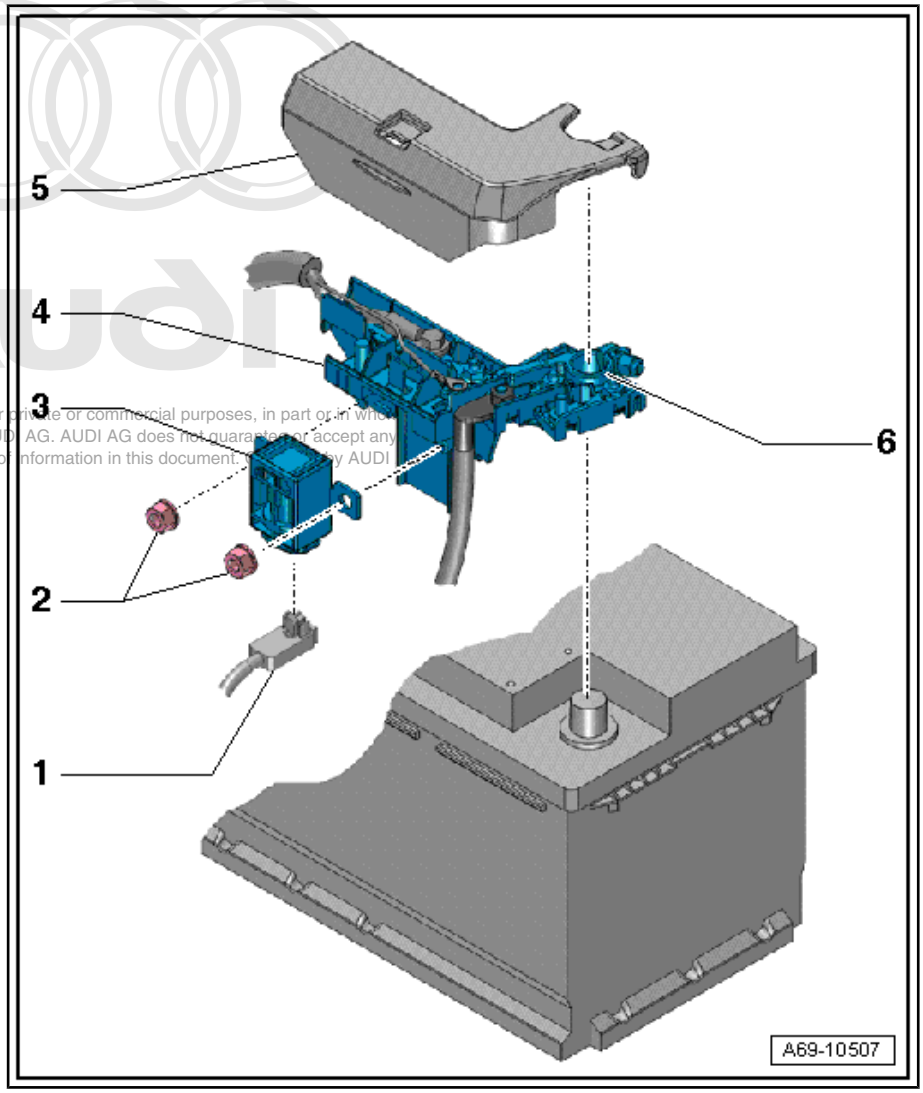
- ❑ Only available together with -item 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

**5 - Cover**

- ❑ For fuse holder A - SA-

**6 - Positive terminal**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

## Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

**Note**

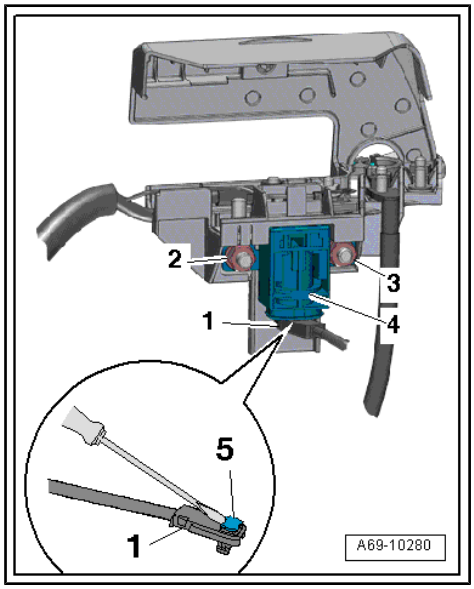
- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- is on after an accident, use the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether an entry has been made in the fault memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- (Fault »Resistance too high«). If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.*
- *The battery isolation igniter - N253- is only available as a replacement part together with the fuse holder A - SA- .*
- *If you want to renew the battery isolation igniter -N253- separately, it can be detached from the replacement part and installed on the fitted fuse holder A - SA- , as described in the following.*

– Switch on ignition.

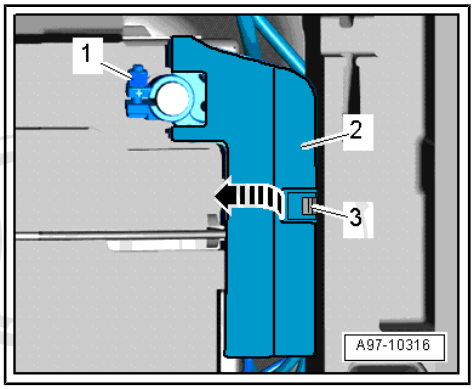
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Take out mounting for tool kit.

– Remove nuts -2- and -3-.



– Release retaining spring -3-.
– Slightly lift up flap -2- above fuse holder A - SA- -arrow- and at the same time take out battery isolation igniter.




**Note**

*Disregard -item 1-.*

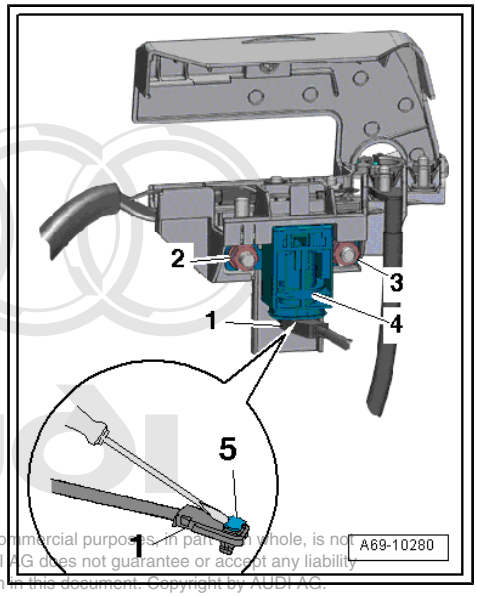
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.

– To do so, use a small screwdriver to release connector locking element -5- and unplug electrical connector -1-.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and eliminate any faults ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 85

# 6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 89

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters”, page 91

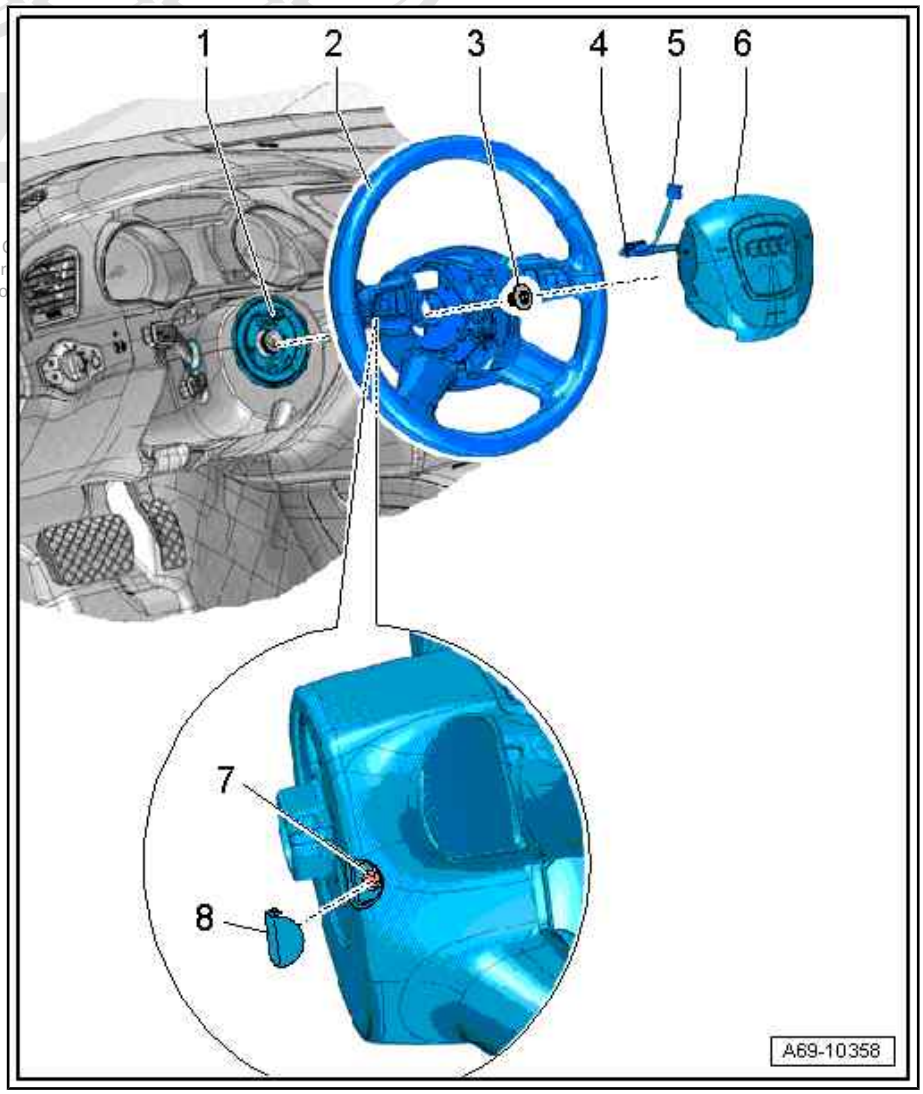
⇒ “6.3 Renewing connector at airbag”, page 98

## 6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1.1 Exploded view - airbag, bolted version (driver side)”, page 89

⇒ “6.1.2 Exploded view - airbag, push-fitted version (driver side)”, page 90

### 6.1.1 Exploded view - airbag, bolted version (driver side)




**1 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-**

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Sensors; Removing and installing steering angle sender - G85-

**2 - Steering wheel**

- ❑ Different versions available; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

**3 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

**4 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 98

**5 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For equipment version with multi-function steering wheel
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 98

**6 - Airbag (driver side)**

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

**7 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 7 Nm

**8 - Cap**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For bolt for airbag (driver side)

## 6.1.2 Exploded view - airbag, push-fitted version (driver side)

**1 - Retaining clip**

- ❑ To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)

**2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-**

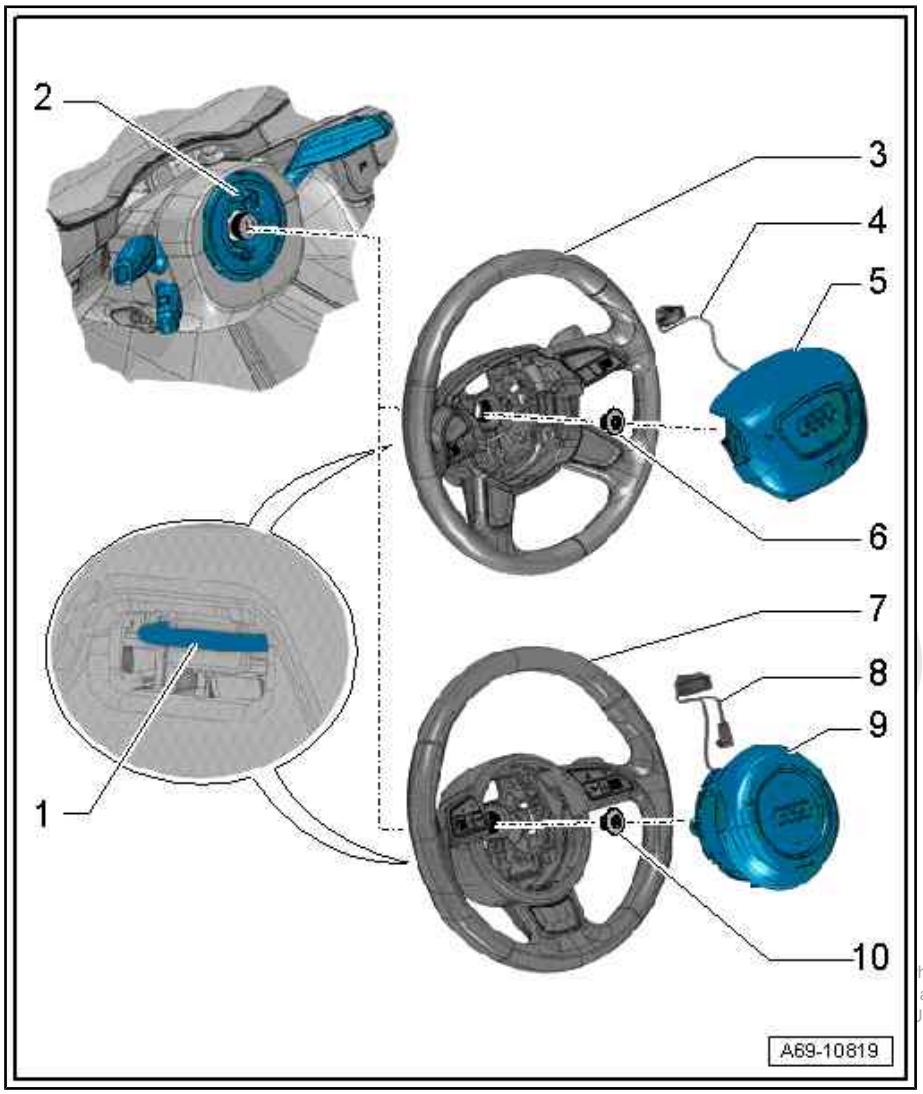
- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Sensors; Removing and installing steering angle sender - G85-

**3 - 4-spoke steering wheel**

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

**4 - Wiring harness**

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel




**5 - Airbag (driver side)**

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-

hole, is not
any liability
UDI AG.

**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

**7 - 3-spoke steering wheel**

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

**8 - Wiring harness**

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

**9 - Airbag (driver side)**

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250-

**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

**10 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

## 6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

⇒ "6.2.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - bolted airbag version", page 91

⇒ "6.2.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - push-fitted airbag version", page 94

## 6.2.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - bolted airbag version

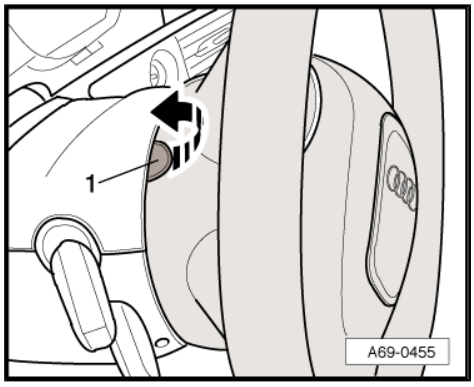
**Removing**

**WARNING**

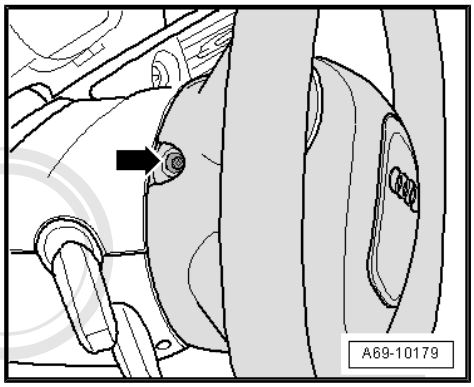
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Turn steering wheel so that cap -1- on back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).
– Mask trim (top) for steering column switch module in area of bolted connection of airbag using adhesive tape to protect surfaces from damage.
– Prise off cap -arrow-.

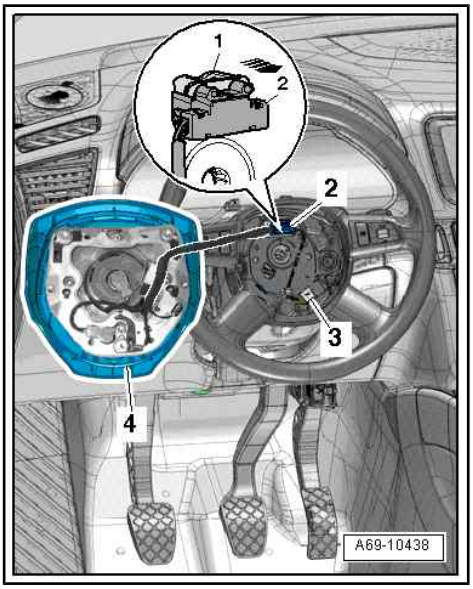



– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for airbag (driver side).
– Turn steering wheel by 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).




**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Pull airbag (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull connector locking element -1- as far as stop -arrow-. This will release electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.
– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Detach airbag -4-.

**WARNING**

*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

### Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

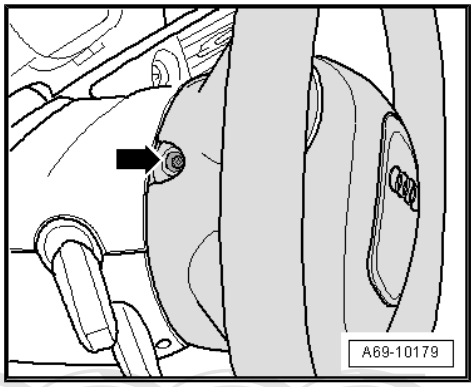
**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Screw in two bolts -arrow- for attaching airbag (driver side) approx. two turns.
– Operate horn three times to ensure an even gap width.
– Avoid further contact with airbag.
– Tighten bolts -arrow-.
– Press caps into openings in steering wheel.




**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit -J234- as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 89

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.2.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - push-fitted airbag version

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

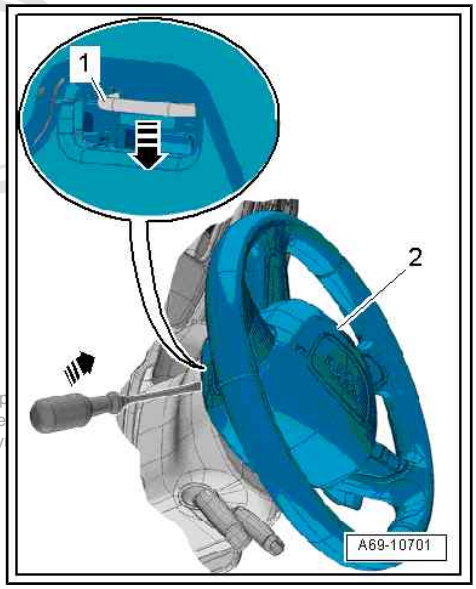
**Removing**

**WARNING**

♦ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 2 *.*
♦ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 4 *.*

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).
– Using Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm), release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrows-.




**Note**

*Using a flat screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.*

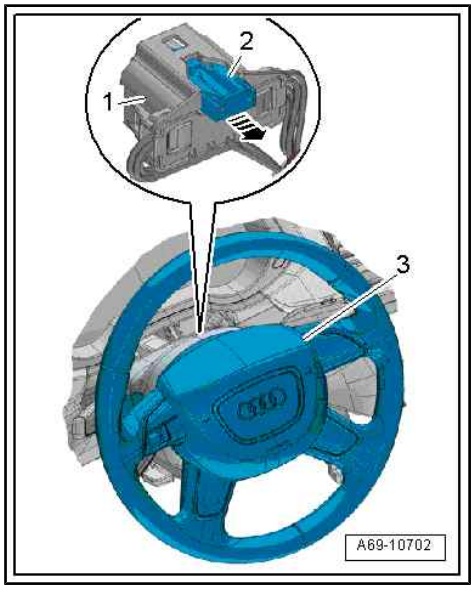
– Turn steering wheel by 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*




– Pull airbag (driver side) -3- slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector.

**WARNING**

*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

### Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.** ⇒ page 89

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

⇒ "6.3.1 Renewing connector at airbag (bolted version)", page 98

⇒ "6.3.2 Renewing connector at airbag (push-fitted version)", page 99

## 6.3.1 Renewing connector at airbag (bolted version)

**Removing**

**WARNING**

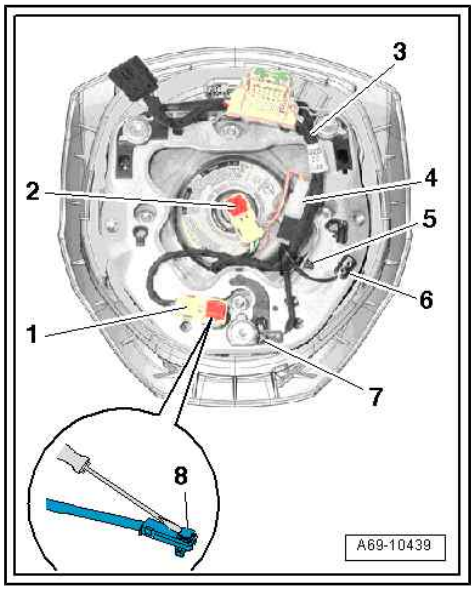
*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 91 .

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug electrical connectors -4, 6, 7-.
– Use a small screwdriver to release connector locking element -8- and unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for airbag igniter on driver side - N95- and for airbag igniter 2 on driver side - N250- .
– Disengage electrical wire -3- at retainer -5- and detach.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Reproduction by copying or saving for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

## 6.3.2 Renewing connector at airbag (push-fitted version)

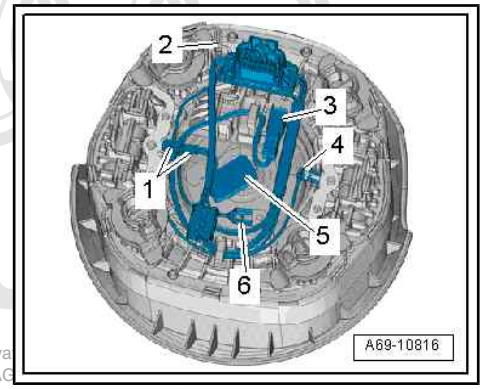
**Removing**

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 91 .

**Equipment version with 3-spoke steering wheel:**

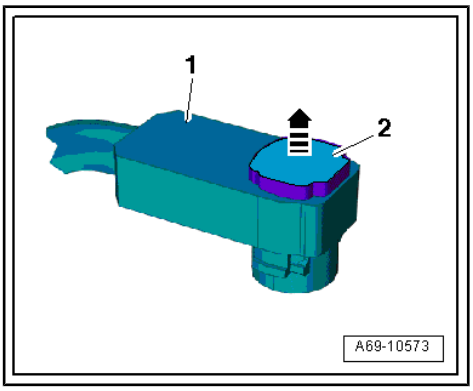
> **WARNING**
>
> *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*




– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 4 and 6-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -3- for -N250- and -5- for -N95- .

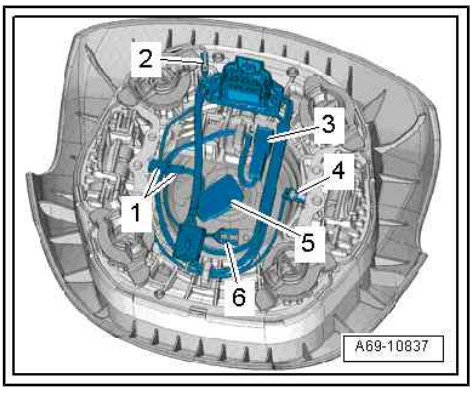
Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.



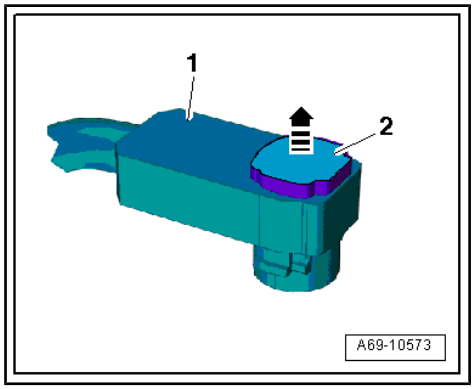

**Equipment version with 4-spoke steering wheel:**

> **WARNING**
>
> *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*




– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 4 and 6-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -3- for -N250- and -5- for -N95- .

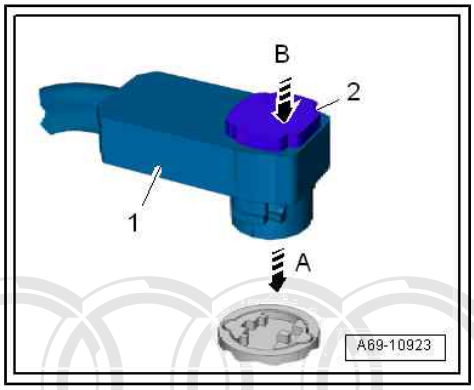
– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.




## Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*




– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ page 89**

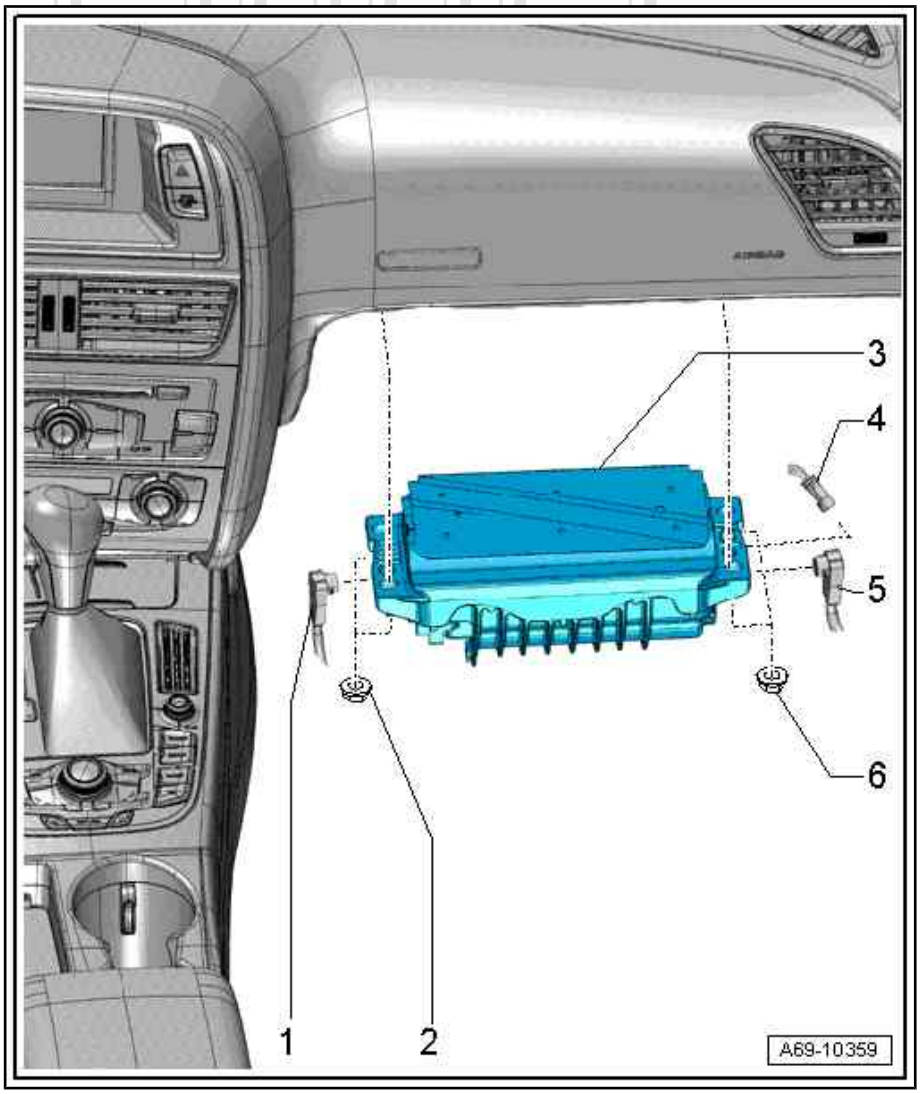
# 7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)", page 101

⇒ "7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters", page 102

⇒ "7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side", page 104

## 7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)




**1 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**2 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

**3 - Airbag (front passenger side)**

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ❑ With airbag igniter 2 for front passenger side - N132- (depending on equipment version) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

*For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102

**4 - Earth cable**

**5 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

**6 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

## 7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

**Note**

*From week 45/2010 onwards, the airbag igniter 2 is discontinued for all RoW vehicles (except USA vehicles)*

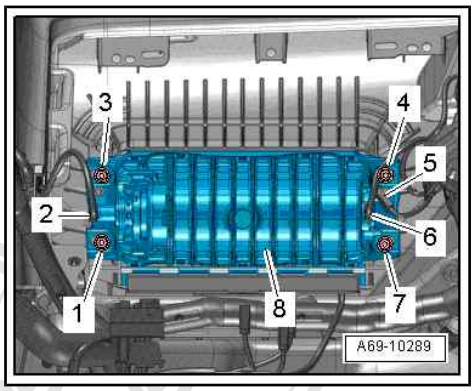
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

**WARNING**

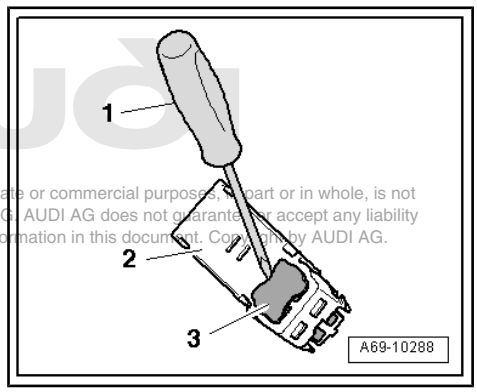
***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***




– Unplug earth connector -5-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -2- for airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132- and -6- for airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- .

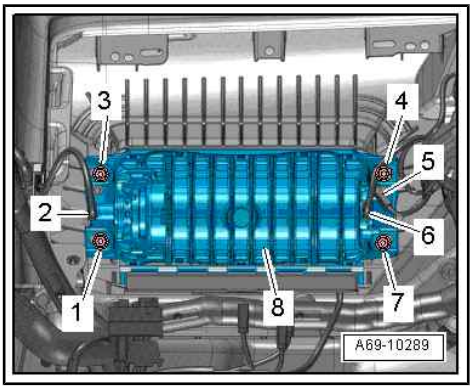
– To do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to release connector locking element -3- and unplug electrical connector -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove nuts -1, 3, 4, 7-.

– Take out airbag (front passenger side) -8- downwards.




**WARNING**

***Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.***

### Installing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Renew dash panel after airbag triggering ⇒ page 164 .

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 101**

## 7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side

### Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Switch on ignition.

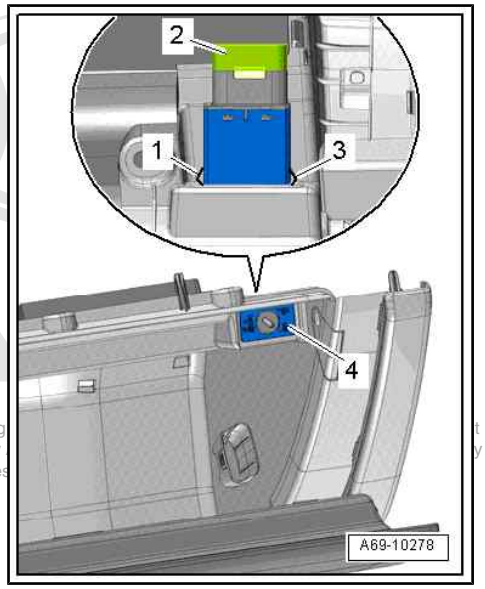
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

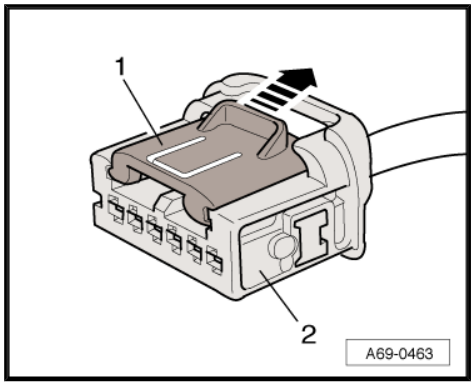
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



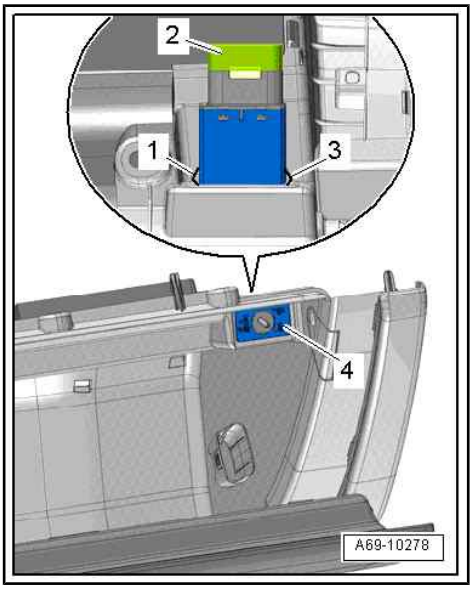

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctnes

– To do so, press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



– Release retaining springs -1- and -3- and press key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -4- out of housing for key operated switch.




### Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- engages audibly in housing.

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

# 8 Side airbags

⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)”, page 106

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 107

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter”, page 107

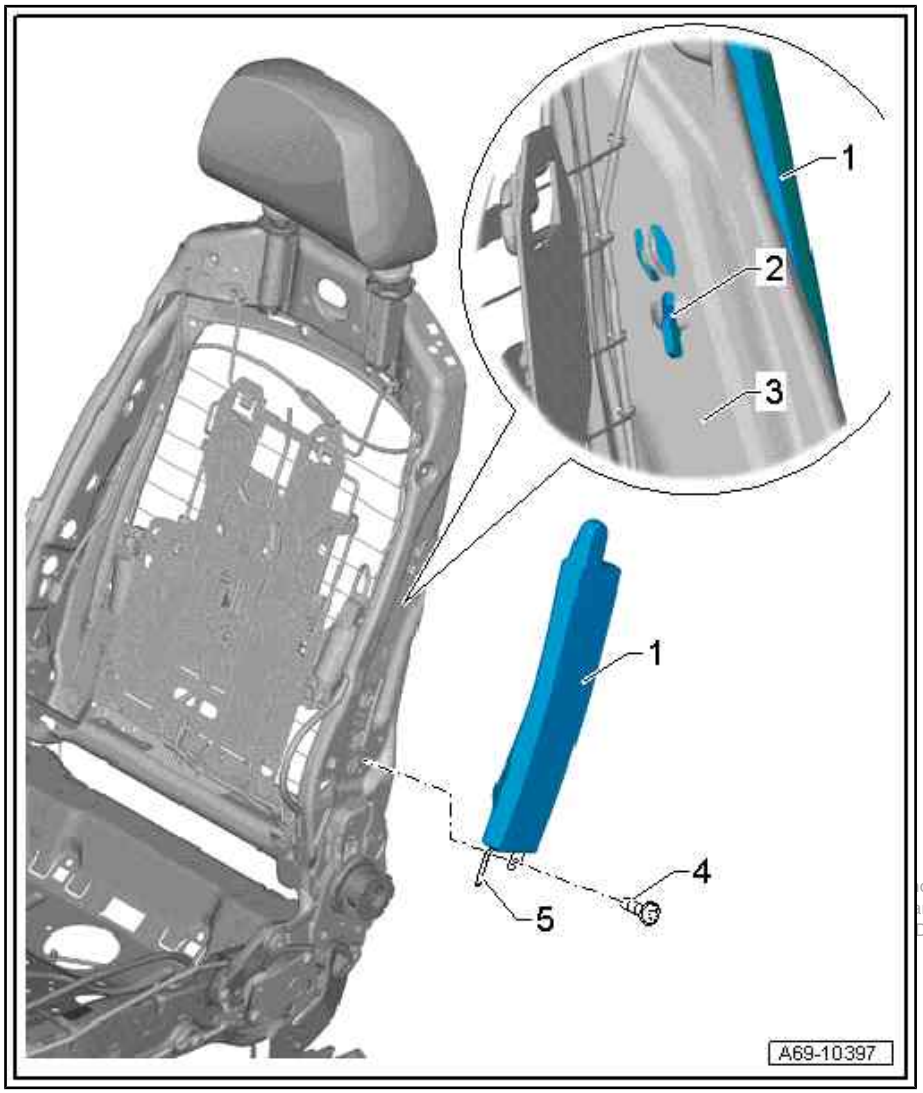
⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter”, page 109

⇒ “8.5 Deactivating side airbag (rear)”, page 111

⇒ “8.6 Activating side airbag (rear)”, page 113

⇒ “8.7 Sticker for deactivated side airbag (rear)”, page 115

## 8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)




**1 - Side airbag (front)**

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107
- ❑ Inserted in pouch (pouch not shown)
- ❑ Pouch stitched to cover

**2 - Hook**

- ❑ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

**3 - Outer backrest frame**

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm

**5 - Wiring harness**

- ❑ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

ole, is not
ny liability
DI AG.

## 8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

**1 - Bolt**

- ❑ 9 Nm (for side padding with side airbag)
- ❑ 3 Nm (for side padding without side airbag)

**2 - Connector**

- ❑ For side airbag

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
no liability for correctness of information

**3 - Side airbag (rear)**

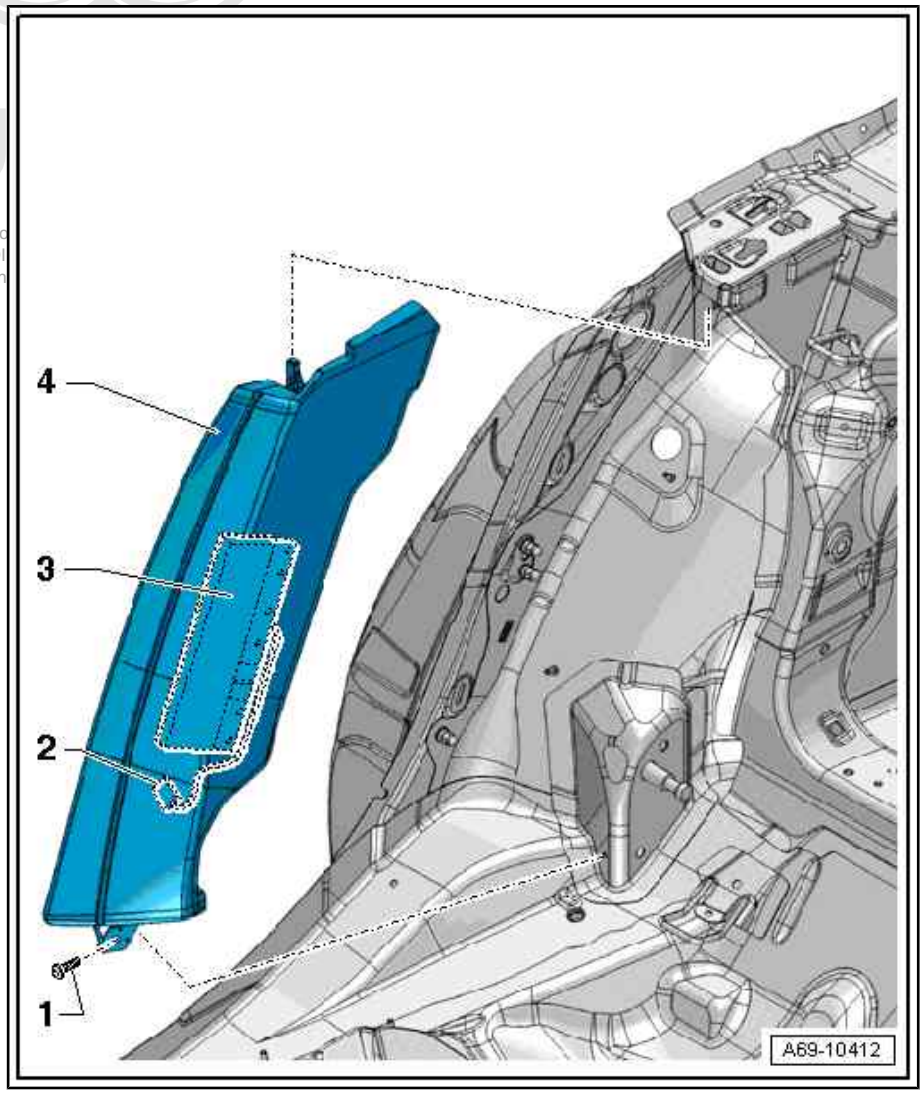
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109

**4 - Side padding**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400




## 8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

**Removing**

> **WARNING**
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
> - *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 5 .*
> - *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Remove front seat:

♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat
  ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
  ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

- Two-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

- One-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

– Detach backrest padding far enough to gain access to bolt -7- for side airbag ⇒ page 428 . To do so, pull cover -2- with padding -3- as far forwards as possible in area of side airbag.

– Remove bolt -7-.

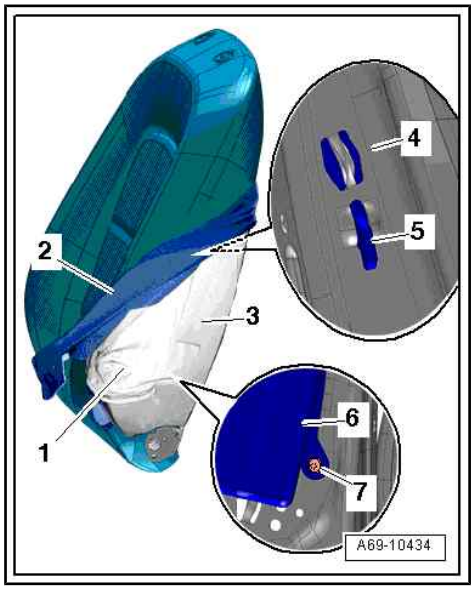
**Equipment version with seat with manual adjustment:**

– Disengage hook -5- of side airbag -6- from outer backrest frame -4- and take out of pouch -1- (sewn into cover) downwards, guiding out wiring harness for side airbag.

**Equipment version with seat with electric adjustment:**

– Disengage hook -5- of side airbag -6- from outer backrest frame -4- and leave in pouch -1- (sewn into cover).

– Detach cover with padding from backrest ⇒ page 428 and take out side airbag.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

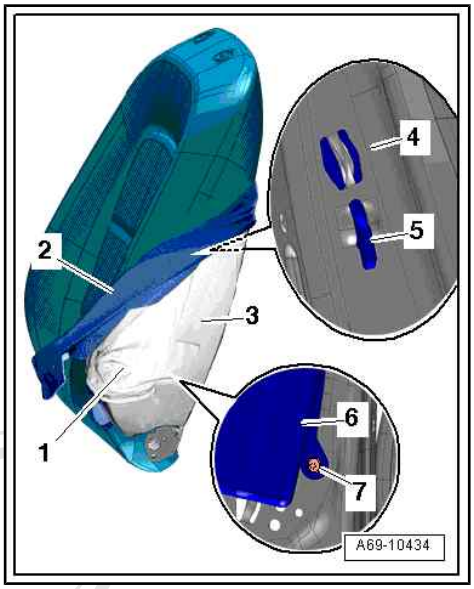
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Always clean threaded hole for bolt -7-, using e.g. a thread tap.
– Always renew bolt after removal.
– Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .




**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 106

## 8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Audi
Reproduction or distribution, as well as any commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

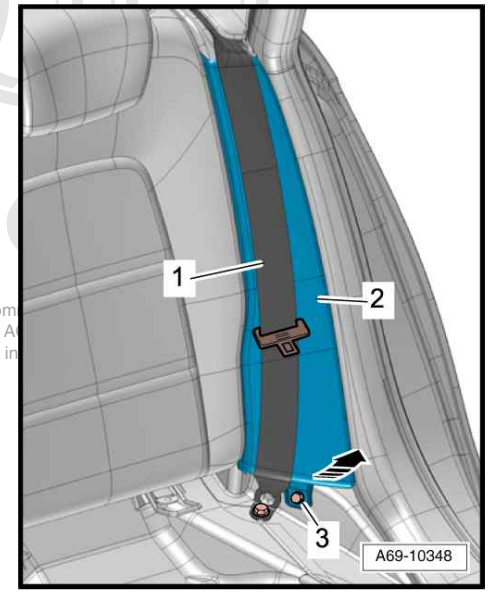
### Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ⇒ page 2 .
- ***Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags*** ⇒ page 5 .
- ***Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ⇒ page 4 .

– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove bolt -3-.
– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Hold belt -1- to one side and pull side airbag -2- (bottom) forwards -arrow-.
– Pull side airbag downwards and take out of belt guide.

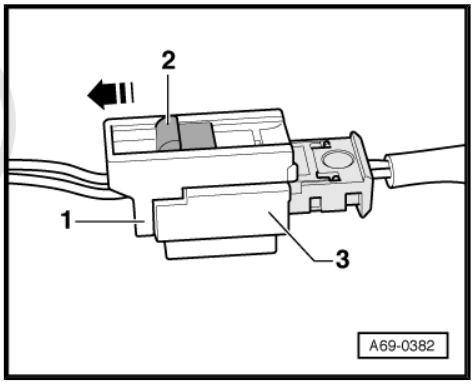



**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copyright by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
www.erepair.audi.de Powered by Volkswagen Information in

– Pull side airbag out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector for side airbag.
– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as stop -arrow-. This will release electrical connectors -1- and -3- which can then be unplugged.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Engage side airbag first in top of belt guide.

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 107

## 8.5 Deactivating side airbag (rear)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

## Procedure

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 5 .*

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

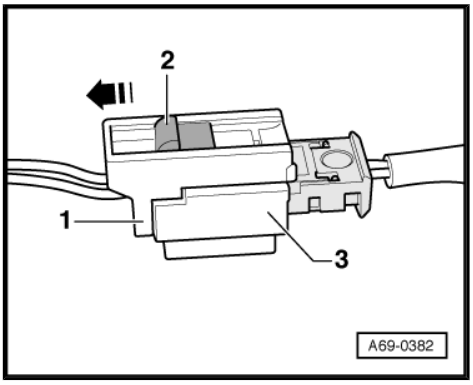
**Note**

- *The rear side airbags (left and right) can be deactivated individually.*
- *There is one connector on each side beneath the seat bench (left and right).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector for side airbag (rear).

– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as stop -arrow-. This will release electrical connectors -1- and -3- which can then be unplugged.




– Install seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Perform programs for deactivating side airbags (rear) in “Guided Functions” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The appropriate adaption program has to be carried out.

– Fill in the registration card and return the card to the importer or regional sales centre for registration. Stick sheet 3 of the registration card in the vehicle wallet.

– Attach side airbag deactivation stickers to door frame (rear) ⇒ page 115 .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 8.6 Activating side airbag (rear)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Procedure**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 5 .***
- ***Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***

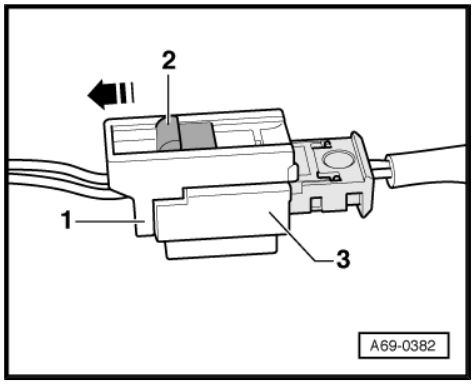
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***




**Note**

- *The rear side airbags (left and right) can be activated individually.*
- *There is one connector on each side beneath the seat bench (left and right).*

– Plug in connector -1- for side airbag.

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Install seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove stickers indicating that side airbags have been deactivated from B-pillar trim panels (top).

– Remove any adhesive left on door frame with a suitable cleaning fluid.

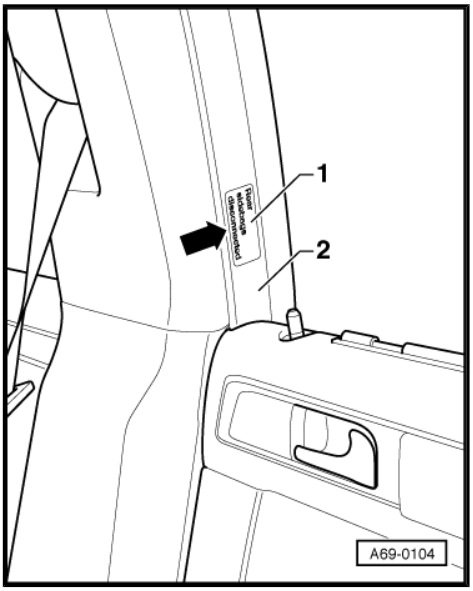
– Perform programs for activating side airbags (rear) in “Guided Functions” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The appropriate adaption program has to be carried out.

– Fill in the registration card and return the card to the importer or regional sales centre for registration. Remove sheet 3 of the registration card from the vehicle wallet.

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 8.7 Sticker for deactivated side airbag (rear)




**Procedure**

– Attach stickers -1- indicating side airbag deactivation to rear of B-pillar trim panels (left and right) -2- -arrow-.

– Any additional stickers required in accordance with national regulations should be attached above the sticker shown in the illustration.

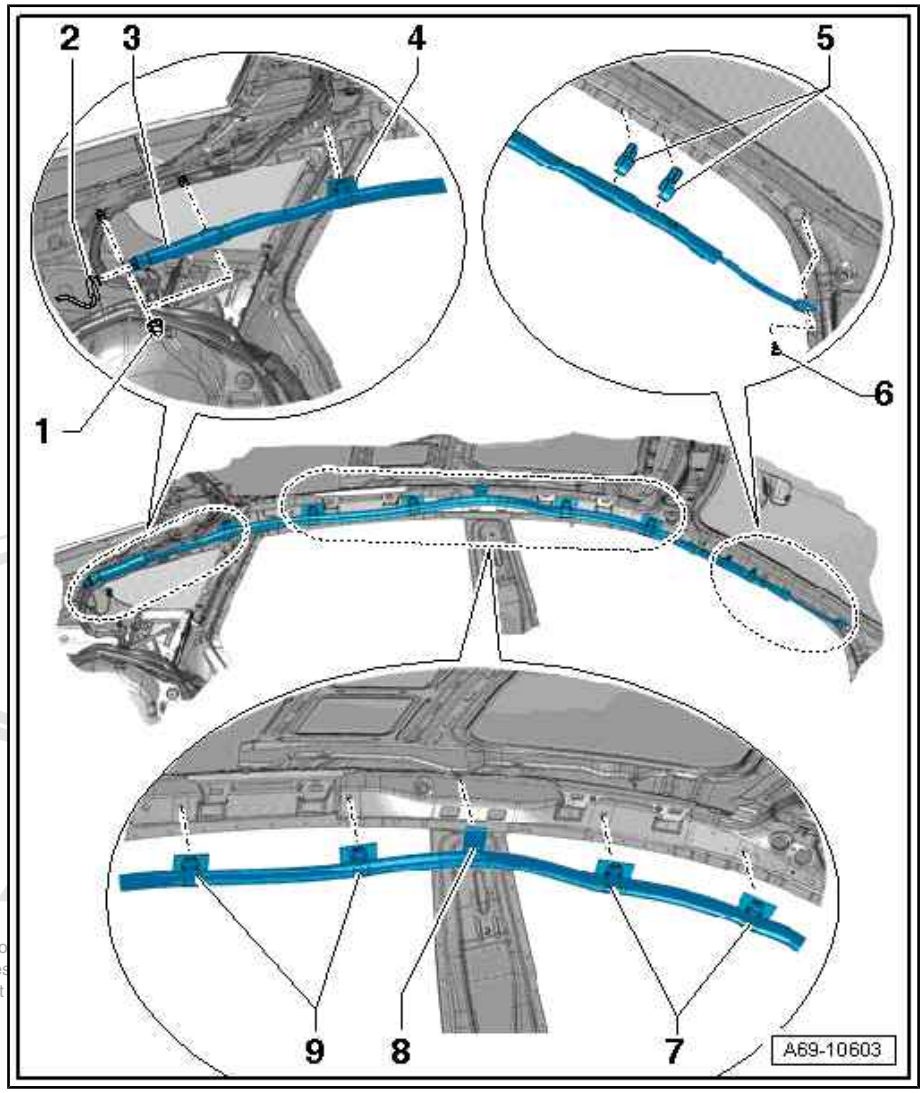
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 9 Curtain airbags

⇒ "9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 116

⇒ "9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter", page 117

## 9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag




**1 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**2 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ For driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251- / front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 118

**3 - Curtain airbag**

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

**4 - Retaining clip**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118

permitted unles
with respect

**5 - Clips**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

**7 - Retaining clips**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118

**8 - Tab**

- ❑ Attach to hook at B-pillar

**9 - Retaining clips**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118

## 9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

### Removing

– Move seats forwards and fold backrests to 45° position.

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

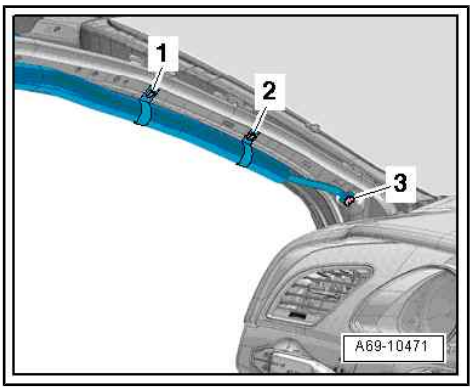
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 216 .

– Unscrew bolt -3- for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

– Pull curtain airbag downwards out of clips -1- and -2-.

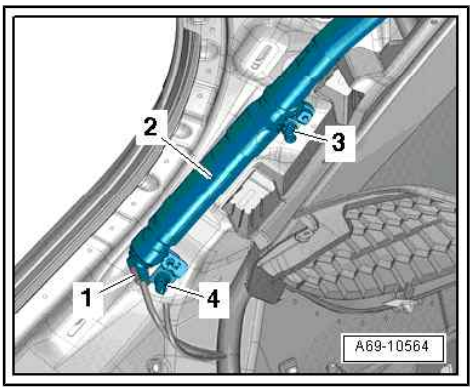



**WARNING**

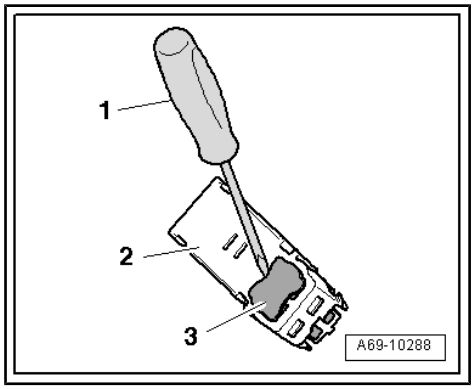
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

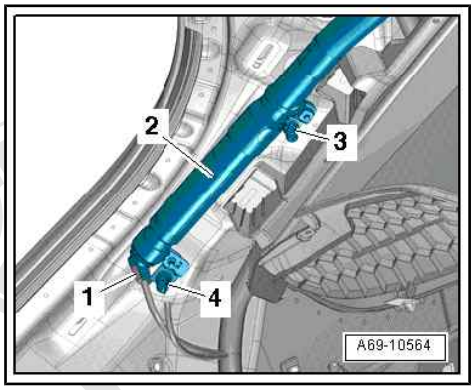
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



– To do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to release connector locking element -3- and detach electrical connector -2- from gas generator.

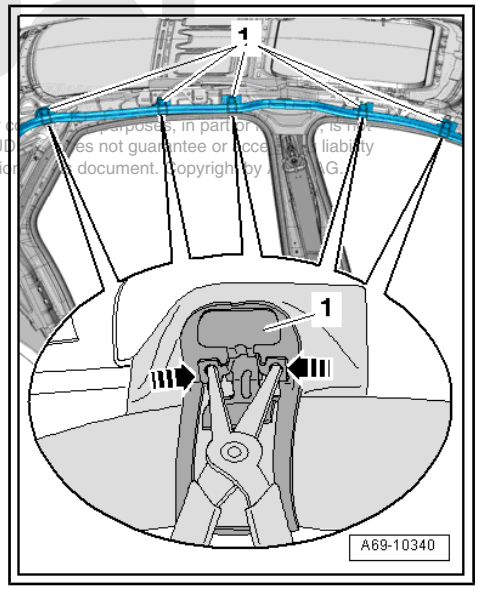



– Unscrew cap nuts -3- and -4-.




– Disengage clips -1- of retaining tabs for curtain airbag from body by squeezing catches with long-nose pliers or O-ring pliers -arrows-.

– Disengage curtain airbag from body and take it out of vehicle.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 2*** ***.***
- ***Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

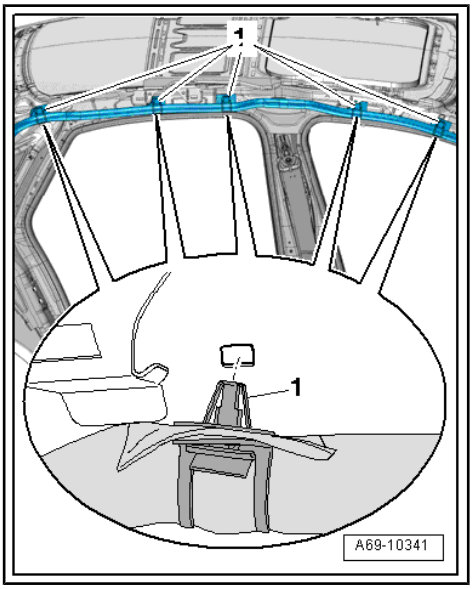
**Note**

- *Renew self-locking nuts and bolts when performing assembly work.*
- *Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap.*

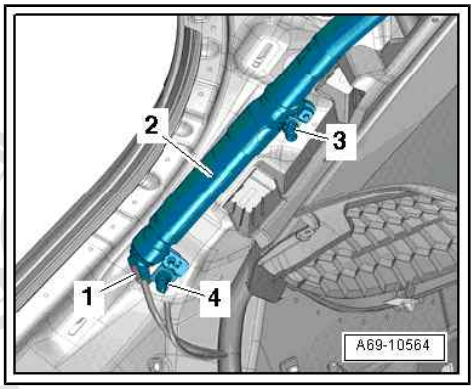
**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Engage clips -1- of retaining tabs for curtain airbag into body one after the other, working from rear to front.
– Attach lug ⇒ Item 8 (page 116) to hook at B-pillar.

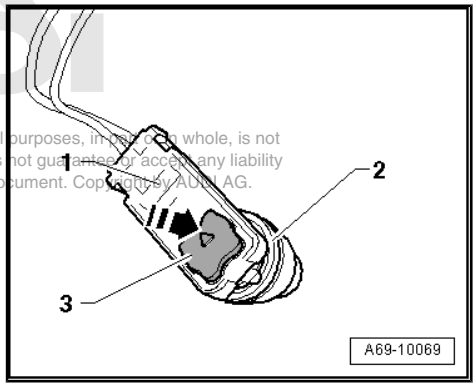



– Engage gas generator -2- at stud and hand-tighten cap nuts -3- and -4-.
– Tighten cap nuts -3- and -4-.
– Plug in electrical connector -1-.




– To do so, attach connector -1- to curtain airbag igniter -2-.
– Press in connector locking element -3- in direction of -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter whilst at the same time locking it.

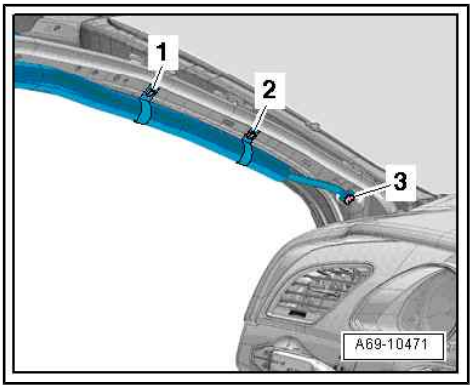
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



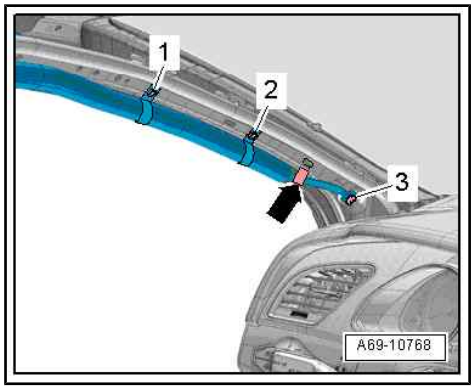

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- *Renew clips for curtain airbag.*

– Secure curtain airbag with clips -1- and -2-.
– Tighten bolt -3- for curtain airbag at A-pillar.



– Secure curtain airbag tether to A-pillar with adhesive tape -arrow-, as shown in illustration. Adhesive tape ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
– Make sure that slot for assembly of A-pillar trim is not covered.
– Check that black line is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.
– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 216 .




**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 116

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 10 Crash sensors for airbags

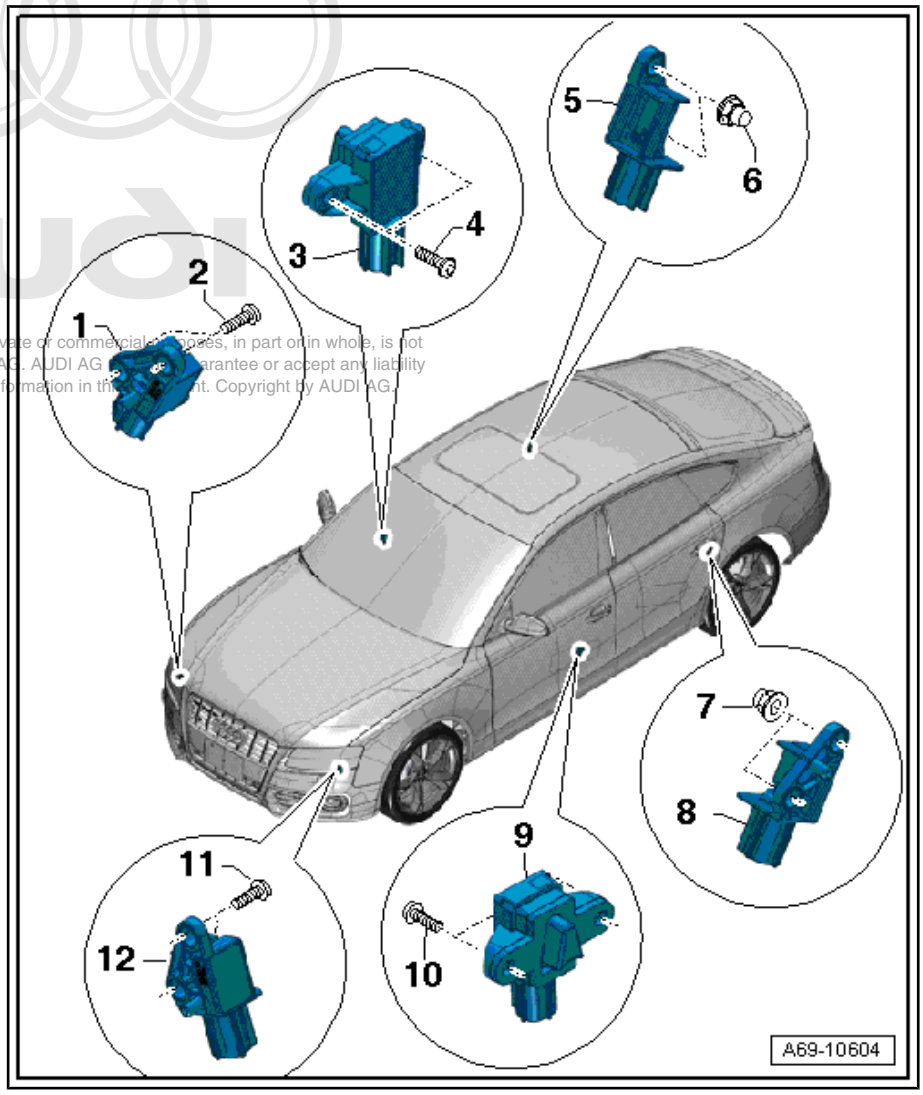
⇒ “10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 121

⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 ”, page 122

⇒ “10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 124

⇒ “10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 ”, page 126

## 10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-**

- ❑ Fitting location: On retainer for headlight housing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

**2 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-**

- ❑ Fitting location: In door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

**5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-**

- ❑ Fitting location: On inside of wheel housing behind side padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

**6 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**7 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**8 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-**

- ❑ Fitting location: On inside of wheel housing behind side padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

**9 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-**

- ❑ Fitting location: In door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

**10 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

**11 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**12 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-**

- ❑ Fitting location: On retainer for headlight housing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

## 10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

**WARNING**

***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***

***Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.***

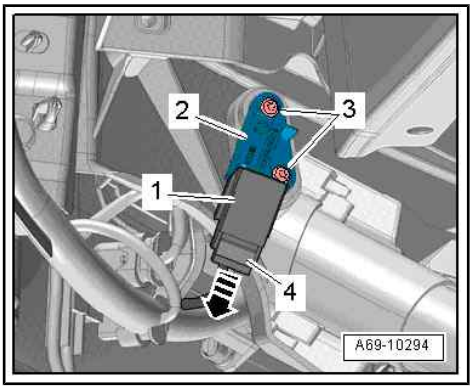
- ***On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically if it needs to.***
- ***Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch off ignition, if required switch on ignition again).***

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) .




**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Release catch -4- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -3- and detach crash sensor for airbag (front) -2-.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 121

## 10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing

**WARNING**

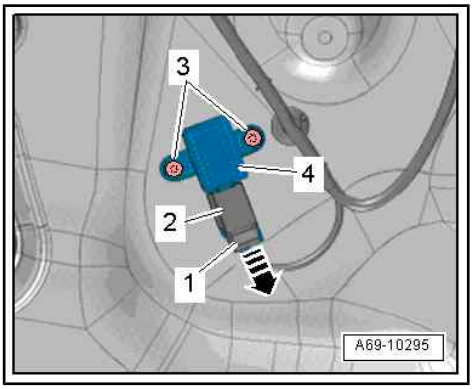
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6 .*

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .




**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Release catch -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -3- and detach crash sensor -4- for side airbag.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following.

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.*
- *The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Tightening torque ⇒ page 121

## 10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) -G256- / -G257-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

**WARNING**

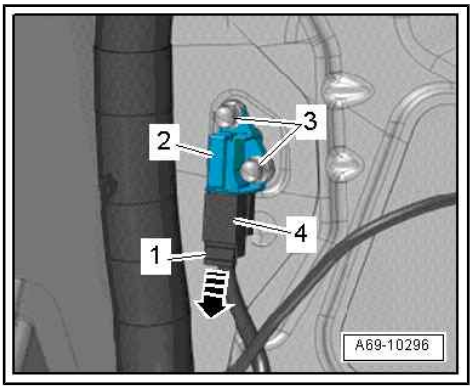
*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 109 .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 400 .

**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***




– Release catch -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Unscrew nuts -3- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag (rear).

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Administered by Audi Service Training. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 121**

# 11 Seat position sensor

⇒ “11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor”, page 128

⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 128

## 11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

**Note**

*The seat position sensor is similar on all seat versions.*

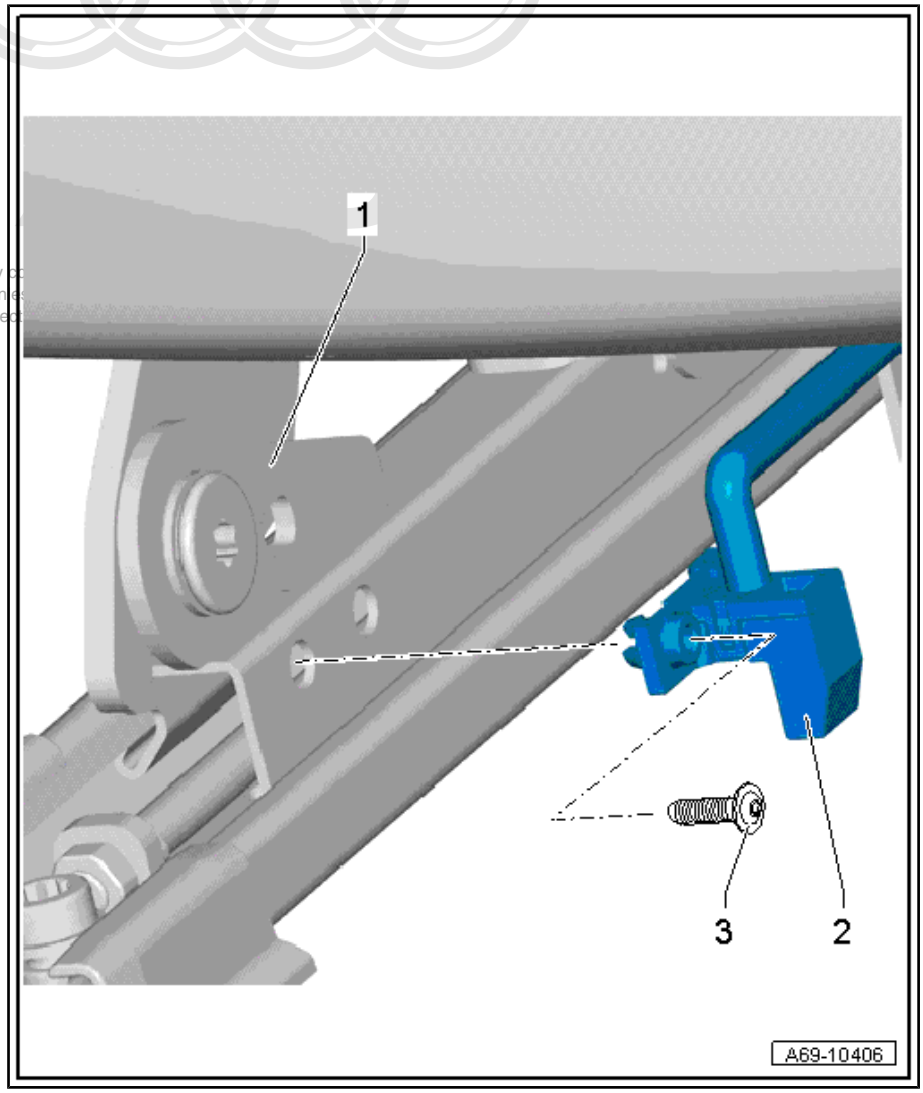
**1 - Lower seat pan frame**

**2 - Seat position sensor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Removing and installing - equipment version with seat occupied sensor for belt-fastened recognition ⇒ page 128

**3 - Bolt**

- ❑ 0.3 Nm




## 11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and 10-pin connector (black). The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ♦ Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling (driver seat)

- Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling (front passenger seat)
- Wire with connector for coupling for seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

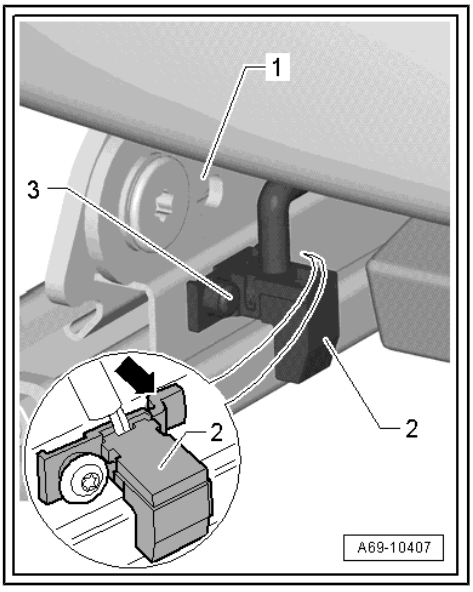
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Disengage hook -arrow- of seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -1-.

– Open up corrugated tube and remove wire with connector for belt buckle (10-pin):

- Connector point connectors ⇒ page 289
- Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat ⇒ page 289



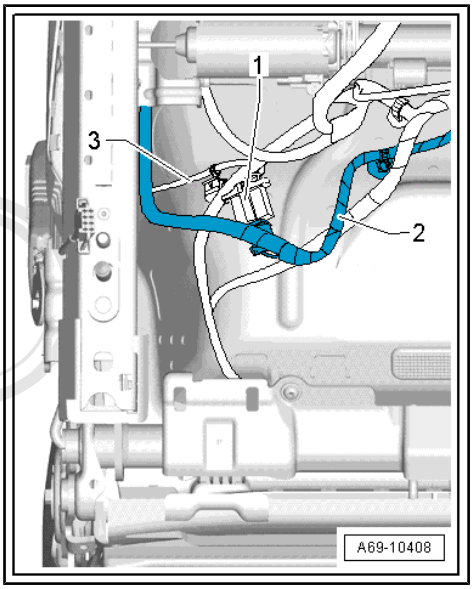
**Driver seat:**

– Unfasten cable ties / cable clips as far as electrical connector -1-.

– Unplug electrical connector.

2 - Wiring to 10-pin connector (black) and driver side seat position sensor - G553-

3 - Wiring to belt buckle




**Note**

*Leave connector -1- with wire and cable clip on upper seat pan frame.*

– Detach seat position sensor with wires from lower seat pan frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Front passenger seat:**

– Unfasten cable ties / cable clips as far as electrical connectors -2- and -6-.

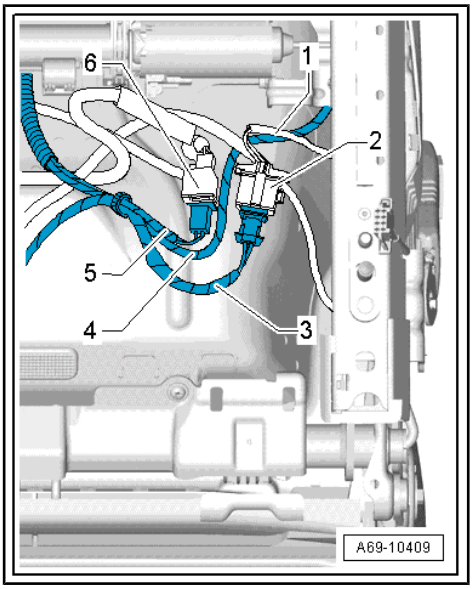
– Unplug electrical connectors.

1 - Wiring to belt buckle

3 - Wiring to 10-pin connector (black) and belt buckle

4 - Wiring to 10-pin connector (black) and front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

5 - Wiring to seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-




**Note**

*Leave connectors -2- and -6- with wires and wiring clips on upper seat pan frame.*

– Detach seat position sensor with wires from lower seat pan frame.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Tightening torque ⇒ page 128

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 12 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ “12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 ”, page 133

## 12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

**Note**

*The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- (only for convenience seat)

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front passenger's seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Detach seat cover from padding (seat pan) ⇒ page 436 .

**Note**

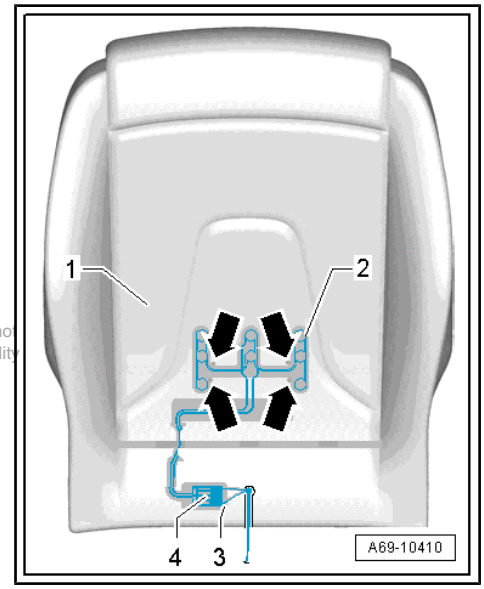
*Detach padding from backrest just far enough to gain access to seat occupied sensor.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Standard seat and sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment):**

– Unplug connector for seat occupied sensor.

– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -2- with printed circuit -4- from seat padding -1-.



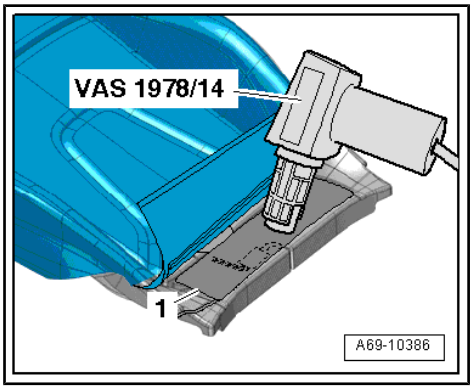

**Note**

*Disregard -arrows-.*

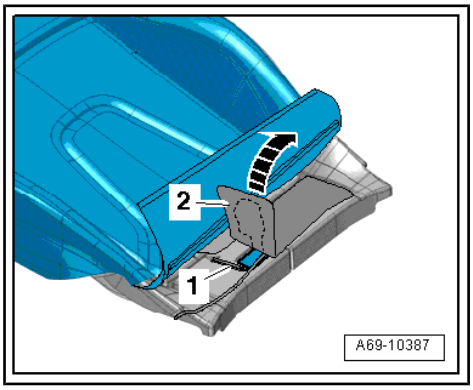
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Convenience seat:**

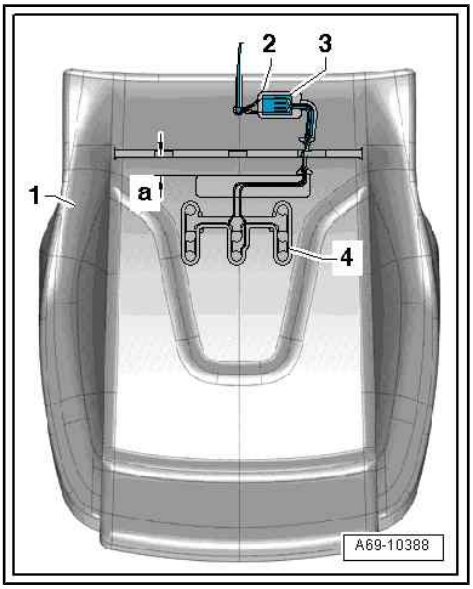
– Carefully heat seat heating element -1- on left side using hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- .




– Pull off seat heating element -2- just far enough -arrow- so that seat occupied sensor -1- is laid bare.



– Unplug connector for seat occupied sensor.
– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -4- with printed circuit -3- from seat padding -1-.




**Super sports seat:**

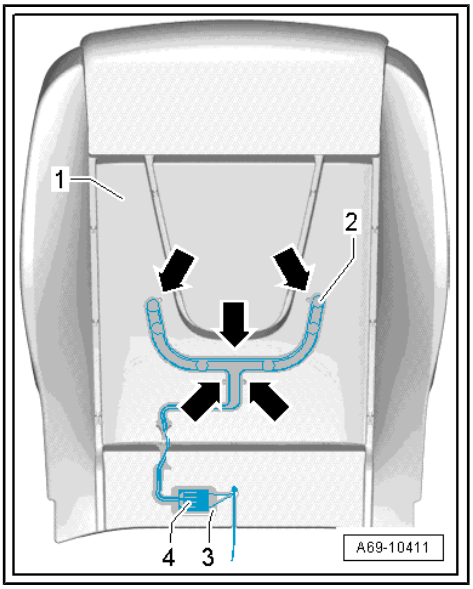
– Unplug connector for seat occupied sensor.
– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -2- with printed circuit -4- from seat padding -1-.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



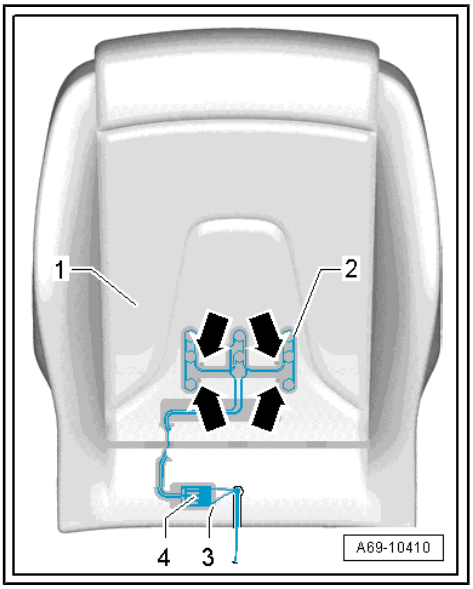

**Standard seat and sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment):**

– Position printed circuit -4- of seat occupied sensor -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.
– Align seat occupied sensor in accordance with markings -arrows- on seat padding.

**Caution**

*Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.*

– Peel off protective film and stick seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.



**Convenience seat:**

– Position printed circuit -3- of seat occupied sensor -4- in cut-out -2- in seat padding -1-.

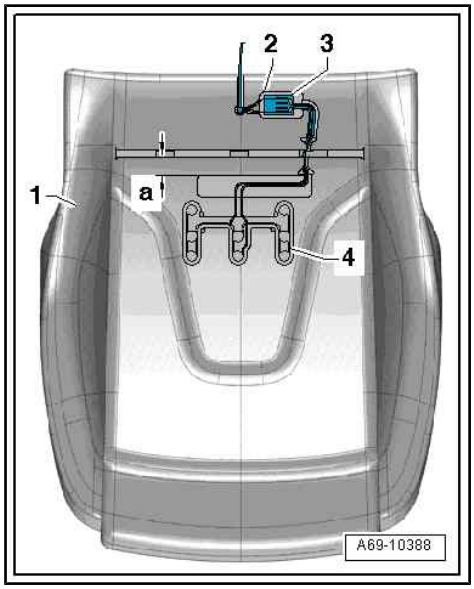
**Caution**

***Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.***

– Align seat occupied sensor in accordance with markings -a- on seat padding.

• Dimension -a- = 20 mm

– Peel off protective film and stick seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

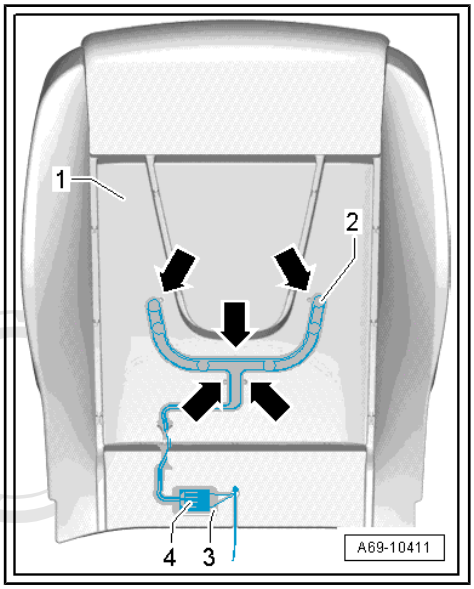



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Super sports seat:**

– Position printed circuit -4- of seat occupied sensor -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.

– Align seat occupied sensor in accordance with markings -arrows- on seat padding.




**Caution**

***Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.***

– Peel off protective film and stick seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

**All seat versions (continued):**

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure seat occupied sensor is not covered by coils of the seat heating element.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

# 70 – Trim, insulation

## 1 Door trim (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 138

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim”, page 141

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim”, page 142

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bracket for treble loudspeaker”, page 142

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing trim for armrest (front)”, page 143

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 144

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 144

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing armrest (front)”, page 147

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing door puller (front)”, page 147

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 148

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing switch trim for driver seat memory operating unit E97 ”, page 148

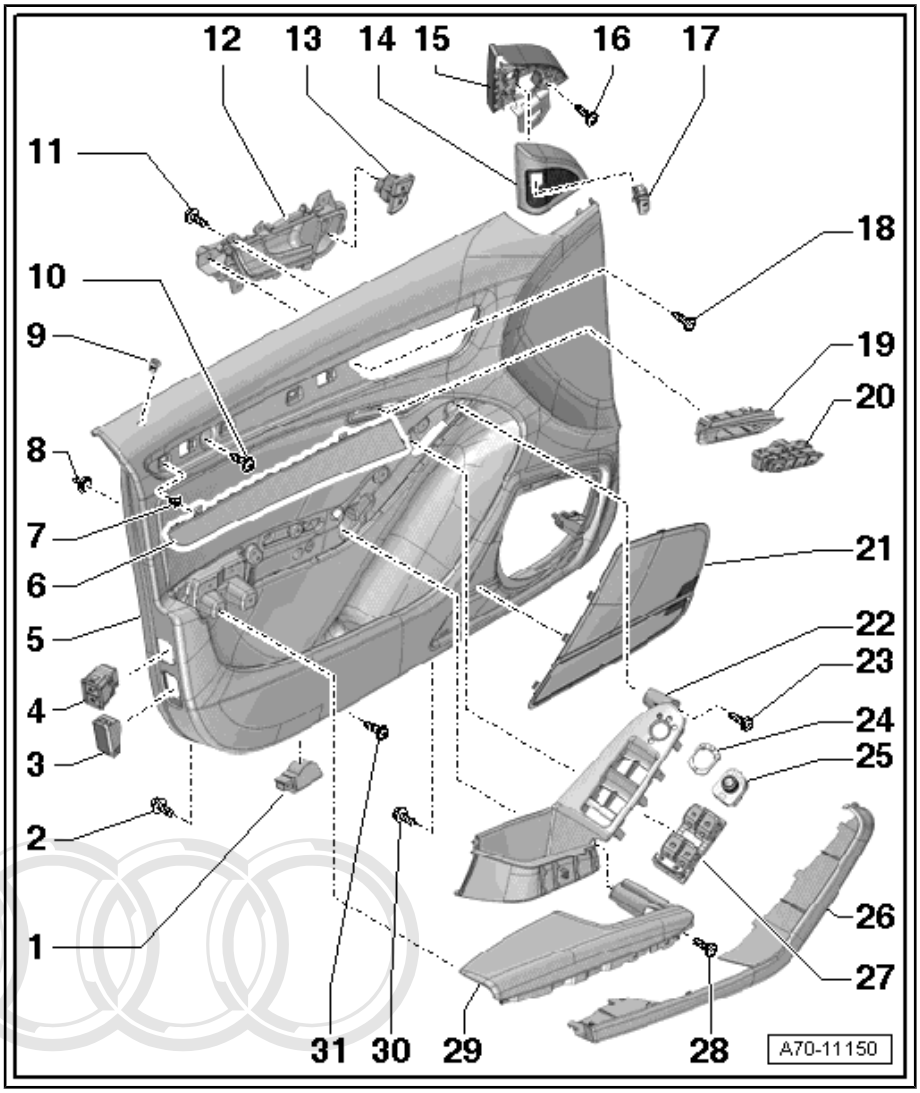
Audi

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)

**Note**

*Illustration shows door trim on driver side.*




**1 - Entry light**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (front) -W31- / -W32-

**2 - Bolt**

- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**3 - Active/passive reflector**

- ❑ Depending on version

**4 - Interior monitoring switch - E183- / alarm system off switch - E217-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

**5 - Door trim**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 9- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

**6 - Trim panel**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

**7 - Clip**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Press into door trim

**8 - Clip**

- ❑ With seal
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 7x

**WARNING**

***Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.***

***The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.***

**9 - Sleeve**

- ❑ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ Removing and installing central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

**10 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**11 - Bolt**

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**12 - Interior door handle**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

**13 - Interior locking button**

- ❑ Driver side: driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side interior locking button for central locking system - E309-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

**14 - Loudspeaker trim**

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

**15 - Bracket**

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

**16 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

**17 - Button for lane change assist - E530-**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Removing and installing button for lane change assist - E530-

**18 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**19 - Switch trim**

- ❑ For driver seat memory operating unit - E97-
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

**20 - Driver seat memory operating unit - E97-**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing driver seat/ front passenger seat memory operating unit -E97- / -E277-

**21 - Loudspeaker trim**

- ❑ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

**22 - Door puller**

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**23 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**24 - Symbol trim**

**25 - Mirror adjustment switch - E43-**

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature - E168-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch -E43- / -E168-

**26 - Trim**

- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

**27 - Window regulator switch**

- ❑ Driver side: operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-
- ❑ Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door - E107-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

**28 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**29 - Armrest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147

**30 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door puller
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**31 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

## 1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

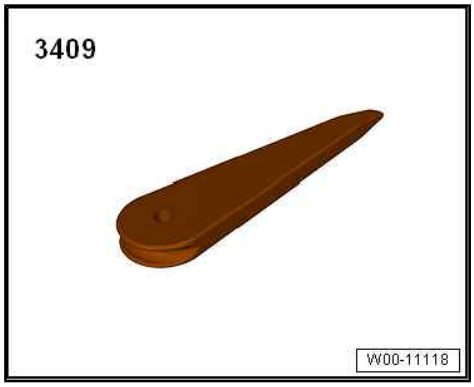
**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the driver's door. The procedures are similar for the other doors.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

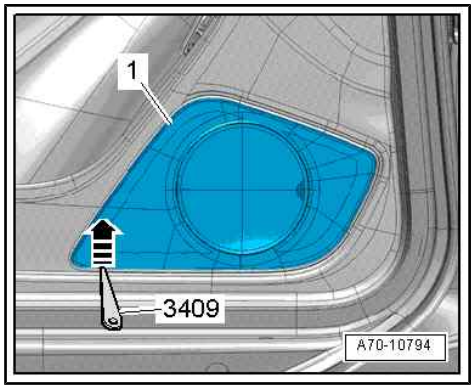
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.




**Note**

*If necessary, use flat screwdriver to lift loudspeaker trim slightly.*

**Installing**

– Press on loudspeaker trim until it engages audibly.

## 1.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim

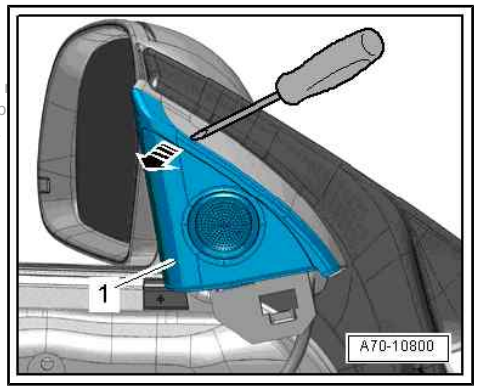
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .
– Use a narrow screwdriver to carefully prise treble loudspeaker trim -1- off bracket -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liab
off. Copyright in the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

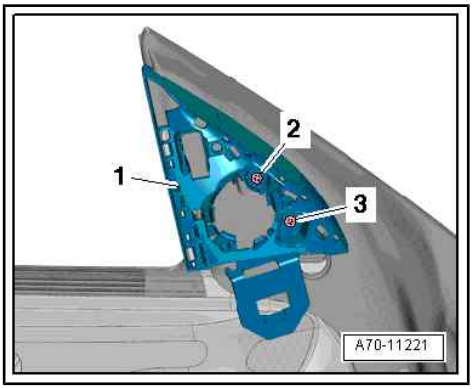
– Press on treble loudspeaker trim until it engages audibly.

## 1.4 Removing and installing bracket for treble loudspeaker

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Removing




– Remove treble loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 142 .
– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Remove treble loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing front treble loudspeakers -R20- / -R22- .
– Equipment version with lane change assist: Remove button for lane change assist - E530- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Removing and installing button for lane change assist - E530- .
– Unscrew bolts -2, 3- and detach bracket -1- for treble loudspeaker from door.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage bracket for treble loudspeaker at rear of door and bolt on.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 138

## 1.5 Removing and installing trim for armrest (front)

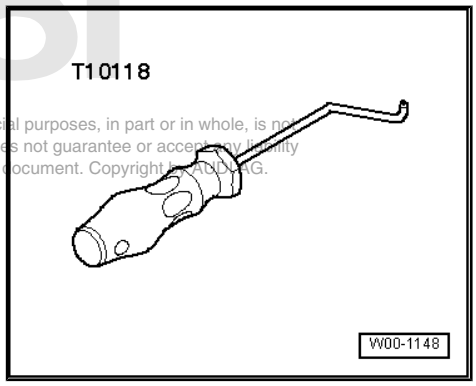
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

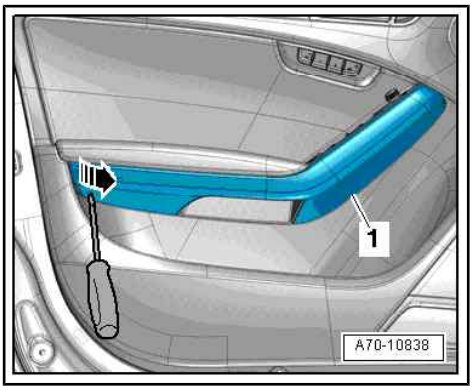
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly tool - T10118-




### Removing




– Insert assembly tool - T10118- or a screwdriver in hole at bottom of trim -1-.
– Starting at back, carefully prise trim off door trim -arrow-.

### Installing

– First position trim at front of door trim and press on until it engages audibly.

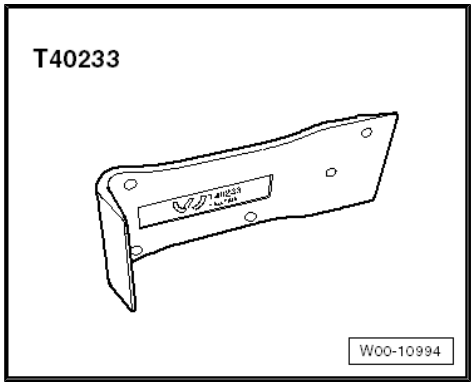
## 1.6 Removing and installing trim panel

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the driver's door. The procedures are similar for the other doors.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - T40233-




**Removing**

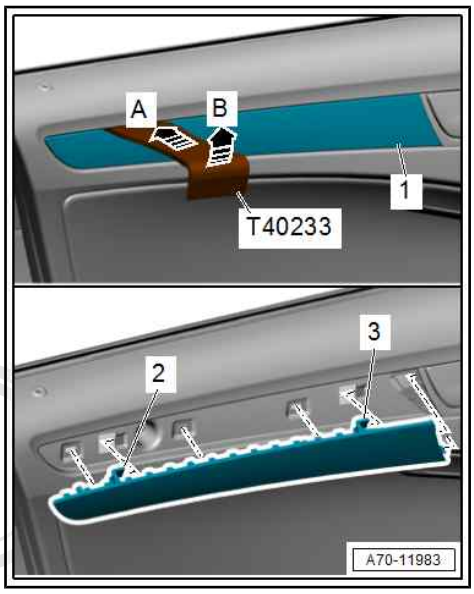
– Starting at rear of trim panel, carefully insert removal wedge - T40233- between door trim and trim panel -arrow A-.

– Use removal wedge - T40233- to pry trim panel -1- carefully off door trim along gap -arrow B-.

– Disengage hooks -2, 3- on inside of trim from recess in door trim and detach.

**Installing**

– First engage trim panel at interior door handle and then press onto door trim until it engages audibly.




## 1.7 Removing and installing door trim (front)

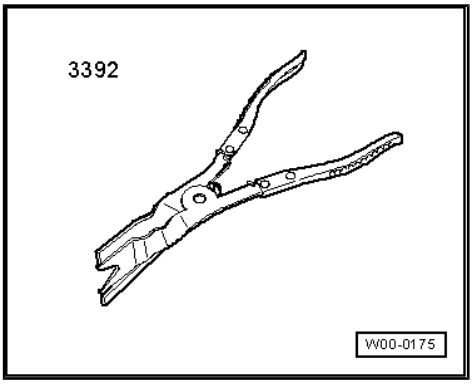
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal pliers - 3392-



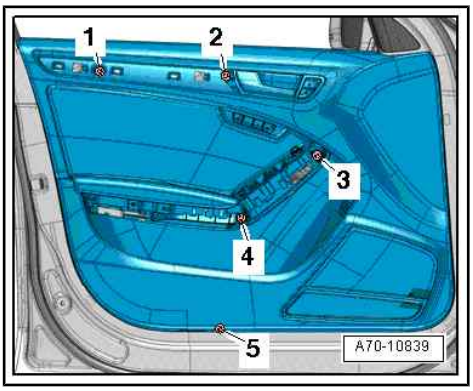

## Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

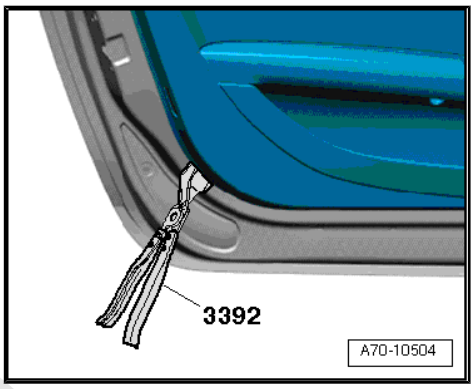
– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 144 .

– Remove armrest trim ⇒ page 143 .

– Remove bolts -1 ... 5-.

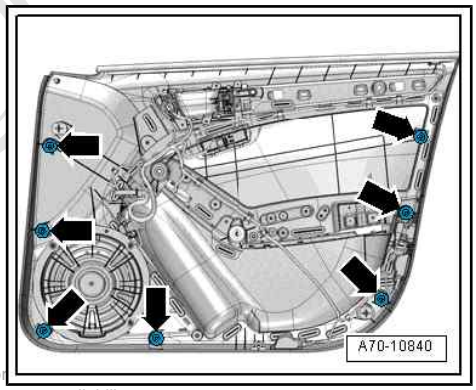



– Starting in bottom rear corner, use removal pliers - 3392- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert removal pliers between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



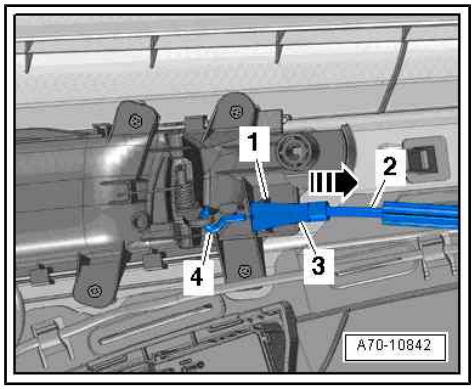

• Position of retaining clips -arrows-

– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards.

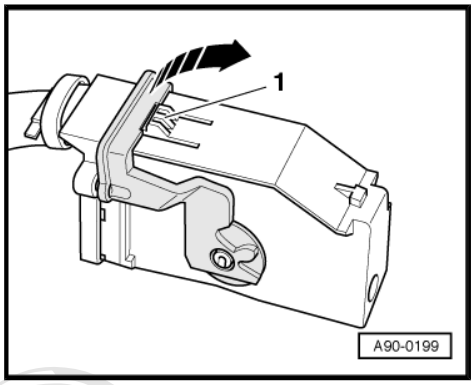



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Carefully disengage catch -3- at support bracket -1-.
– Pull Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle out of support bracket in direction of -arrow-.
– Disengage end of cable -4- at interior door handle.

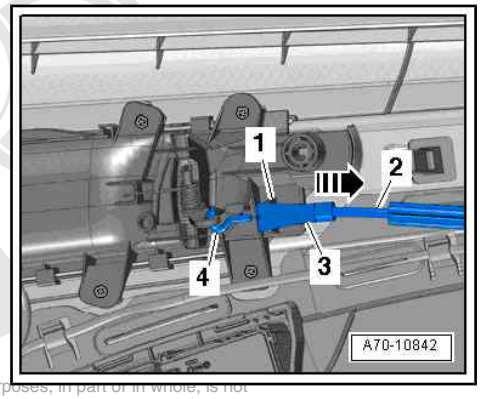



– To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
– Detach door trim.




**Installing**

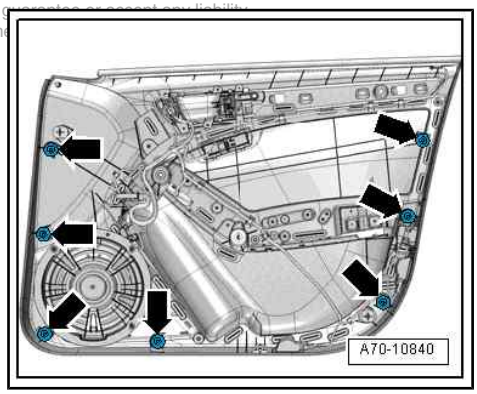
– Engage end of cable -4- in lever of interior door handle.
• Open side of eyelet at end of cable must face upwards.
– Pull Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle in direction of -arrow- and insert it in support bracket -1-.
• Catch -3- must engage audibly in support bracket.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

**WARNING**

- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *The retaining clips -arrows- for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.*




– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.
– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
– Carefully position clips for door trim on door and press door trim onto door until it engages audibly at anchorage points.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 138

## 1.8 Removing and installing armrest (front)

**Note**

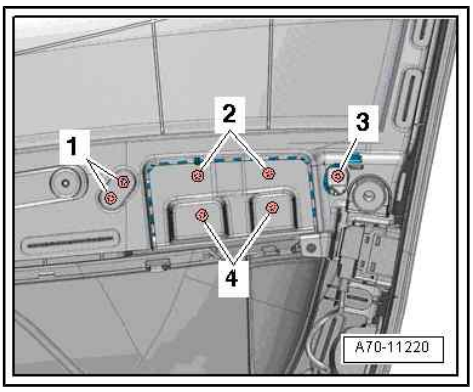
*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .

– Remove insulating mat from door trim.

– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 4- at rear of door trim.

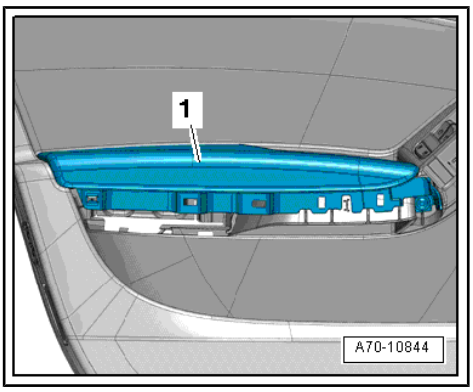



– Release armrest -1- and detach from door trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 138




## 1.9 Removing and installing door puller (front)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

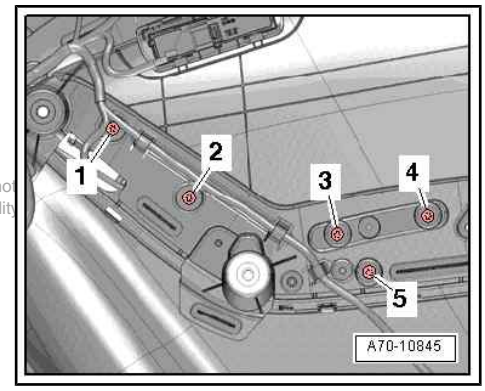
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .

– Remove armrest (front) ⇒ page 147 .

– Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512- .

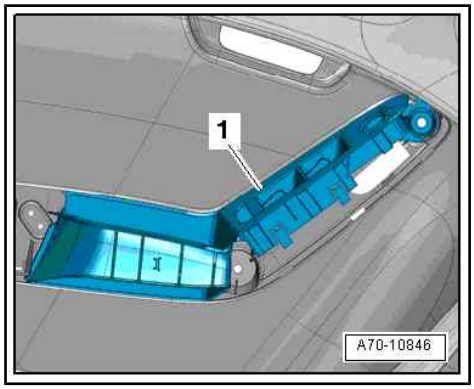
– Remove mirror adjustment switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch -E43- / -E168- .

– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 5- at rear of door trim.




The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization is prohibited. Offenders will be liable for damages. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Carefully detach door puller -1- with switch mounting from door trim.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 138

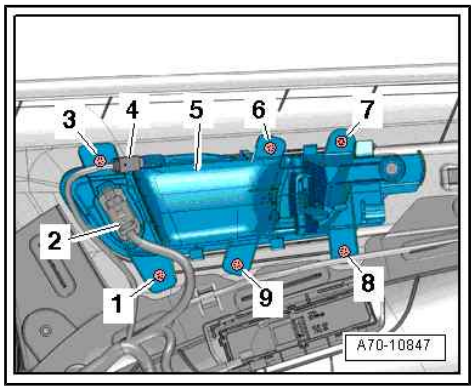
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.10 Removing and installing interior door handle

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the driver's door trim. The procedures are similar for the other door trim panels.*

**Removing**




– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .
– Equipment version with interior locking button: Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector -4-.
– Unscrew bolts -1, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9-.
– Detach interior door handle -5- from door trim.

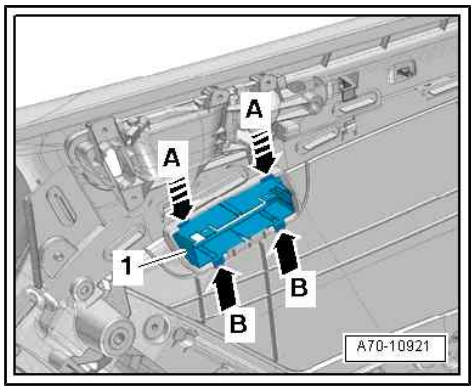
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 138

## 1.11 Removing and installing switch trim for driver seat memory operating unit - E97-

**Removing**




– Remove door trim ⇒ page 144 .
– Remove driver seat memory operating unit - E97- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing seat memory operating unit -E97- / -E277- .
– First release switch trim -1- at top -arrow- and then press forwards out of door trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Start by engaging switch trim at bottom -arrow B- and then press on until it engages audibly.

# 2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 149

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim”, page 150

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing trim for armrest (rear)”, page 151

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear)”, page 151

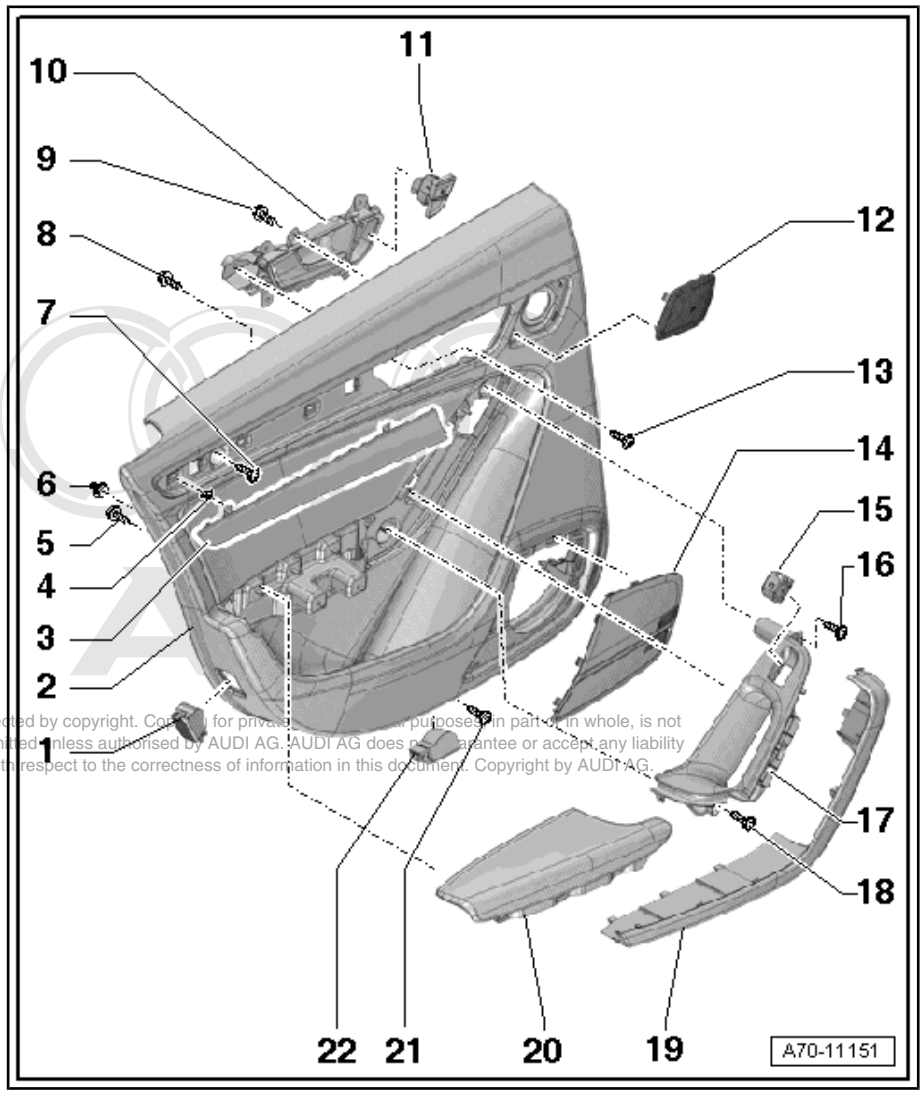
⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing armrest (rear)”, page 153

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing door puller (rear)”, page 154

## 2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)

**Note**

*Illustration shows rear door trim (left-side).*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Active/passive reflector**
- ❑ Depending on version

**2 - Door trim (rear)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 151

**3 - Trim panel**
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

**4 - Clip**
- ❑ For trim panel
- ❑ 3x

**5 - Bolt**
- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**6 - Clip**
- ❑ 6x

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**8 - Bolt**
- ❑ For door puller
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**9 - Bolt**
- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

**10 - Interior door handle**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

**11 - Interior locking button (rear)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Rear left interior locking switch - E273-
- ❑ Passenger side: rear right interior locking switch - E274-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear interior locking switch -E273- / -E274-

**12 - Trim**

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

**13 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**14 - Loudspeaker trim**

- ❑ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

**15 - Window regulator switch in rear door**

- ❑ Driver side: rear left window regulator switch, in door - E52-
- ❑ Passenger side: rear right window regulator switch, in door - E54-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors

**16 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**17 - Door puller**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

**18 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**19 - Trim**

- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 151

**20 - Armrest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 153

**21 - Bolt**

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**22 - Entry light**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (rear) -W33- / -W34-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

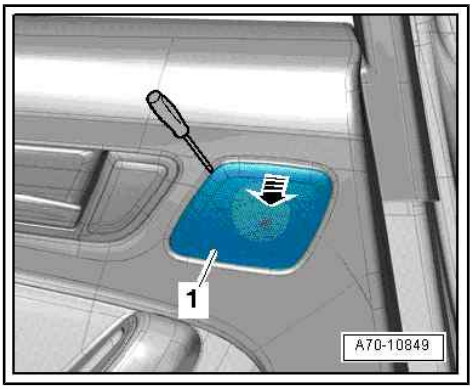
**Removing**

– Wrap insulating tape around blade of a small screwdriver to protect trim and trim panel.

– Using screwdriver, unclip trim -1- for treble loudspeaker and detach -arrow-.

**Installing**

– Press on trim until it engages audibly.



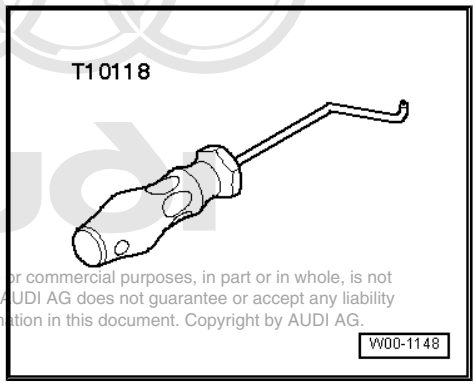

## 2.3 Removing and installing trim for armrest (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Assembly tool - T10118-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

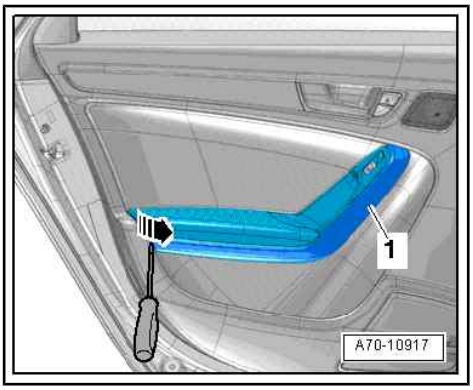
**Removing**

– Insert assembly tool - T10118- or a screwdriver in hole at bottom of trim -1-.

– Starting at back, carefully prise trim off door trim -arrow-.

**Installing**

– First position trim at front of door trim and press on until it engages audibly.



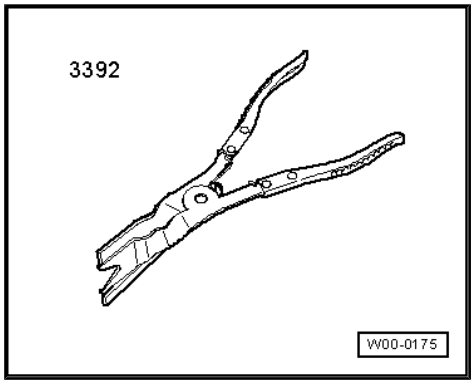

## 2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal pliers - 3392-



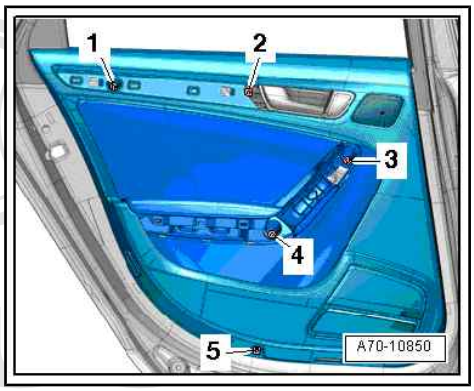

**Removing**

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 144 .

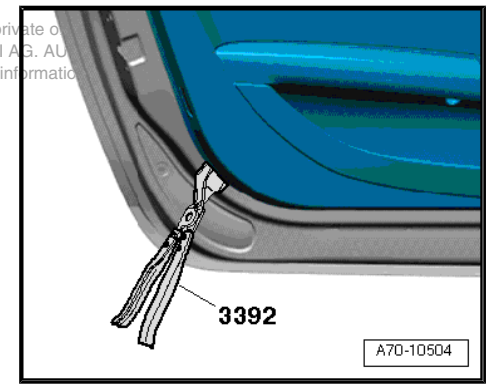
– Remove armrest trim ⇒ page 151 .

– Remove bolts -1 ... 5-.



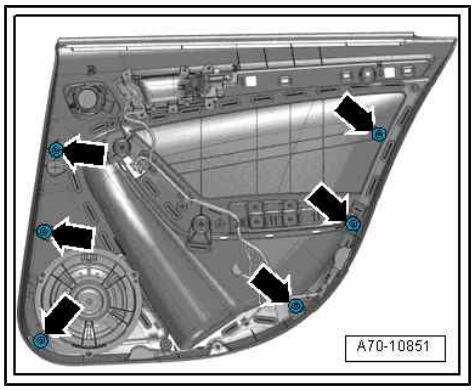

– Starting in bottom rear corner, use removal pliers - 3392- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert removal pliers between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted
without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AU
does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of informatio

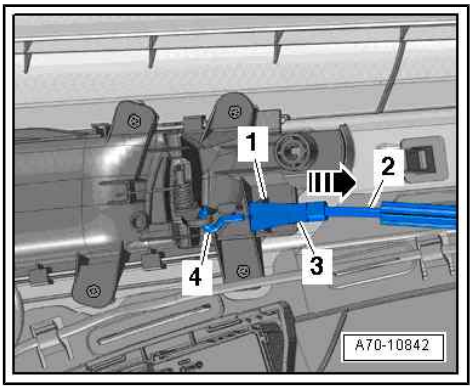



• Position of retaining clips -arrows-

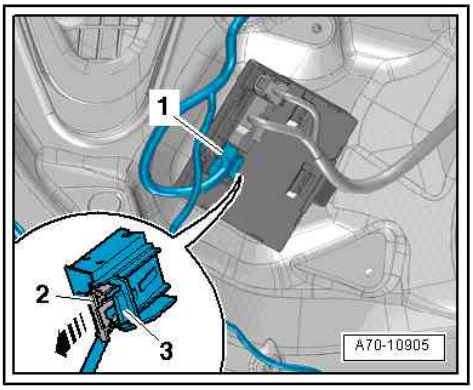
– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards.



– Carefully disengage catch -3- at support bracket -1-.
– Pull Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle out of support bracket in direction of -arrow-.
– Disengage end of cable -4- at interior door handle.
– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

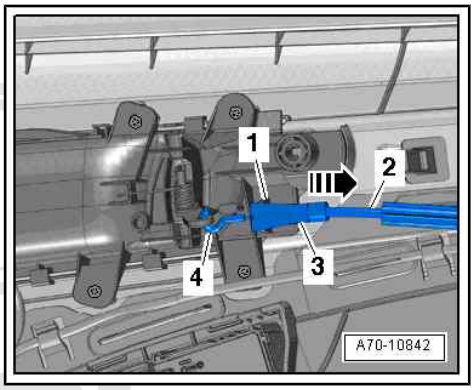



– Unplug electrical connector -1- at door control unit. To do so, pull out fastener -2- -arrow- and press down release mechanism -3-.
– Detach door trim.




**Installing**

– Engage end of cable -4- in lever of interior door handle.
• Open side of eyelet at end of cable must face upwards.
– Pull Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle in direction of -arrow- and insert it in support bracket -1-.
• Catch -3- must engage audibly in support bracket.
– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.
– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
– Carefully position clips for door trim on door and press door trim onto door until it engages audibly at anchorage points.




The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 149

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.5 Removing and installing armrest (rear)

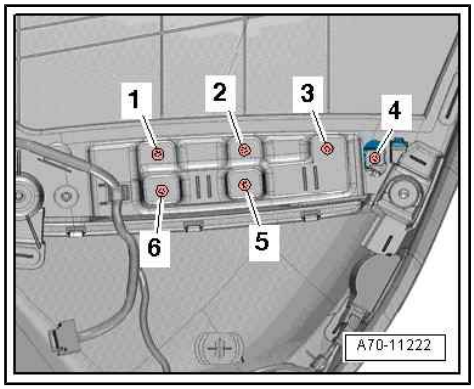
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 151 .

– Remove bolts -1 ... 6-.

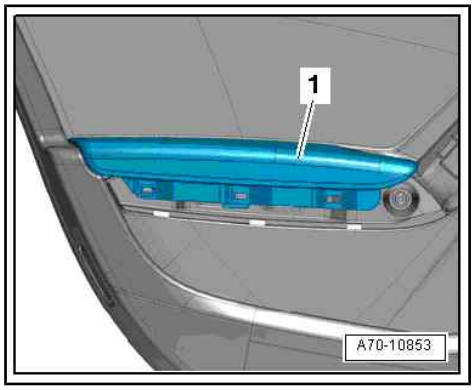



– Detach armrest -1- from door trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 149




## 2.6 Removing and installing door puller (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

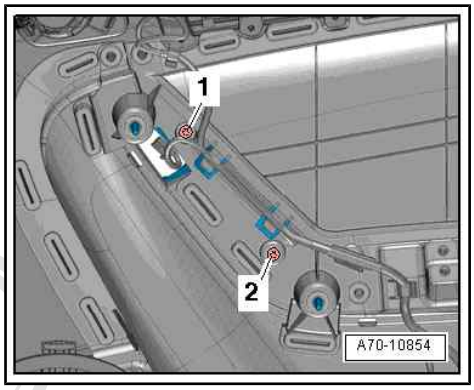
**Removing**

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 151 .

– Remove armrest ⇒ page 153 .

– Equipment version with electric rear windows: Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors .

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

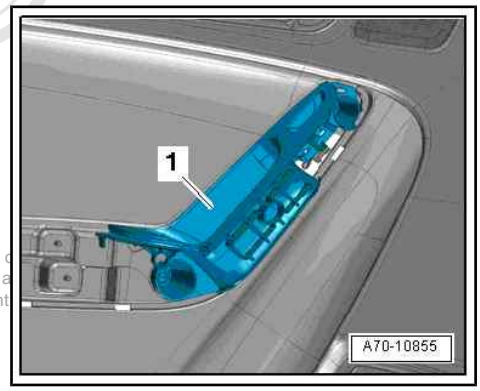



– Detach door puller -1- from door trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 149




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

# 3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel”, page 155

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 157

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)”, page 160

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen”, page 160

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 161

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch”, page 163

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio/navigation system”, page 163

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim for entry and start authorisation button”, page 163

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert”, page 164

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 164

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting”, page 169

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing dash panel vents”, page 169

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)”, page 171

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel

**1 - Centre console**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 31

**2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 18

**3 - Trim**

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 19

**4 - Central tube**

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 172

**5 - Dash panel**

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

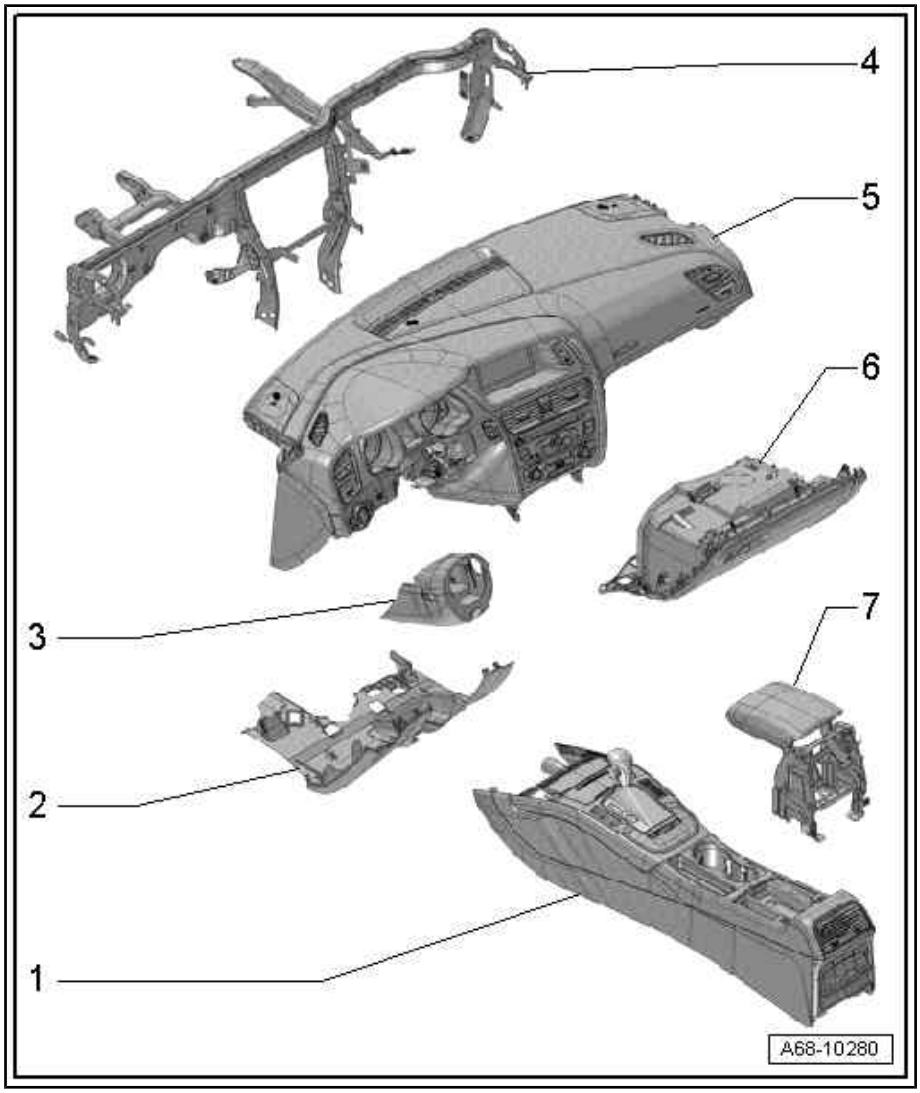
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 157

**6 - Glove box**

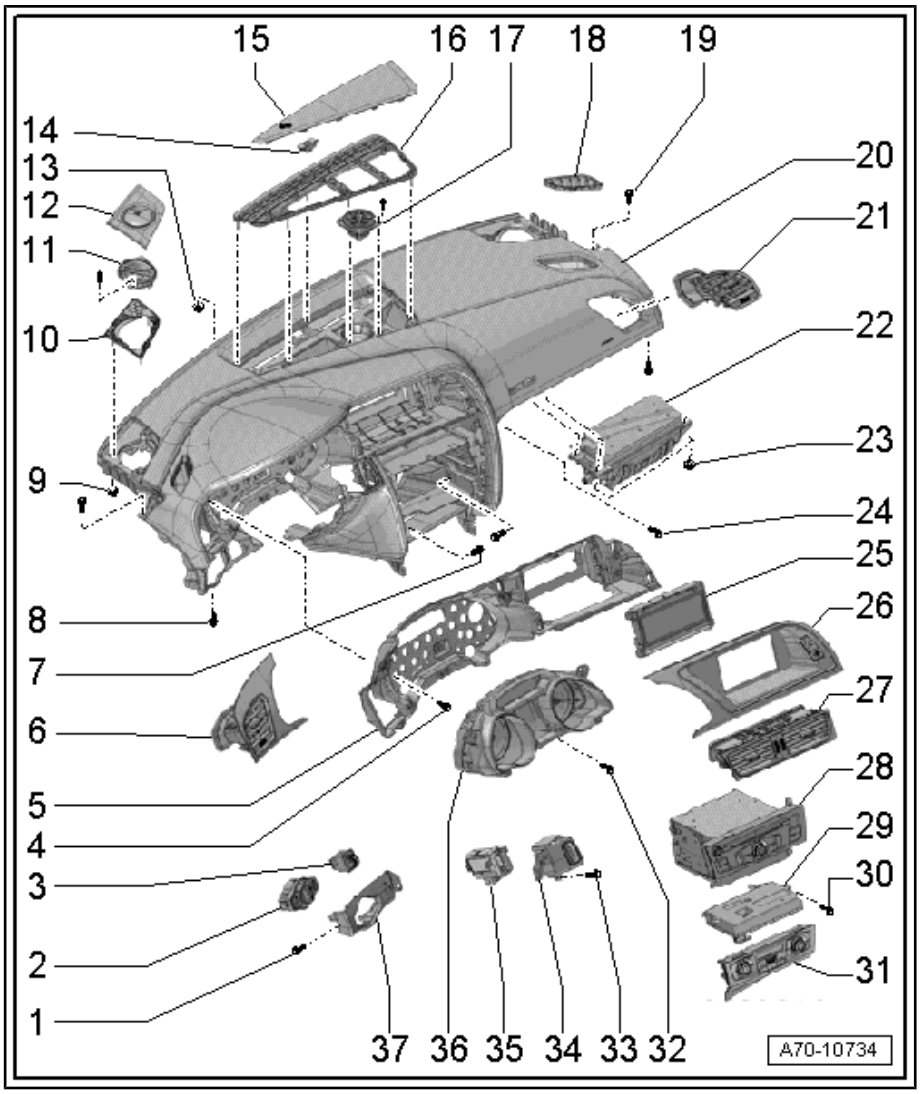
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 20

**7 - Centre armrest (front)**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 44



## 3.2 Exploded view - dash panel




**1 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

**2 - Light switch - E1-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

**3 - Headlight range control regulator - E102-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**5 - Retaining frame**

- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 164

**6 - Side dash panel vent (left-side)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

**7 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**8 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**9 - Nut**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 0.5 Nm

**Note**

*Tighten nuts carefully to prevent pins from breaking off at loudspeaker mounting.*

**10 - Mounting**

- ❑ For loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

**11 - Mid-range and treble loudspeaker**

- ❑ Depending on version

Copyright by AUDI AG.
Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

**12 - Side loudspeaker trim**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

**13 - Nut**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 0.5 Nm

**Note**

*Tighten nuts carefully to prevent pins at defroster vent from breaking off.*

**14 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

**15 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

**16 - Top defroster vent (centre)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

**17 - Mid-range and treble loudspeaker**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker

**18 - Side defroster vent (top)**

**19 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

**20 - Dash panel**

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

*For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 164

**21 - Side dash panel vent (right-side)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**22 - Airbag (front passenger side)**

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
> *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 101
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch

**23 - Nut**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 101

**24 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3 Nm

**25 - MMI screen**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display

**26 - Cover**

- ❑ For MMI screen
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

**27 - Dash panel vent (centre)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 170

**28 - Radio/navigation system**

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Removing and installing radio
- ❑ Removing and installing mounting frame ⇒ page 163

**29 - Control unit for front display and information control panel - J523-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit for front display and information control panel

**30 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit for front display and information control panel

**31 - Climatronic control unit - J255-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

**32 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

**33 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3 Nm

**34 - Trim**

- ❑ For entry and start authorisation button - E408-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

**35 - Entry and start authorisation button - E408-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - entry and start authorisation

Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Forwarding and reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**36 - Instrument cluster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2-

**37 - Trim for light switch**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

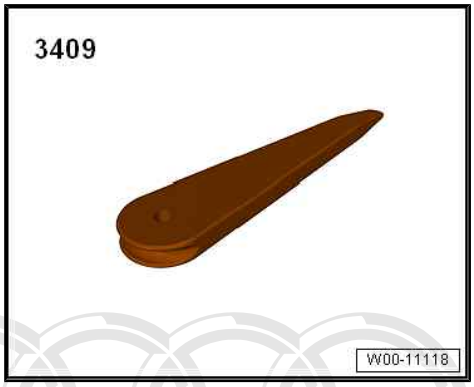
## 3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

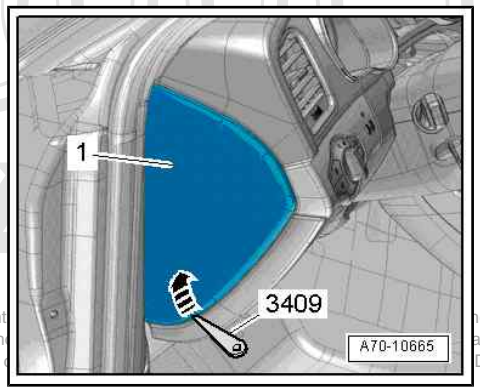



**Removing**

– Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.

**Installing**

– Press on dash panel cover (side) until it engages audibly.

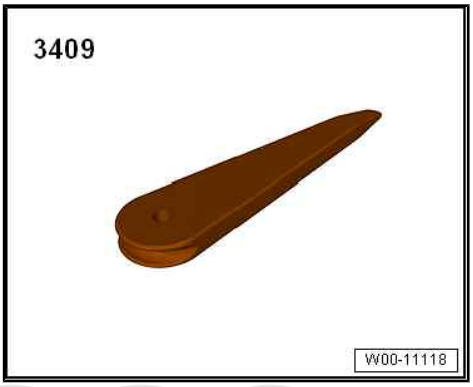



Protected by copyright
permitted unless auth
with respect to the
hole, is not
any liability
DI AG.

## 3.4 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

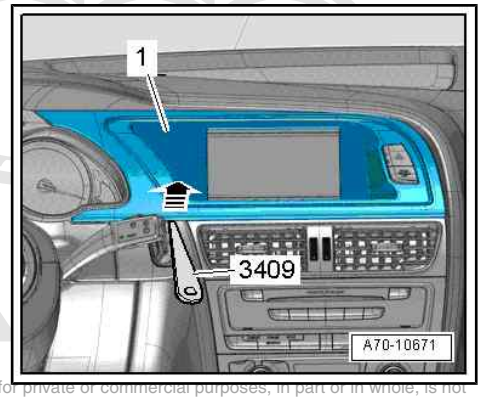
- Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to prise off cover -1- for MMI screen at corners -arrows- and detach.

– Unplug electrical connector for warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145- / hazard warning lights button - E229- and detach cover.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Check retaining clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press on cover for MMI screen until it engages audibly.

## 3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

⇒ “3.5.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (side)”, page 161

⇒ “3.5.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (centre)”, page 162

## 3.5.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (side)

**Note**

- *Be very careful when removing and installing, as loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*
- *Illustration shows loudspeaker trim (right-side).*

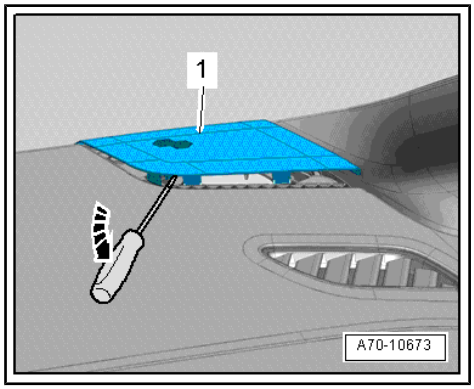
**Removing**

– Use a small screwdriver to carefully prise off loudspeaker trim -1- starting at radius -arrow-.

– Fold loudspeaker trim upwards and remove.

**Installing**

– First insert loudspeaker trim in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly.




## 3.5.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim (centre)

**Removing**

**Note**

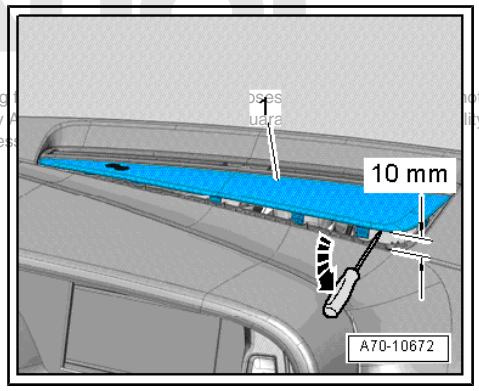
*Be very careful when removing and installing, as loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.*

– Use a small screwdriver to carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- from retaining pins (rear, as seen in direction of travel) -arrow-, but only pull upwards about 10 mm.

Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctness

**Caution**

***Take care not to pull loudspeaker trim up any further as this would cause retaining pins at (front, as seen in direction of travel) to break off.***



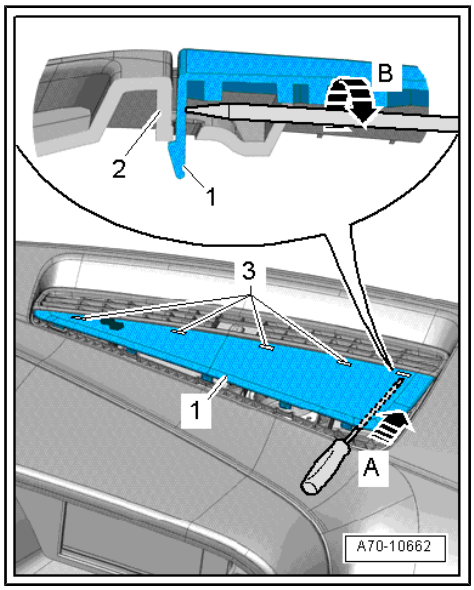

– Push a long screwdriver all the way through under loudspeaker trim towards front -arrow A- until it makes direct contact with front retaining pin (right-side).

– Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow B- until retaining pin -1- disengages from guide -2-.

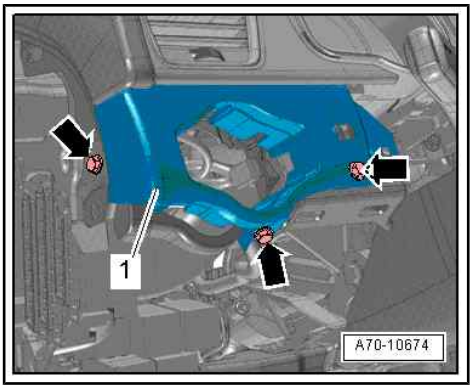
– Repeat process for other retaining pins -3-.

**Installing**

– First insert loudspeaker trim in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly.



## 3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch




### Removing

– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

– Unclip trim cover for instrument cluster from dash panel ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove light switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rotary light switch - EX1- .

– Equipment version with headlight range control: Remove headlight range control regulator - E102- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing headlight range control regulator - E102- .

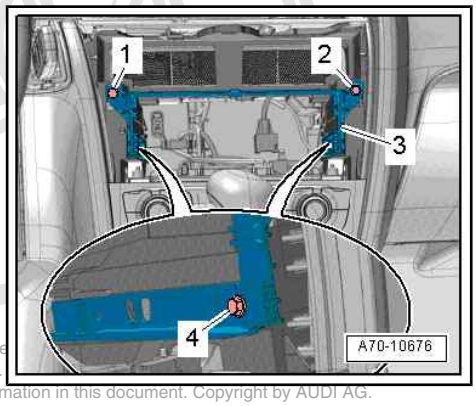
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach trim for light switch -1-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

## 3.7 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio/navigation system




### Removing

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 170 .

– Remove radio/navigation system ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Removing and installing radio .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- at front of mounting frame.

– Remove bolts -4- at side.

– Pull out mounting frame -3- towards rear and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

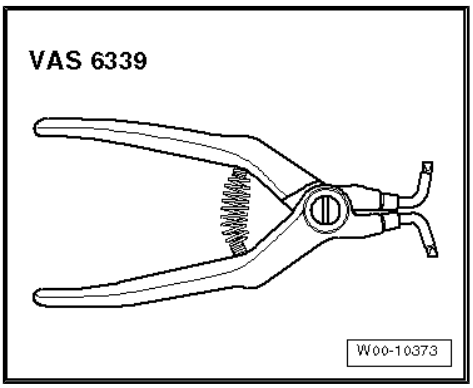
**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
Permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.8 Removing and installing trim for entry and start authorisation button

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Ignition lock removal pliers - VAS 6339-

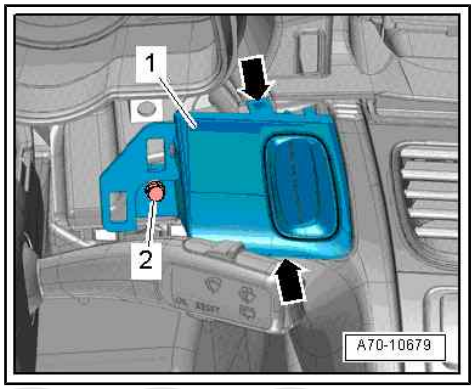


**Removing**

– Remove cover for MMI screen ⇒ page 160 .

– Unclip trim cover for instrument cluster from dash panel ⇒ page 22 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for trim -1-.

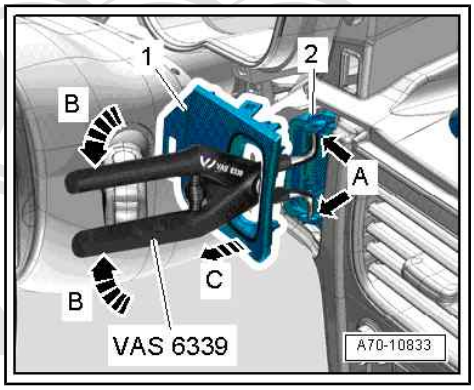



– Insert ignition lock removal pliers - VAS 6339- through flaps in trim.

– Apply tips of ignition lock removal pliers - VAS 6339- at two holes -arrows A- of entry and start authorisation button -E408- -2-.

– Compress handles of ignition lock removal pliers -VAS 6339- -arrows B-, causing tips of pliers to spread apart and release lugs on trim.

– Hold handles of ignition lock removal pliers -VAS 6339- compressed with one hand and pull off trim -1- with other hand -arrow C-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*Use ignition lock removal pliers - VAS 6339- only to release; pull off trim by hand.*

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

## 3.9 Removing and installing retaining frame for dash panel insert

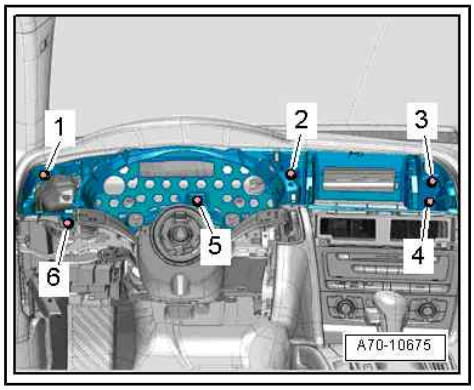
**Removing**

– Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2- .

– Remove trim for light switch ⇒ page 161 .

– Remove MMI screen ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display .

– Unscrew bolts -1 ... 6- and take out retaining frame.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

## 3.10 Removing and installing dash panel

**Removing**

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Move seats to rearmost position and backrests to 45° position.

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 91 .

– Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

– Remove trim cover for instrument cluster ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

– Unplug electrical connector for light switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rotary light switch - EX1- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unless otherwise indicated by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Equipment version with headlight range control: Unplug electrical connector from headlight range control regulator - E102- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing headlight range control regulator - E102- .

– Remove side dash panel vent ⇒ page 169 .

– Remove cover for MMI screen ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove MMI screen ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display .

– Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2- .

– Unplug electrical connector at entry and start authorisation button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation button - E408- .

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 170 .

– Remove radio/navigation system ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Removing and installing radio .

– Remove Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Remove control unit for front display and information control panel - J523- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit for front display and information control panel .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

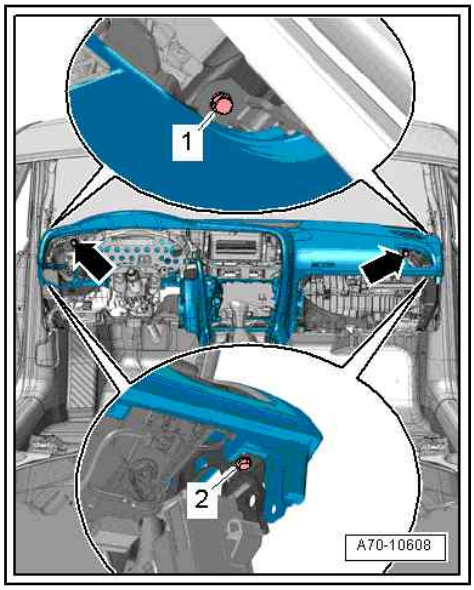
– Remove glove box bracket(s) ⇒ page 177 .

**WARNING**

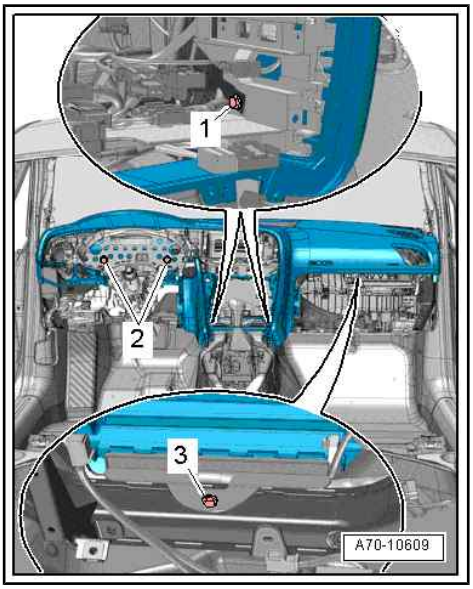
***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

- Unplug electrical connectors for airbag (front passenger side) ⇒ page 102 .
- Equipment version with loudspeakers: Remove mid-range and treble loudspeaker in centre of dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound systems; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker .
- Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Equipment version with loudspeakers: Remove mid-range and treble loudspeaker from side of dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 189 .
- Remove bolts -1- for dash panel at top left and right in area of A-pillar.
- Unscrew bolts -2- for dash panel at bottom left and right.
- Remove bolts -arrows- for air ducts on left and right of dash panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



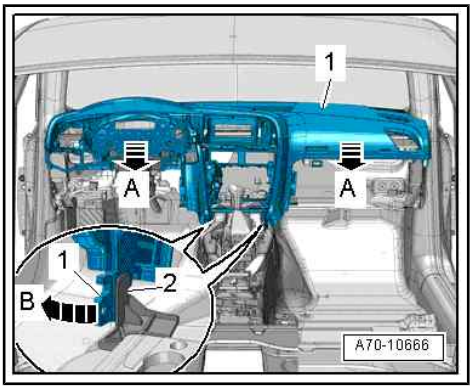
– Remove bolts -1- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (centre).
– Unscrew bolts -2- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (right-side).
– Unscrew bolt -3- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (left-side).




**Note**

*A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.*

– Carefully detach dash panel -1- from central tube for dash panel towards rear -arrows A-.
– At the same time, disengage dash panel at bottom of retainer -2- -arrow B-.
– Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

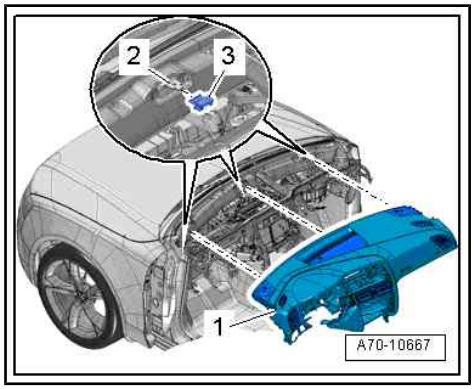
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**WARNING**

***For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .***

– Place dash panel in position and route electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel.

– Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the clips -2- at the lower windscreen frame.
– When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure clips engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.




**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Align dash panel and tighten bolts.

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

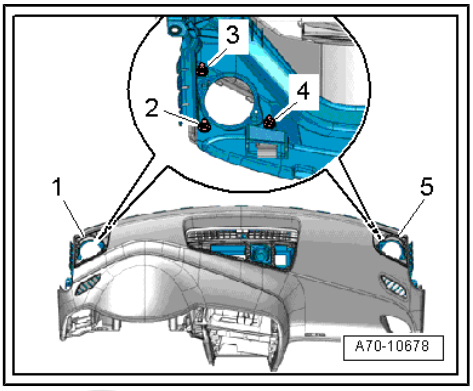
– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques ⇒ page 157**

## 3.11 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting




### Removing

– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 164 .
– Unscrew nuts -2 ... 4- on underside of dash panel.
– Lift mounting for loudspeakers -1- and -5- off dash panel.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*When tightening nuts, make sure that distance between top of dash panel and top edge of loudspeaker mounting is the same and that gap width all round is even.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

## 3.12 Removing and installing dash panel vents

⇒ "3.12.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)", page 169

⇒ "3.12.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)", page 170

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

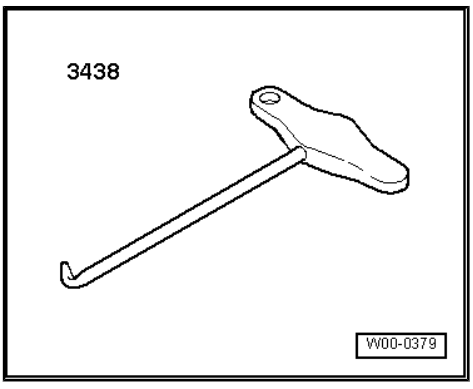
## 3.12.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)

**Note**

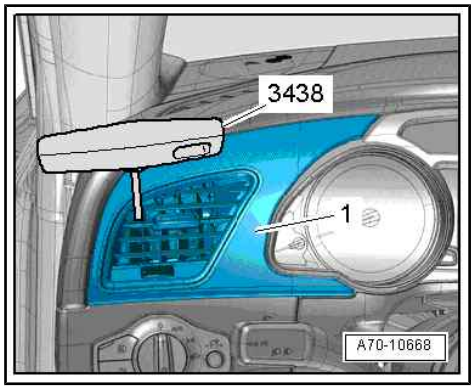
*Removal and installation are described for the driver side. The procedures are similar for the passenger side.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - 3438-



**Removing**




**Note**

*A hole is provided on both sides of dash panel vent for engaging hook -3438- .*

– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull dash panel vent -1- out of opening using hook - 3438- .
– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector at dash panel vent.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

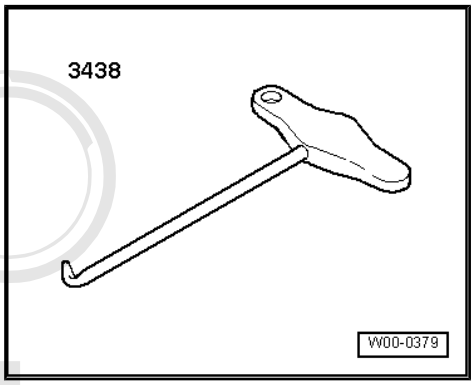
*Check retaining clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.*

– When inserting dash panel vent in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly.
– Press dash panel vent into installation opening as far as stop.

## 3.12.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)

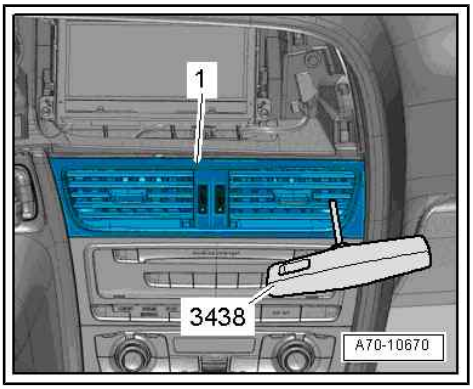
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Hook - 3438-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**




**Note**

*A hole is provided on both sides of dash panel vent for engaging hook -3438- .*

– Remove cover for MMI screen ⇒ page 160 .
– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull dash panel vent -1- out of opening using hook - 3438- .
– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector at dash panel vent.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

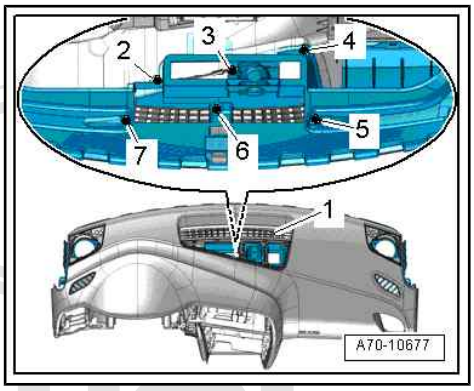
**Note**

*Check retaining clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.*

– When inserting dash panel vent in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly.
– Press dash panel vent into installation opening as far as stop.

## 3.13 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

**Removing**




– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 164 .
– Unscrew nuts -2 ... 7- on underside of dash panel.
– Lift top defroster vent (centre) -1- off dash panel.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*When tightening the nuts, make sure that the distance between the top of the dash panel and the top edge of the top centre defroster vent is the same and that gap width is the same all around.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 157

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 4 Central tube for dash panel

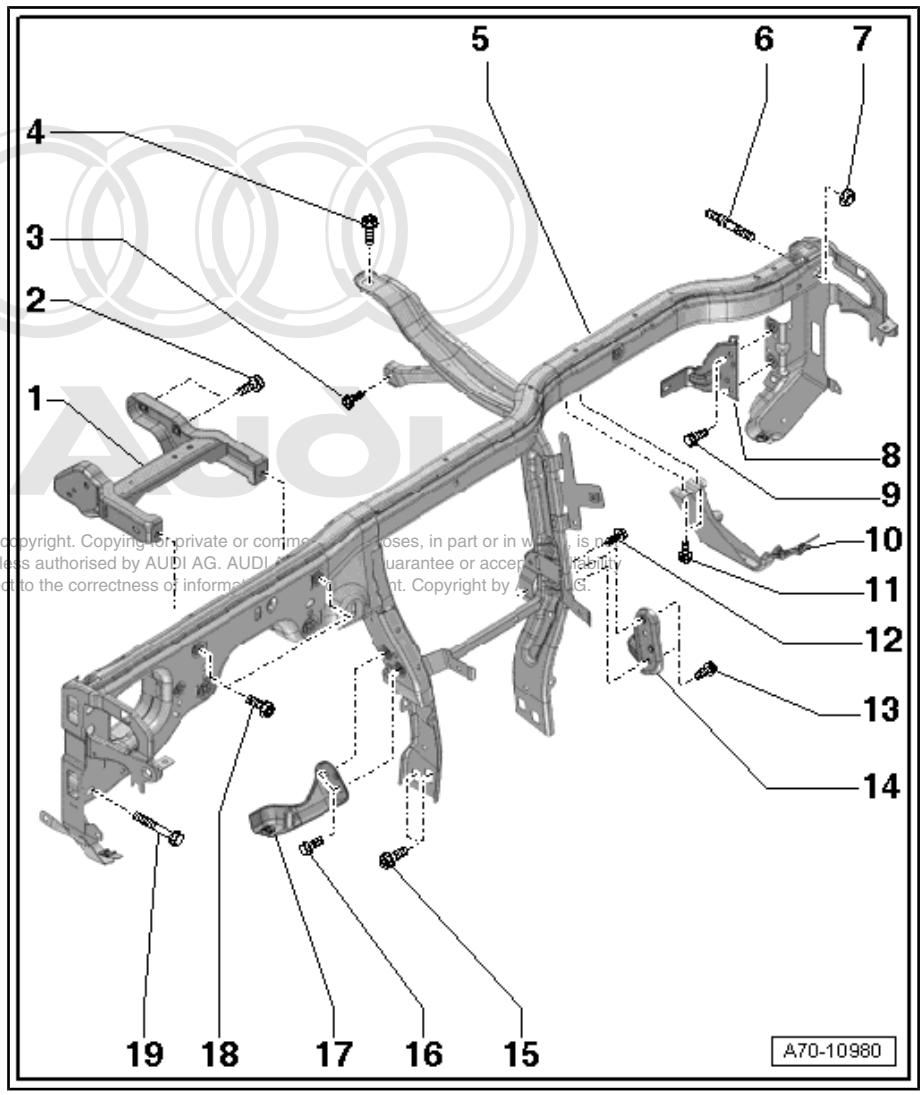
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel”, page 172

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel”, page 173

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket”, page 177

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing glove box bracket”, page 177

## 4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel




**1 - Mounting bracket**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

**2 - Bolt**
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ 3.6 Nm

**4 - Bolt**
- ❑ 20 Nm

**5 - Central tube**
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 173

**6 - Threaded pin**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

**7 - Nut**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm

**8 - Bracket**
- ❑ For air intake box

**9 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**10 - Bracket**
- ❑ For glove box
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

**11 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**12 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.6 Nm

**13 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ 9 Nm

**14 - Bracket**

❑ For glove box

**15 - Bolt**

❑ 4x

❑ 20 Nm

**16 - Bolt**

❑ 2x

❑ 9 Nm

**17 - Bracket**

❑ For dash panel cover

**18 - Bolt**

❑ 2x

❑ 20 Nm

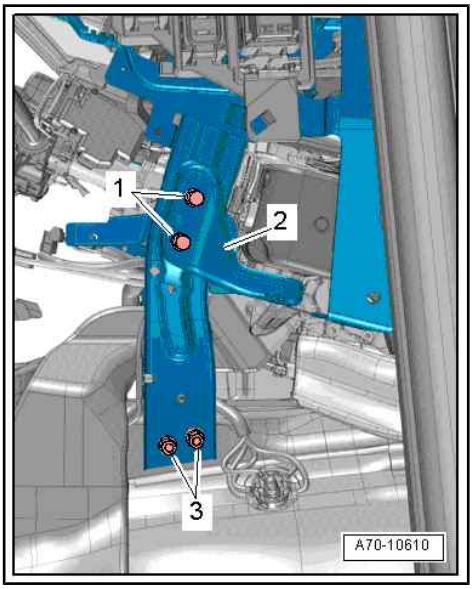
**19 - Bolt**

❑ 20 Nm

## 4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**




– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 164 .

– Unbolt steering column from central tube and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

– Disengage air duct for dash panel vent (left-side) at central tube for dash panel ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (right-side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

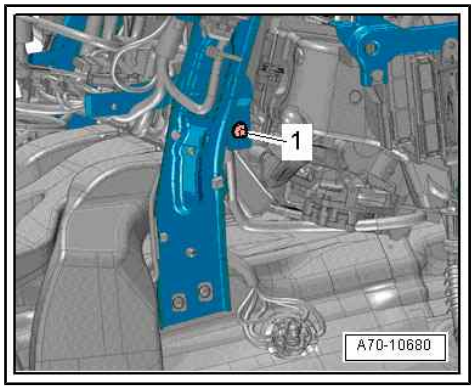
– Detach fuse holder C - SC- (left-side) and fuse holder D - SD- (right-side) from central tube for dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Remove data bus diagnostic interface - J533- and move to one side ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Removing and installing data bus diagnostic interface - J533- .

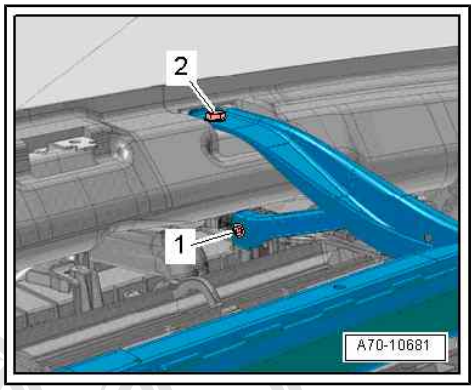
– Remove bolts -1- (left and right) at central tube support and detach bracket -2-.

– Remove bolts -3- for central tube support (left and right).

– Unscrew bolt -1- for air conditioning unit (left and right) at central tube support.

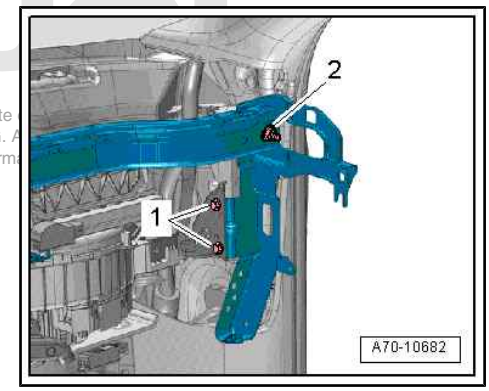



– Remove air duct for centre defroster vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
– Remove bolt -1- for air conditioning unit at brace at top of central tube for dash panel.
– Remove bolt -2- at brace at top of central tube for dash panel.
– Unscrew and move clear earth wire at earth point (left-side) at tunnel wall.
– Unplug and move clear electrical connectors at accelerator pedal module and brake light switch.
– Remove front sill panel trim (right-side) ⇒ page 187 .
– Unplug electrical multi-pin connectors at connector point on right side of A-pillar ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .
– Unplug electrical connector at fresh air blower and move wiring clear.

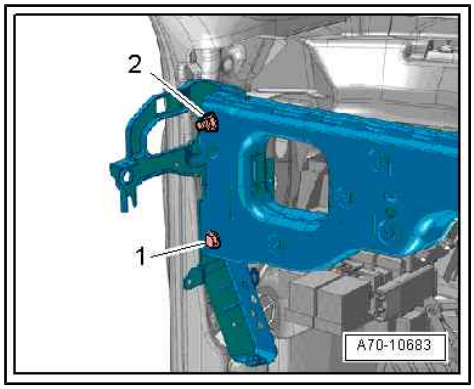



– Remove bolts -1- for bracket for air intake box at central tube for dash panel.
– Unscrew nut -2-.

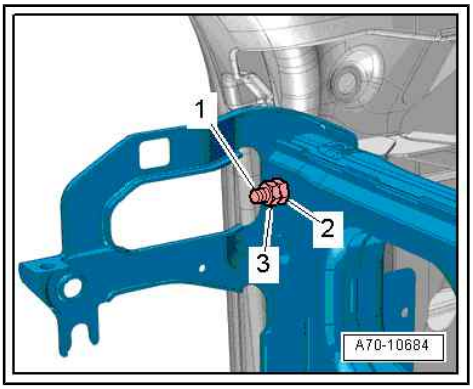
Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform




– Remove bolt -1- and nut -2-.



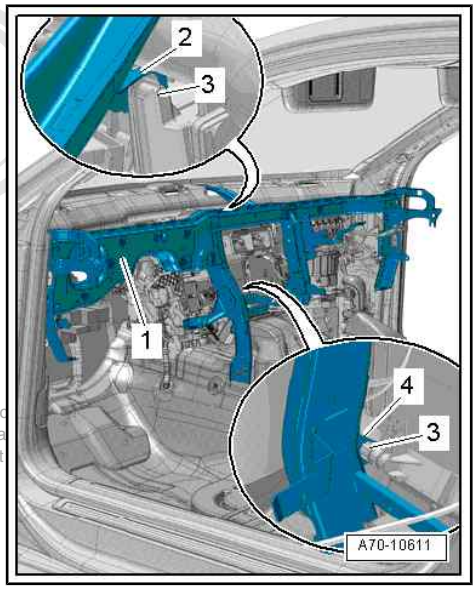
– Lock two nuts -2- and -3- at A-pillar (driver side) on threaded pin -1- and unscrew threaded pin.




**Note**

*A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.*

– Pull central tube -1- for dash panel (driver side) carefully upwards and at the same time disengage it from air conditioning unit -3- at stop bracket (top -2- and bottom -4-).
– Pull central tube for dash panel off threaded pin at A-pillar (passenger side).
– Carefully swivel top of central tube for dash panel to rear and at the same time pull it upwards.
– Take central tube for dash panel out of passenger compartment.

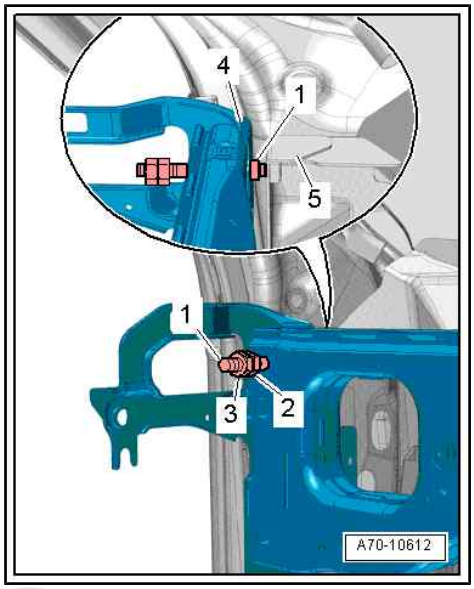



**Installing**

– Carefully insert central tube -1- for dash panel in body.
– Engage central tube for dash panel at air conditioning unit -3- and at stop bracket (top -2- and bottom -4-).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

– Align central tube -4- for dash panel to A-pillar.
– Lock two nuts -2- and -3- on threaded pin -1-, screw threaded pin into mounting -5- at A-pillar (driver side) and tighten.
• Stud must be screwed in completely and its collar must make contact with mounting at A-pillar.
– Tighten bolt and nuts (left and right) for central tube for dash panel.




Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

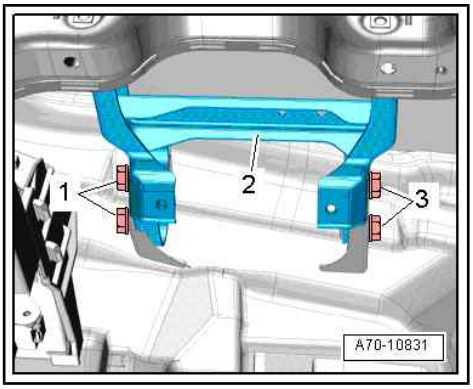
**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 172

## 4.3 Removing and installing mounting bracket




### Removing

– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (left-side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -3- and take out mounting bracket -2- downwards.

**Note**

*Steering column has been removed in illustration.*

### Installing

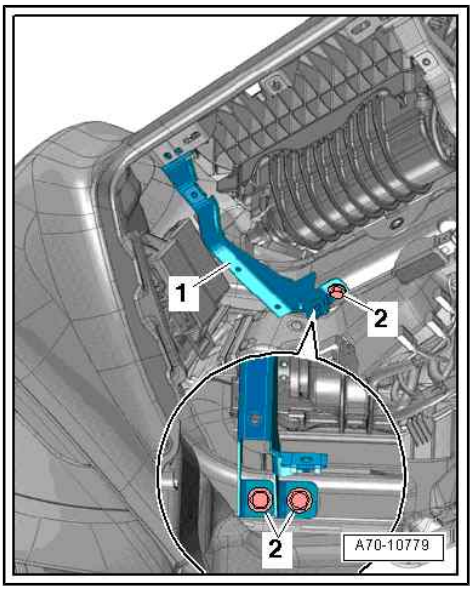
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Mounting bracket can only be positioned correctly if central tube is fitted.

– First bolt steering column with mounting bracket to central tube and then tighten bolts -1- and -3- for mounting bracket to mounting on windscreen cross member.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 172

## 4.4 Removing and installing glove box bracket




### Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Disengage glove box bracket -1- at dash panel and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 172

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 178

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 180

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 182

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 183

⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 184

⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 185

⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 186

⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 187

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 187

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 189

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing trim cover for A-pillar trim”, page 191

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 191

⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 193

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 195

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 196

⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 197

⇒ “5.17 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 198

## 5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Rear shelf**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 187

**2 - B-pillar trim (bottom)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 183

**3 - B-pillar trim (top)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 183

**4 - Sill panel trim (front)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 180

**5 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 182

**6 - Trim cover for A-pillar**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

**7 - Foot rest**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 186

**8 - Floor covering**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 186

**9 - C-pillar trim**

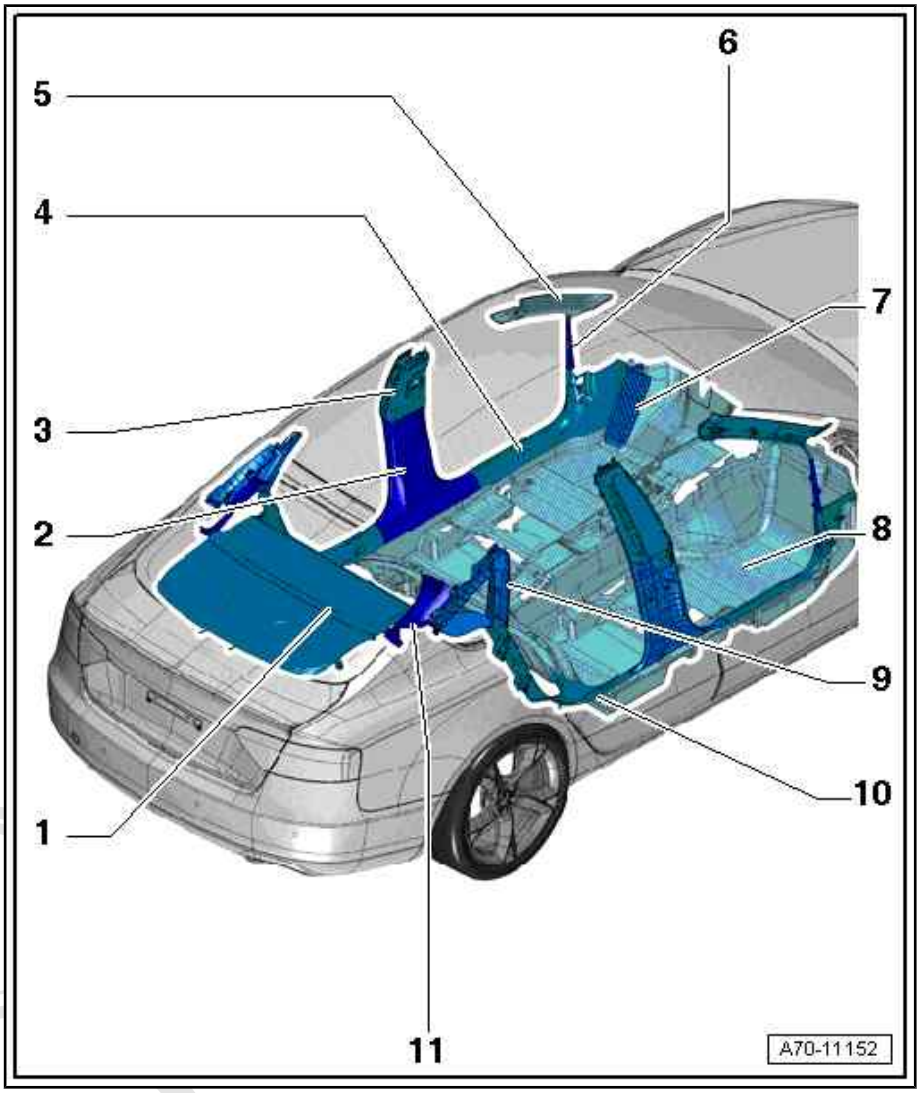
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 184

**10 - Sill panel trim (rear)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 181

**11 - D-pillar trim**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 185




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)”, page 180

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)”, page 181

## 5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)

**Note**

*The exploded view is based on the driver side. The front passenger side is similar with the attachments fitted as a mirror-image on the opposite sides.*

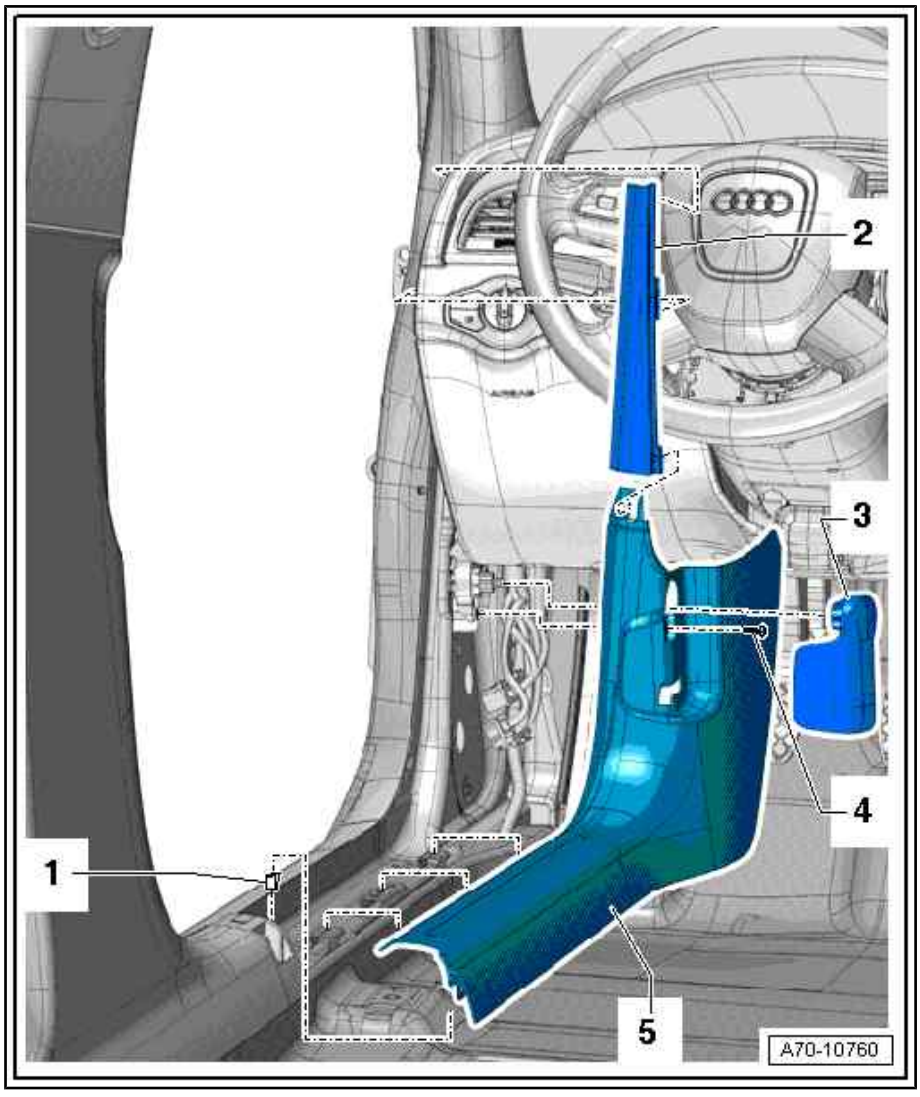
**1 - Clip**
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**2 - Trim cover for A-pillar**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

**3 - Operating lever**
- ❑ For cable
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet

**4 - Bolt**
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

**5 - Sill panel trim (front)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187



## 5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)

**1 - Sill panel trim (rear)**

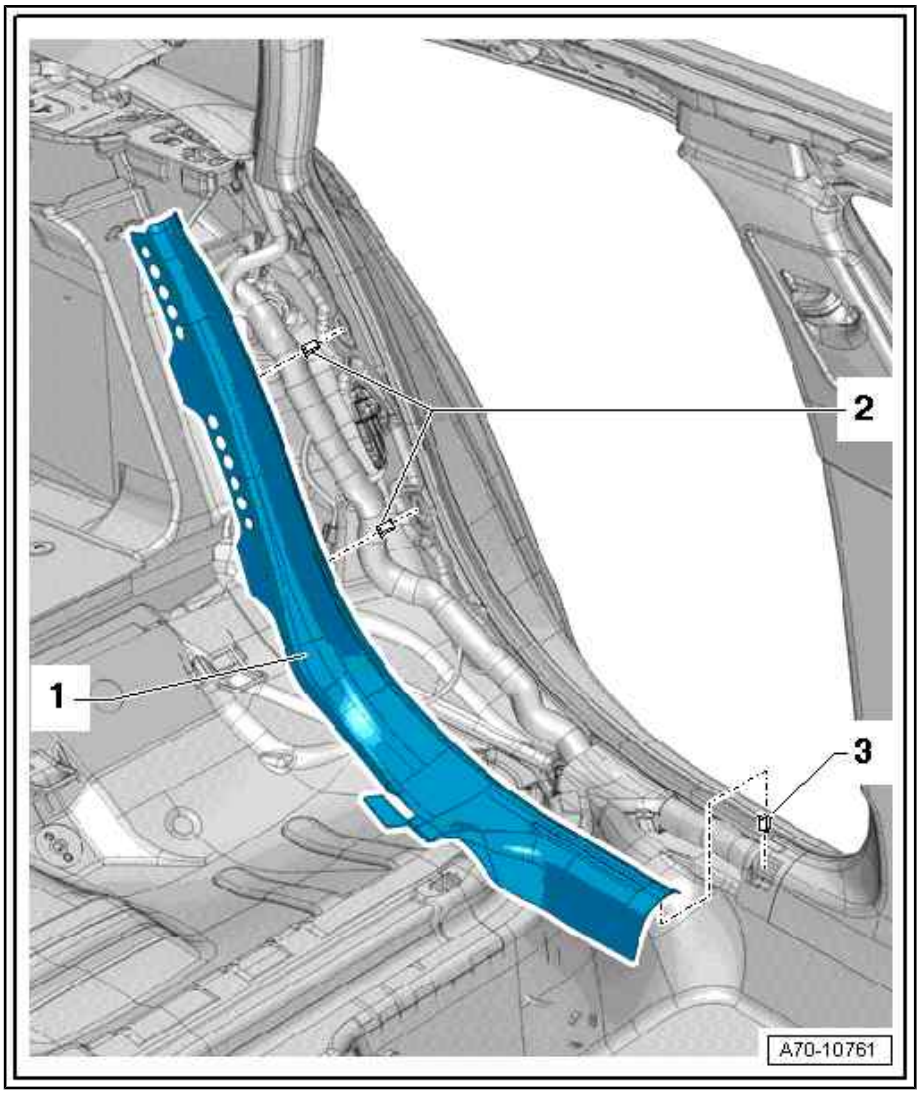
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

**2 - Clip**

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**3 - Clip**

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

**1 - Clips**

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**2 - Bolt**

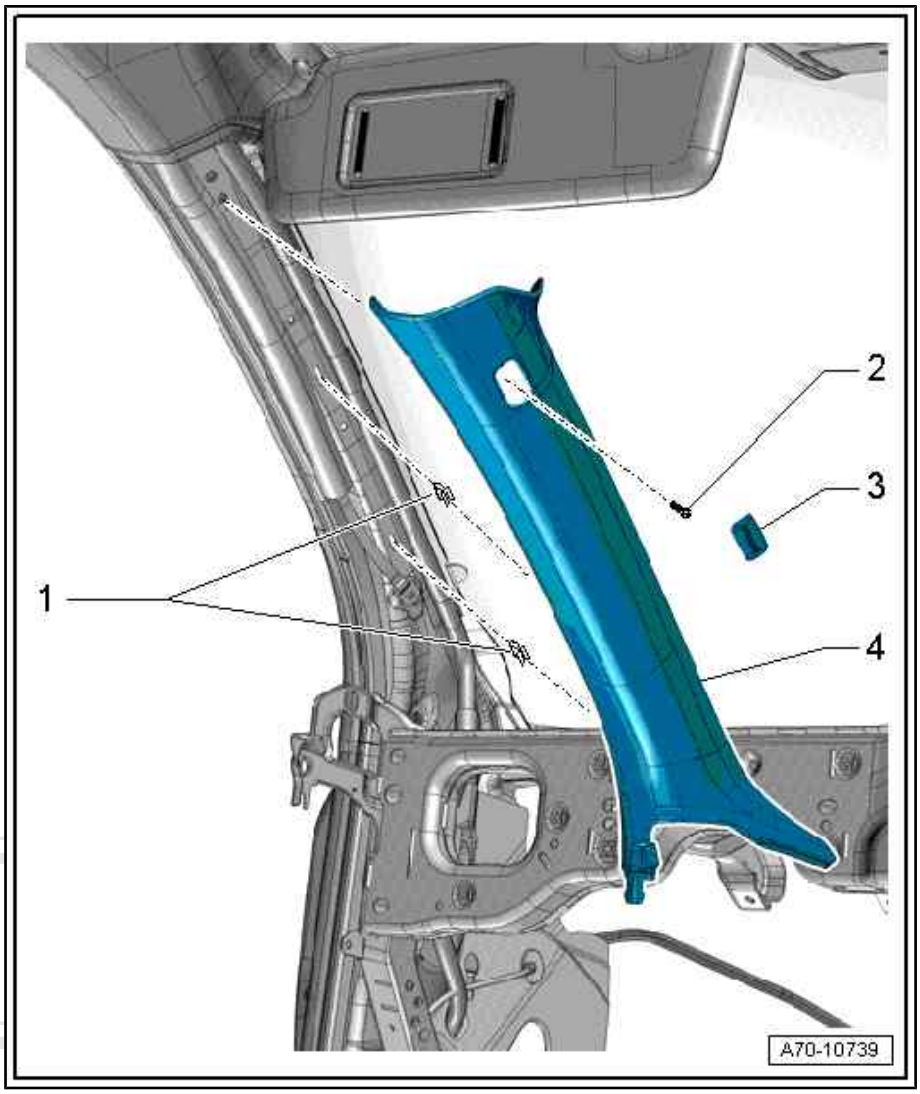
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded hole for bolt, using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

**3 - Cap**

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully
- ❑ Permanently attached to trim

**4 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

**1 - Clip**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**2 - Slide**

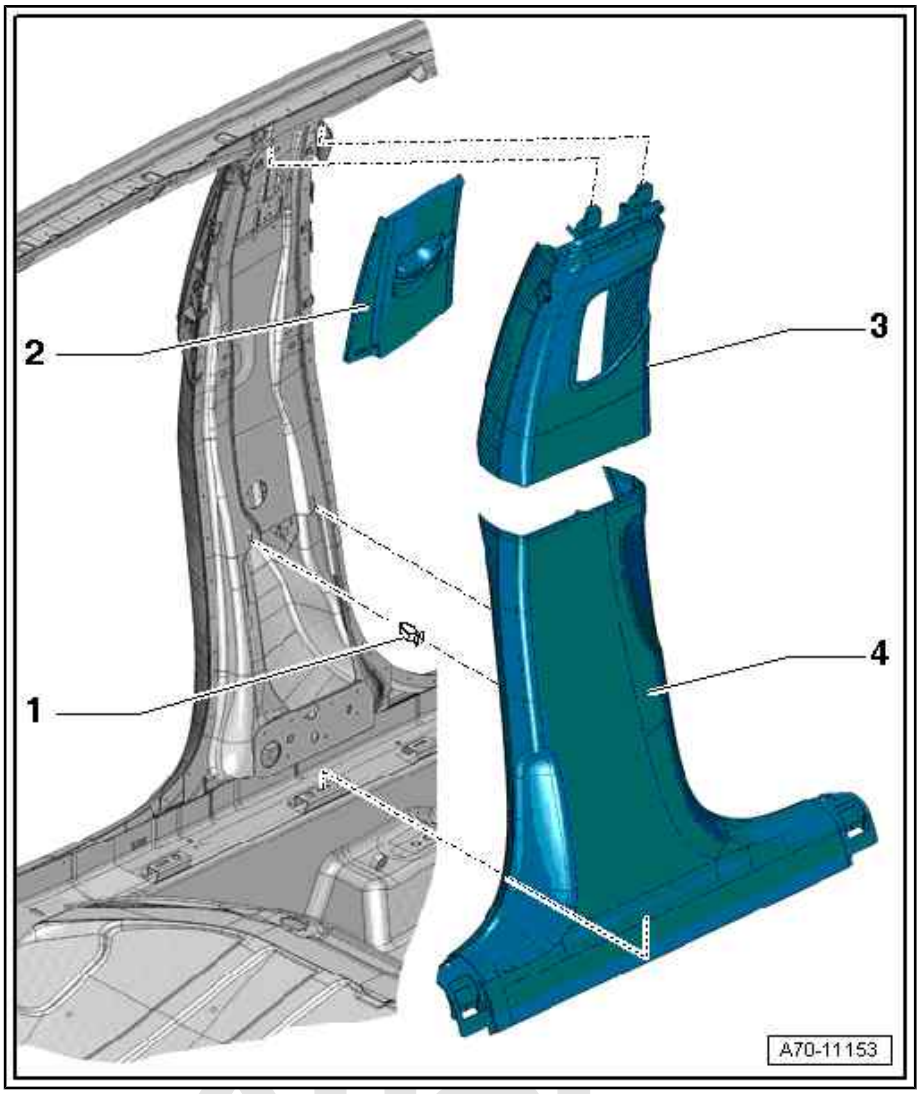
- ❑ For belt height adjuster
- ❑ Component of B-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

**3 - B-pillar trim (top)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

**4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

**1 - C-pillar trim**

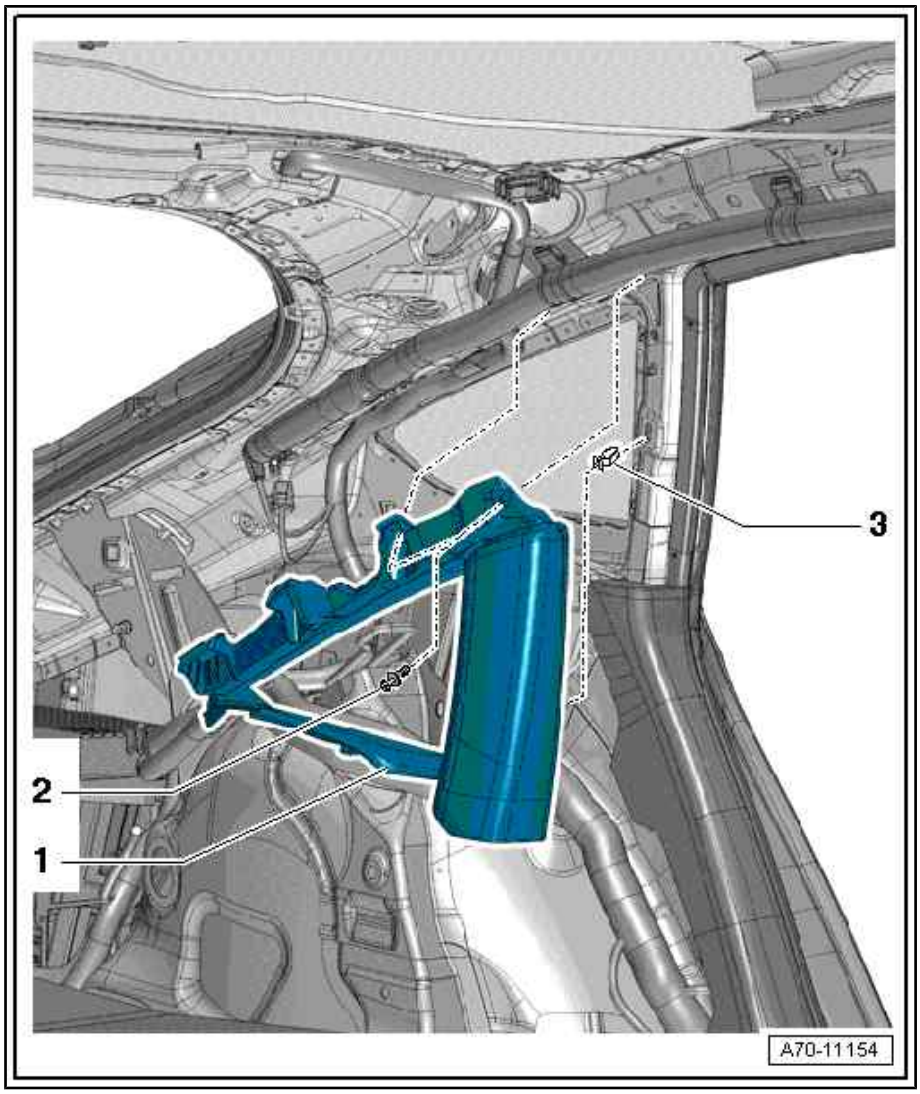
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

**2 - Fastener**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Unclip carefully

**3 - Clip**

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed



## 5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

**1 - D-pillar trim**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

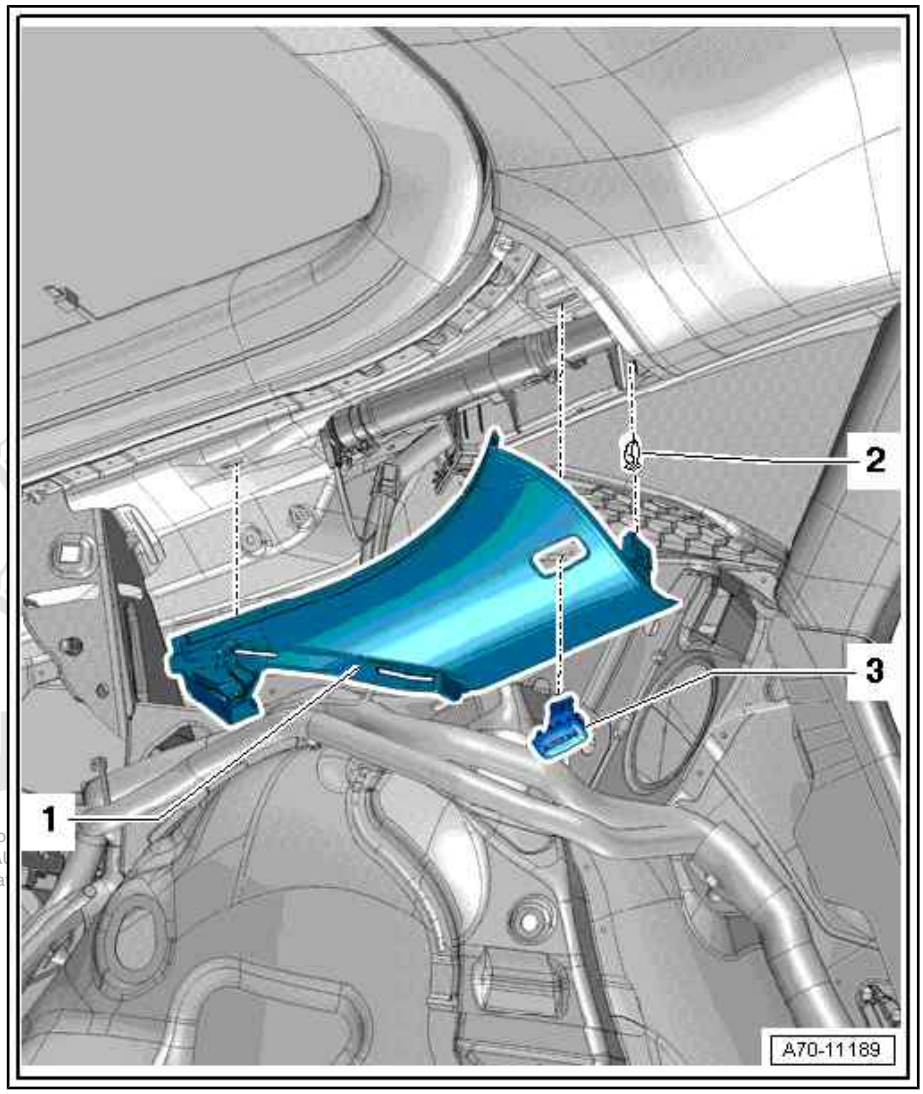
**2 - Clip**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**3 - Fastener**

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully

Protected by copyright. Copying for private o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A
with respect to the correctness of informa



# 5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering

**1 - Dash panel cover (driver side)**

**2 - Clip**

- ❑ Insert in foot rest

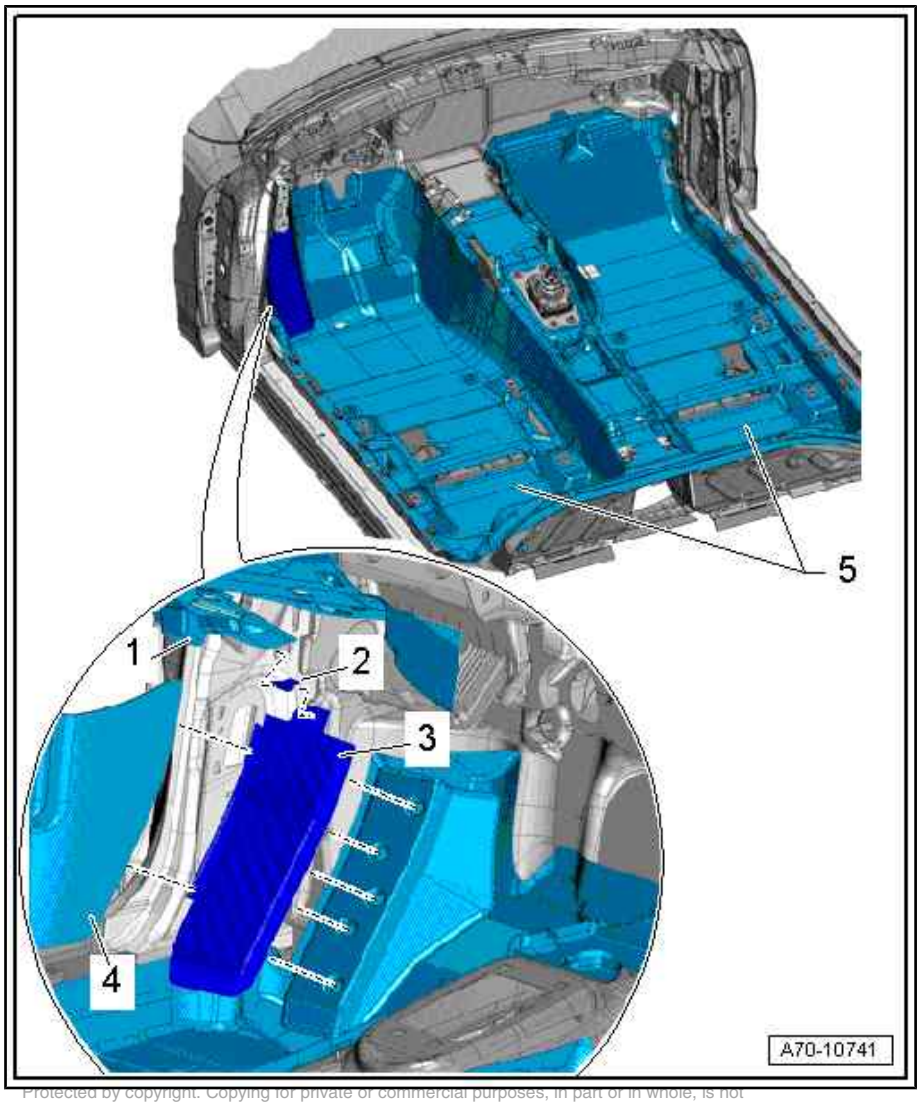
**3 - Foot rest**

- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

**4 - Sill panel trim (front)**

**5 - Floor covering**

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 197




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf

**1 - Rubber mounting**

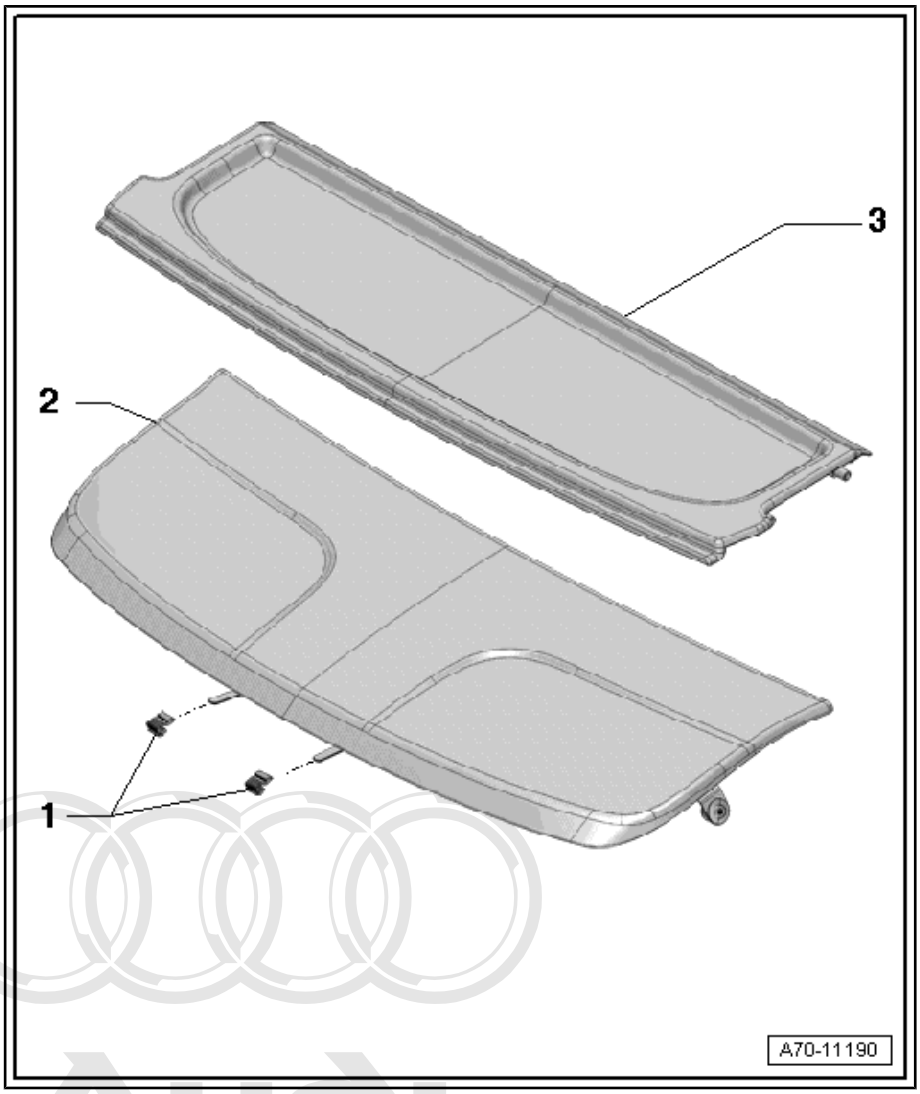
- ❑ Insert in rear lid trim

**2 - Rear section of rear shelf**

- ❑ Hooked into rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198

**3 - Front section of rear shelf**

- ❑ Engaged in luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198




## 5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ "5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)", page 187

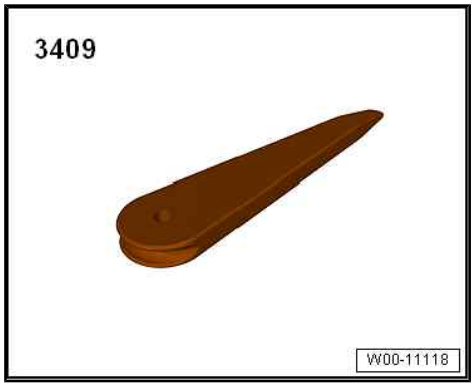
⇒ "5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)", page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

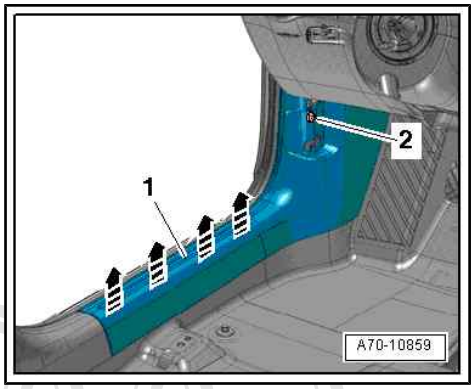
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove trim cover for A-pillar ⇒ page 191 .

**Driver side:**

– Remove Bowden cable operating lever for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Remove bolt -2- for sill panel trim (front).




**Both sides of vehicle (continued):**

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim (front) -1- from sill panel -arrows-.

– Pull sill panel trim (front) out of foot rest towards rear.

– Disengage sill panel trim (front) at mounting for operating lever and detach.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

**Driver side:**

– Engage sill panel trim (front) at mounting for operating lever and slide into foot rest.

**Passenger side:**

– Insert guide for sill panel trim (front) in floor covering.

**Both sides of vehicle (continued):**

– Clip in sill panel trim (front) at sill panel and fold over lip of door seal.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 180

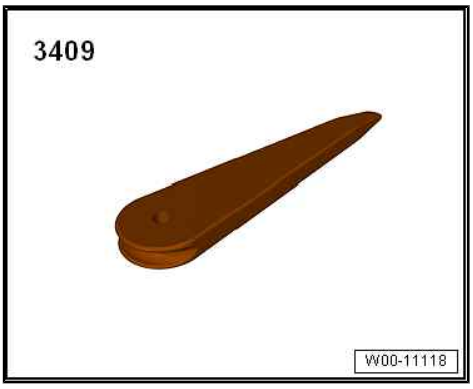
## 5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

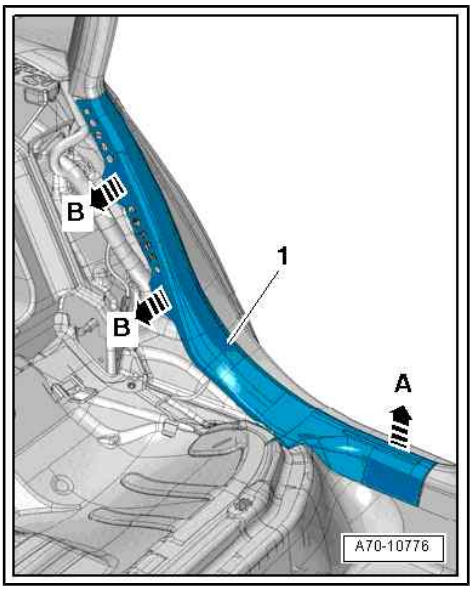
**Removing**

– Equipment version with side airbag (rear): Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 109 .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 400 .

– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from sill panel -arrow A-.

– Unclip sill panel trim at side panel -arrows B- and detach.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *If there are still clips for the sill panel trim in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the sill panel trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Insert sill panel trim in C-pillar trim and press onto sill panel until it engages audibly.

– Fold over lip of door seal.

## 5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-

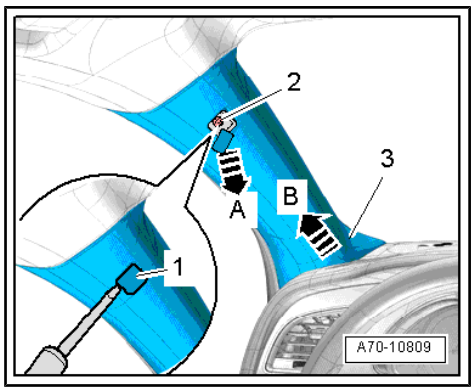



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*




– Remove trim cover for A-pillar ⇒ page 191 .
– Use a screwdriver to carefully unclip cap -1- with “airbag” symbol from A-pillar trim (top).
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Starting at top, carefully unclip A-pillar trim (top) -3- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A-.
– Pull A-pillar trim (top) out of dash panel -arrow B- and detach.

## Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

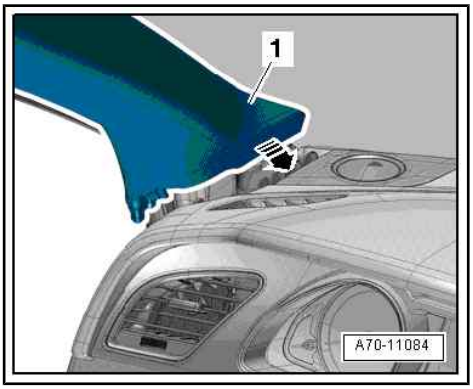
- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Use a thread tap to remove any residual locking fluid from threaded hole for bolt for A-pillar trim (top).

**Note**

*If the threaded hole is not cleaned, there is a danger of the new bolt seizing when being screwed in and then shearing off the next time you try to remove it.*

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting on dash panel -arrow-.
– Clip in A-pillar trim (top) and fold over lip of door seal.




## 5.11 Removing and installing trim cover for A-pillar trim

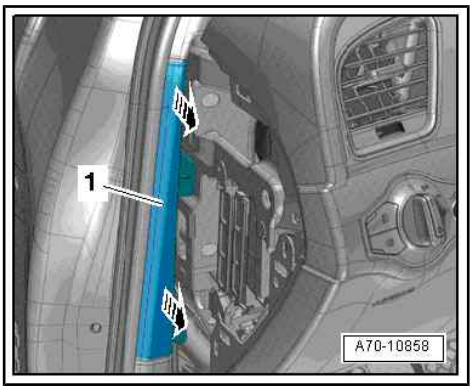
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 160
– Unclip trim cover -1- from A-pillar trim and sill panel trim -arrows-.
– Pull trim cover upwards out of clip at A-pillar and detach.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.12.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)”, page 191

⇒ “5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)”, page 193

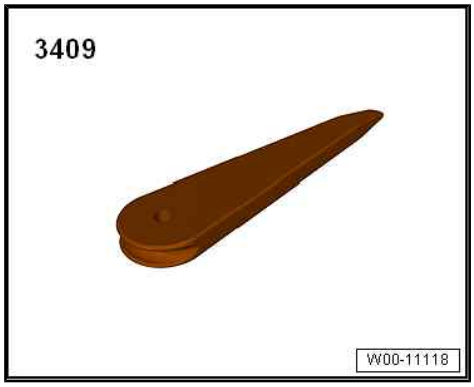
## 5.12.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

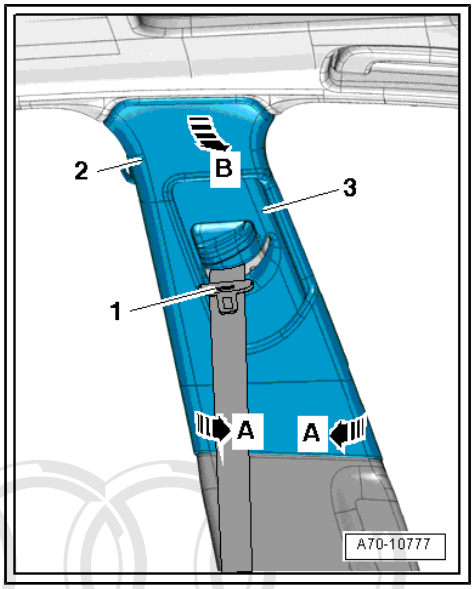
- Removal wedge - 3409-




## Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*




– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 70 .
– Operate belt height adjustment button and move belt height adjustment slide to bottom position.
– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim (top) and unclip B-pillar trim (top) -2- -arrows A-.
– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
– Thread belt -1- with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster -3- and detach B-pillar trim.

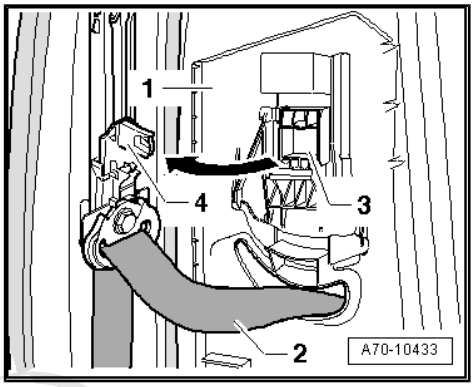
## Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Thread in belt -2- with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.




**Note**

*Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.*

– Make sure mounting -3- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) -1- engages in retaining pin -4- at belt height adjuster.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 70 .

– First insert B-pillar trim into moulded headliner opening and in mounting on inside of roof.

– Fold lips of door seals over trim.

## 5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

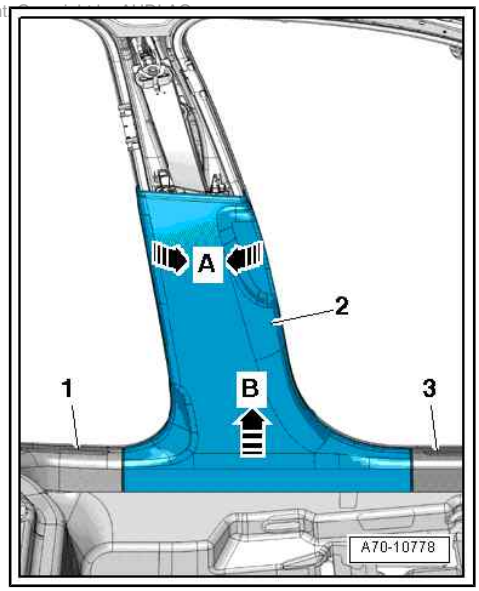
### Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 191 .

– Unclip sill panel trim (rear)-1- at front from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 189 .

– Unclip sill panel trim (front) -3- at rear from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 187 .

– Unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) -2- from B-pillar -arrows A- and lift off -arrow B-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First position B-pillar trim at bottom of centring pin.

– Press on B-pillar trim until it engages audibly.

– Fold lips of door seals over trim.

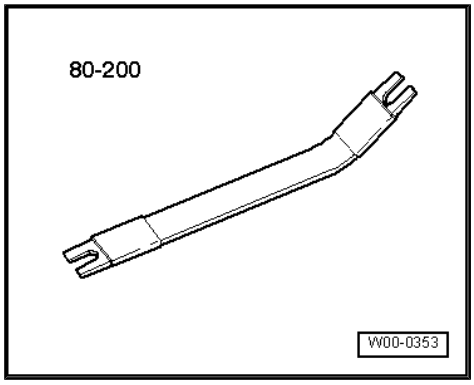
## 5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-




### Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Remove belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 69 .

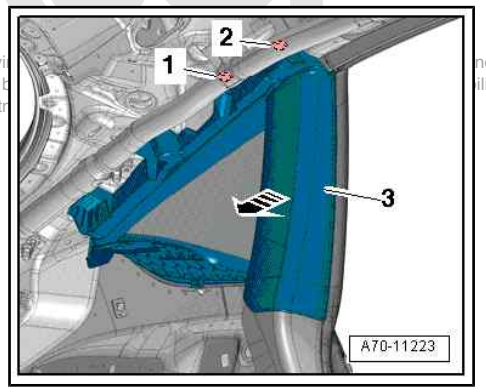
– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 216 .

**Caution**

- *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Remove fasteners -1, 2- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– Unclip C-pillar trim -item 3- with removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrow- and detach.




Protected by copyright. Copyi... not permitted unless authorised b... with respect to the correctr... ility

### Installing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on C-pillar trim until it engages audibly.

## 5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

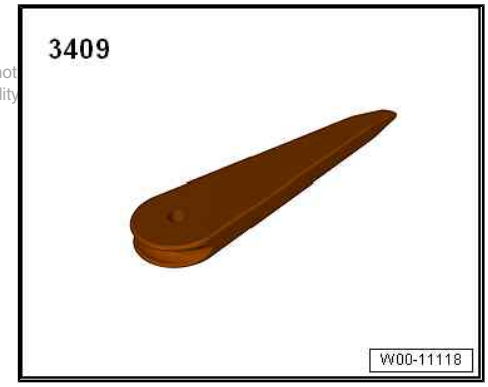
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

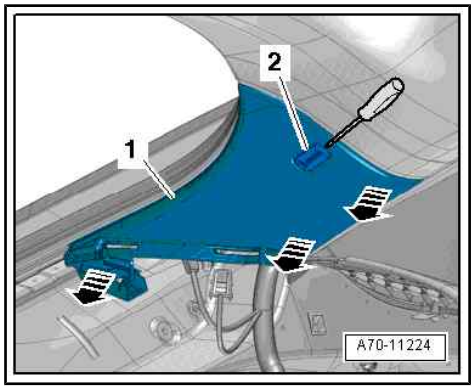
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**Removing**




**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 210 .
– Use a screwdriver to lever “airbag” symbol -2- approx. 5 mm out of fastener.
– Unclip D-pillar trim -item 1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting D-pillar trim.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

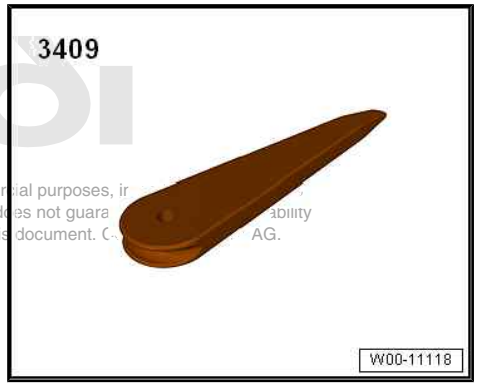
- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on D-pillar trim until it engages audibly.
– Press in “airbag” symbol to lock fastener.

## 5.15 Removing and installing foot rest

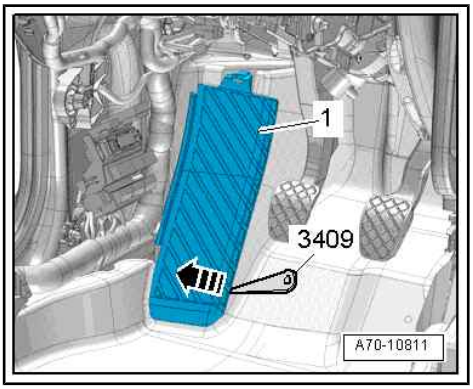
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara ability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C AG.

### Removing




**Note**

*If removed, the foot rest is damaged irreparably and must be renewed.*

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .
– Remove sill panel trim (front, driver side) ⇒ page 187 .
– Unclip foot rest -1- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew foot rest, ensuring new foot rest engages fully in mountings.

## 5.16 Removing and installing floor covering

### Removing

– Remove front seats:

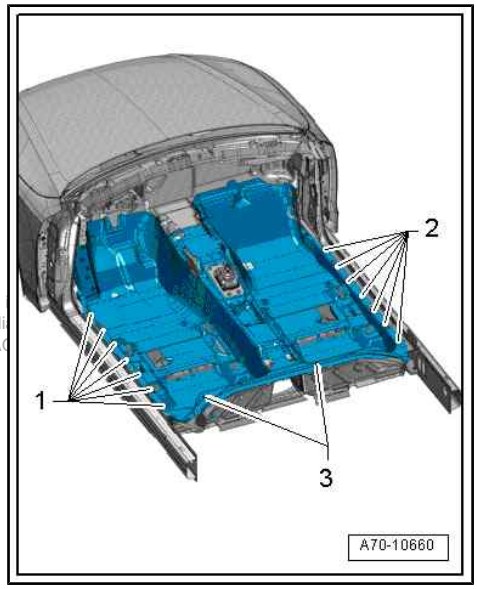
♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

♦ Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .
– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 39 .
– Remove bracket for centre console and lower shift mechanism ⇒ page 43 .
– Remove air duct to vent in rear centre console at centre tunnel ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
– Remove sill panel trim panels (front) ⇒ page 187 .
– Remove sill panel trim panels (rear) ⇒ page 189 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 193 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage floor covering at retainers -1- and -2-.
– Pull floor covering -3- to rear.




**Note**

*Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.*

– Fold up floor covering lengthwise and take it out through one of the doors.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

– Fold up floor covering lengthwise and place it in vehicle.
– First slide floor covering to front until hole patterns of air duct and shift mechanism coincide.
– Then engage floor covering at retainers -1- and -2-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

## 5.17 Removing and installing rear shelf

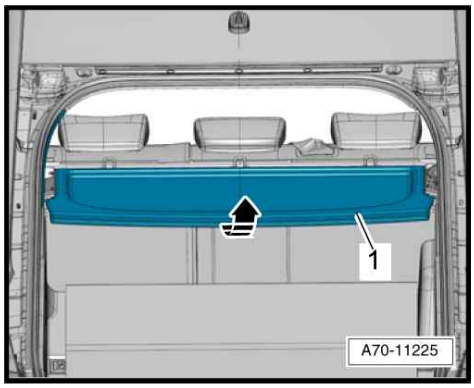
⇒ "5.17.1 Removing and installing front section of rear shelf", page 198

⇒ "5.17.2 Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf", page 198

## 5.17.1 Removing and installing front section of rear shelf

**Removing**

– Pull rear shelf -1- out towards rear -arrow- and detach.



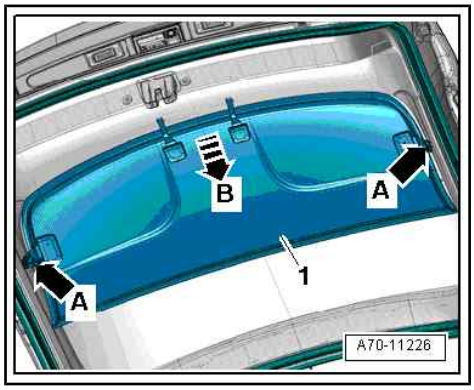

**Installing**

– Insert rear shelf in mountings (left and right) in luggage compartment side trim and slide forwards.

## 5.17.2 Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf

**Removing**

– Disengage rear shelf -1- from rear lid -arrows A-, pull out of rear lid trim -arrow B- and detach.




**Installing**

– Insert rear shelf in rear lid trim and engage in mountings (left and right) -arrows A-.

# 6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 199

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 202

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 203

⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 204

⇒ “6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)”, page 205

⇒ “6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 206

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 206

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)”, page 207

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 208

⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 209

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing bracket for fastening ring”, page 209

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 210

⇒ “6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 210

⇒ “6.14 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 212

⇒ “6.15 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor”, page 212

⇒ “6.16 Removing and installing frame for loading aid”, page 213

⇒ “6.17 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 213

⇒ “6.18 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 214

⇒ “6.19 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock”, page 214

Audi
Reproduction of this document or any part of it, in any form or by any means, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

Luggage compartment trim panels ⇒ page 199

Rear lid trim panels ⇒ page 200

Luggage compartment trim panels

**1 - Lining for spare wheel pan**

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 213

**2 - Rear cross panel trim**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 206

**3 - Luggage compartment side trim**

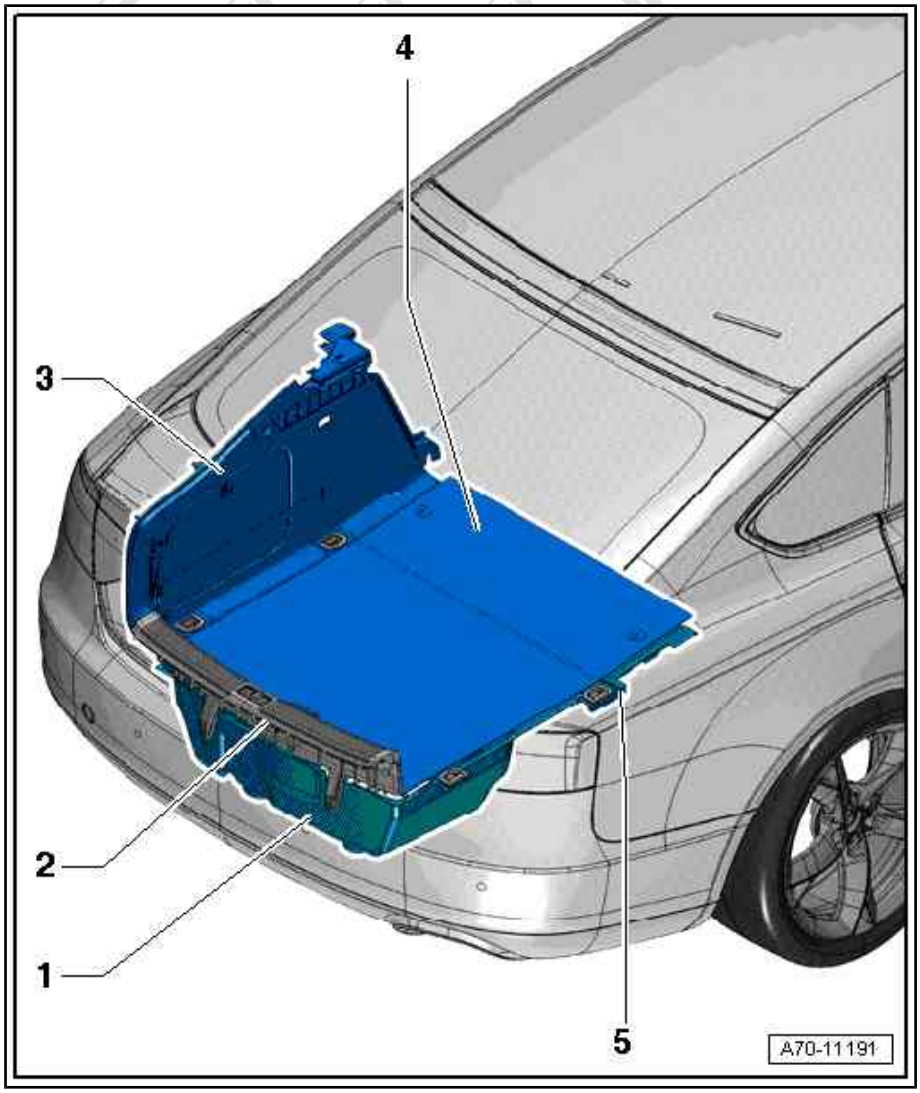
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 202

**4 - Luggage compartment floor covering**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 203

**5 - Mounting frame for loading aid**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 203



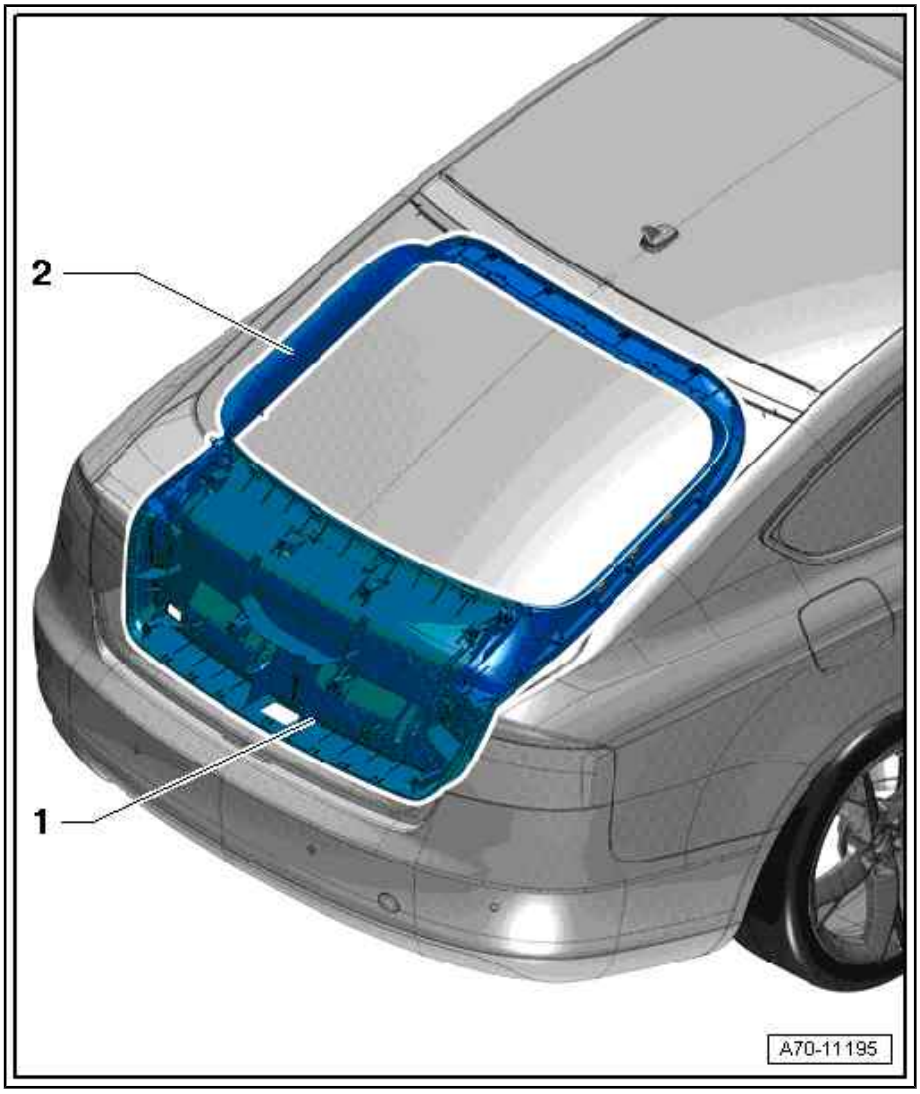

**Rear lid trim panels**

**1 - Rear lid trim (bottom)**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 204

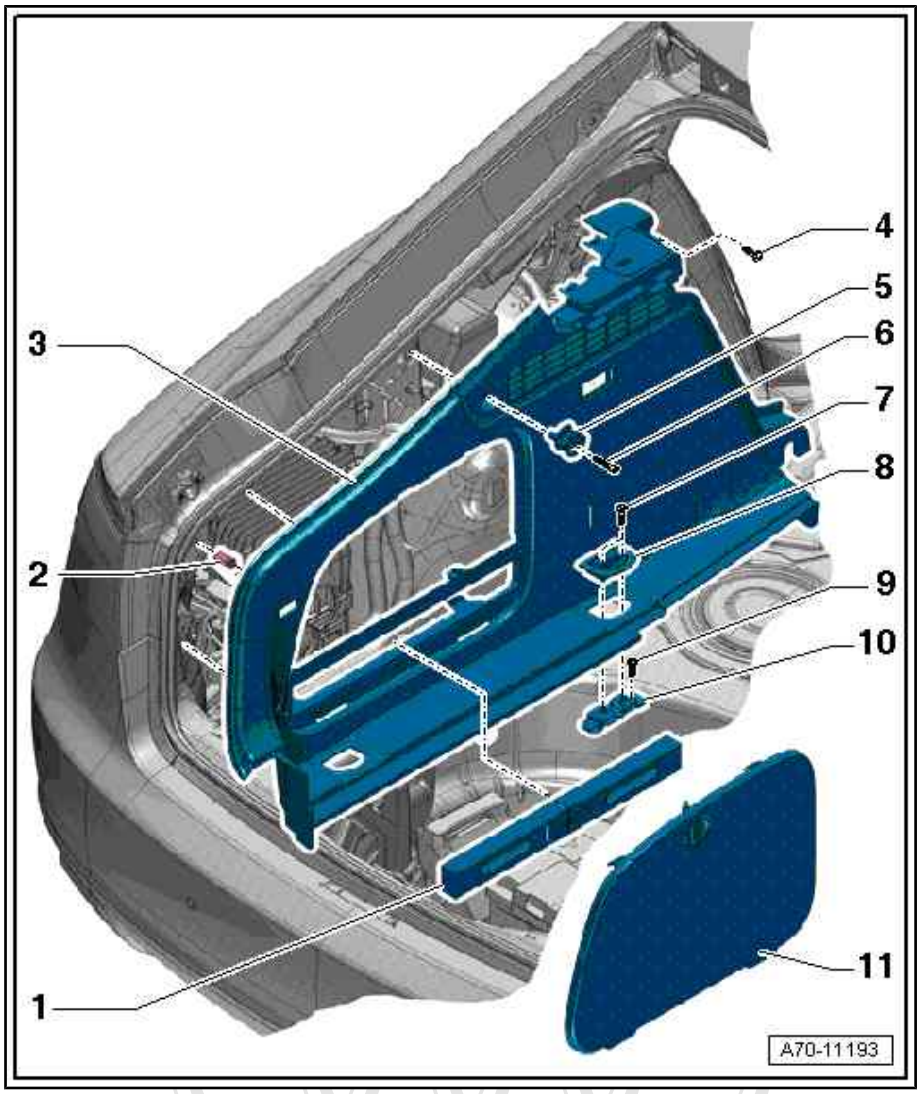
**2 - Rear lid trim (top)**

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 205




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim




**1 - Warning triangle**

**2 - Clip**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**3 - Luggage compartment side trim**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 1.8 Nm

**5 - Bag hook**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3 Nm

**7 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

**8 - Fastening ring**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

**9 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 9 Nm

**10 - Bracket**

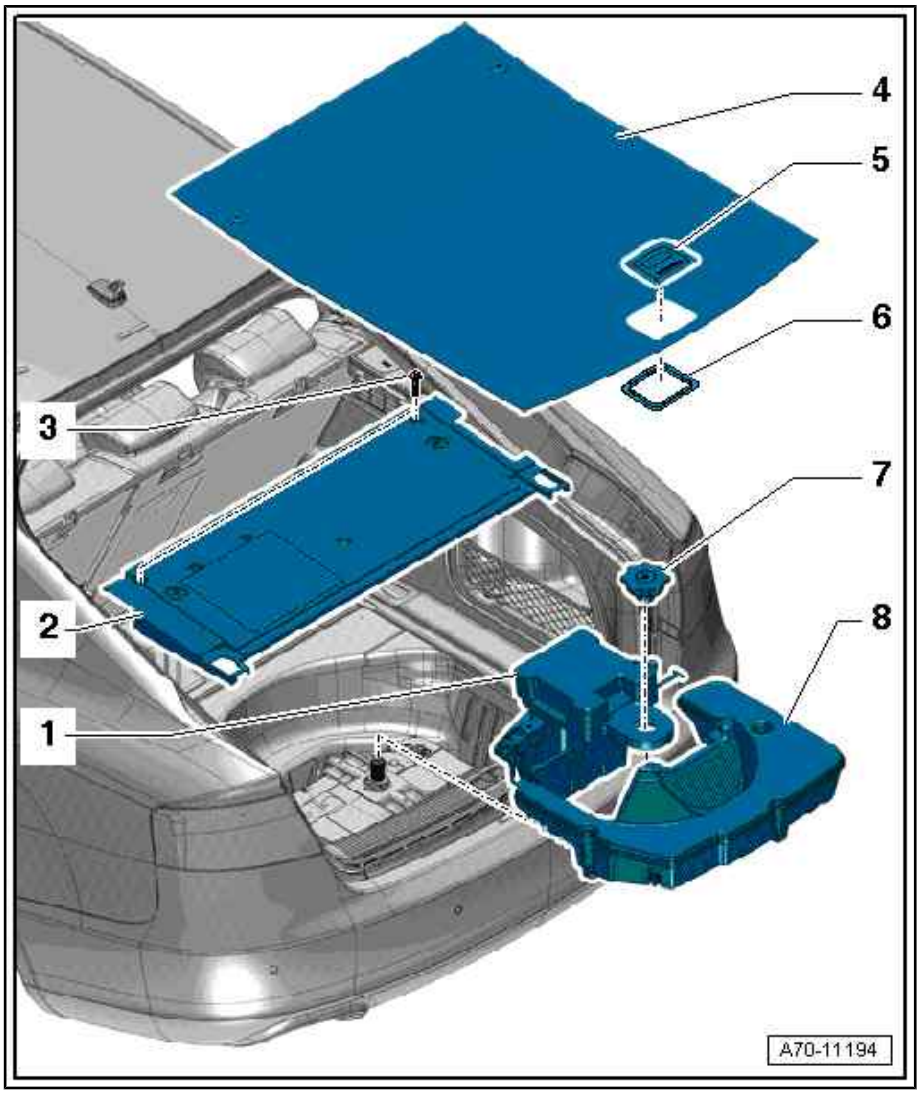
- ❑ For fastening ring
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

**11 - Cover**

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor




**1 - Vehicle tool kit**
- ❑ Depending on version

**2 - Mounting frame**
- ❑ For loading aid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

**4 - Luggage compartment floor covering**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

**5 - Retainer**
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

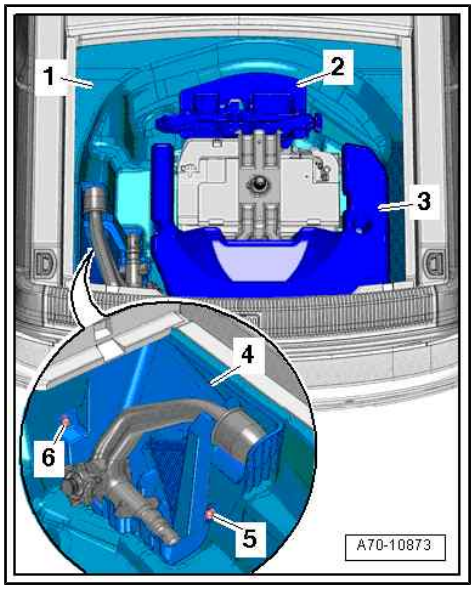
**6 - Retaining frame**
- ❑ For retainer for luggage compartment floor covering

**7 - Nut**
- ❑ For securing spare wheel
- ❑ Must engage audibly when tightening (otherwise tighten further)

**8 - Subwoofer**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing subwoofer - R211-

**Tightening torque for mounting for towing bracket -4- to body**

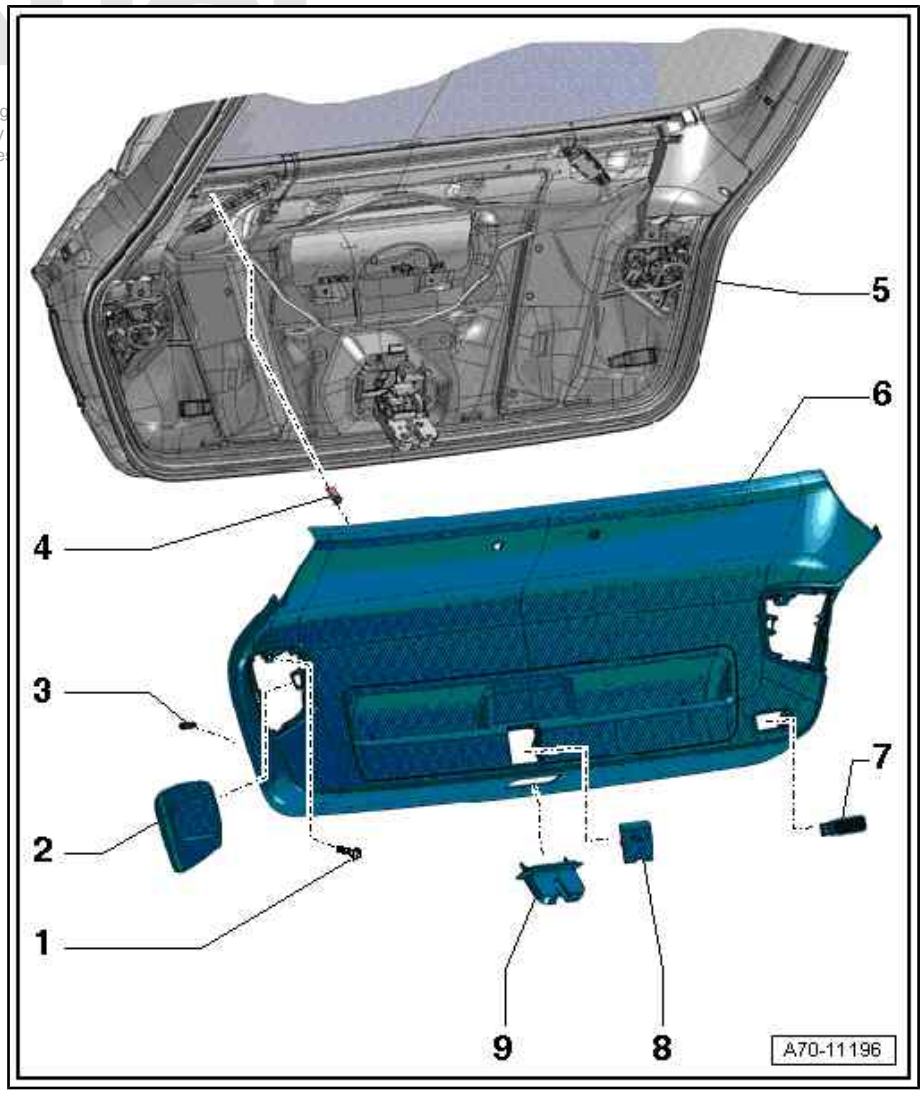
– Tighten nuts -5- and -6- to 4 Nm.




**Note**

*Disregard -items 1, 2, 3-.*

## 6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)




**1 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctne

**2 - Cover**
- ❑ For tail light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

**3 - Rubber buffer**
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

**4 - Clip**
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**5 - Rear lid**

**6 - Rear lid trim (bottom)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 206

**7 - Luggage compartment light**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment

**8 - Cover**
- ❑ For manual release mechanism

**9 - Trim**
- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

## 6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)

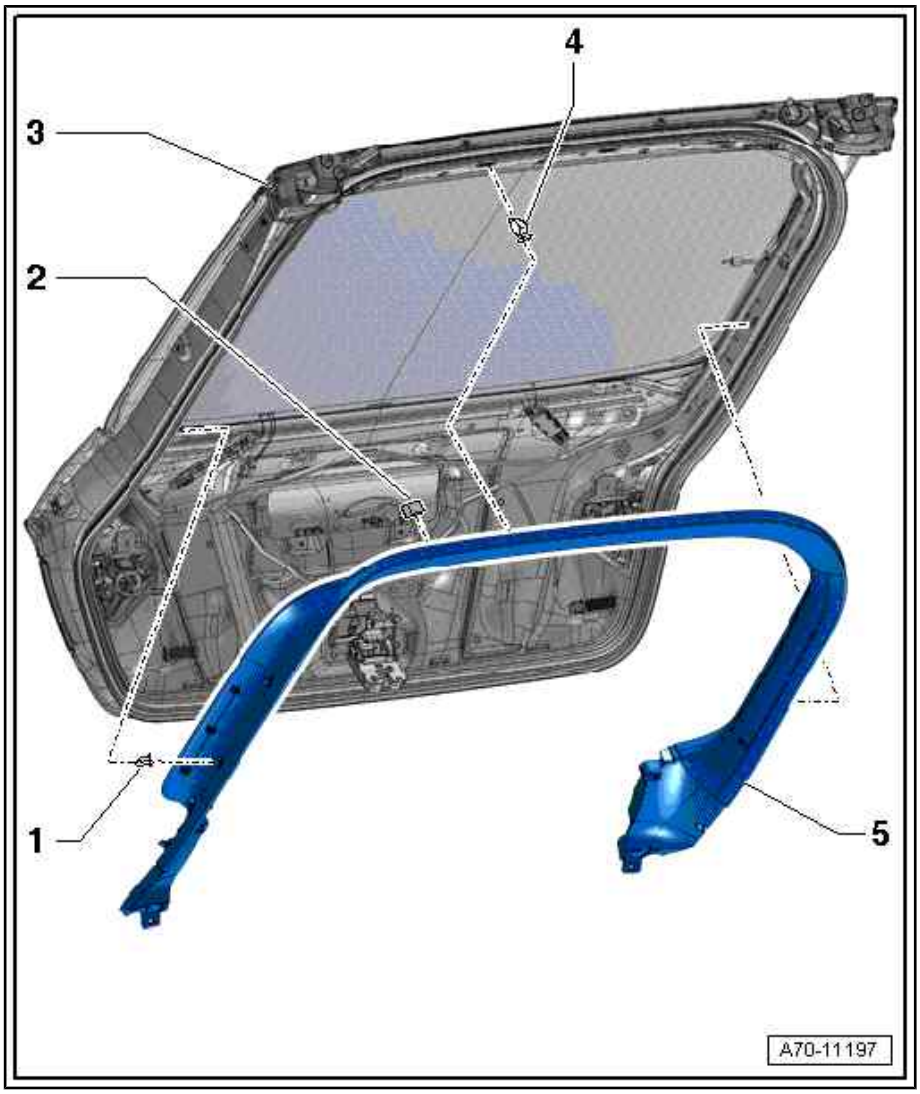
**1 - Clip**
- ❑ 6x (at sides)
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**2 - Rubber buffer**
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim

**3 - Rear lid**

**4 - Clip**
- ❑ 4x (at top)
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

**5 - Rear lid trim (top)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 207



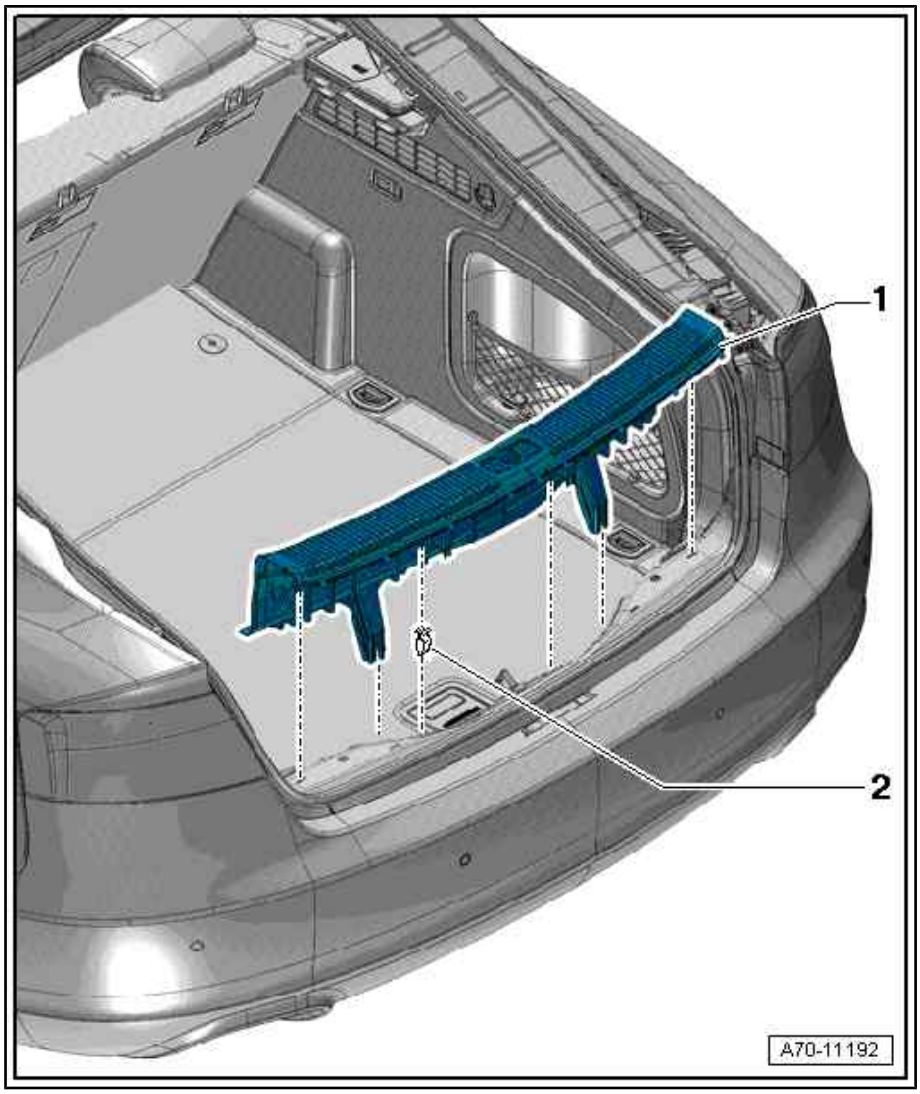
## 6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim

**1 - Rear cross panel trim**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

**2 - Clip**

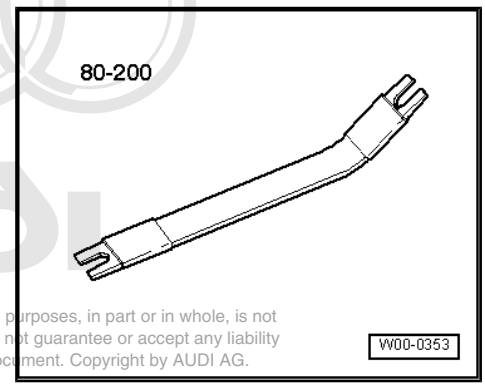
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed




## 6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

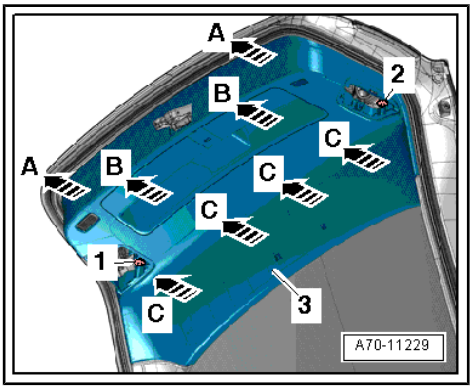
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

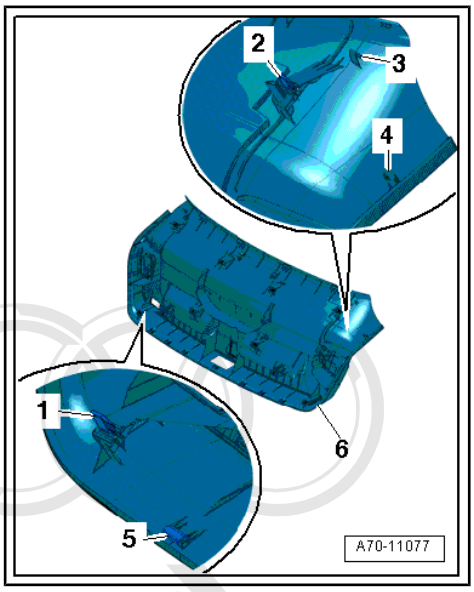
### Removing




- Remove rear section of rear shelf ⇒ page 198 .
- Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .
- Remove trim for rear lid lock ⇒ page 214 .
- Remove tail light covers ⇒ page 214 .
- Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
- Release clips on rear lid trim (bottom) -3- using removal lever - 80 - 200- and carefully unclip rear lid trim (bottom) from rear lid -arrows A, B-.
- Reach in between trim and rear lid and disengage the remaining clips -arrows C-.
- Detach rear lid trim (bottom).

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:




**Note**

- *If there are still trim clips -2- in the rear lid mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

- Check that all rubber buffers -5- are fitted in trim.
- First apply rear lid trim (bottom) -6- at centring pins -1, 3, 4- and then press on trim until it engages audibly.

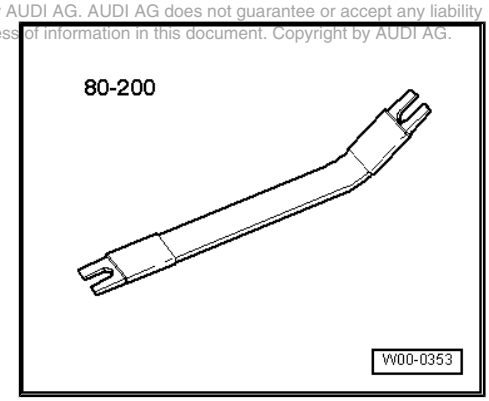
**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 204

## 6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-

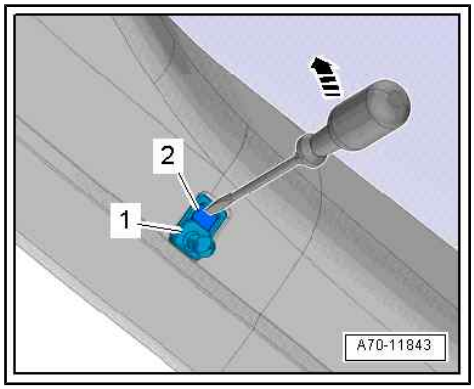


### Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 206 .

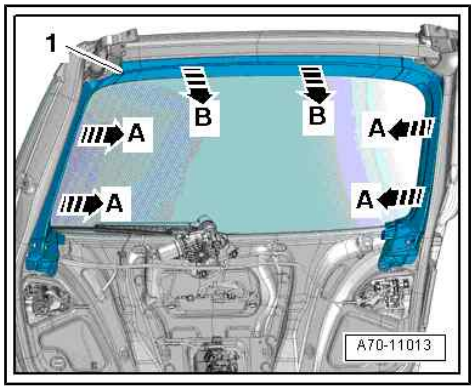
– Carefully prise off spreader pin -2- for ball head mounting on side of rear lid trim using a screwdriver -arrow-.

– Unclip ball head mounting -1- for rear shelf with a screwdriver and detach.




– First unclip rear lid trim (top) -1- from rear lid from the side using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.

– Then unclip trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows B- and detach.

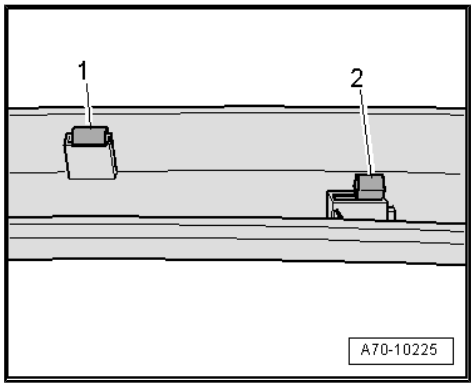



### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *If there are still trim clips -2- in the rear lid mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*




– Check that all rubber buffers -1- are fitted in trim.

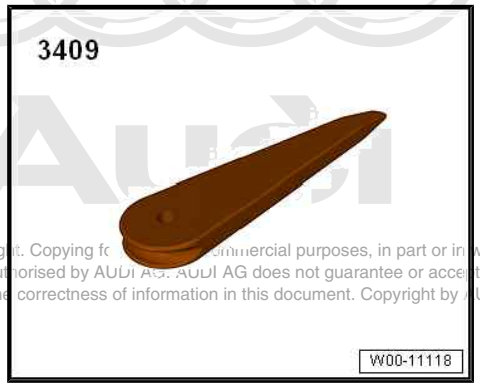
– First insert trim behind side window frames of rear lid.

– Clip in rear lid trim (top), first at top and then at sides.

## 6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



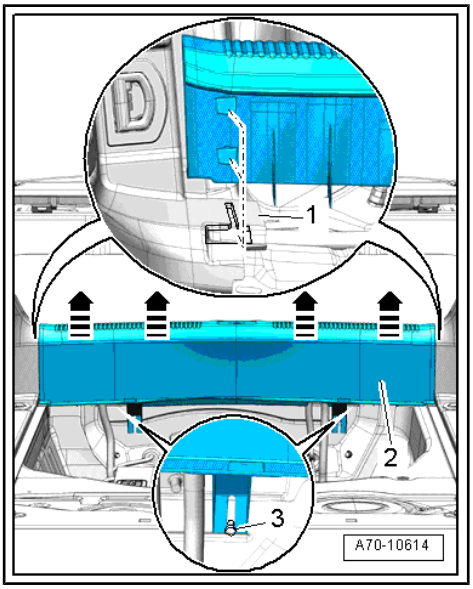

Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 212 .

– Pull off lip of rear lid seal in area of rear cross panel trim.

– Working vertically upwards, unclip rear cross panel trim -2- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Insert retaining tabs on rear cross panel trim (left and right) in recesses of luggage compartment side trim -1-.

– Insert rear cross panel trim so that tabs engage in pins -3- (left and right).

– Press on rear cross panel trim until it engages audibly and fold lip of rear lid seal over rear cross panel trim.

## 6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring

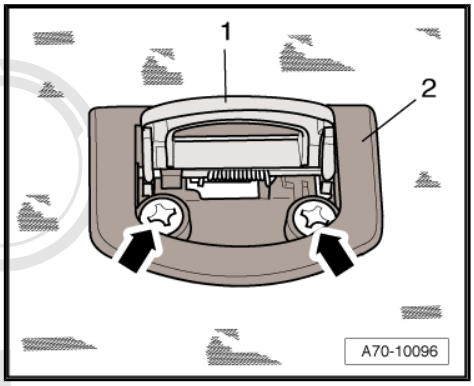
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

– Fold fastening ring -1- upwards.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach mounting bracket for fastening ring -2-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 202

## 6.11 Removing and installing bracket for fastening ring

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Removing**

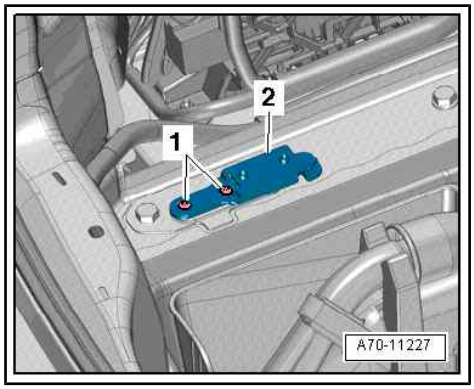
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 210 .

**Bracket (front):**

– Remove mounting frame for loading aid ⇒ page 213 .

**All brackets (continued):**

– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach bracket -2-.




**Note**

*The illustration shows the rear bracket.*

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 202

## 6.12 Removing and installing bag hook

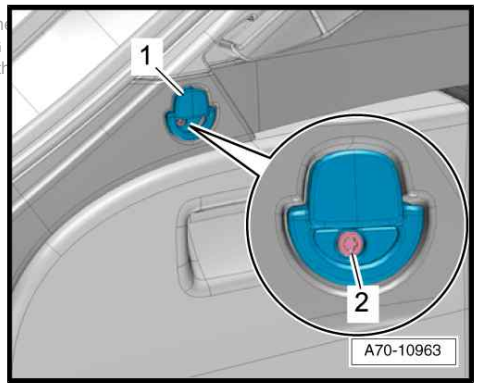
**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
does not guarantee to the correctness of information in th

**Removing**

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach bag hook -1-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 202

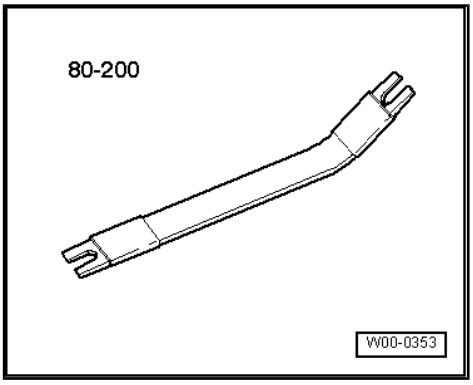
## 6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

**Note**

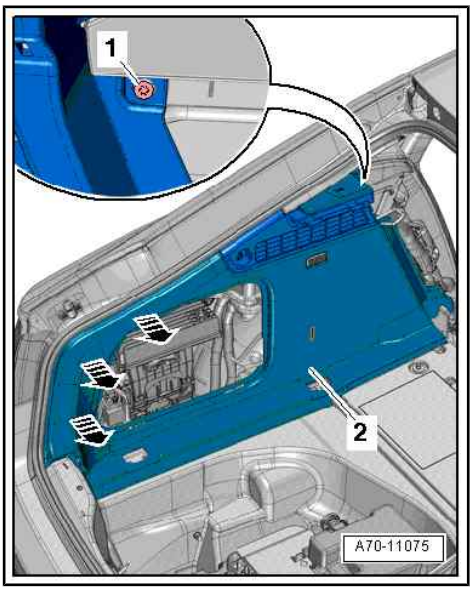
*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-




**Removing**




– Equipment version with side airbag (rear): Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 109 .
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 400 .
– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 212 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 208 .
– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 209 .
– Remove bag hook ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing luggage compartment light - W3- .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove cover for luggage compartment side trim.
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -2- off body -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Equipment version with sound system: Unplug electrical connector for loudspeaker.
– Detach luggage compartment side trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

♦ *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
♦ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press on luggage compartment side trim until it engages audibly.
– Fold lip of rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 202

## 6.14 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

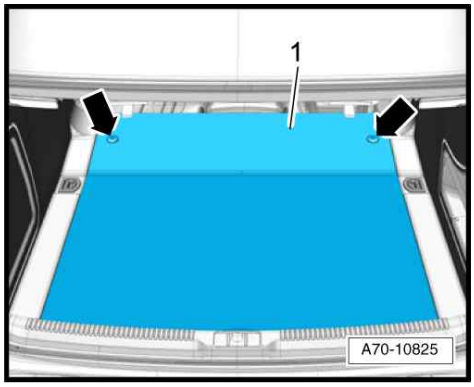
### Removing

– Unfasten luggage compartment floor covering (front) -1- -arrows-.

– Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.

### Installing

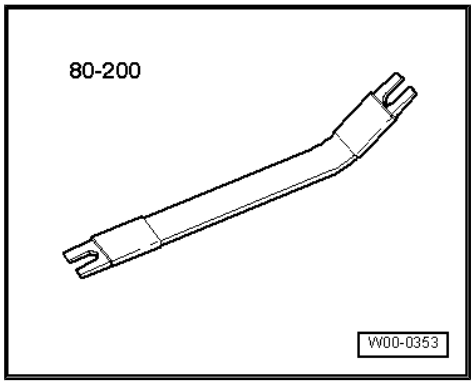
– Clip in luggage compartment floor covering (front) -1- -arrows-.




## 6.15 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-




### Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 212 .

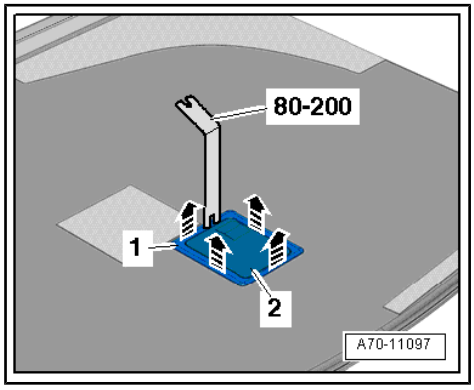
– Use removal lever - 80 - 200- to release retaining frame -1- -arrows-.

– Disengage retaining frame and detach retainer for luggage compartment floor covering -2-.

### Installing

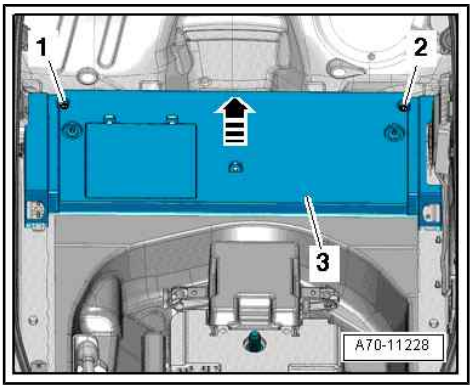
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– The retaining frame can only be pressed onto the retainer for luggage compartment floor covering in one position.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6.16 Removing and installing frame for loading aid




### Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ page 210 .

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

– Press mounting frame for loading aid -3- towards front off pin -arrow- and take out.

### Installing

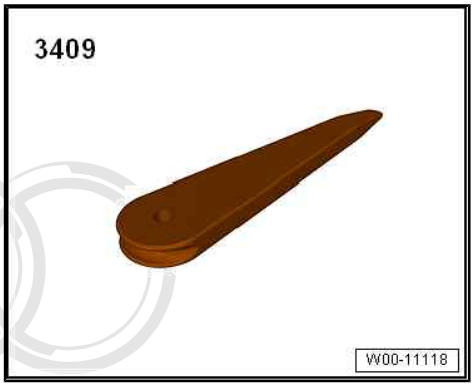
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

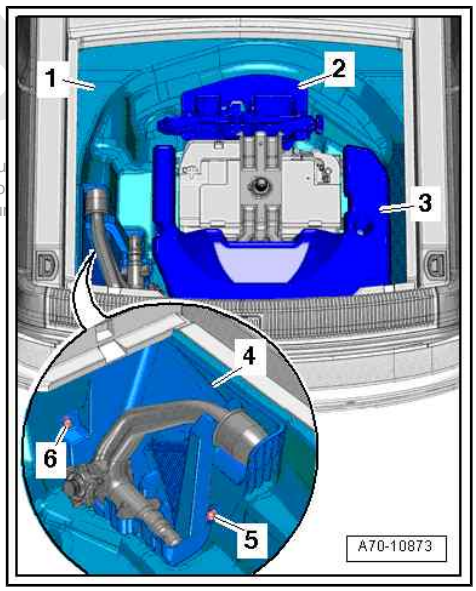
**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 203

## 6.17 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




### Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 212 .

– Remove spare wheel.

– Take out mounting -2- for vehicle tool kit.

– Equipment version with subwoofer: Remove subwoofer -3- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing subwoofer - R211- .

– Equipment version with towing bracket: Unscrew nuts -5- and -6- and remove mounting for towing bracket -4-.

– Pull lining -1- for spare wheel well out from underneath trim panels from the side and the front and lift out.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert lining -1- for spare wheel well.

– Slightly lift trim panels at side and front using removal wedge - 3409- and slide in lining.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 204

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

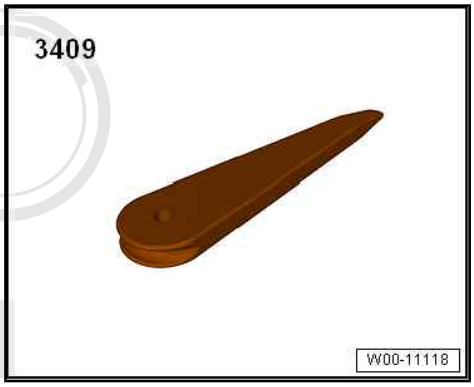
## 6.18 Removing and installing tail light cover

**Note**

*Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

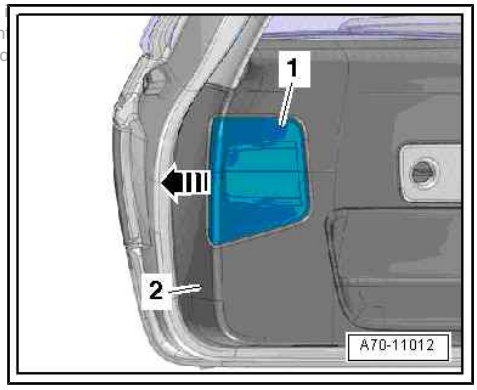
- Removal wedge - 3409-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

**Removing**

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip tail light cover -1- from trim (bottom) -2- in direction of -arrow- and detach.



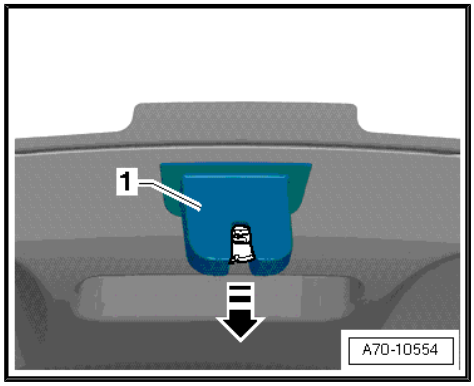

**Installing**

– Position cover for tail light on bottom of trim and press it on until it engages audibly.

## 6.19 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock

**Removing**

– Detach trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow-.




**Installing**

– Press on trim for rear lid lock until it engages audibly.

# 7 Roof trim panels

⇒ "7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim", page 215

⇒ "7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 216

⇒ "7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner", page 216

⇒ "7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body", page 219

## 7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim

**1 - Grab handle**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

**2 - Interior light/reading light (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

**3 - Sun visor**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 28

**4 - Roof reinforcement**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Attaching: Vehicles without sliding sunroof ⇒ page 219 ; vehicles with sliding sunroof ⇒ page 220

**5 - Interior light/reading light (rear)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (rear)

**6 - Moulded headliner**

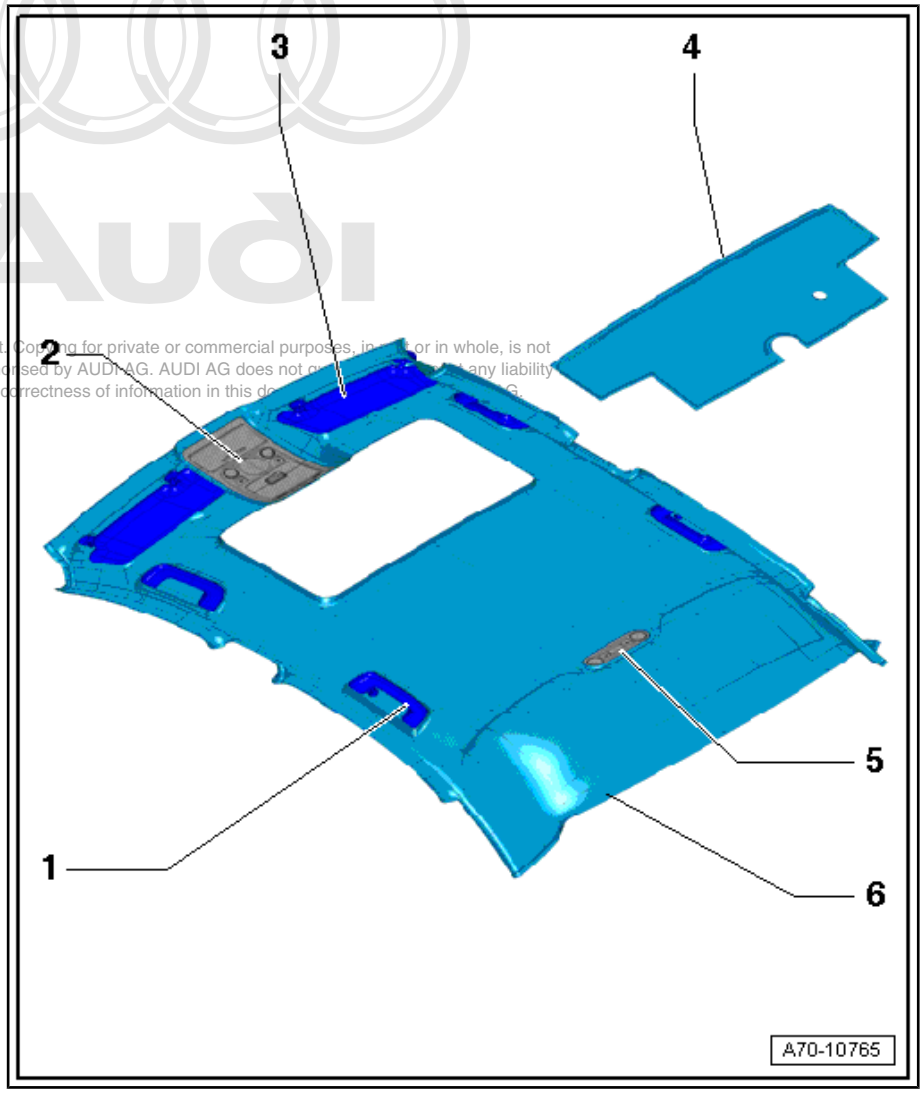
Equipment versions:

- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 216

**Caution**

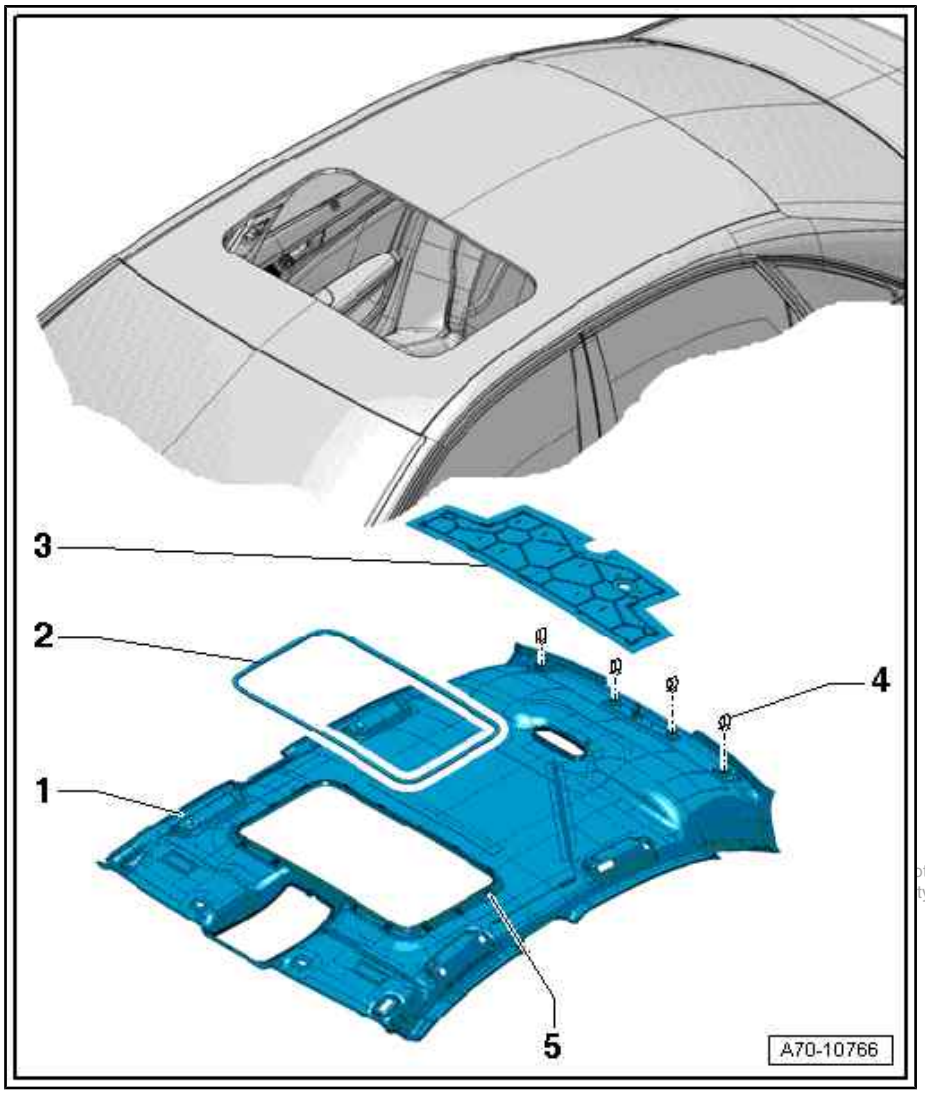
*The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*

*Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

## 7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner




**1 - Moulded headliner**

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

> **Caution**
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

**2 - Trim frame**

- ❑ Only on equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Mark faces rear of vehicle

**3 - Roof reinforcement**

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Attaching to body (with sliding sunroof) ⇒ page 220
  - ❑ Attaching to body (without sliding sunroof) ⇒ page 219

**4 - Clip**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

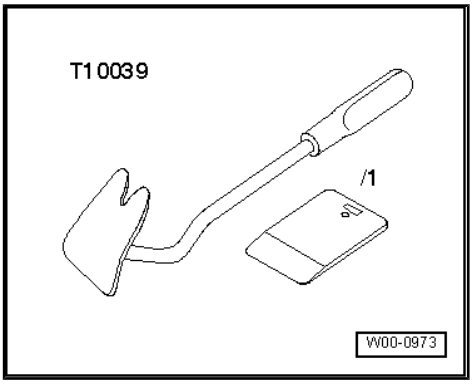
**5 - Clip**

- ❑ Only on equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Releasing ⇒ page 218

## 7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Release lever - T10039-




**Removing**

**WARNING**

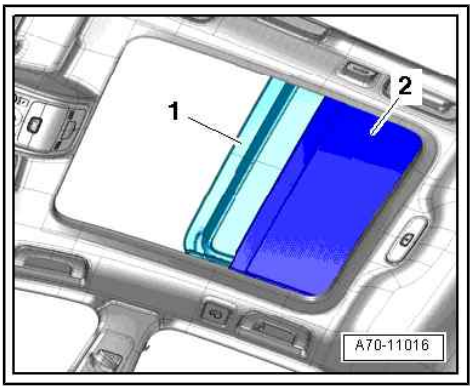
♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Move front seat backrests to 45° position.
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 189 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 191 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 195 .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 29 .
– Remove centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ page 29 .
– Remove windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 30 .
– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .

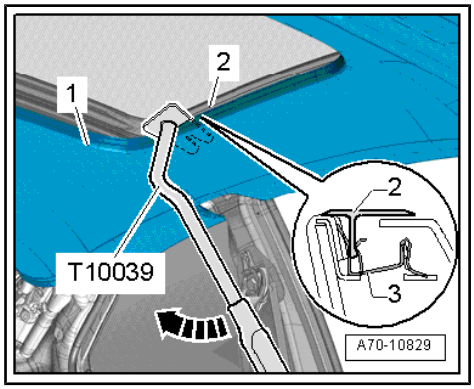
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with sliding sunroof:**

– Fully open sunroof -1-.
– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.

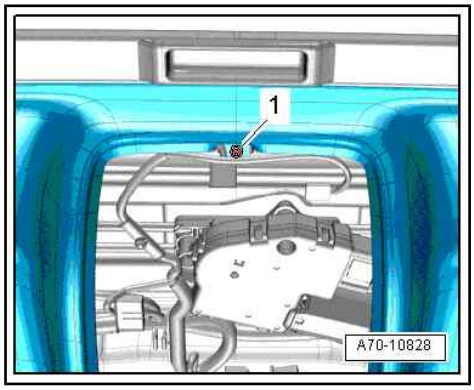


– Clean release lever - T10039- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Slide release lever - T10039- along between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner -1- until one of the clips -3- is located.
– Consecutively release clips with release lever - T10039- as shown -arrow-.




**Continued for all vehicles:**

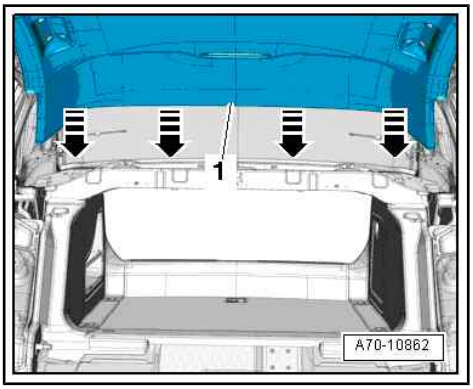
– If fitted, unscrew bolt -1- in roof cut-out for interior light/reading light (front).




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*




– Unclip moulded headliner -1- at rear from body -arrows-.

**Note**

*A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.*

– Lift moulded headliner over C-pillar trim panels.
– Take out moulded headliner through opening for windscreen.

**Installing**

**Note**

- *Equipment version with sliding sunroof: If there are still clips for the moulded headliner in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the moulded headliner when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
– Install centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ page 29 .
– Lift moulded headliner over C-pillar trim panels.
– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

## 7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

⇒ "7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version without sliding sunroof", page 219

⇒ "7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version with sliding sunroof", page 220

## 7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version without sliding sunroof

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

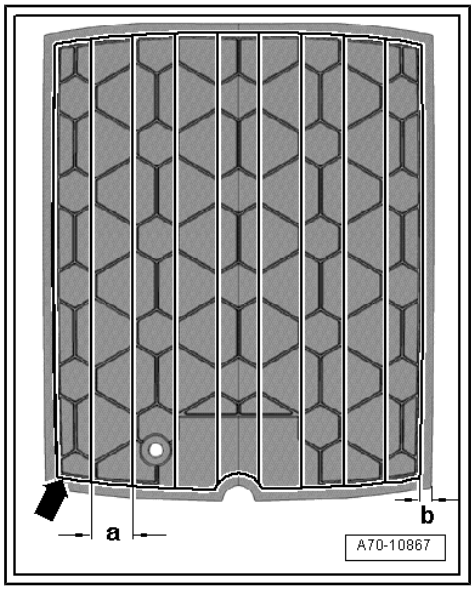
**Procedure**

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 216 .

**Caution**

♦ *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*

♦ *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*




– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement, as shown in illustration.

• Distance between adhesive beads: dimension -a- = approx. 90 mm

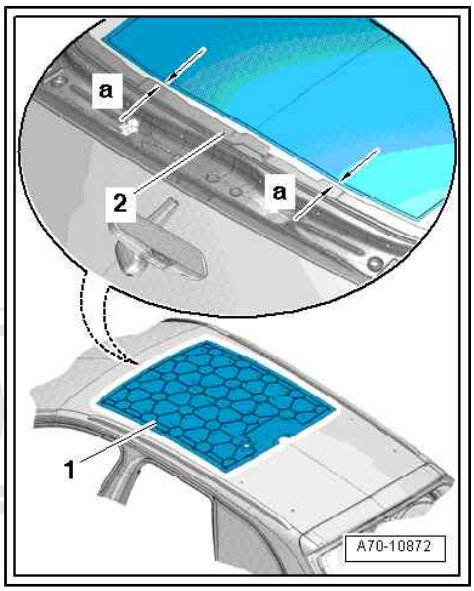
• Distance between outer adhesive beads and edge of roof reinforcement: Dimension -b- = approx. 20 mm

– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof of body centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -2- of front edge of roof.

• Dimension -a- = 30 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof of body from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 219 .




## 7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version with sliding sunroof

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**Procedure**

– Detach moulded headliner and lay it down on seats (do not remove windscreen) ⇒ page 216 .

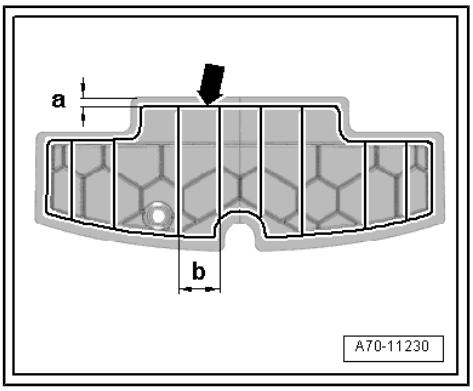
Copyright: Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

- *The moulded headliner must be removed and set down on the seats for the following work steps. Proceed very carefully when doing so as the moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement, as shown in illustration.

- Distance between adhesive beads: dimension -b- = approx. 90 mm
- Distance between outer adhesive beads and edge of roof reinforcement: Dimension -a- = approx. 20 mm

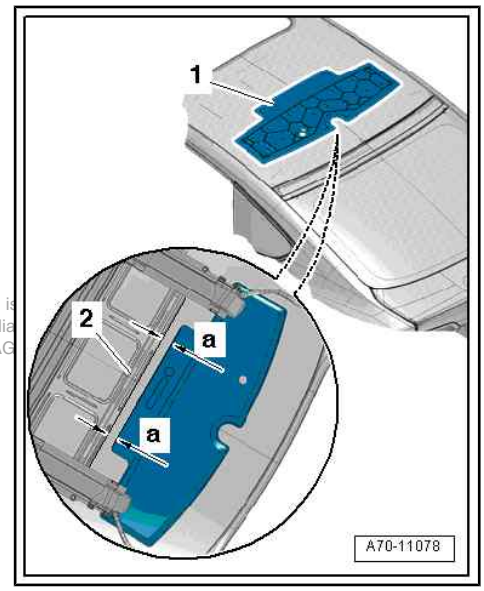



– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof of body centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -2-.

- Dimension -a- = 12 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof of body from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 216 .




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any lia
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

# 72 – Seat frames

## 1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions”, page 222

⇒ “1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand”, page 224

## 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*The illustration shows the front seats as standard seats with manual adjustment; the other seat versions are similar.*

**1 - Front passenger seat**

**Standard seat (with manual adjustment)**

❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 234

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ Four-way lumbar support
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

**Standard seat (with electric adjustment)**

❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 236

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

**Convenience seat (with electric adjustment)**

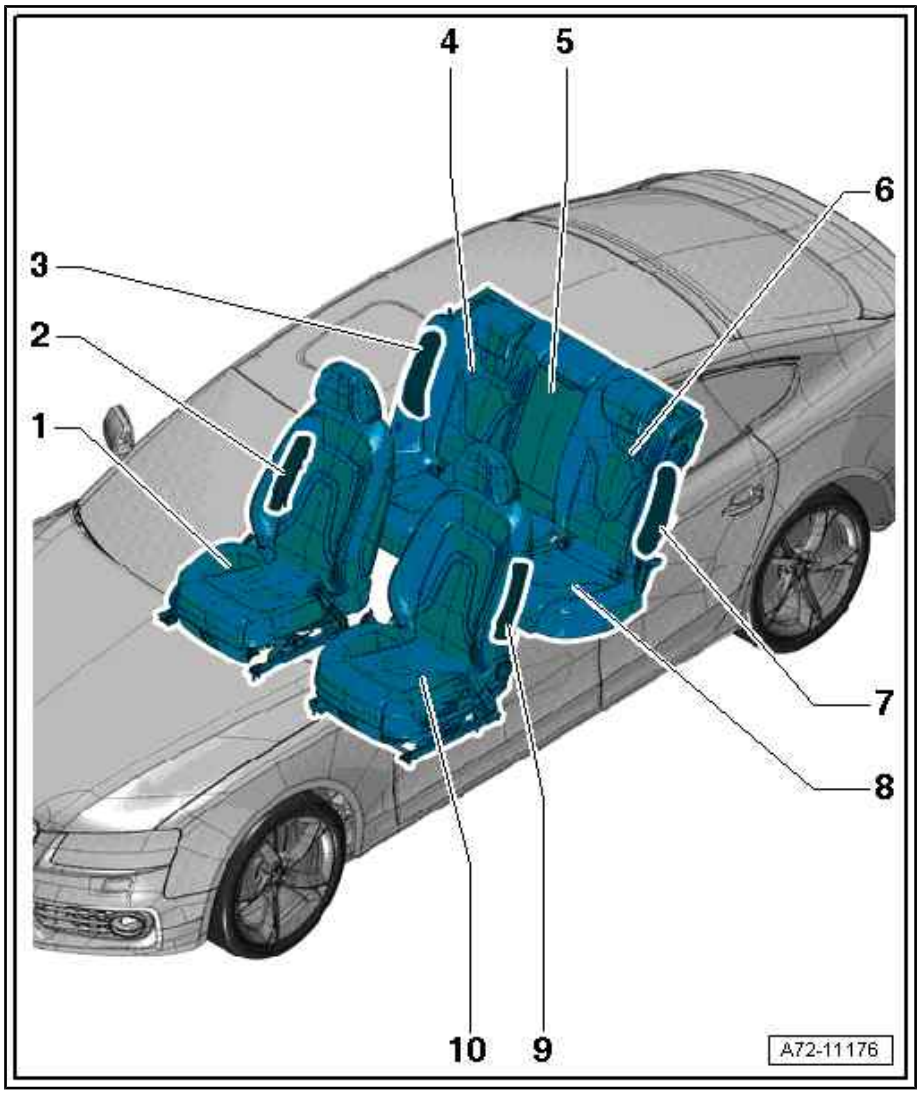
❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 236

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

**Sports seat (with manual adjustment) with seat depth adjustment**

❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 234

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ Seat rake adjustment
- ♦ Four-way lumbar support
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor



**Sports seat (with electric adjustment) with seat depth adjustment**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 236

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

**Super sports seat (with electric adjustment)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 242

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Memory function
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

**2 - Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 106

**3 - Rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 107

**4 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

Equipment versions:

- ♦ With centre armrest and without storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with trim for backrest bracket)
- ♦ With centre armrest and storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)
- ♦ With centre armrest and flap for load-through hatch

**5 - Centre armrest**

**Equipment version with cover for backrest bracket and trim for backrest bracket**

- ❑ No load-through hatch in 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 388
- ❑ Centre armrest, cover for backrest bracket and trim for backrest bracket can only be removed and installed separately

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)**

- ❑ No load-through hatch in 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 387
- ❑ Centre armrest and storage compartment can only be removed and installed separately

**Equipment version with flap for load-through hatch**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 386

**6 - 1/3 section of backrest (left-side)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

**7 - Rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 107

**8 - Seat bench**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 380

**9 - Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 106

**10 - Driver seat**

**Standard seat (with manual adjustment)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 234

Equipment versions:

- Seat and backrest heating
- Four-way lumbar support
- Storage compartment

**Standard seat (with electric adjustment)**

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 236

Equipment versions:

- Memory function
- Seat and backrest heating
- Storage compartment

**Convenience seat (with electric adjustment)**

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 236

Equipment version:

- Memory function

**Sports seat (with manual adjustment) with seat depth adjustment**

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 234

Equipment versions:

- Seat and backrest heating
- Four-way lumbar support
- Seat rake adjustment

**Sports seat (with electric adjustment) with seat depth adjustment**

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 236

Equipment versions:

- Memory function
- Seat and backrest heating

**Super sports seat (with electric adjustment)**

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 242

Equipment versions:

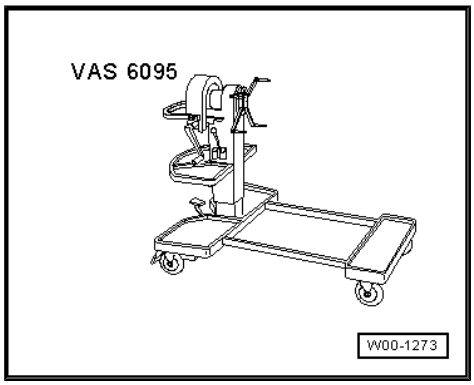
- Memory function
- Seat and backrest heating

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

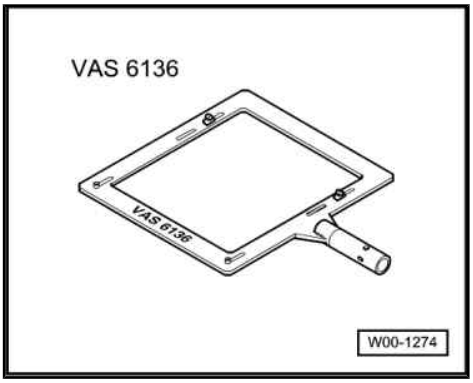
## 1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-




**Attaching front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-**

- Front seat removed from vehicle

– Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 229

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 234

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - modular wire routing”, page 244

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side)”, page 245

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side)”, page 247

⇒ “2.6 Exploded view - seat height adjustment unit and seat height adjuster”, page 249

⇒ “2.7 Exploded view - actuators for seat, backrest and head restraint adjustment”, page 250

⇒ “2.8 Exploded view - torsion bar”, page 251

⇒ “2.9 Exploded view - backrest cover panel”, page 252

⇒ “2.10 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 255

⇒ “2.11 Exploded view - head restraint”, page 256

⇒ “2.12 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 260

⇒ “2.13 Exploded view - spring mat”, page 261

⇒ “2.14 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjuster”, page 262

⇒ “2.15 Exploded view - seat rake adjuster”, page 263

⇒ “2.16 Exploded view - seat depth adjuster”, page 264

⇒ “2.17 Exploded view - storage compartment”, page 265

⇒ “2.18 Exploded view - lumbar support”, page 266

⇒ “2.19 Exploded view - seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function”, page 268

⇒ “2.20 Exploded view - control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating”, page 269

⇒ “2.21 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjustment motor”, page 270

⇒ “2.22 Exploded view - backrest adjustment motor”, page 271

⇒ “2.23 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor”, page 272

⇒ “2.24 Exploded view - seat rake adjustment motor”, page 273

⇒ “2.26 Removing and installing front seat”, page 275

⇒ “2.27 Unplugging and plugging in connectors”, page 284

⇒ “2.28 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 286

⇒ “2.29 Connector point connectors”, page 289

⇒ “2.30 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat”, page 289

⇒ “2.31 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 291

⇒ “2.32 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 292

⇒ “2.33 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 295

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.34 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 297

⇒ “2.35 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 301

⇒ “2.36 Removing and installing actuator for backrest and head restraint adjustment”, page 304

⇒ “2.37 Removing and installing backrest cover panel”, page 305

⇒ “2.38 Removing and installing trim for outer backrest frame”, page 310

⇒ “2.39 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 311

⇒ “2.40 Removing and installing seat height adjuster”, page 313

⇒ “2.41 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 314

⇒ “2.42 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 316

⇒ “2.43 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment”, page 317

⇒ “2.44 Removing and installing lever for engaging Bowden cable and spring for seat longitudinal adjustment”, page 319

⇒ “2.45 Repairing seat longitudinal adjuster, renewing connecting rod”, page 321

⇒ “2.46 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator”, page 325

⇒ “2.47 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle”, page 325

⇒ “2.48 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster”, page 326

⇒ “2.49 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 327

⇒ “2.50 Removing and installing trim for seat depth adjuster”, page 331

⇒ “2.51 Removing and installing seat rail cover”, page 333

⇒ “2.52 Removing and installing spindle cover (seat rail)”, page 335

⇒ “2.53 Removing and installing trim (sill side)”, page 336

⇒ “2.54 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)”, page 340

⇒ “2.55 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)”, page 341

⇒ “2.56 Removing and installing torsion bar”, page 342

⇒ “2.57 Removing and installing bearing for torsion bar”, page 346

⇒ “2.58 Riveting pop rivet nut for retaining plate for DVD player to outer backrest frame”, page 348

⇒ “2.59 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player”, page 349

⇒ “2.60 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 350

⇒ “2.61 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function”, page 352

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.62 Removing and installing retainer for seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function”, page 354

⇒ “2.63 Removing and installing control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating”, page 355

⇒ “2.64 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor”, page 357

⇒ “2.65 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor”, page 357

⇒ “2.66 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor”, page 361

⇒ “2.67 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor”, page 366

⇒ “2.68 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit”, page 368

⇒ “2.69 Removing and installing lumbar support”, page 368

⇒ “2.70 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 375

⇒ “2.71 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 376

⇒ “2.72 Removing and installing seat cushion fan”, page 377

⇒ “2.73 Removing and installing backrest fan (top)”, page 378

⇒ “2.74 Removing and installing backrest fan (bottom)”, page 378

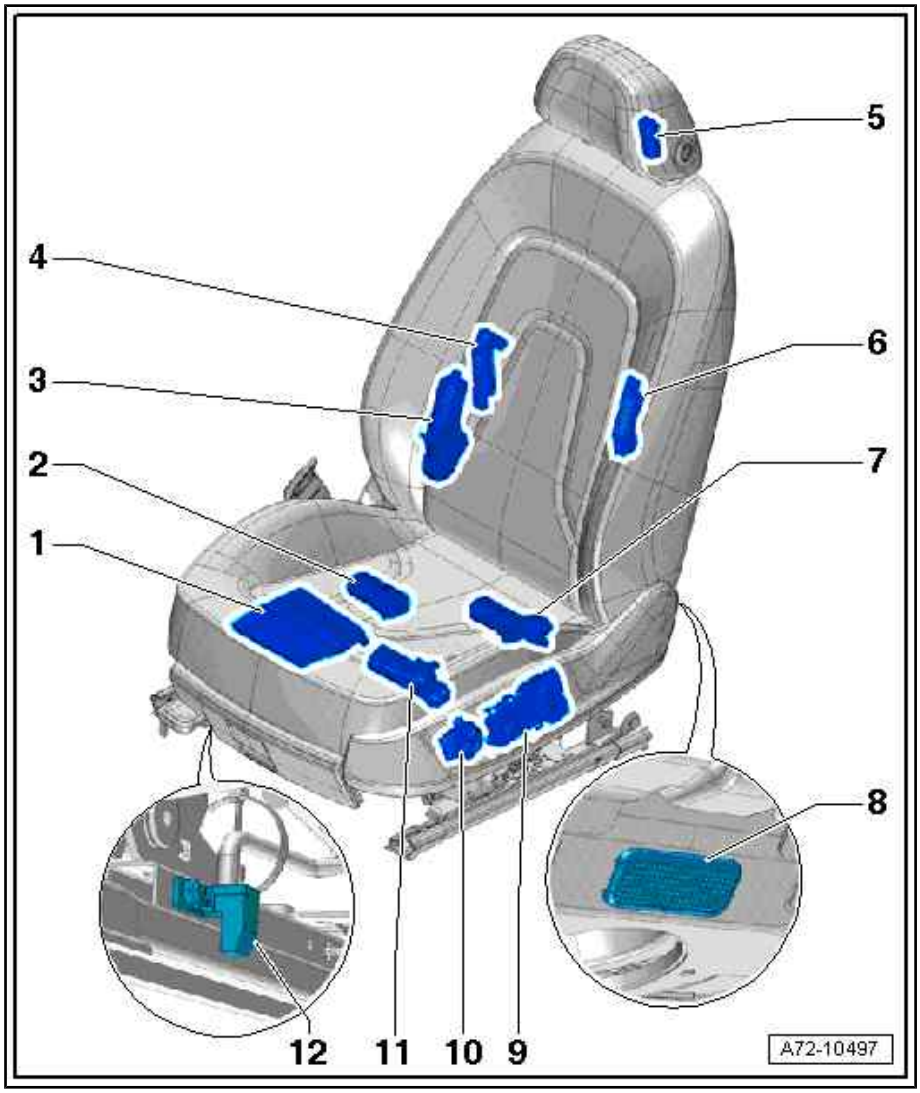
## 2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

Part 1 ⇒ page 229

Part 2 ⇒ page 231

Part 1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**1 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory**

❑ Driver side:

- ♦ Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-
- ♦ Equipment version with convenience seat: control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800- integrated

❑ Passenger side:

- ♦ Front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- ♦ Equipment version with convenience seat: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799- integrated

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 268

**2 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

**3 - Backrest adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271

**4 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

**5 - Head restraint adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat head restraint adjustment motor - V103-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat head restraint adjustment motor - V104-

❑ Is a fixed component of base frame for head restraint and cannot be renewed. If head restraint adjustment motor is defective, entire base frame for head restraint must be renewed

**6 - Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

**7 - Seat height adjustment motor**

❑ Driver side: driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 272

**8 - Footwell light (rear)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

**9 - Seat adjustment operating unit**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470- with:
- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-
- ♦ Head restraint adjustment switch - E155-
- ♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-
- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-
- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471- with:
- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-
- ♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-
- ♦ Front passenger seat head restraint adjustment switch - E170-
- ♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-
- ♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**10 - Lumbar support adjustment switch**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**11 - Seat rake adjustment motor**

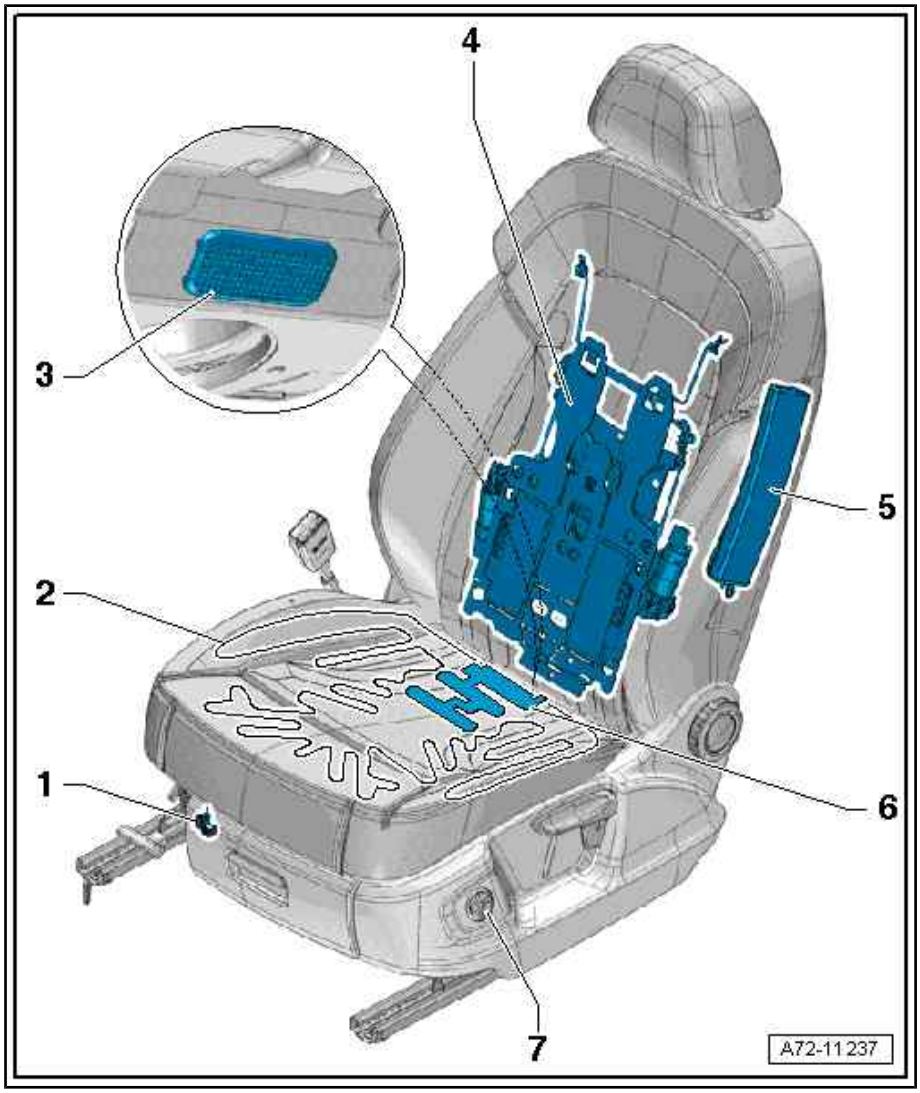
- ❑ Driver side: driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 273

**12 - Seat position sensor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 128

**Part 2**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**1 - Seat position sensor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 128

**2 - Heating element**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 417

**3 - Footwell light (rear)**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light - W45- / -W46-

**4 - Four-way lumbar support**

- ❑ Cannot be dismantled; only available as a complete unit ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Driver side:

- ◆ With driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ◆ With driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-

- ❑ Passenger side:

- ◆ With front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ◆ With front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266

**5 - Side airbag (front)**

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 106

**6 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

**7 - Lumbar support adjustment switch**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 250

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2 Exploded view - front seat

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard seat with manual adjustment”, page 234

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - front standard seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat”, page 236

⇒ “2.2.3 Exploded view - front sports seat with manual adjustment and seat depth adjustment”, page 238

⇒ “2.2.4 Exploded view - front sports seat with electric adjustment”, page 240

⇒ “2.2.5 Exploded view - front super sports seat”, page 242

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard seat with manual adjustment

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.*

**1 - Storage compartment**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265

**2 - Seat longitudinal adjuster**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262

**3 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail (front right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

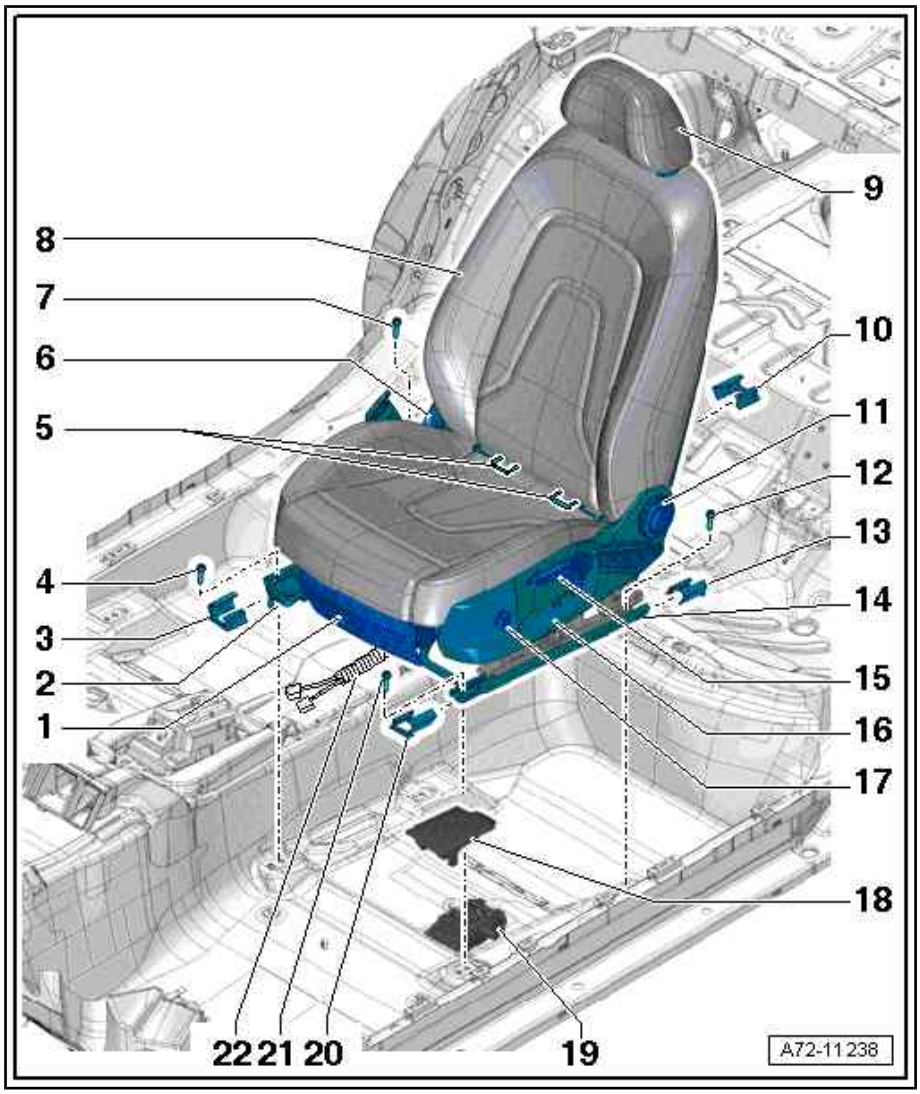
**4 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**5 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

**6 - Trim (tunnel side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**8 - Front standard seat (with manual adjustment)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275



**9 - Head restraint**

- With manual adjustment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 256

**10 - Cover**

- For seat rail (rear right)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**11 - Backrest adjuster**

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

**12 - Bolt**

- 50 Nm

**13 - Cover**

- For seat rail (rear left)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**14 - Bottom part of seat**

- On standard front seat with manual adjustment, bottom part of seat with seat longitudinal adjustment should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan)

**15 - Seat height adjuster**

- Exploded view ⇒ page 249

**16 - Trim (sill side)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

**17 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- Depending on version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**18 - Cap**

- For connector point
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

**19 - Connector point**

- Pin assignment ⇒ page 289

**20 - Cover**

- For seat rail (front left)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**21 - Bolt**

- 50 Nm

**22 - Corrugated tube**

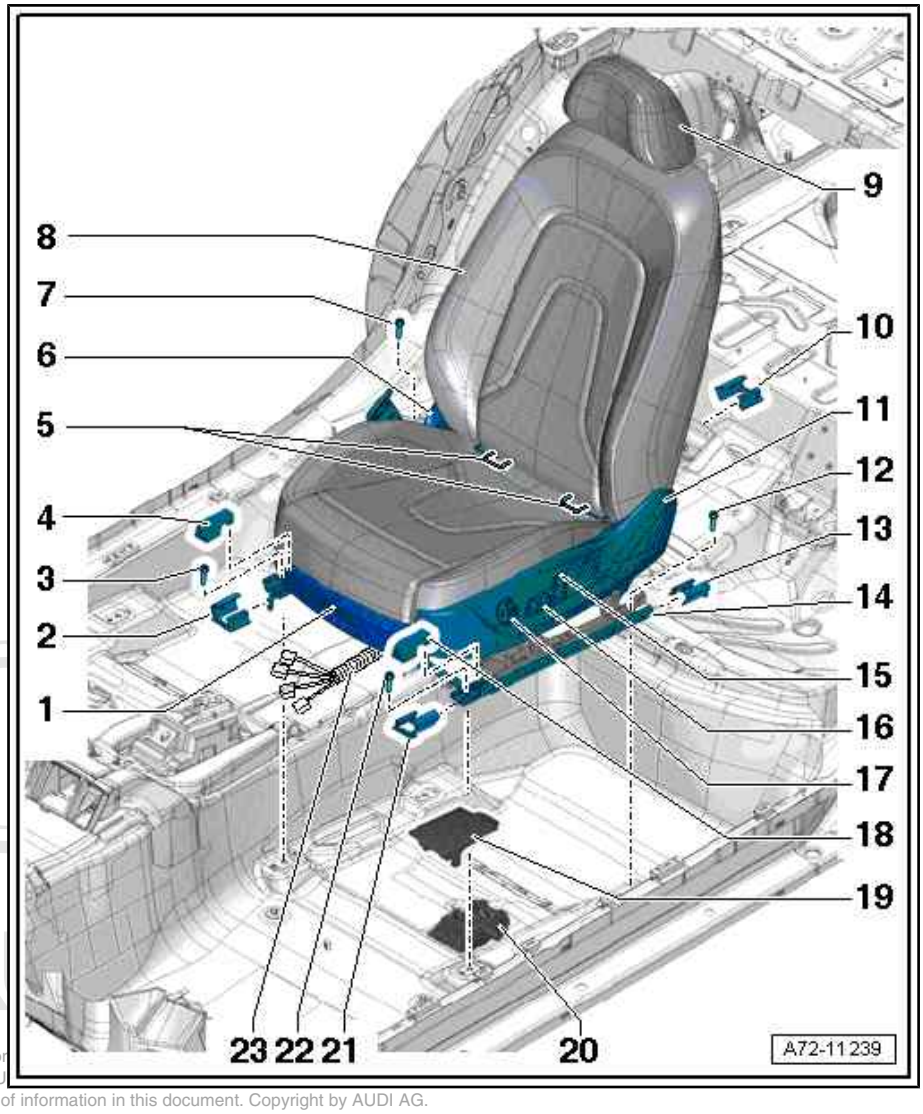
- For modular wire routing
- Exploded view ⇒ page 244

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2.2 Exploded view - front standard seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the four-way lumbar support and floor covering are not shown in the illustration.*




**1 - Storage compartment**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265

**2 - Seat rail cover**
- ❑ Front right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**4 - Spindle cover**
- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**5 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

**6 - Trim (tunnel side)**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 246

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**8 - Front standard seat (with electric adjustment)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 277

**9 - Head restraint**
- ❑ With electric adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 258

**10 - Seat rail cover**
- ❑ Rear right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**11 - Trim (sill side)**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 246

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**12 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**13 - Seat rail cover**

- ❑ Rear left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**14 - Lower seat pan frame**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

**15 - Actuator**

- ❑ For adjusting backrest and head restraint
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**16 - Actuator**

- ❑ For seat longitudinal, rake and height adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**17 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-**

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**18 - Spindle cover**

- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**19 - Cap**

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

**20 - Connector point**

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ page 289

**21 - Seat rail cover**

- ❑ Front left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**22 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

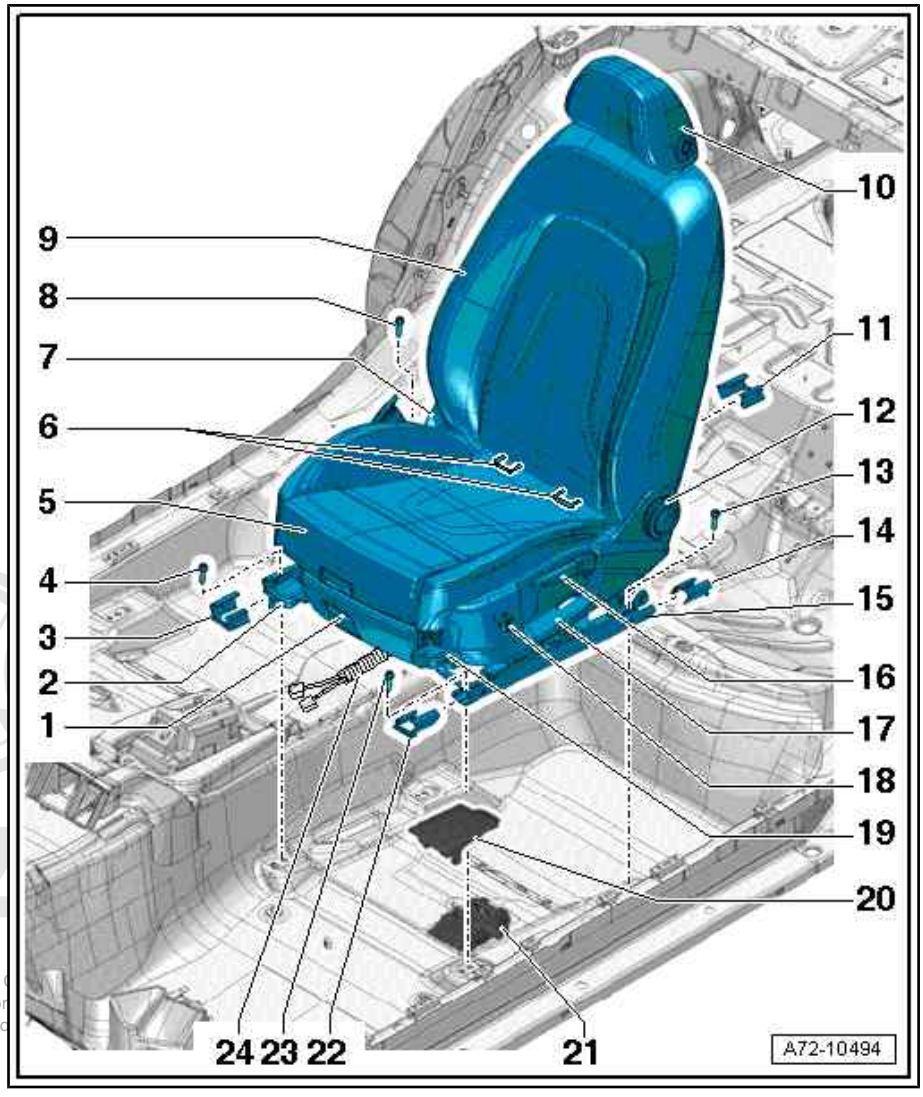
**23 - Corrugated tube**

- ❑ For modular wire routing
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244

## 2.2.3 Exploded view - front sports seat with manual adjustment and seat depth adjustment

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.*




**1 - Storage compartment**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265

**2 - Seat longitudinal adjuster**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262

**3 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail (front right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**4 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**5 - Seat depth adjuster**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 264

**6 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

**7 - Trim (tunnel side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

Protected by copyright. C
permitted unless author
with respect to the co

**8 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**9 - Front sports seat (with manual adjustment)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

**10 - Head restraint**
- ❑ With manual adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 256

**11 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail (rear right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**12 - Backrest adjuster**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

**13 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**14 - Cover**

- ❑ For seat rail (rear left)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**15 - Bottom part of seat**

- ❑ On front sports seat (with manual adjustment), bottom part of seat with seat longitudinal adjustment should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan)

**16 - Seat height adjuster**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 249

**17 - Trim (sill side)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

**18 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-**

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**19 - Seat rake adjuster**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 263

**20 - Cap**

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

**21 - Connector point**

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ page 289

**22 - Cover**

- ❑ For seat rail (front left)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**23 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**24 - Corrugated tube**

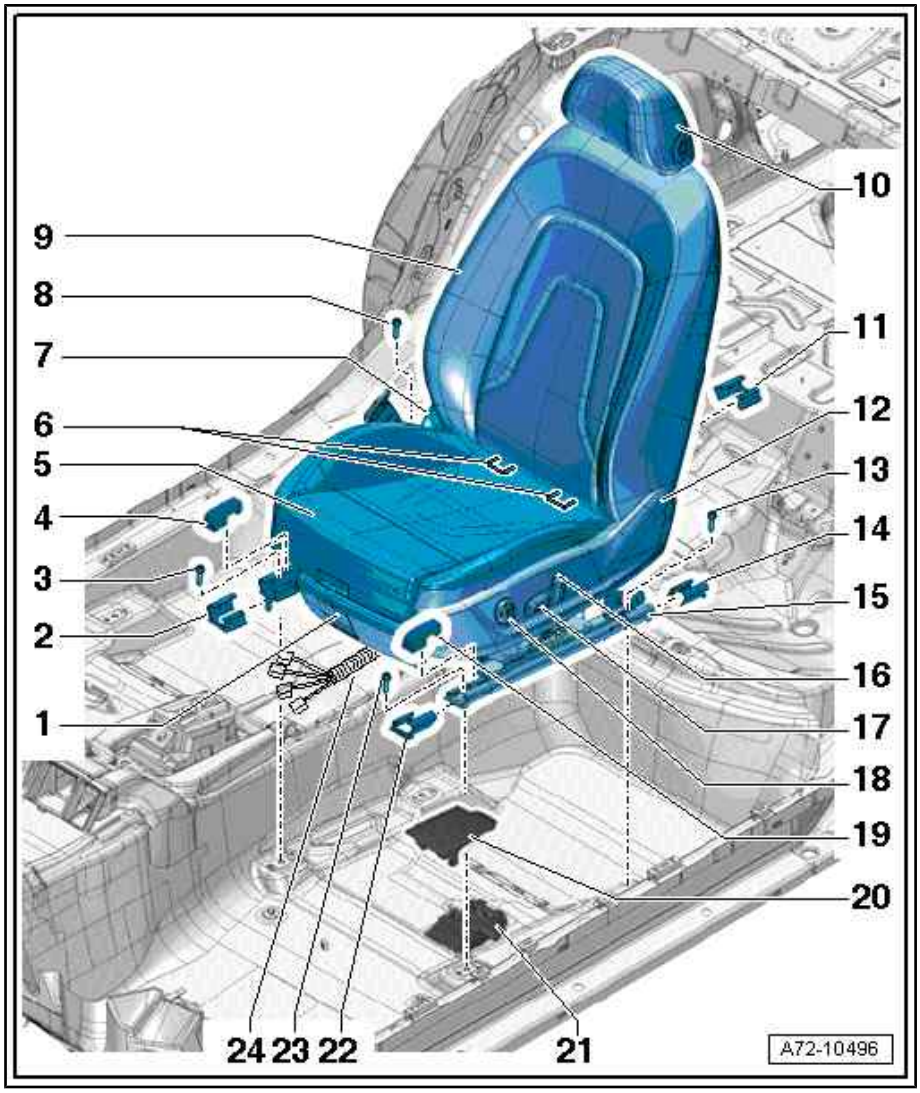
- ❑ For modular wire routing
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2.4 Exploded view - front sports seat with electric adjustment

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the four-way lumbar support and floor covering are not shown in the illustration.*




**1 - Storage compartment**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265

**2 - Seat rail cover**
- ❑ Front right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**4 - Spindle cover**
- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**5 - Seat depth adjuster**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 264

**6 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

**7 - Trim (tunnel side)**
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 246

**8 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**9 - Front sports seat (with electric adjustment)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 277

**10 - Head restraint**
- ❑ With electric adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 258

**11 - Seat rail cover**
- ❑ Rear right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**12 - Trim (sill side)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 246

**13 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**14 - Seat rail cover**

- ❑ Rear left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**15 - Lower seat pan frame**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

**16 - Actuator**

- ❑ For adjusting backrest and head restraint
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**17 - Actuator**

- ❑ For seat longitudinal, rake and height adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**18 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-**

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**19 - Spindle cover**

- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**20 - Cap**

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

**21 - Connector point**

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ page 289

**22 - Seat rail cover**

- ❑ Front left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**23 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**24 - Corrugated tube**

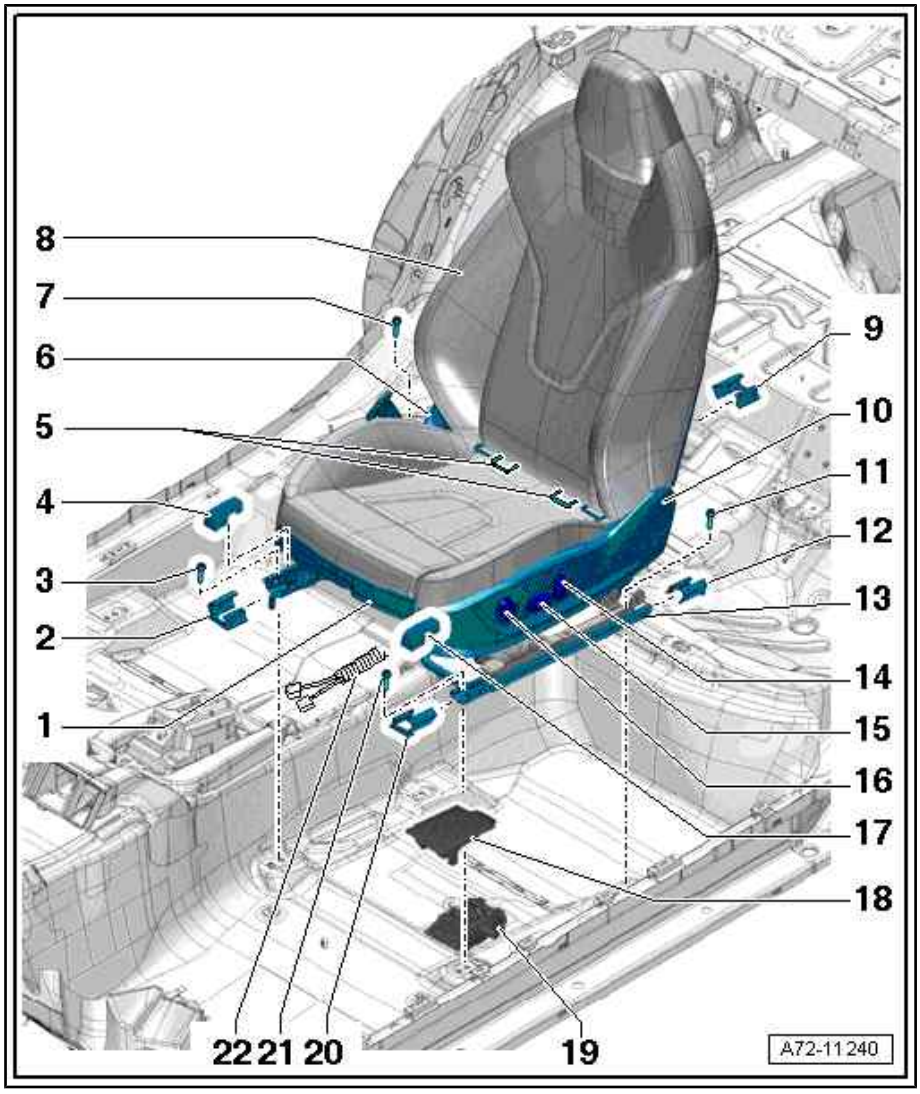
- ❑ For modular wire routing
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2.5 Exploded view - front super sports seat

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the attachments are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the floor covering and the four-way lumbar support are not shown in the illustration.*




**1 - Seat depth adjuster**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

**2 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**3 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**4 - Spindle cover**
- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**5 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

**6 - Trim (tunnel side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**8 - Front super sports seat**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 277

**9 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**10 - Trim (sill side)**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

**11 - Bolt**
- ❑ 50 Nm

**12 - Cover**
- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**13 - Lower seat pan frame**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

**14 - Actuator**

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Removing and installing operating unit ⇒ page 368

**15 - Actuator**

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 325
- ❑ Removing and installing operating unit ⇒ page 368

**16 - Actuator**

- ❑ For lumbar support
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch ⇒ page 376
- ❑ Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ page 372

**17 - Spindle cover**

- ❑ Clipped onto seat longitudinal adjustment spindle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

**18 - Cover**

- ❑ For connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

**19 - Connector point**

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ page 289

**20 - Cover**

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

**21 - Bolt**

- ❑ 50 Nm

**22 - Electrical connector**

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Exploded view of modular wire routing ⇒ page 244

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.3 Exploded view - modular wire routing

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Cable retainer**

- ❑ Observe correct installation position
  ⇒ page 291

**3 - Lower shell for corrugated tube**

- ❑ Observe correct installation position
  ⇒ page 291

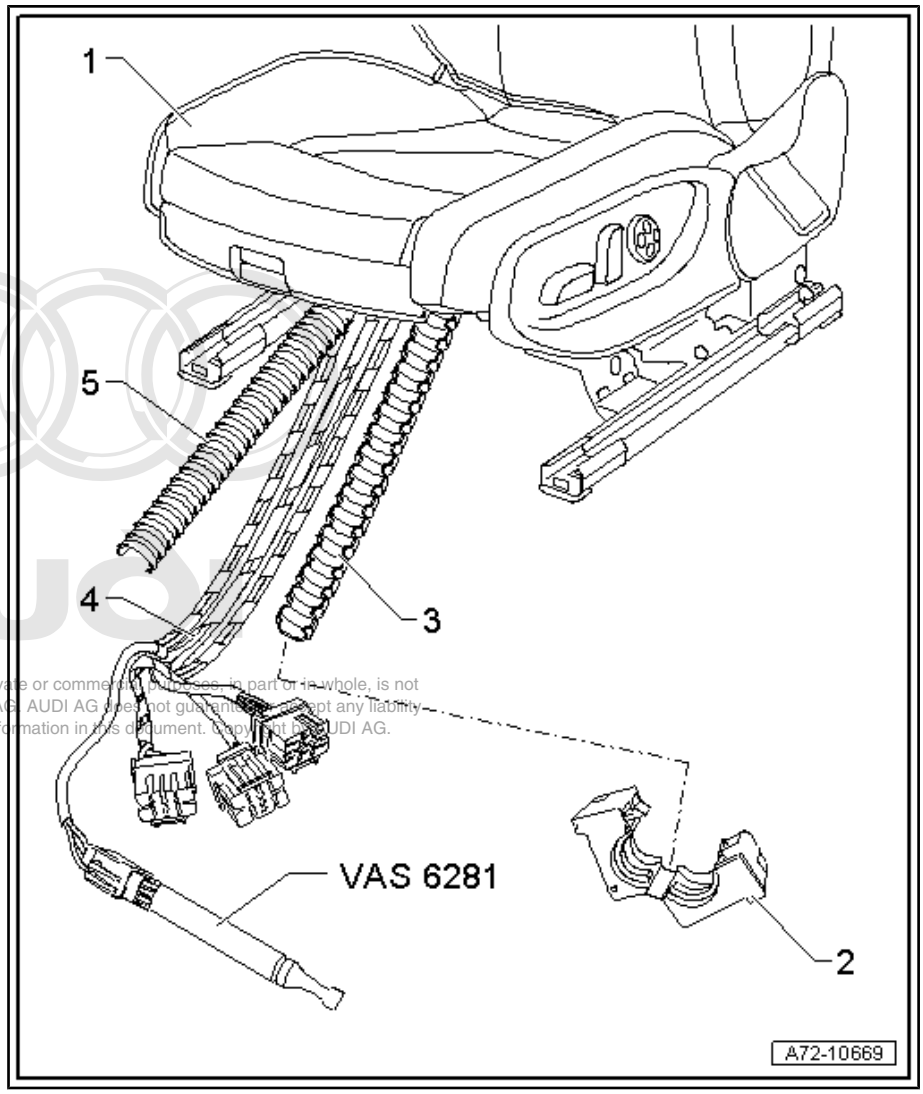
**4 - Wiring harness**

- ❑ Note information on routing of wiring harness in corrugated tube
  ⇒ page 289

**5 - Upper shell for corrugated tube**

- ❑ Observe correct installation position
  ⇒ page 291

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## 2.4 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side)

⇒ "2.4.1 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side), standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment", page 245

⇒ "2.4.2 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side), standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat", page 246

### 2.4.1 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side), standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Spreader rivet**

**3 - Trim (tunnel side)**

- ❑ Can only be renewed after removing seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

**4 - Spreader rivet**

- ❑ 2x

**5 - Backrest adjuster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

**6 - Seat height adjuster**

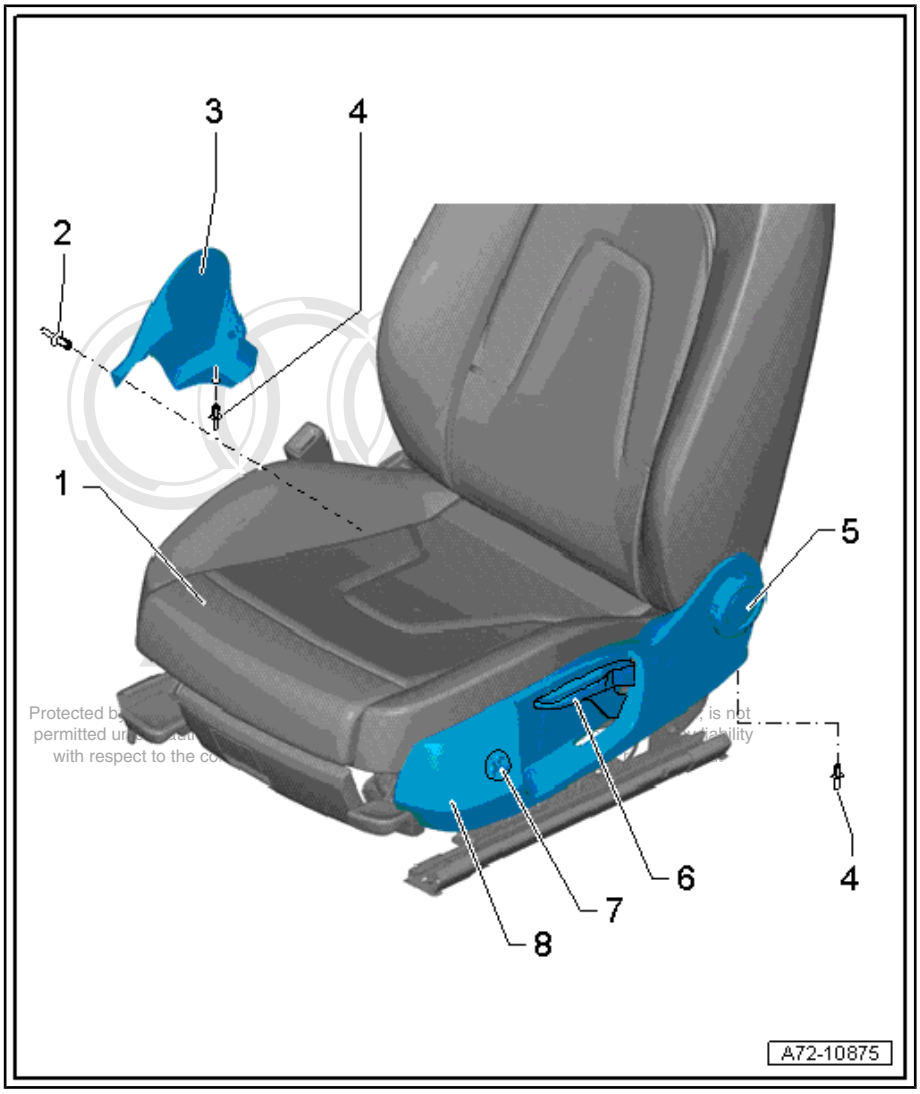
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

**7 - Lumbar support adjustment switch**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

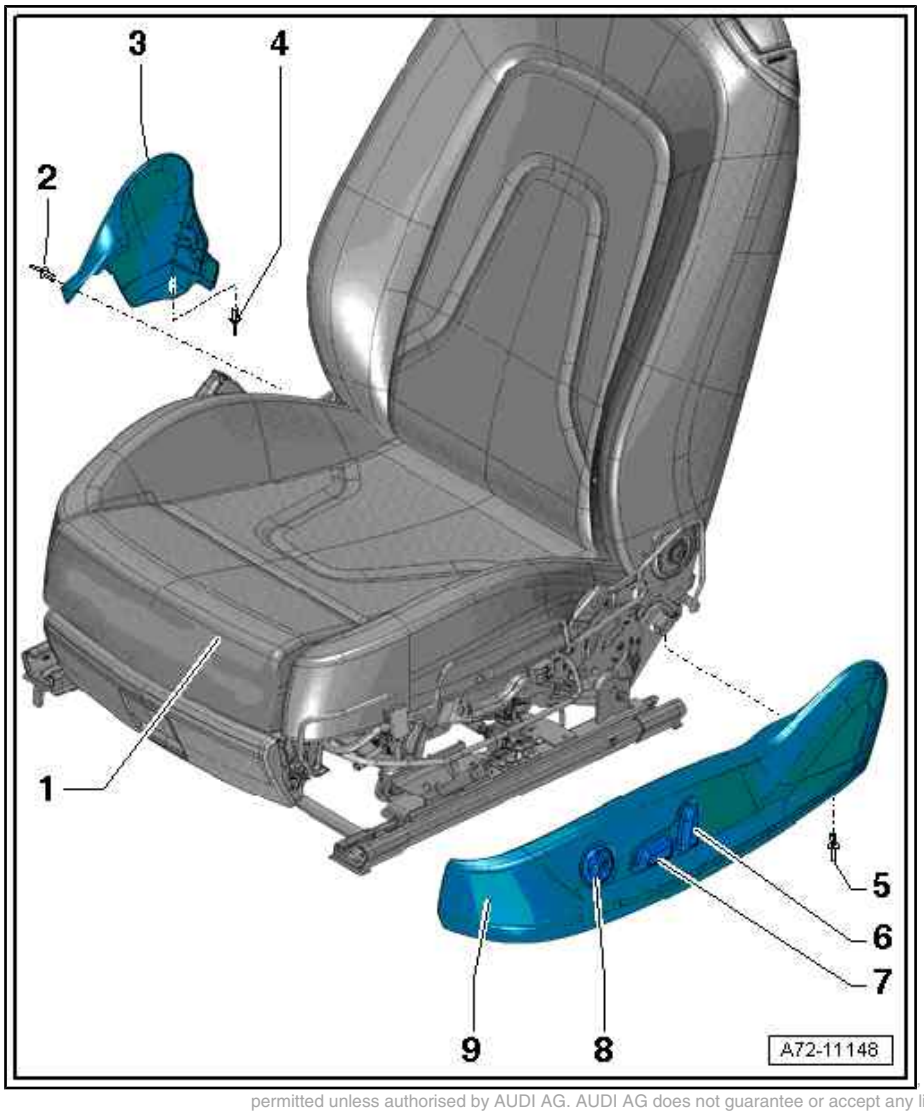
**8 - Trim (sill side)**

- ❑ Can be renewed with seat installed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336




Protected by
permitted u
with respect to the co
is not
liability

## 2.4.2 Exploded view - trim (sill side and tunnel side), standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat




**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Spreader rivet**

**3 - Trim (tunnel side)**

- ❑ Can only be renewed after removing seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

**4 - Spreader rivet**

**5 - Spreader rivet**

**6 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-**

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**7 - Actuator**

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**8 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-**

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 250

**9 - Trim (sill side)**

- ❑ Can be renewed with seat installed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.5 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

⇒ "2.5.1 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side), standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 247

⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side), standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat", page 248

## 2.5.1 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side), standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

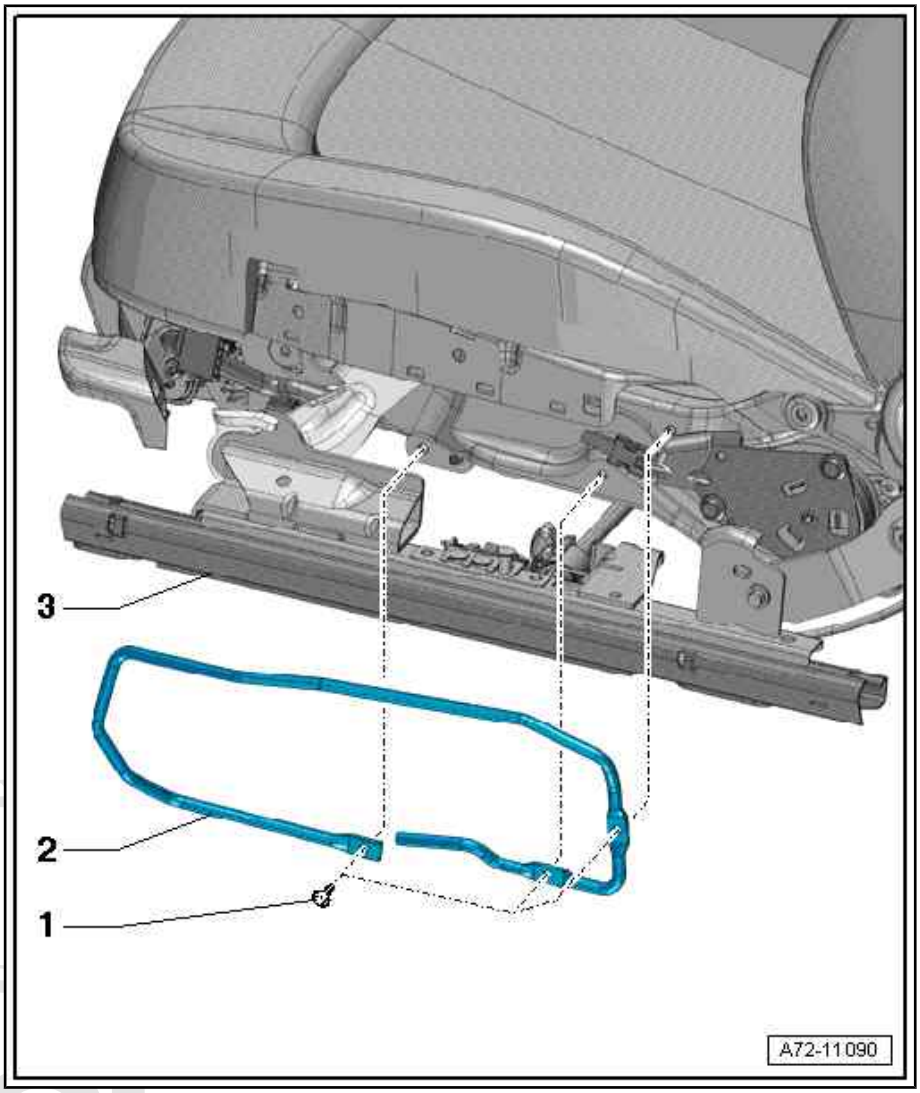
**1 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

**2 - Retaining bracket**

- ❑ For trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

**3 - Front seat**




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.5.2 Exploded view - retaining bracket for trim (sill side), standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat

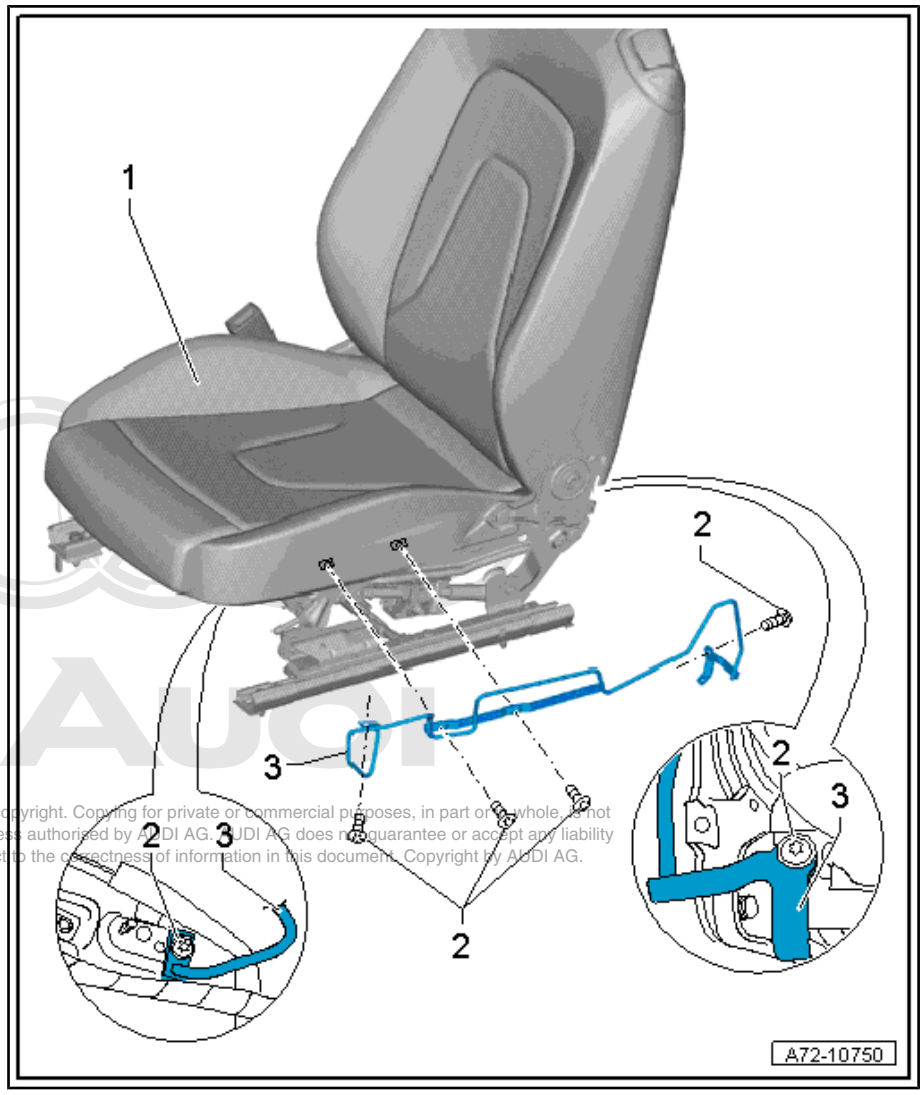
**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Bolts**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

**3 - Retaining bracket**

- ❑ For trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.6 Exploded view - seat height adjustment unit and seat height adjuster

**1 - Seat height adjuster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313
- ❑ With tab -arrow A- to engage with lug -arrow B- on lever -item 7-

**2 - Bolts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Note difference to length of bolt -item 4-
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

**3 - Seat height adjustment unit**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ Note difference to length of bolts -item 2-
- ❑ 10 Nm

**5 - Securing clip**

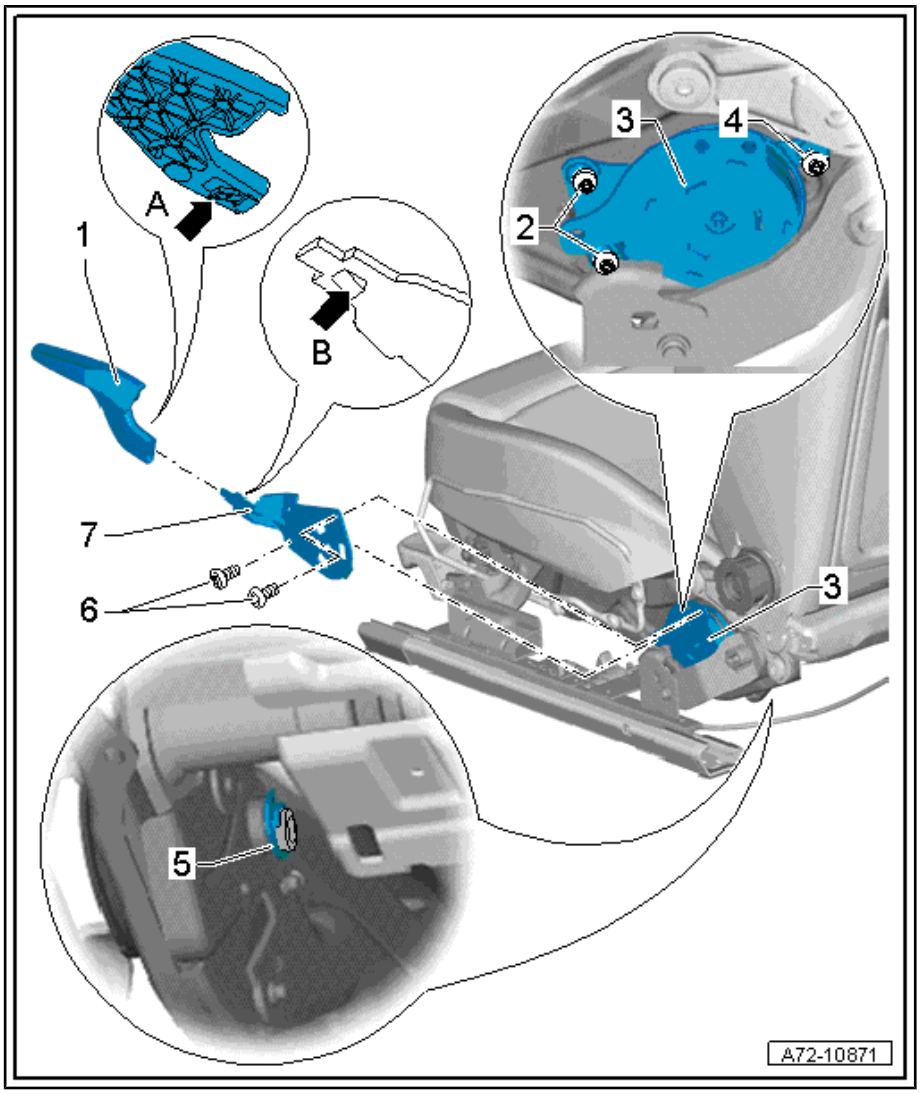
- ❑ Always renew after removing

**6 - Bolts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

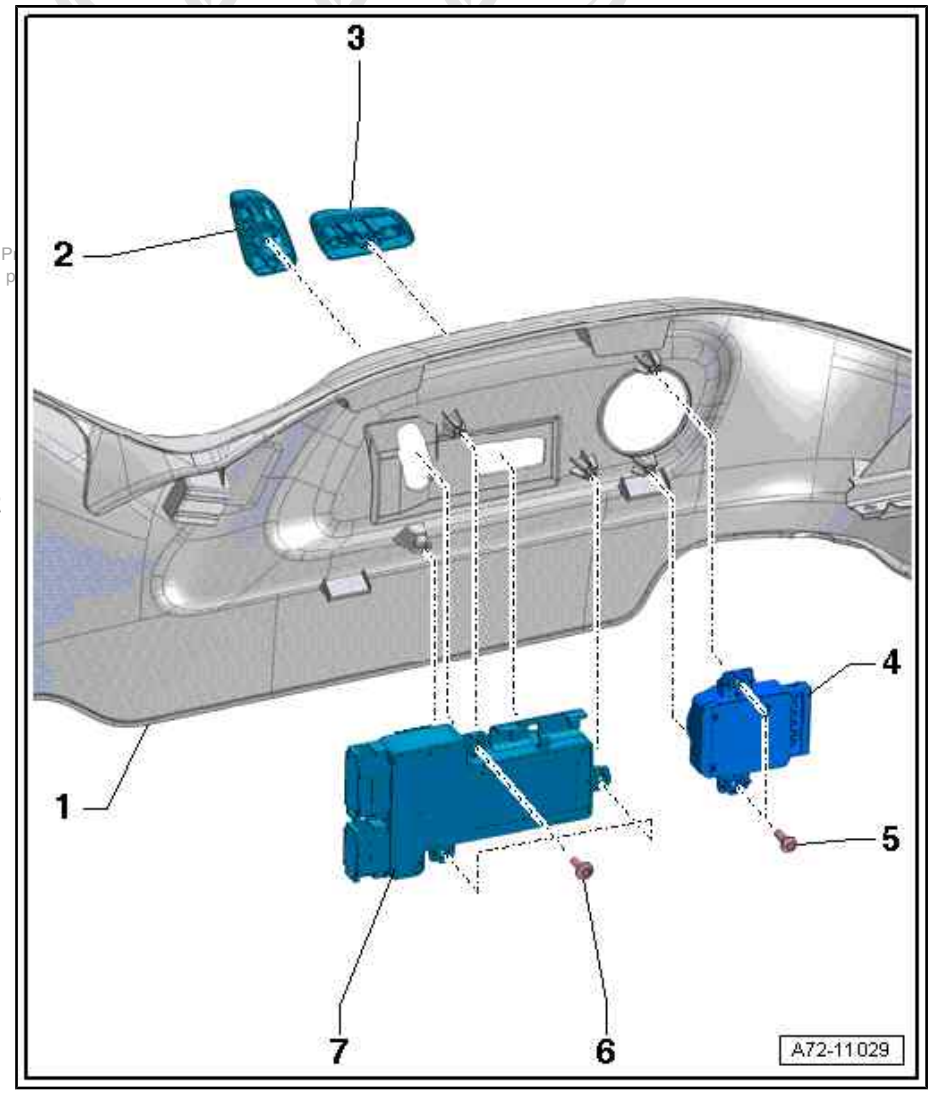
**7 - Lever**

- ❑ For seat height adjuster
- ❑ With lug -arrow B- to lock seat height adjuster -item 1-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.7 Exploded view - actuators for seat, backrest and head restraint adjustment




**1 - Trim (sill side)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

**2 - Backrest adjustment actuator**

- ❑ Clipped onto operating unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304

**3 - Seat adjustment actuator**

- ❑ Clipped onto operating unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325

**4 - Lumbar support adjustment switch**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Switch and control button cannot be separated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 376

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

**7 - Seat adjustment operating unit**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470- with:

♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-

♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-

♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-

♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471- with:

♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-

♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-

♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-

♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 368

## 2.8 Exploded view - torsion bar

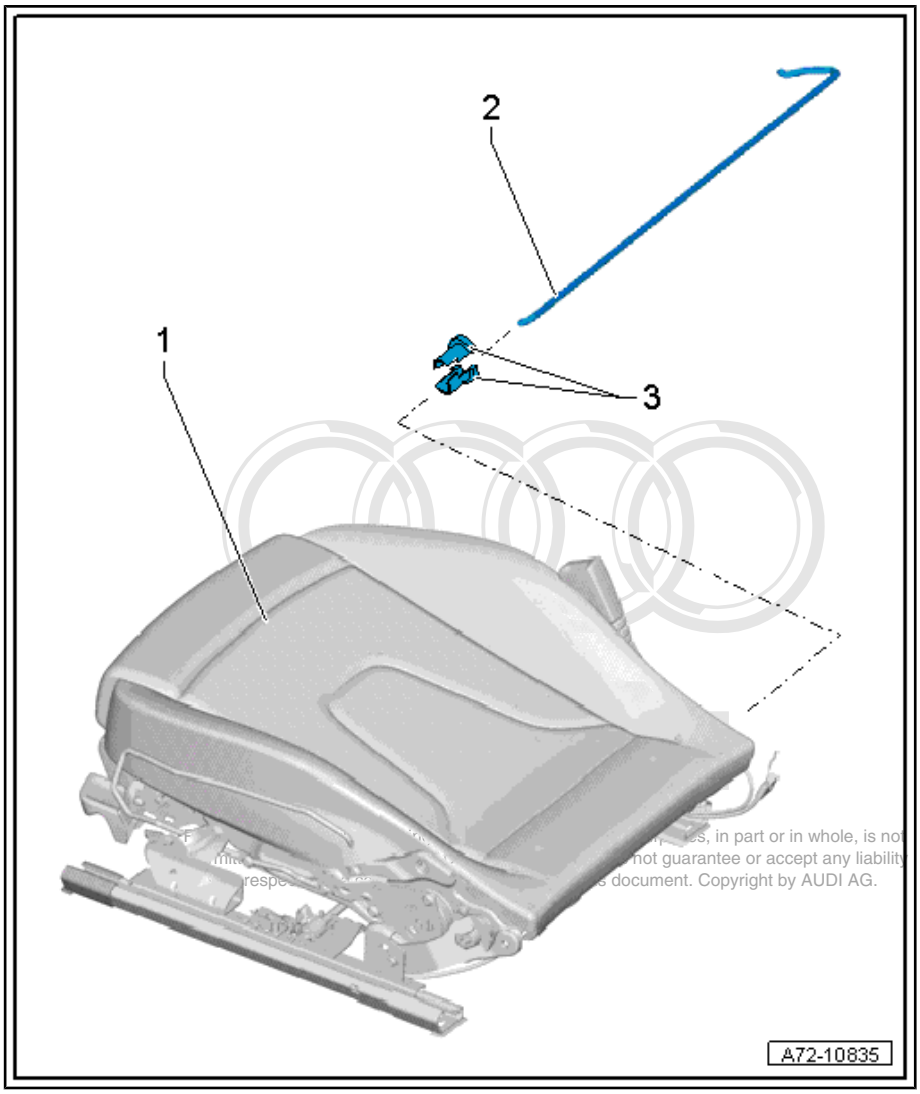
**1 - Seat pan**

**2 - Torsion bar**

- ❑ Greased; for grease refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

**3 - Mounting**

- ❑ For torsion bar
- ❑ Pushed into guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 346




not guarantee or accept any liability document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.9 Exploded view - backrest cover panel

⇒ “2.9.1 Exploded view - two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 252

⇒ “2.9.2 Exploded view - one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 253

## 2.9.1 Exploded view - two-piece backrest cover panel

**Note**

- *The two-piece backrest cover panel consists of the detachable backrest cover panel and the trim for the outer backrest frame.*
- *The exploded view relates to the standard front seat. The backrest cover panel and the trim for the outer backrest frame are similar on the other seat versions.*

**1 - Front seat**

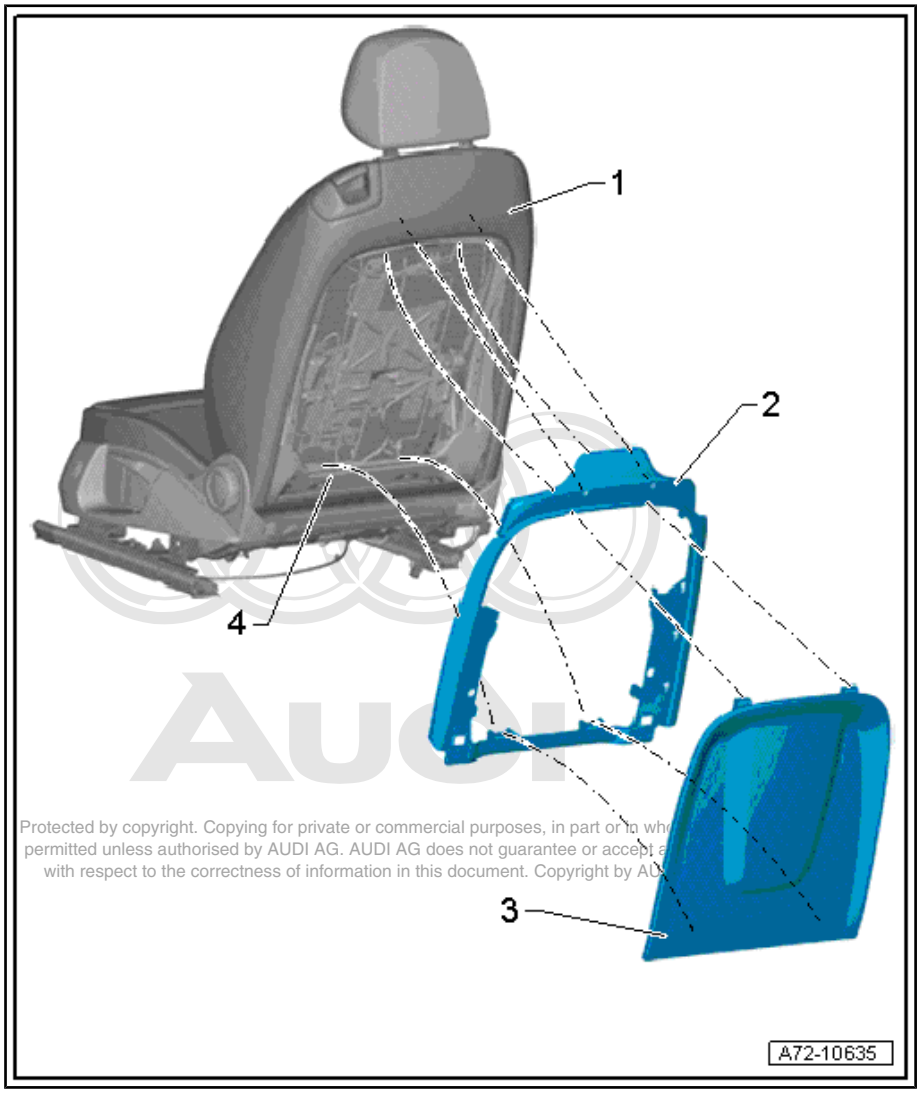
**2 - Trim for outer backrest frame**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

**3 - Backrest cover panel**

- ❑ Overview of attachment points ⇒ page 253
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

**4 - Outer backrest frame**




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

**Overview of attachment points on backrest cover panel**

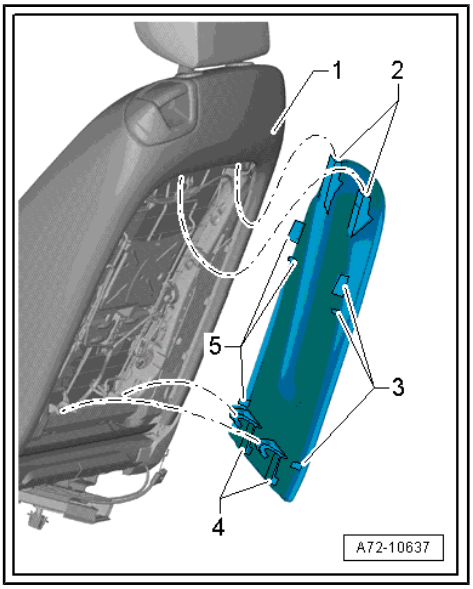
1 - Front seat backrest

2 - Top hook (2x)

3 - Retaining tabs, left-side (3x)

4 - Bottom hook (2x)

5 - Retaining tabs, right-side (3x)




## 2.9.2 Exploded view - one-piece backrest cover panel

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the standard front seat. The backrest cover panel is similar on the other seat versions.*
- *The illustration shows the equipment version with the backrest cover panel without luggage net.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Hook (top)**

- ❑ 2x

**3 - Backrest cover panel**

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

**4 - Hook (bottom)**

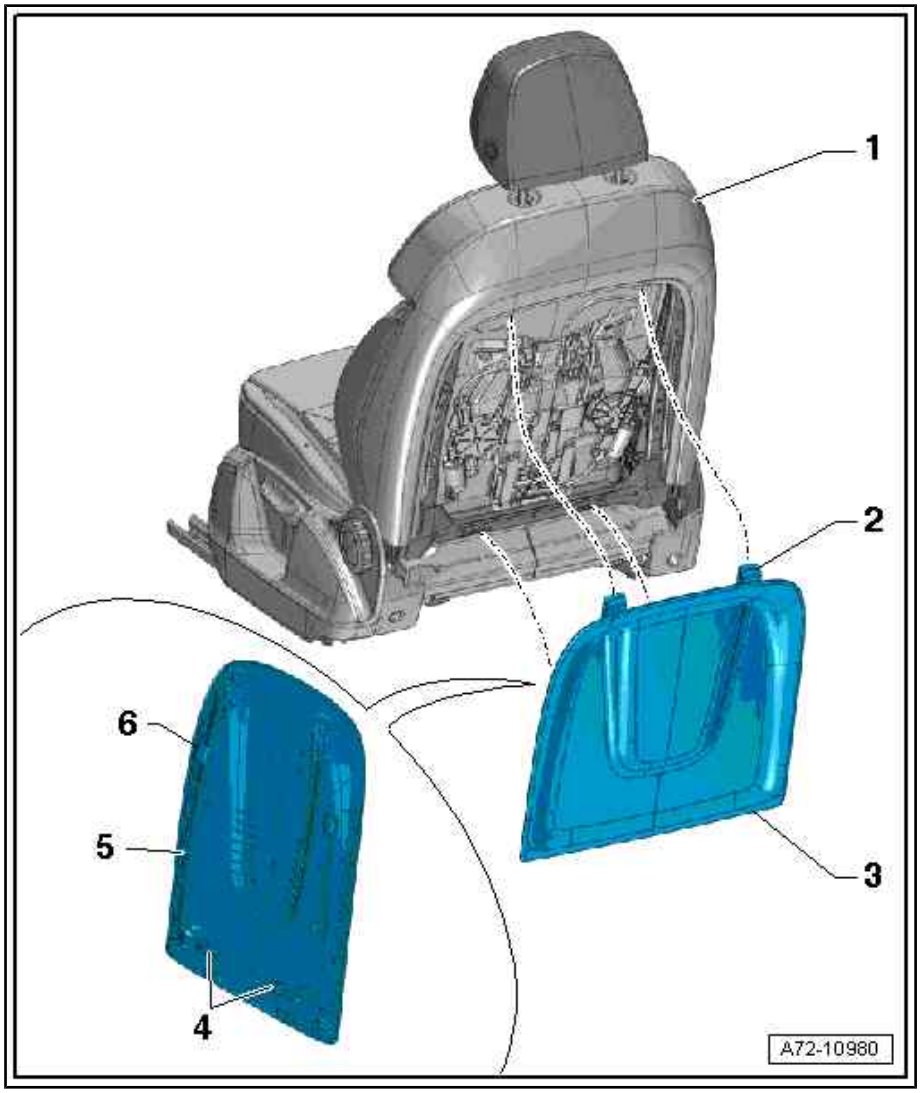
- ❑ 2x

**5 - Retaining hook (bottom, side)**

- ❑ 2x

**6 - Retaining tabs (top, side)**

- ❑ 2x

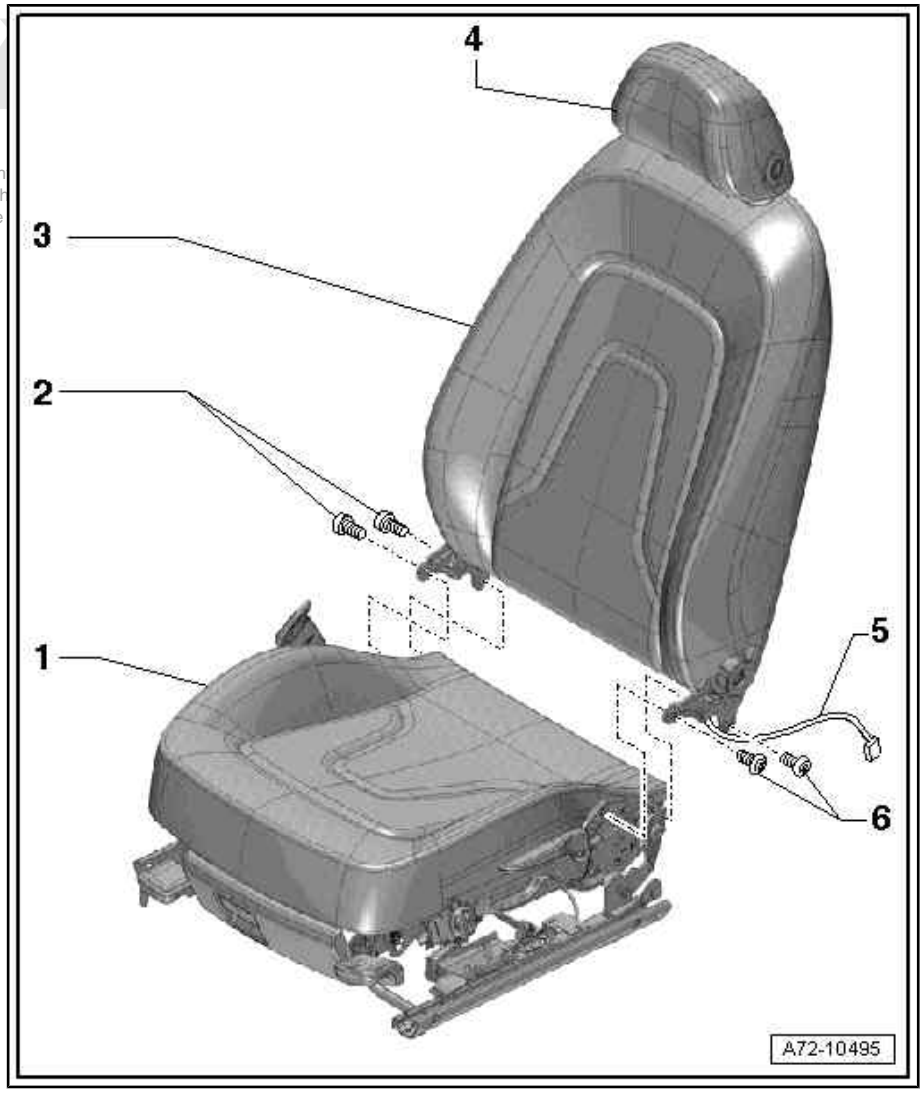


## 2.10 Exploded view - front seat backrest

**Note**

*The exploded view relates to the standard front seat. The front seat backrest is similar on the other seat versions.*

Protected by copyrigh
permitted, unless auth
with respect to the




**1 - Seat pan**

**2 - Bolts**

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

**3 - Backrest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292

**4 - Head restraint**

- ❑ Removing and installing head restraint (with manual adjustment) ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Removing and installing head restraint (with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 295

**5 - Wiring harness**

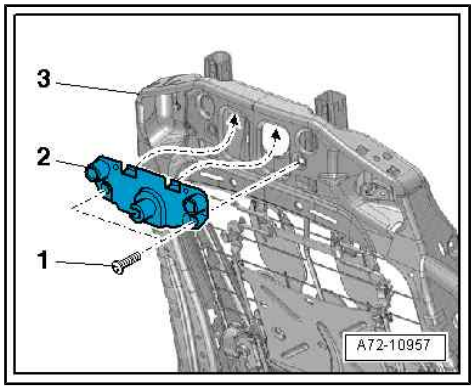
- ❑ Continuous from side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. seat heating, lumbar support

**6 - Bolts**

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

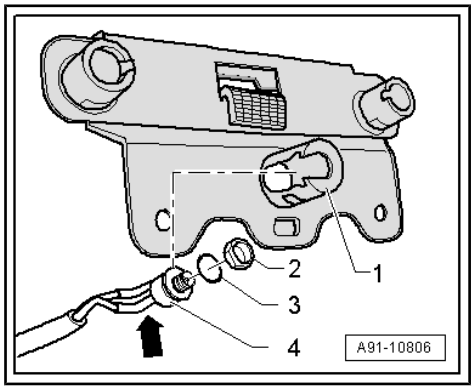
**Tightening torque for retaining plate for DVD player**

– Tighten bolts -1- for retaining plate to 6 Nm.




**Tightening torque for charger socket for DVD player**

– Tighten nut -2- to 0.4 Nm.




## 2.11 Exploded view - head restraint

⇒ “2.11.1 Exploded view - head restraint, standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 256

⇒ “2.11.2 Exploded view - head restraint, standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat”, page 258

⇒ “2.11.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat”, page 259

## 2.11.1 Exploded view - head restraint, standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

**Note**

- *The exploded view relates to the standard front seat. The head restraint is similar on all other front seat versions (with manual adjustment).*
- *For greater clarity, the cover with padding for the backrest is not shown in the illustration.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297

**2 - Cover**

- ❑ Attached to cover

**3 - Head restraint**

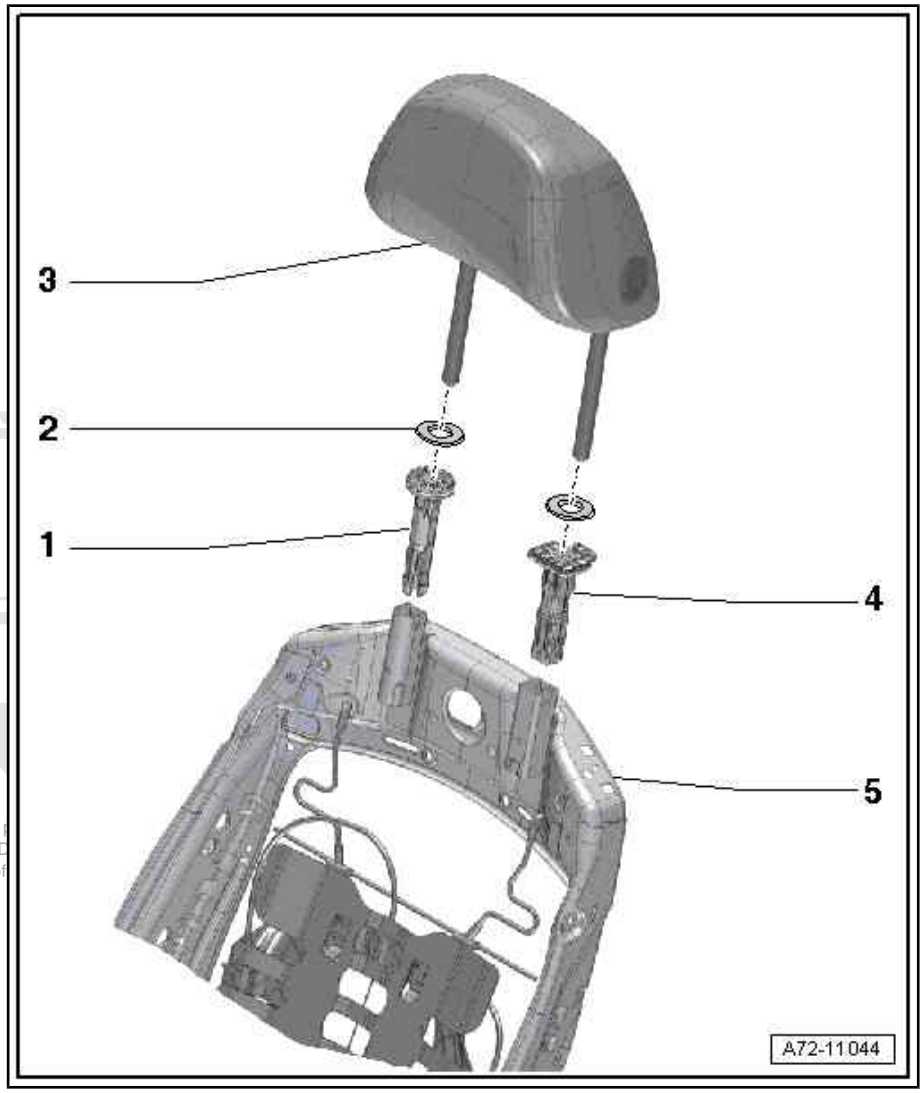
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**4 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297

**5 - Outer backrest frame**

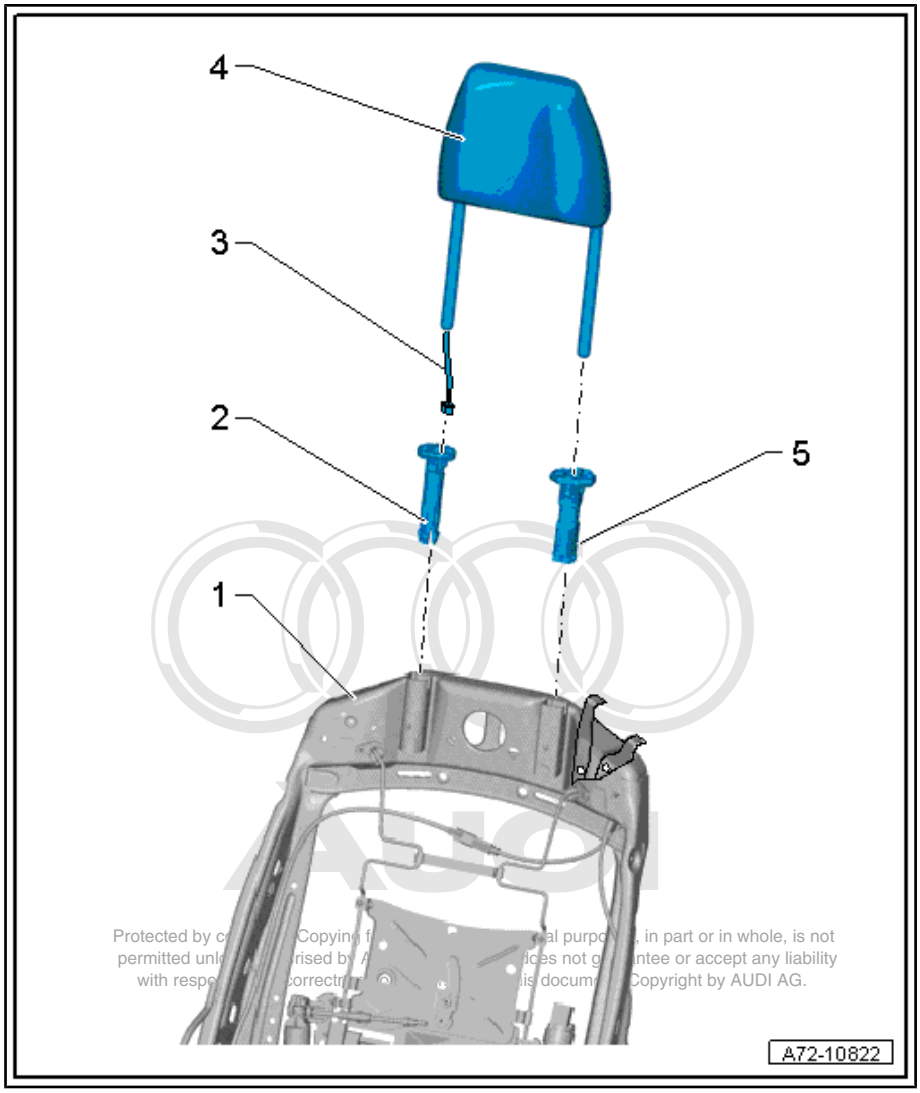
Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness of



## 2.11.2 Exploded view - head restraint, standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat

**Note**

*For greater clarity, the cover with padding for the backrest is not shown in the illustration.*




**1 - Front seat backrest**

**2 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest

**3 - Wire**

- ❑ With connector
- ❑ Permanently connected to head restraint

**4 - Head restraint**

- ❑ Driver side:

- ◆ Head restraint height adjustment sender for driver seat - G217-
- ◆ Driver seat head restraint adjustment motor - V103-

- ❑ Passenger side:

- ◆ Head restraint height adjustment sender for front passenger seat - G282-
- ◆ Front passenger seat head restraint adjustment motor - V104-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Only cover, padding and entire base frame of head restraint can be renewed
- ❑ It is not possible to disassemble base frame or renew electrical and electronic components installed in base frame

**5 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest

Protected by c Copyin f al purpo , in part or in whole, is not permitted unl rised by A ces not g ntee or accept any liability with resp correctn is docum Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.11.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat

**Note**

- *The head restraint is permanently attached to the backrest padding and can only be removed together with the backrest padding.*
- *The head restraint cannot be separated from the backrest padding.*
- *For greater clarity, the backrest cover is not shown in the illustration.*

**1 - Outer backrest frame**

**2 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest

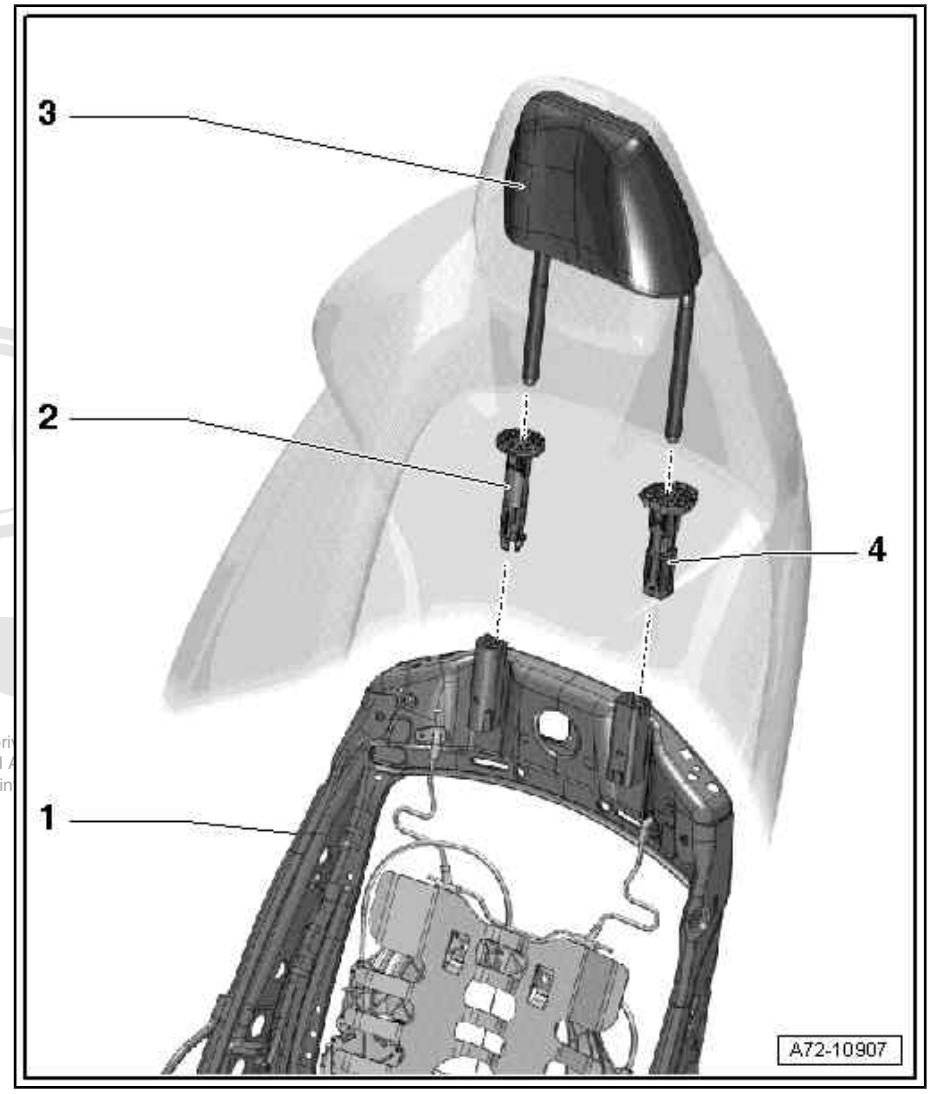
**3 - Head restraint**

- ❑ With padding
- ❑ Head restraint foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

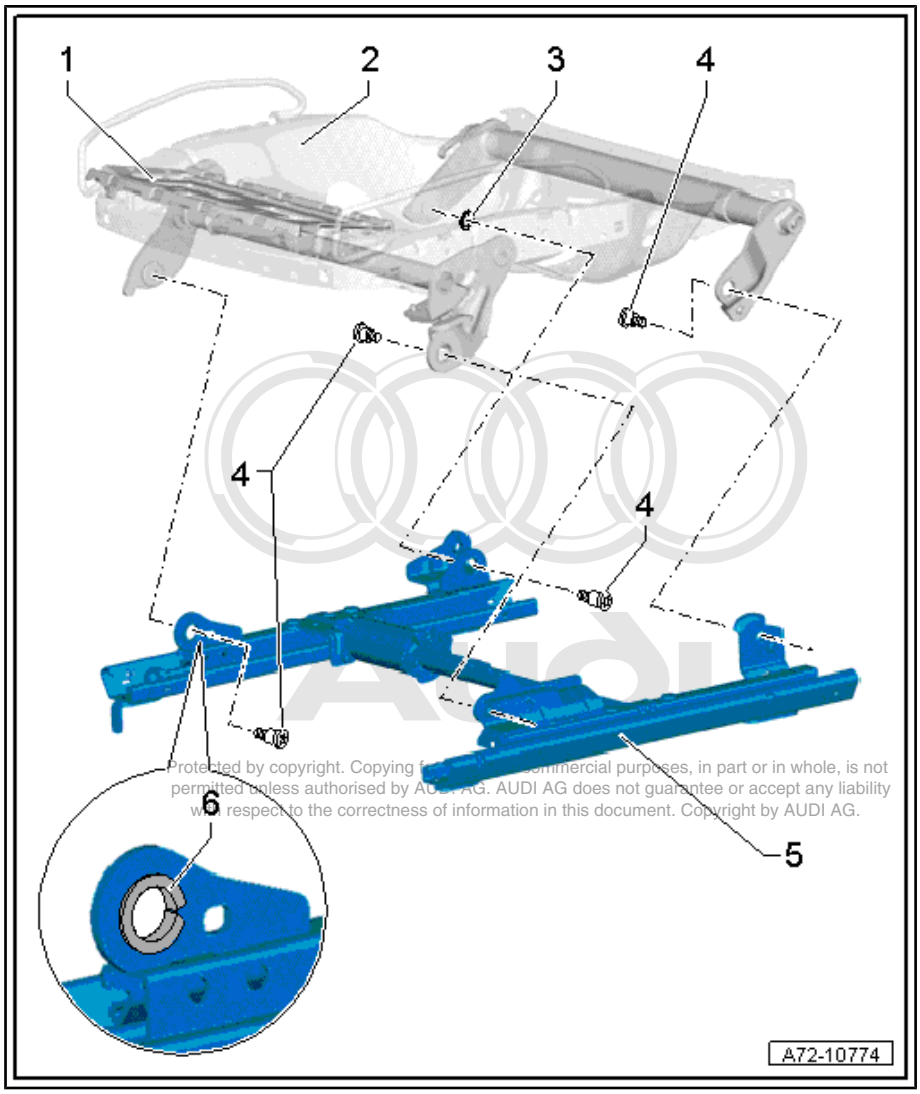
**4 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for pri
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of in



## 2.12 Exploded view - seat pan




**1 - Seat depth adjuster**

- For sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 327
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**2 - Upper seat pan frame**

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**3 - Washer**

**4 - Bolts**

- 4x
- Self-locking
- Always renew after removing
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- 22 Nm

**5 - Lower seat pan frame**

- Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- Cannot be dismantled
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- When renewing, fit seat position sensor and belt buckle in new lower frame

**6 - Bush**

- Inserted in all pivot points
- Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- Component must be renewed if bush is damaged
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.13 Exploded view - spring mat

**1 - Extension spring (bottom)**

- ❑ Not available as separate part

**2 - Extension spring (centre)**

- ❑ Not available as separate part

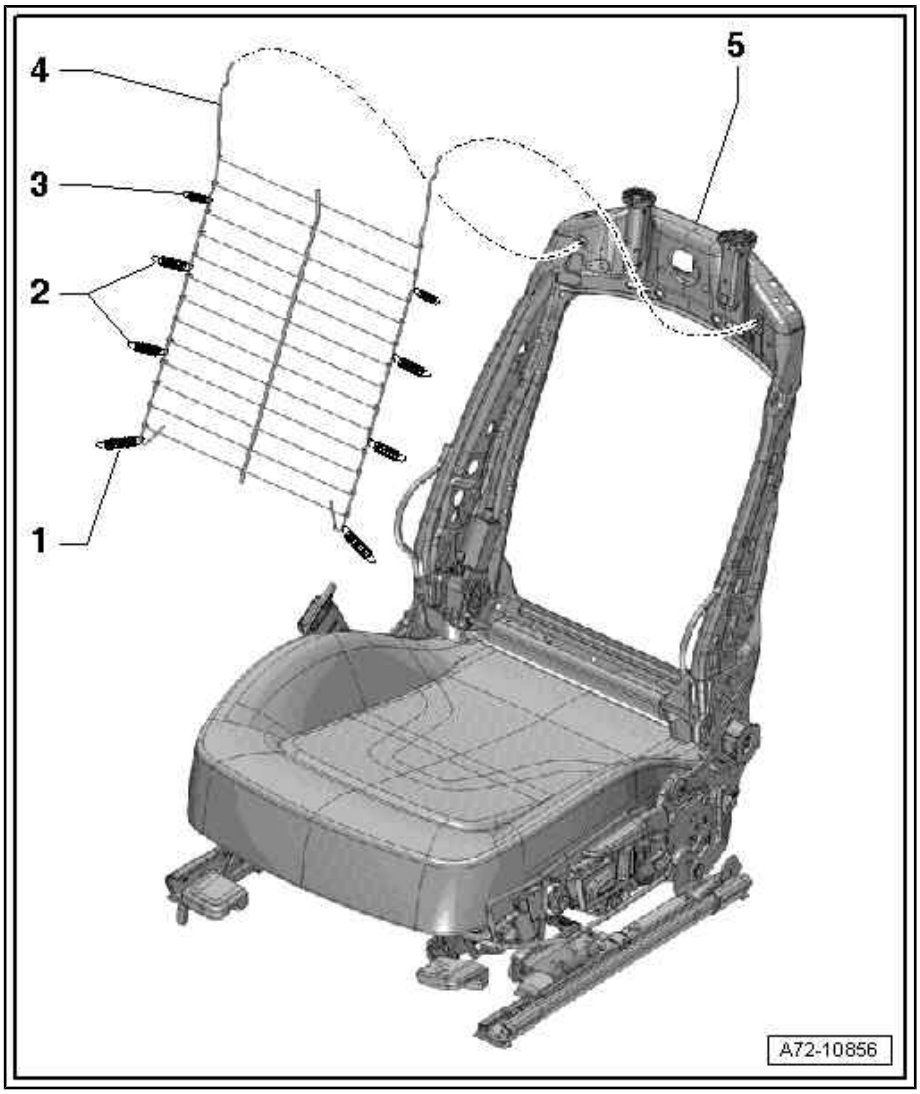
**3 - Extension spring (top)**

- ❑ Not available as separate part

**4 - Spring mat**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Can be removed and installed with or without extension springs

**5 - Outer backrest frame**



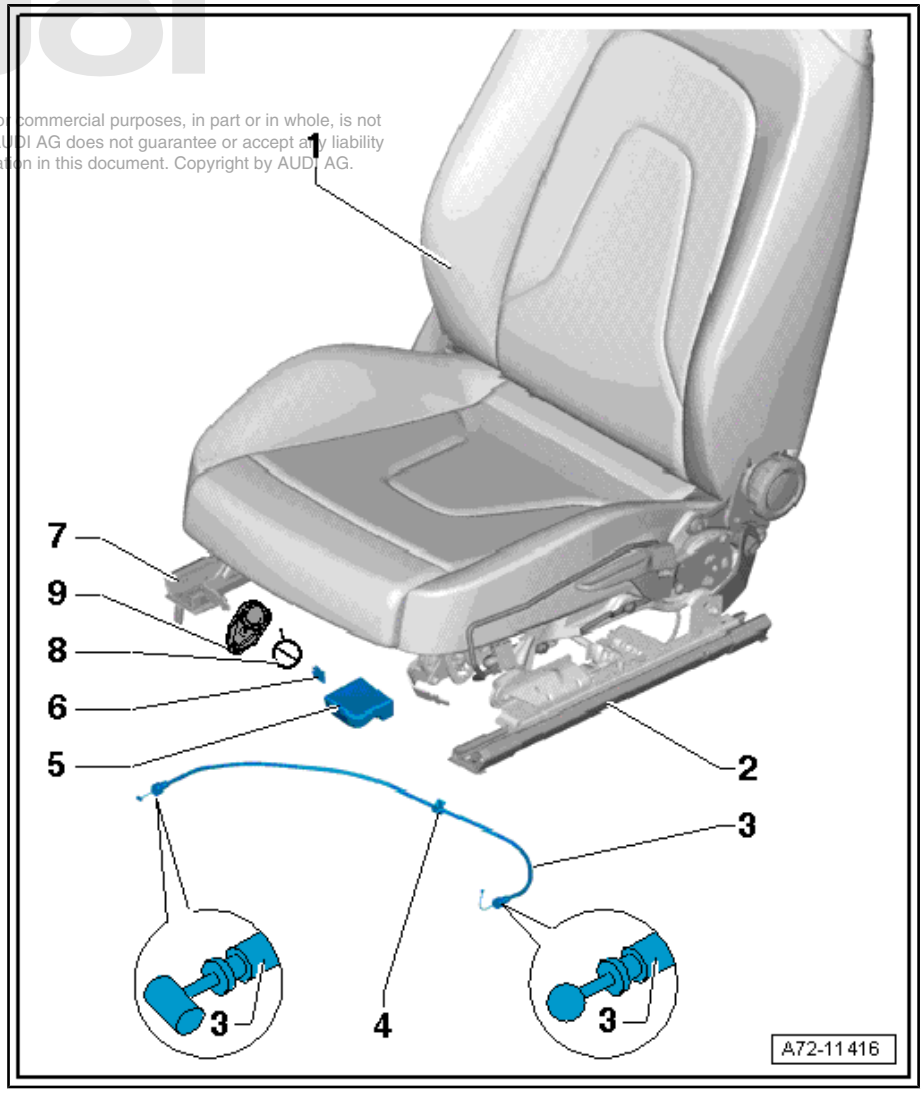

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.14 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjuster

**Note**

- *On standard front seat (with manual adjustment), bottom part of seat with seat longitudinal adjustment should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).*
- *A repair set is available for repairing the seat longitudinal adjuster ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Seat longitudinal adjuster**

- ❑ Component of bottom part of seat
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Repairing seat longitudinal adjuster, renewing connecting rod ⇒ page 321

**3 - Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjuster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317
- ❑ There is no provision for Bowden cable adjustment

**4 - Clip or cable tie**

**5 - Handle**

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316

**6 - Retaining clip**

- ❑ Always renew seat longitudinal adjustment handle after removing
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 317

**7 - Actuator**

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment

**8 - Spring**

- ❑ For lever for engaging Bowden cable (seat longitudinal adjustment)
- ❑ Different components on driver's and front passenger's seats
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319

**9 - Lever**

- ❑ For engaging Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Identical on driver's and front passenger's seats
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319

## 2.15 Exploded view - seat rake adjuster

**1 - Handle**

- ❑ For seat rake adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325

**2 - Retaining clip**

- ❑ Always renew seat rake adjustment handle after removing
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 326

**3 - Bolt**

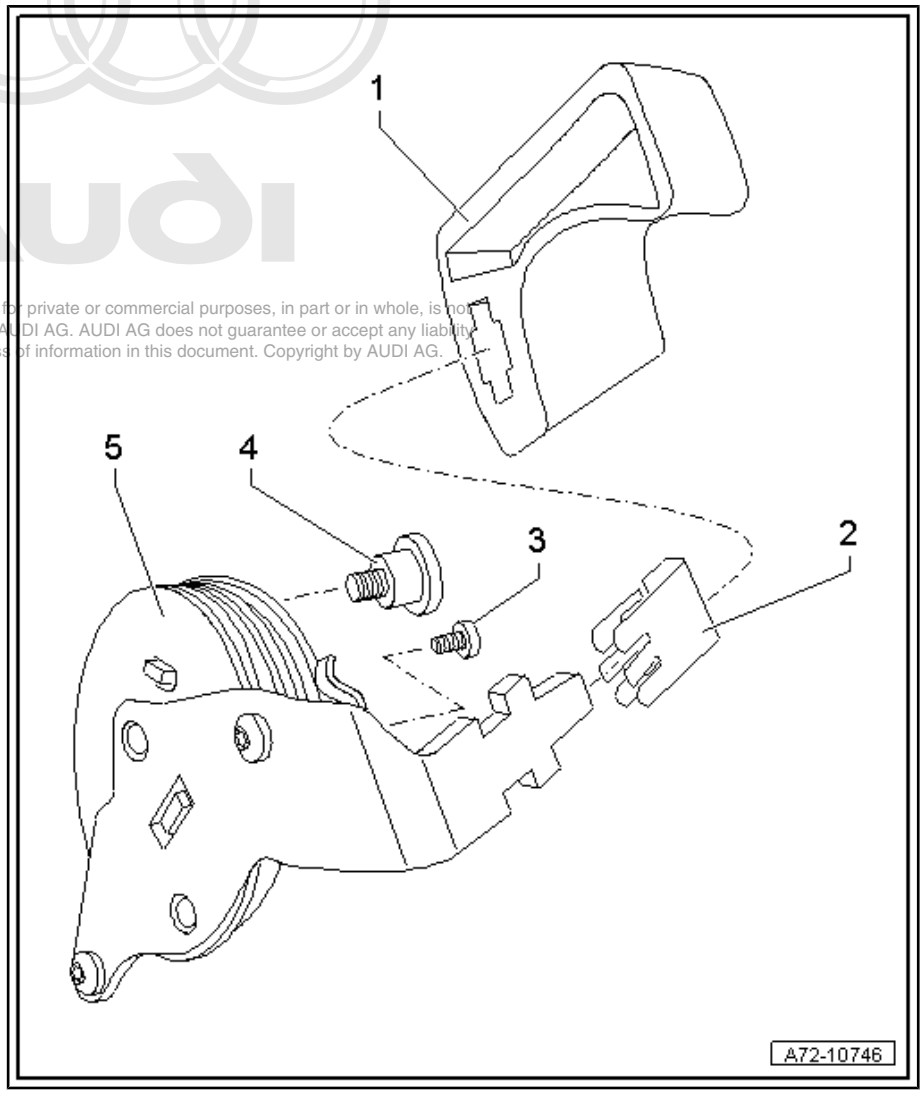
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

**4 - Pivot stud**

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6 Nm

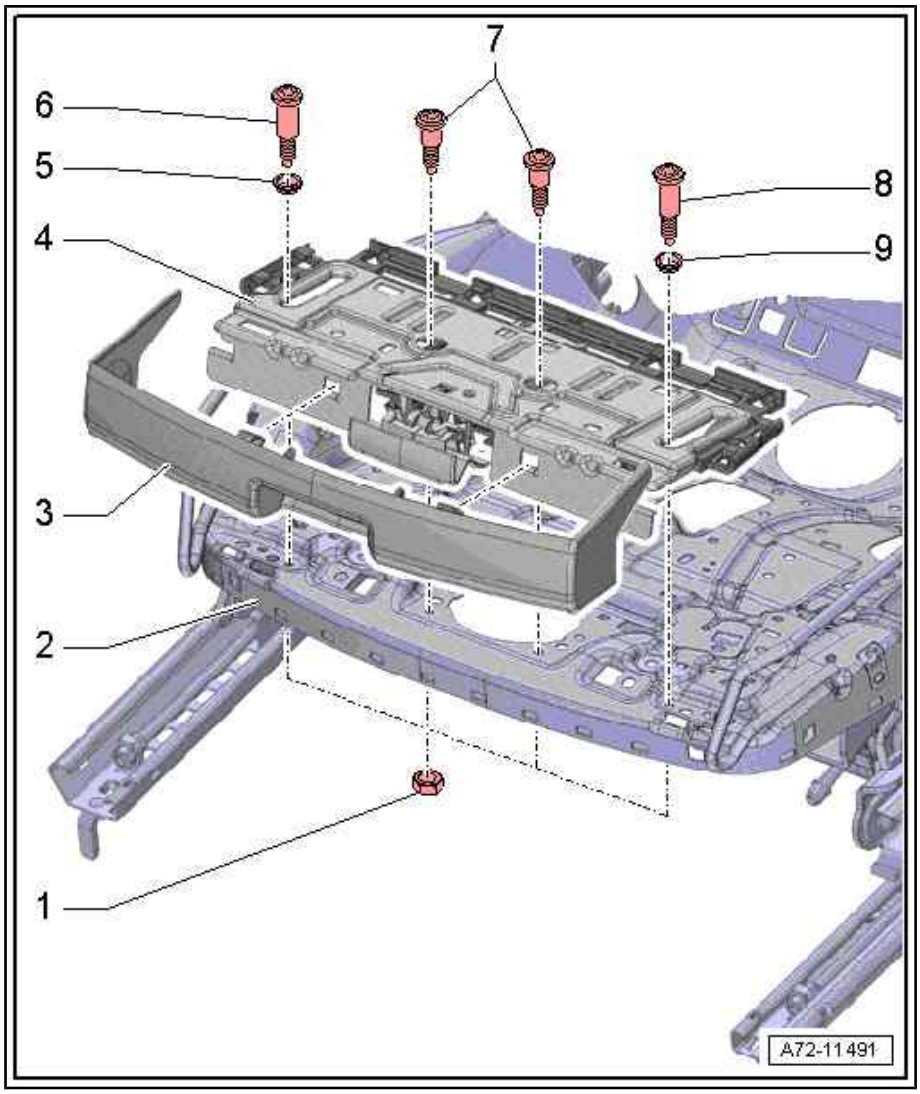
**5 - Seat rake adjuster**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 326




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.16 Exploded view - seat depth adjuster




**1 - Nut**
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew

**2 - Sports seat**
- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

**3 - Trim**
- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

**4 - Seat depth adjuster**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

**5 - Bush**

**6 - Bolt**
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

**7 - Bolts**
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

**8 - Bolt**
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

**9 - Bush**

## 2.17 Exploded view - storage compartment

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Trim (sill side)**

**3 - Speed nut**

- ❑ 2x

**4 - Storage compartment**

- ❑ Different versions

♦ For front standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment)

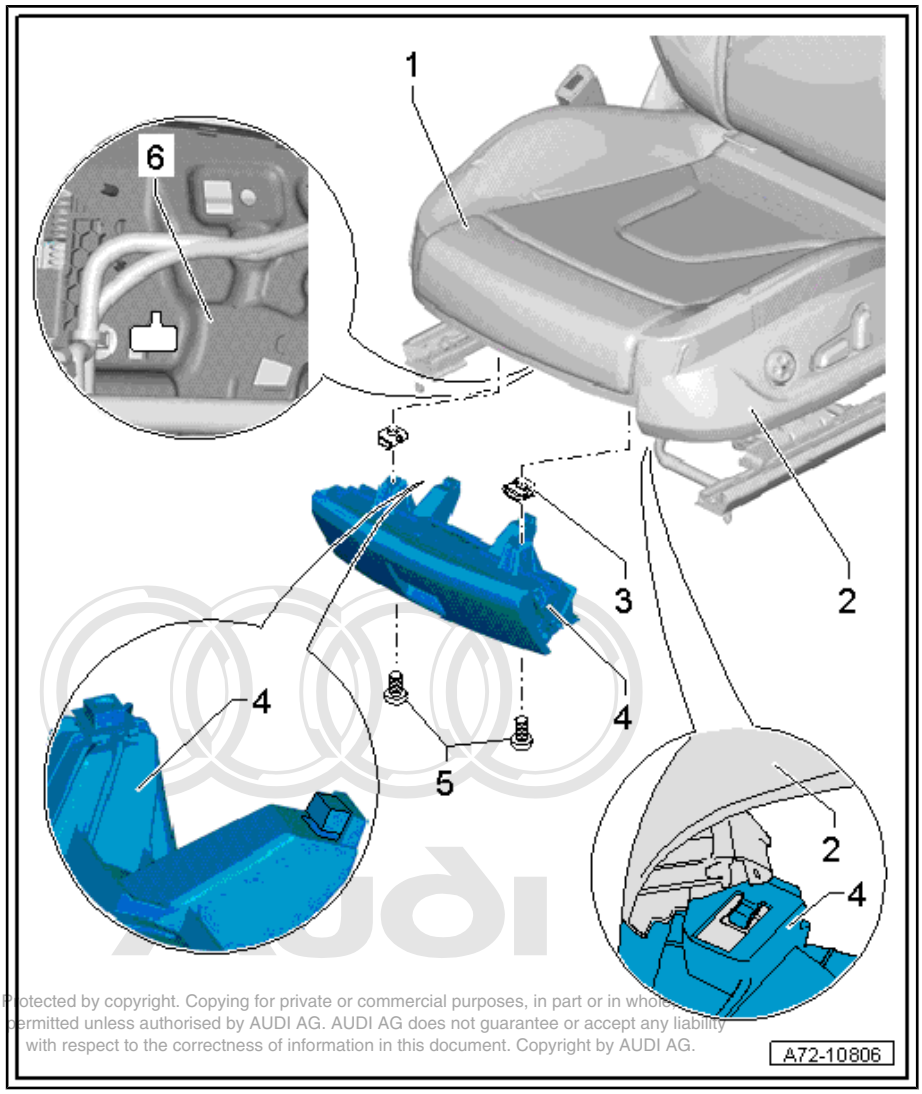
♦ For front seats - standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 350
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled and is only available as a complete replacement unit
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

**6 - Upper seat pan frame**



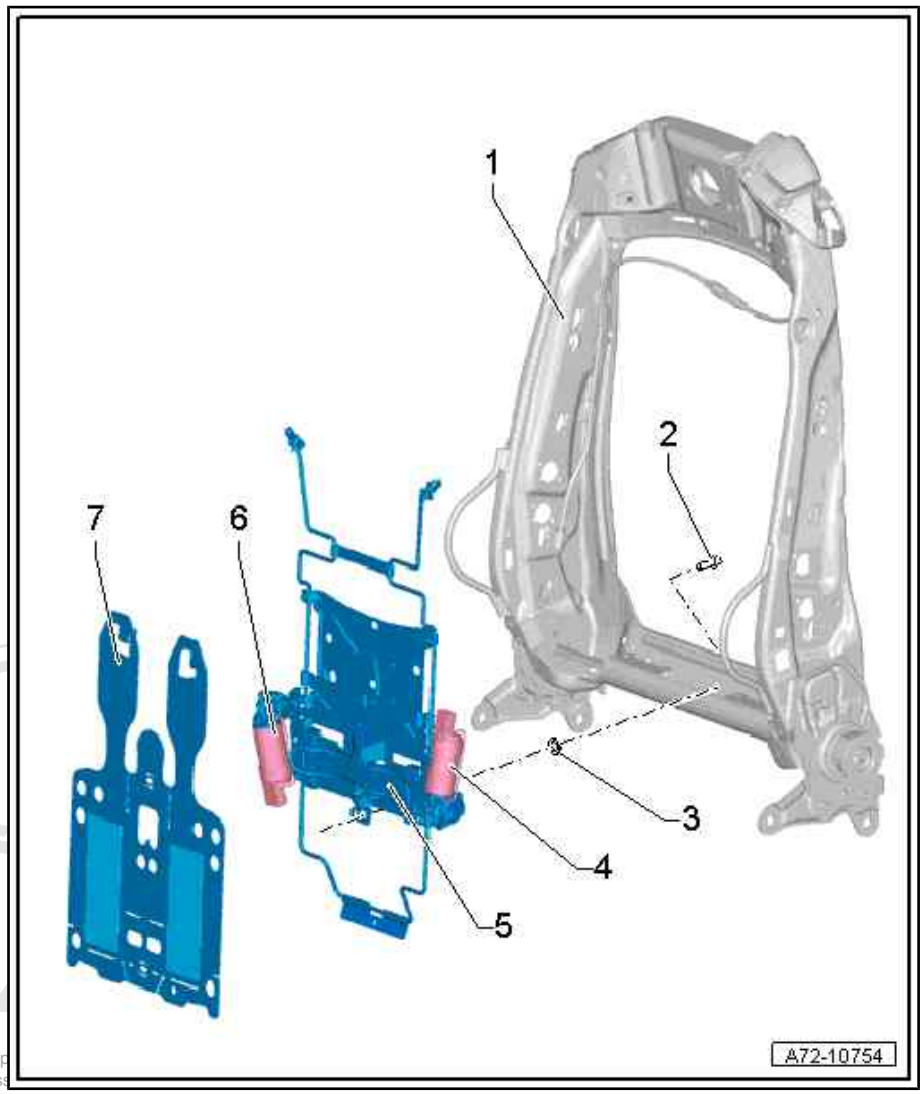

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.18 Exploded view - lumbar support

⇒ “2.18.1 Exploded view - lumbar support, all seats except convenience seat”, page 266

⇒ “2.18.2 Exploded view - lumbar support, convenience seat”, page 267

## 2.18.1 Exploded view - lumbar support, all seats except convenience seat




**1 - Outer backrest frame**

**2 - Rivet**

**3 - Plastic washer**

- ❑ Fit between lumbar support bracket and outer backrest frame before riveting on four-way lumbar support

**4 - Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

**5 - Four-way lumbar support**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 368

**6 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

**7 - Mount**

- ❑ Engaged in four-way lumbar support
- ❑ Padding attached to mount with Velcro strip

Protected by cop
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.18.2 Exploded view - lumbar support, convenience seat

**1 - Plastic washer**

- ❑ Fit between lumbar support bracket and outer backrest frame before riveting on four-way lumbar support

**2 - Four-way lumbar support**

- ❑ Driver side:

- ♦ Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ♦ Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-

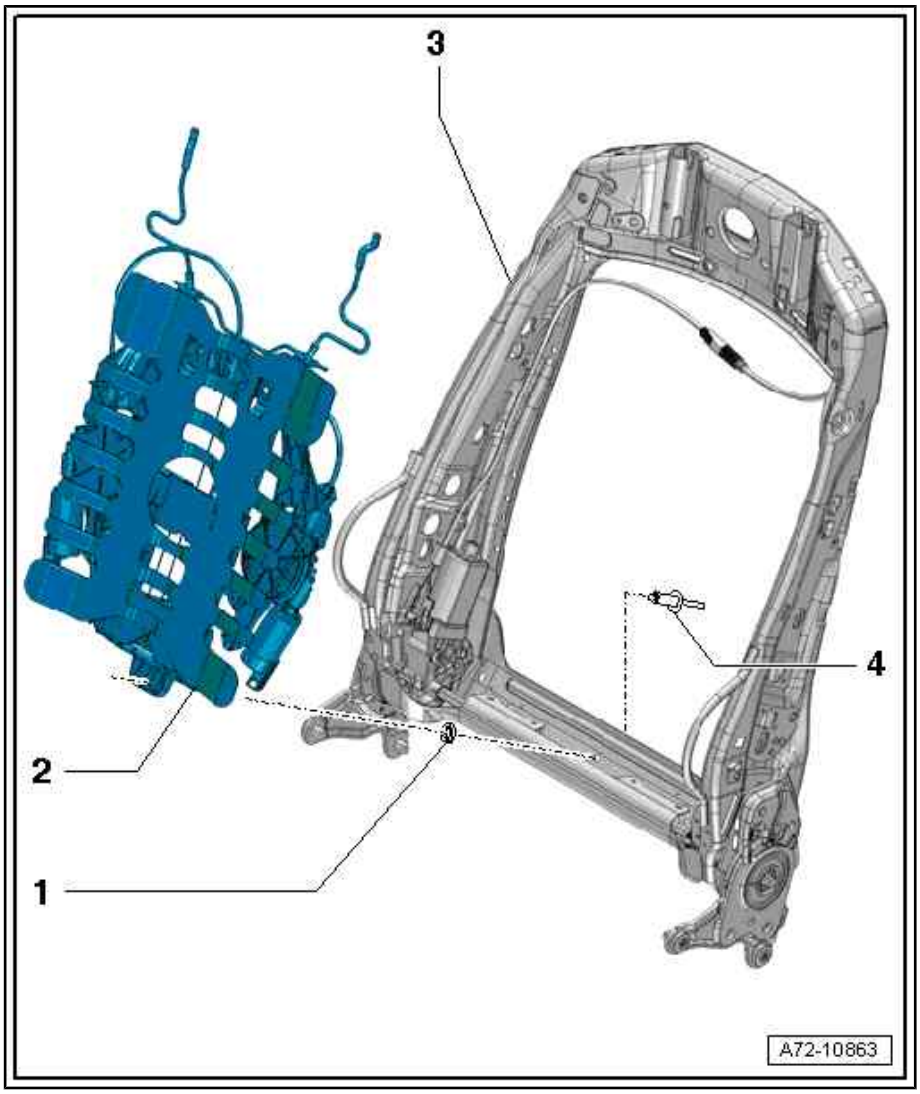
- ❑ Passenger side:

- ♦ Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ♦ Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 372

**3 - Outer backrest frame**

**4 - Rivet**




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.19 Exploded view - seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Pin**

- ❑ For securing retainer to seat pan

**3 - Retainer**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 354
- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on

**4 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory**

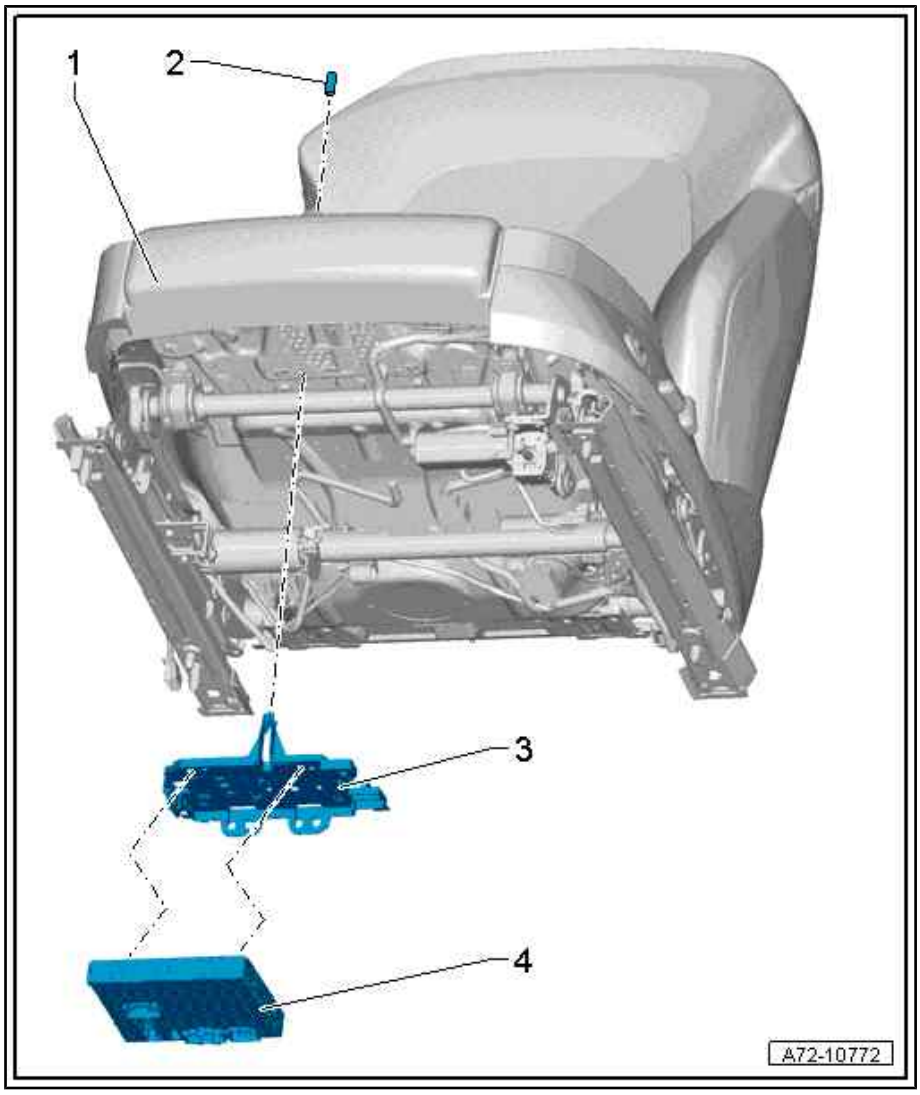
- ❑ Driver side:

- ♦ Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-
- ♦ Equipment version with convenience seat: control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800- integrated

- ❑ Passenger side:

- ♦ Front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
- ♦ Equipment version with convenience seat: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799- integrated

- ❑ Clipped to retainer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 352




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.20 Exploded view - control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating

**1 - Control unit for seat ventilation (seat heating integrated)**

- ❑ Driver side: control unit for front left seat ventilation - J800-
- ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front right seat ventilation - J799-
- ❑ Clipped to retainer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 355

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

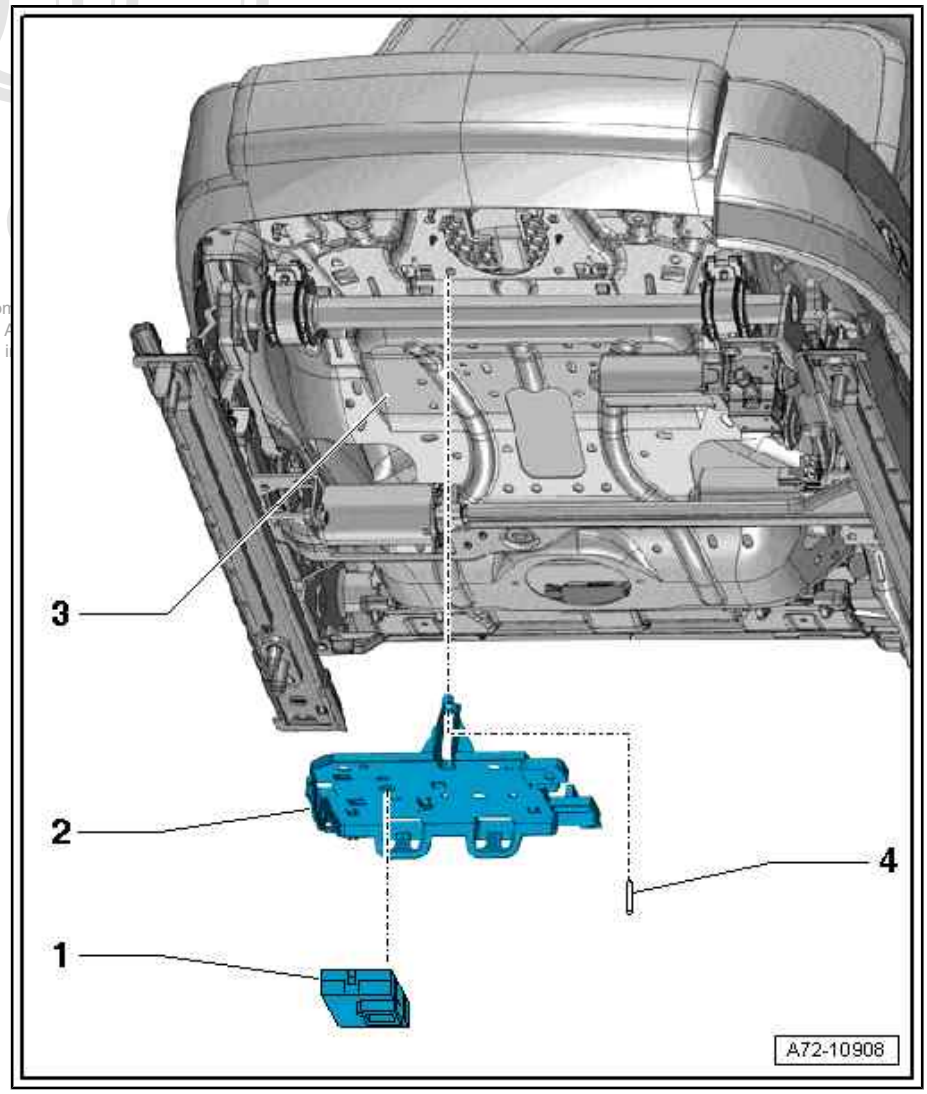
**2 - Retainer**

- ❑ Engaged in seat pan and clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 354

**3 - Front seat**

**4 - Pin**

- ❑ For securing retainer to seat pan



## 2.21 Exploded view - seat longitudinal adjustment motor

**Note**

- *If motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed.*
- *For greater clarity, seat pan is shown without its padding and cover.*

**1 - Upper seat pan frame**

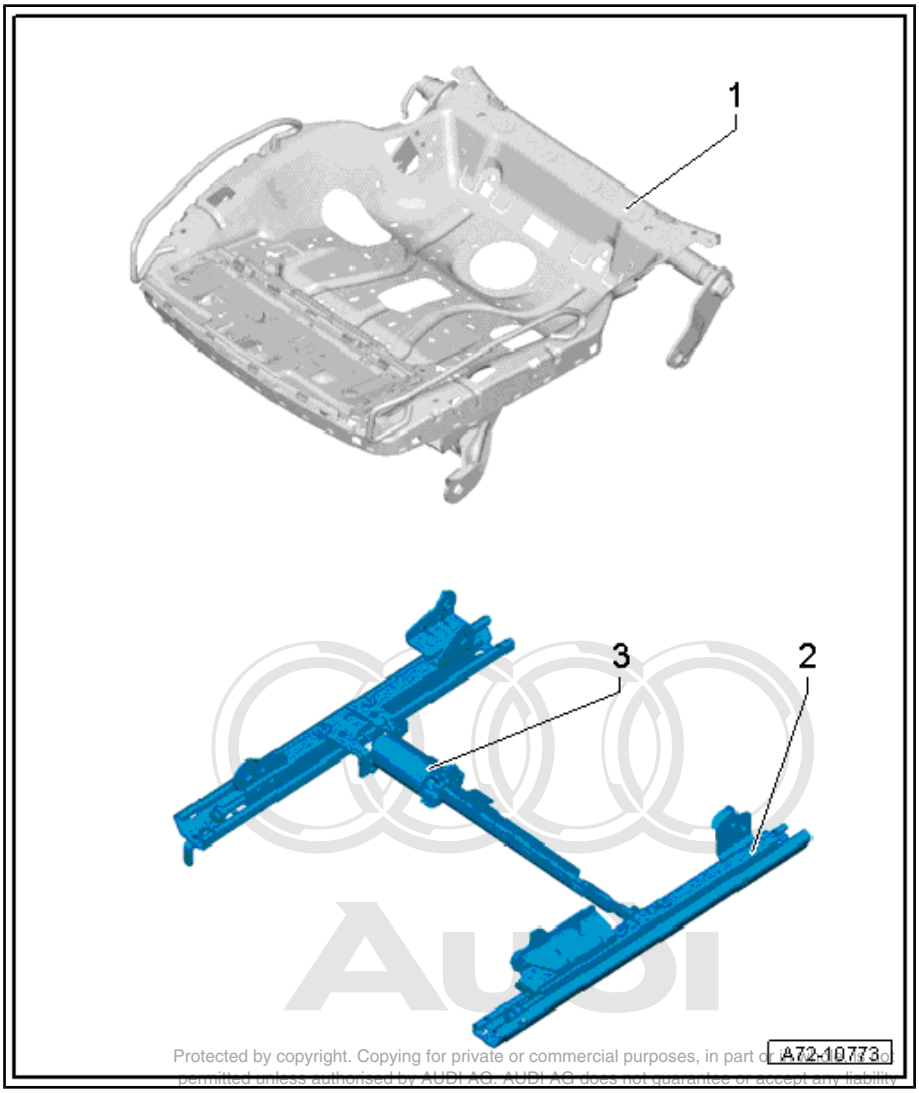
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**2 - Lower seat pan frame**

- ❑ With seat longitudinal adjustment motor
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled; only available as a complete unit ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301

**3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor**

- ❑ With lower frame of seat pan
- ❑ Driver side: driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled; only available as a complete unit ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.22 Exploded view - backrest adjustment motor

**Note**

*For greater clarity, the padding, seat cover and seat pan are not shown in the illustration.*

**1 - Outer backrest frame**

**2 - Nut**

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 6 Nm

**3 - Washer**

**4 - Shaft**

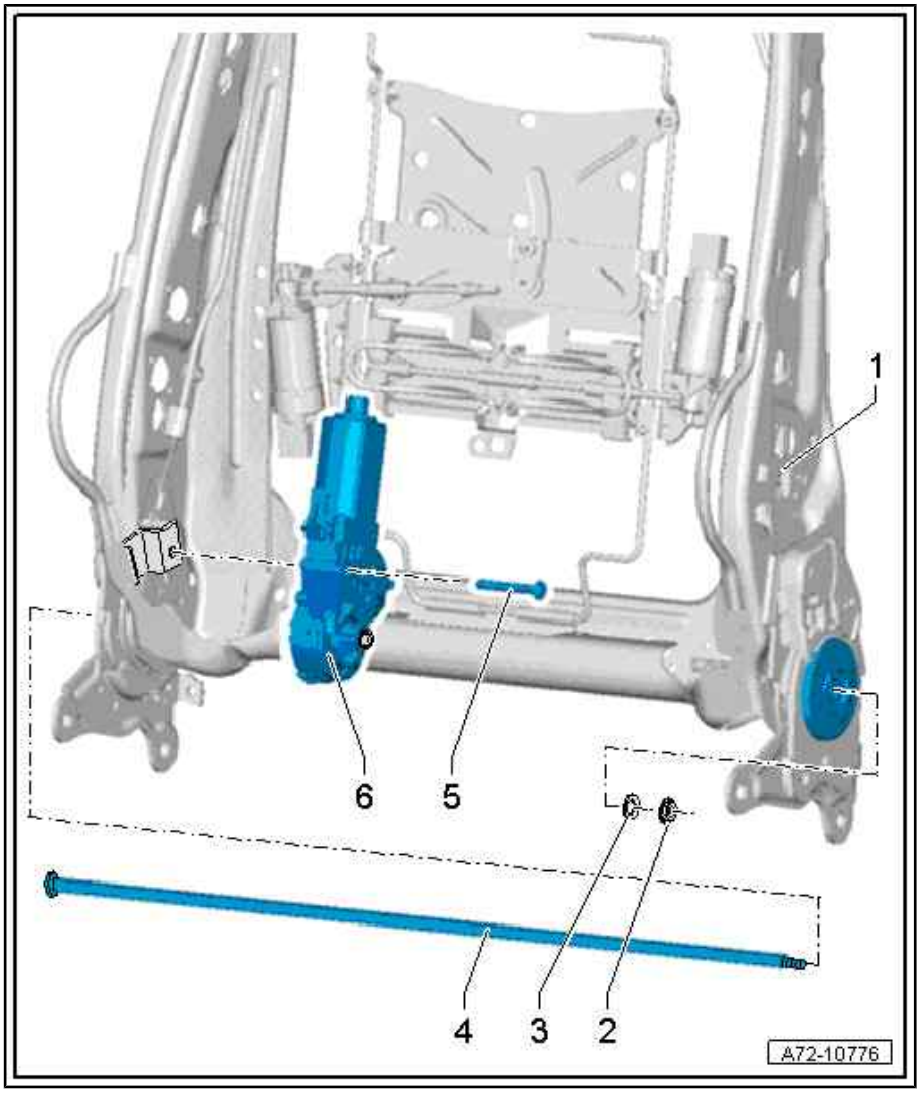
- ❑ Thread must be cleaned before nut -item 2- is fitted (using e.g. a thread tap)
- ❑ Before fitting nut, apply locking fluid to threaded section of shaft; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**5 - Bolt**

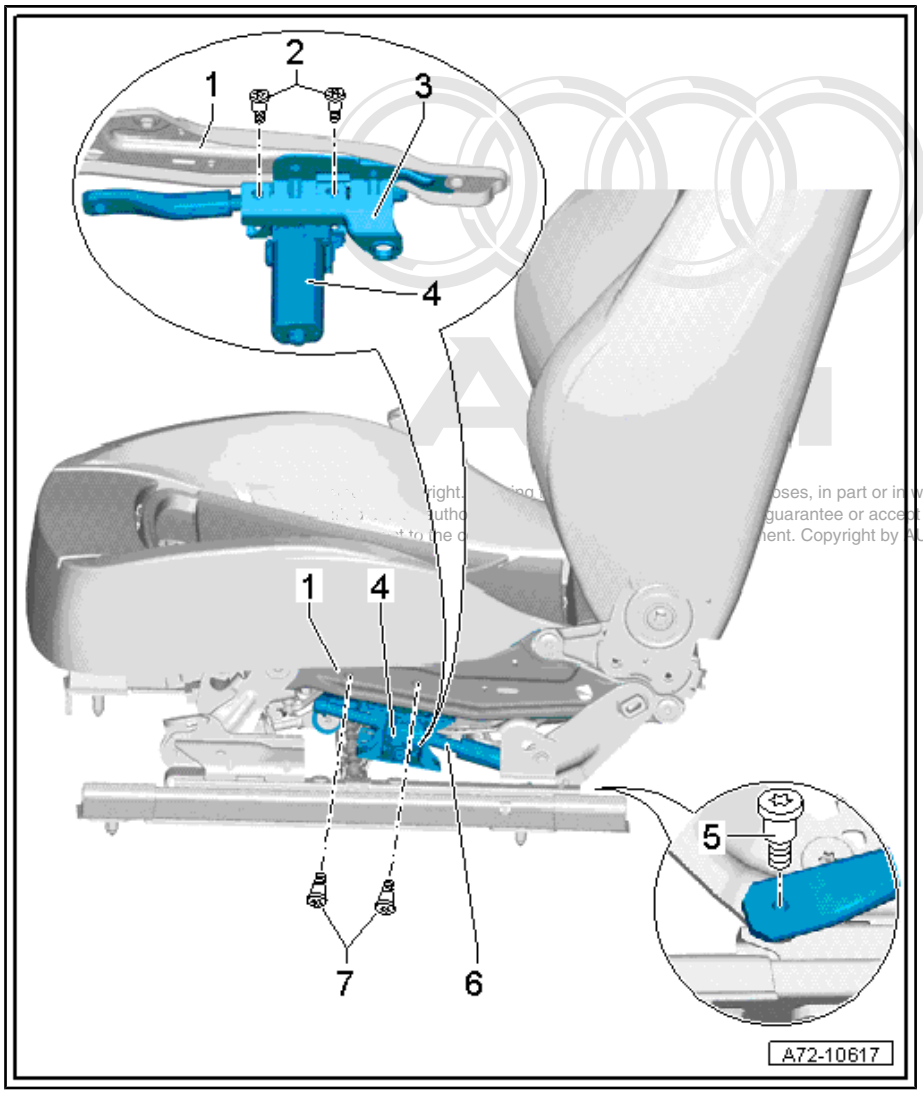
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

**6 - Backrest adjustment motor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 357



## 2.23 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor




**1 - Seat pan**

**2 - Bolts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm

**3 - Bracket**

- ❑ Bolted to seat pan

**4 - Seat height adjustment motor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 361

**5 - Bolt**

> **Caution**
> *Bolt with left-hand thread.*

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Observe notes when removing and installing ⇒ page 361
- ❑ Always clean threaded hole for bolt, using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 18 Nm

**6 - Adjustment spindle**

- ❑ Pre-set at factory
- ❑ Part of seat height adjustment motor

**7 - Bolts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 28 Nm

guarantee or accept any liability
ment. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.24 Exploded view - seat rake adjustment motor

**1 - Seat rake adjustment motor**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 366

**2 - Bolts**

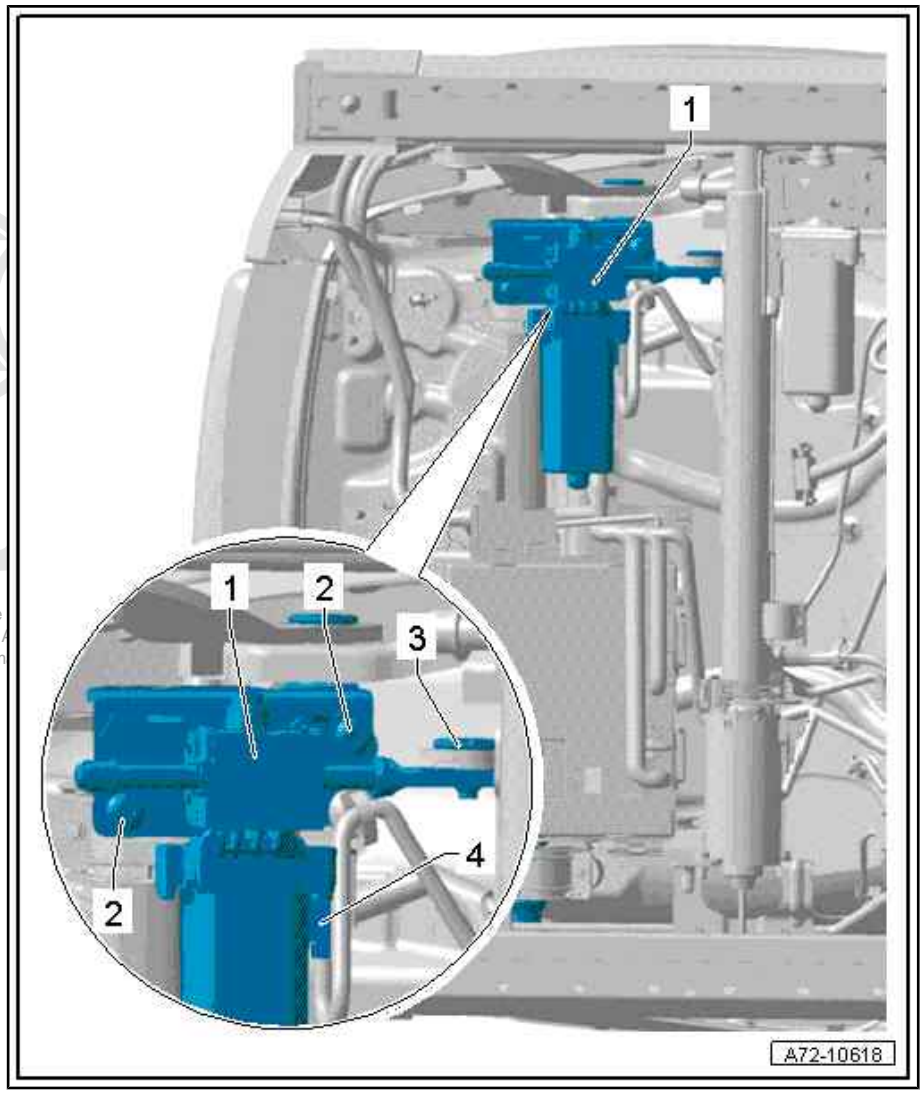
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm

**3 - Bolt**

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 20 Nm

**4 - Electrical connector**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
correctness of inform



## 2.25 Overview - seat cushion and backrest fans

**1 - Seat cushion fan**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat cushion fan - V390-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan - V391-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 377

**2 - Seat cushion fan 2**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat cushion fan 2 - V419-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat cushion fan 2 - V420-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 377

**3 - Backrest fan 2**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat backrest fan 2 - V417-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan 2 - V418-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 378

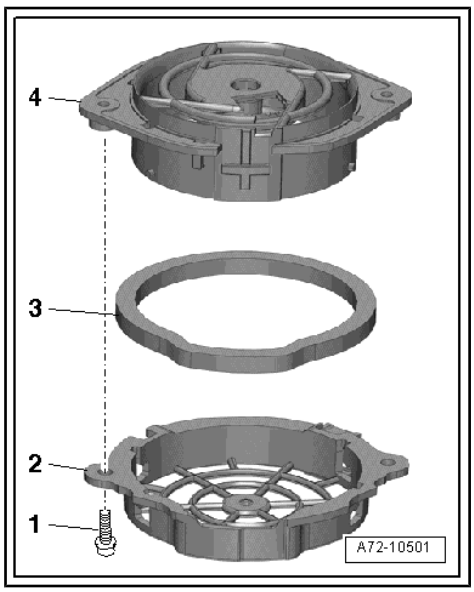
**4 - Backrest fan**

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat backrest fan - V388-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest fan - V389-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 378




**Exploded view - seat cushion fan**

1 - Bolt, 1.5 Nm
2 - Cover grille
3 - Seat cushion fan
4 - Seat cushion fan




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.26 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ "2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 275

⇒ "2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat", page 277

⇒ "2.26.3 Removing and installing front seat (if seat longitudinal adjustment motor or control unit are defective)", page 279

## 2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described on the basis of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the front passenger's seat.*

**Removing**

**WARNING**

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

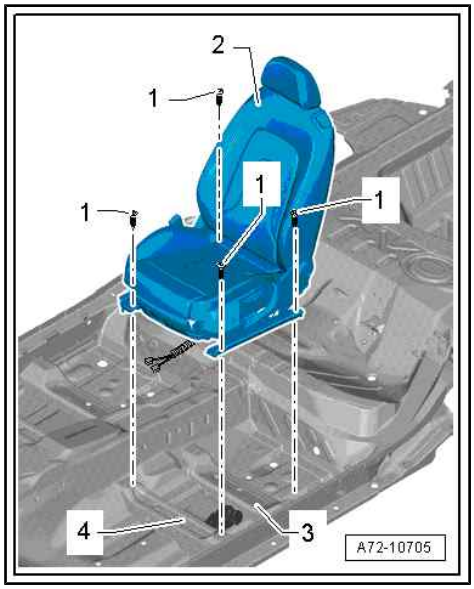
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 70 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.
– Move seat -2- forwards as far as it will go.
– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at rear of bracket -3-.
– Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.
– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at front of bracket -4-.




**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Unplug connectors at connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .
– Lift seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install seat before detaching airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Tightening torque ⇒ page 234

## 2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*Removal and installation are described on the basis of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the front passenger's seat.*

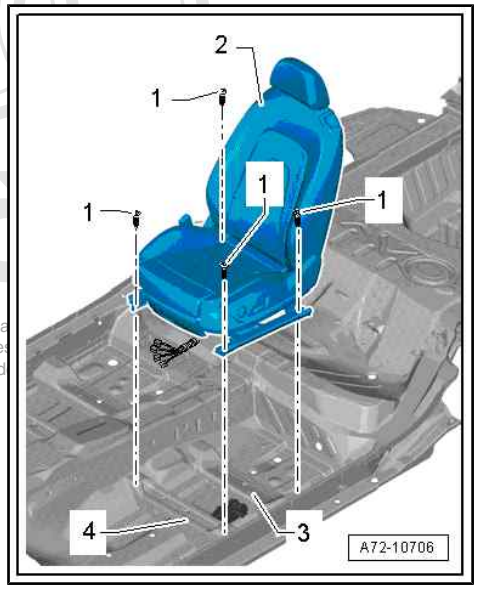
Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 70 .

– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.
– Move seat -2- forwards and upwards as far as it will go.
– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at rear of bracket -3-.
– Move seat upwards and to rear as far as it will go.
– Remove spindle cover for seat rail ⇒ page 335 .
– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at front of bracket -4-.
– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
Jentitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

**WARNING**

*Before handling airbag components (e.g. unplugging electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug connectors at connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 236

## 2.26.3 Removing and installing front seat (if seat longitudinal adjustment motor or control unit are defective)

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document or parts thereof may not be used for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- or control unit -J136- / -J521-**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move seat to highest position.

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 338 .

**Note**

*To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat any further.*

– Perform the following checks:

- Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Check voltage at control unit ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Renew fuse if it is defective ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ page 301 .

– If control unit is defective, renew control unit -J136- / -J521- ⇒ page 352 .

## Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- /-V31-is defective

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

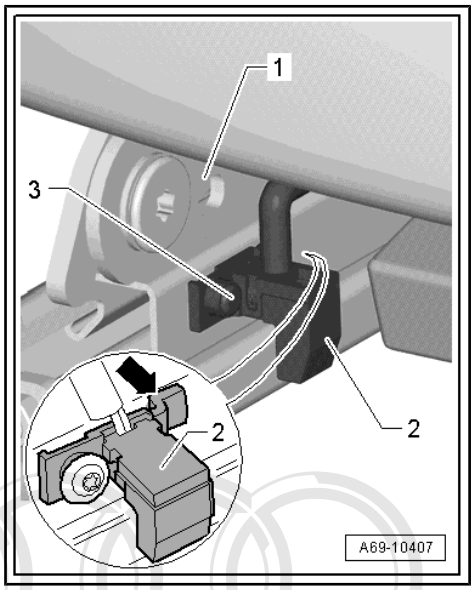
– Unplug electrical connectors at connector point ⇒ page 284 .

– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .

– Remove bolt -3-.

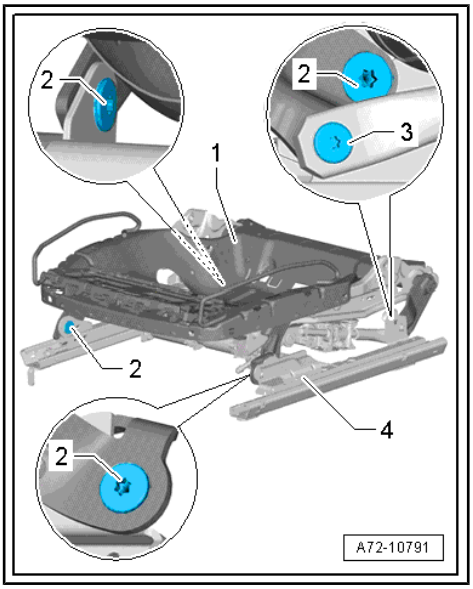
– Disengage seat position sensor -2- at hooks -arrow- from lower seat pan frame -1- and move to one side with electrical wiring attached.

– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 73 .




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.




**Caution**

*Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

*Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.*

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*

– Remove bolt -3-.

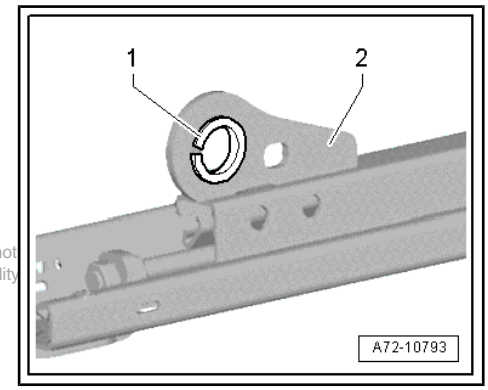
– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– With the help of a second mechanic, lift upper seat pan frame -1- off lower frame -4- and remove from vehicle.

**Note**

*In the illustration, the seat pan is shown without the padding, cover and backrest.*

– Make sure that bushes -1- in pivot points are not damaged (bolted connection between upper and lower frame) -2-.

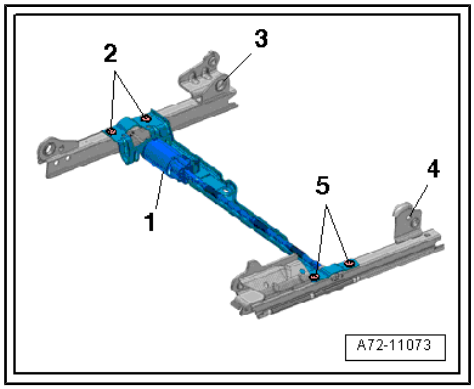



**Caution**

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Audi
This document, in whole or in part, is not to be reproduced without authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -5- and remove defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -1- with bracket.
– Move seat rails -3- and -4- forwards/backwards until bolt for seat rail is accessible.
– Unscrew bolt and detach seat rail.
– Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ page 301 .




**Removing if control unit -J136- /-J521- is defective**

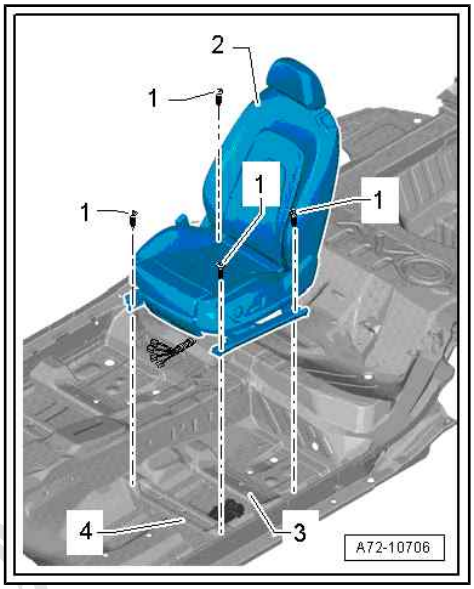
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Unplug connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect seat longitudinal adjustment motor to an external power source and move seat forward or backwards as necessary until bolts -1- (4x) are visible.
– Unscrew bolts.
– Unplug connectors at connector point ⇒ page 284 .
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .
– Renew control unit -J136- / -J521- ⇒ page 352 .




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter ⇒ page 286 .
– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

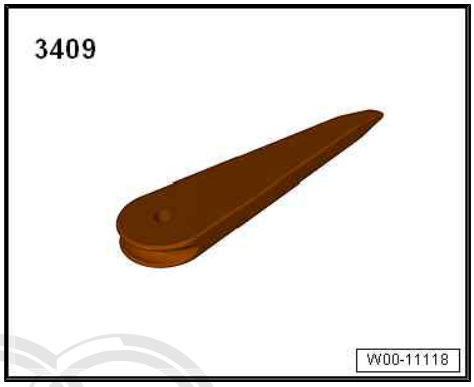
# 2.27 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

**Note**

*The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the seat.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

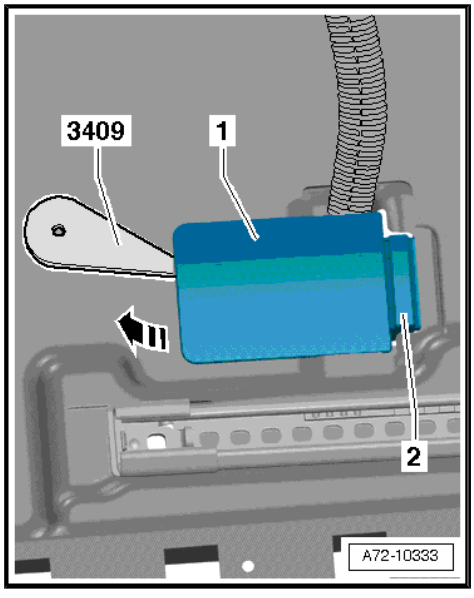



### Unplugging connectors

**WARNING**

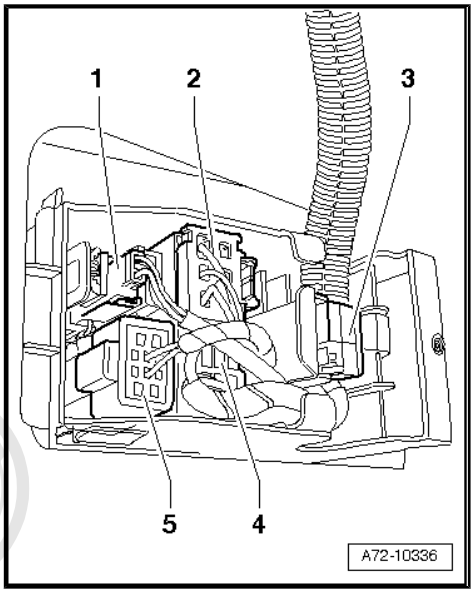
*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*

– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.
– Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.
– Switch on ignition.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Using removal wedge - 3409- unclip cover -1- at front and pull it off connector point -2- in direction of -arrow-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lift cable retainer -3- off connector point.




**Note**

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.*
*The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*

**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

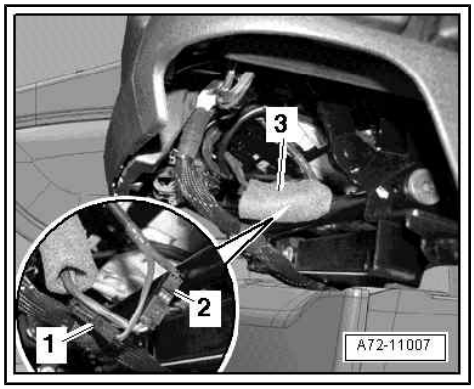
– Unplug side airbag connector -1-.
– Plug in airbag adapter at side airbag connector on front seat ⇒ page 286 .
– Equipment version with seat heating: Unplug seat heating connector -2-.
– Equipment version with seat with electric adjustment: Unplug seat adjustment power connector -4-.
– Unplug belt buckle connector -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Vehicles with DVD player:**

– Push grommet -3- to the side.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- and move wiring harness clear.




**Plugging in connectors**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Plug in connectors in reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

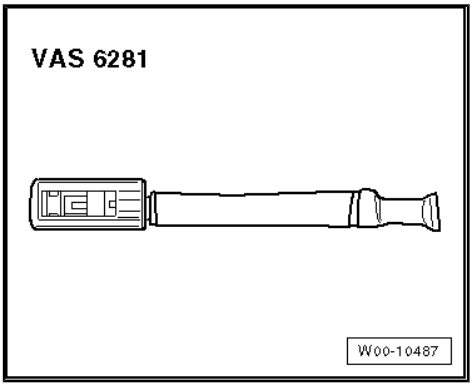
## 2.28 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

**Note**

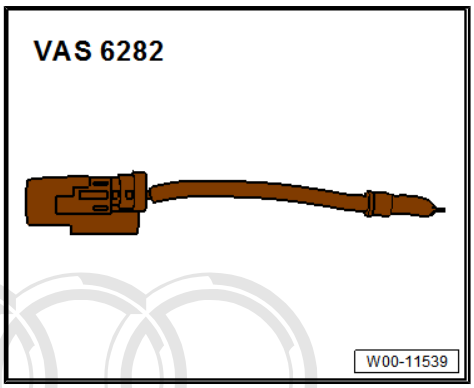
*There are two versions of the side airbag connector (new version fitted from approx. January 2013 onwards).*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6281-




- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



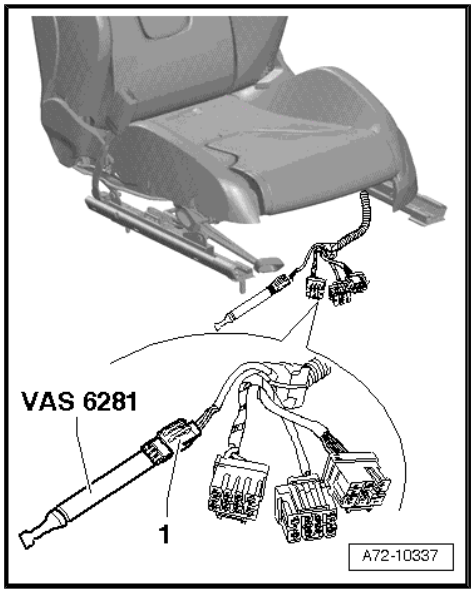

**Unplugging airbag connector**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug connector for side airbag ⇒ page 284 .
– Plug in airbag adapter - VAS 6281- or airbag adapter - VAS 6282- at side airbag connector (on seat) -1-.




**Caution**

*Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6281- or airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.*

**Note**

*Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.*

### Plugging in airbag connector

Plug in airbag connectors in reverse order; note the following:

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.29 Connector point connectors

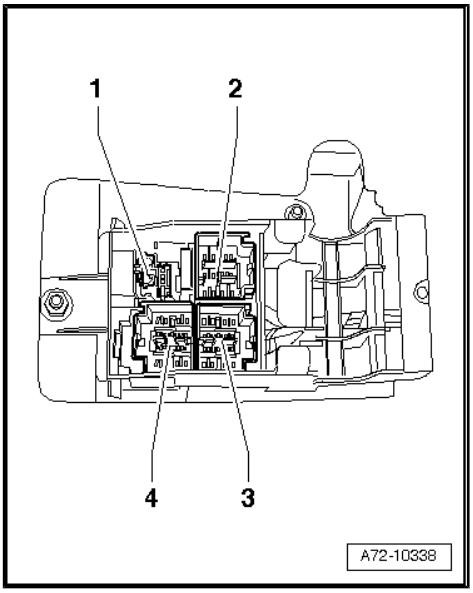
Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

1 - Side airbag

2 - Seat heating

3 - Power supply for seat adjustment

4 - Belt buckle




**Note**

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*

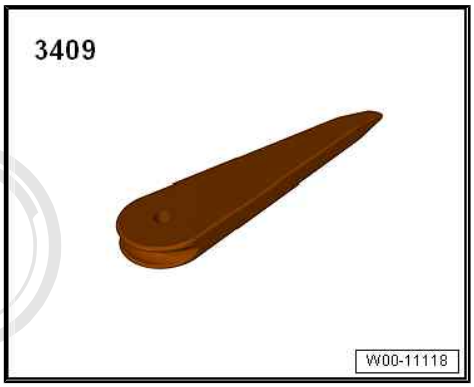
## 2.30 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat

**Note**

*With the so-called modular wire routing, the electrical wires between the seat pan and the connector point are inserted in a two-shell corrugated tube.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-




### Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

**WARNING**

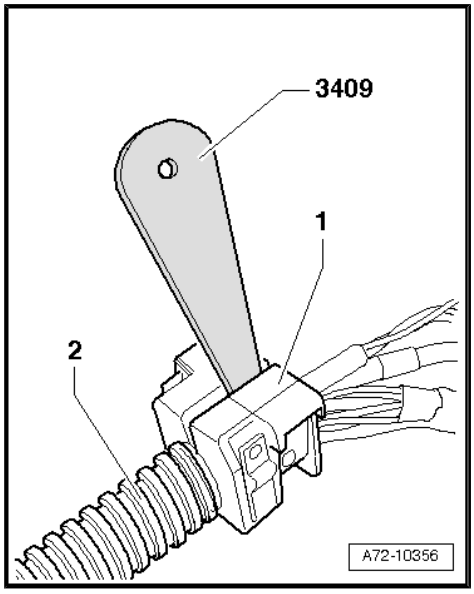
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .
– Use removal wedge - 3409- to open cable retainer -1-.
– Detach cable retainer from corrugated tube -2-.




**Note**

*To renew a defective wire or side airbag, open corrugated tube ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 or ⇒ page 107 .*

### Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

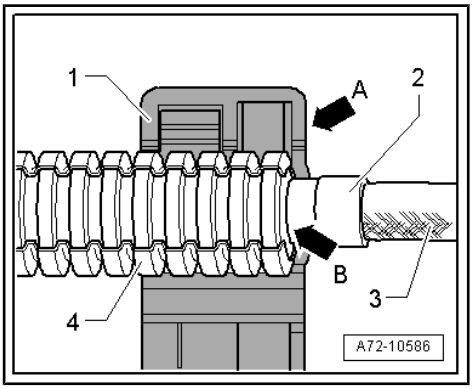
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and inserting them in the corrugated tube.

**Note**

*Observe correct installation positions of two-piece corrugated tube in relation to wiring harness and cable retainer in relation to corrugated tube.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




- The start of the corrugated tube -4- should be positioned immediately after clip -2- / cable tie around wiring harness -3-.
- Make sure two-piece corrugated tube is properly closed over its entire length.
- After assembling two halves of corrugated tube, position cable retainer -1- as shown and clip into place.
- Make sure side -arrow A- of cable retainer makes immediate contact with final bead -arrow B- on corrugated tube.
- Place cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips in same position as prior to disassembly.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Audi
Reproduction, duplication or distribution to third parties of this document in whole, is not permitted without Audi's authorization. Audi does not accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

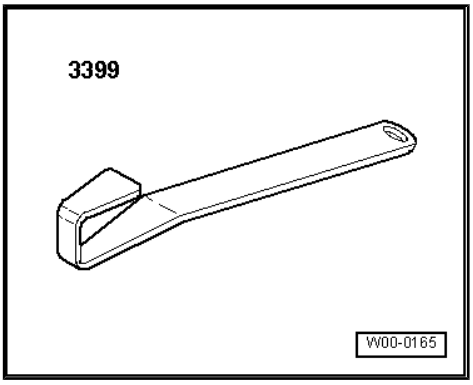
**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.31 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Assembly tool - 3399-



### Removing

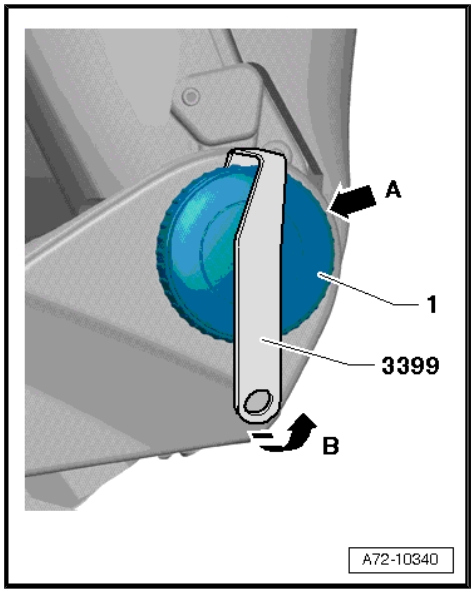
– Turn backrest adjuster -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.

– Hook in assembly tool - 3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.

– Turn backrest adjuster a further 120 °.

– Hook in assembly tool - 3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.

– Remove backrest adjuster.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew backrest adjuster if it is too loose after assembly.

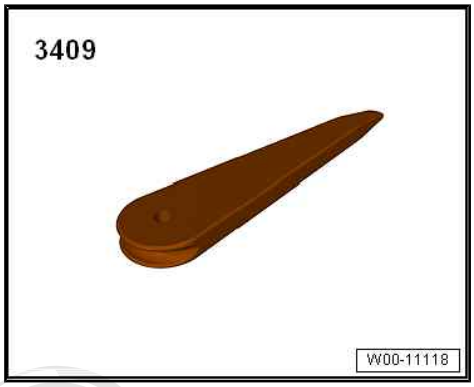
## 2.32 Removing and installing front seat backrest

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for a standard driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the front passenger's seat and other seat versions.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




### Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 2*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- ♦ Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove trim (sill side):

- ♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.53.1 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 336 .
- ♦ Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.53.2 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 338 .

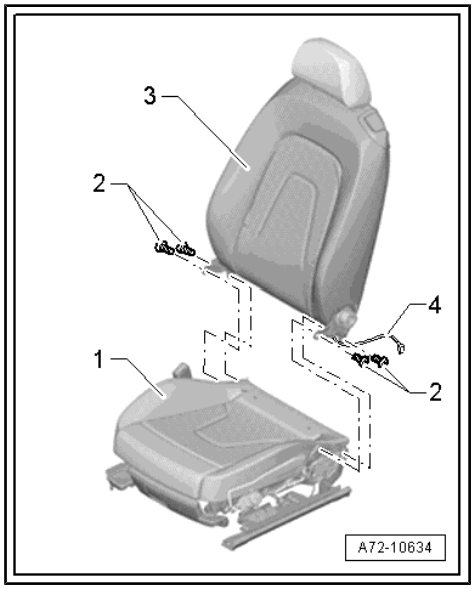
– Unplug connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses ⇒ page 289 .

**Note**

*There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -2-.
– Swivel backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -1-.
– Press seat pan padding to side and carefully pull wiring harness for side airbag -4- and any other wiring harnesses leading to backrest (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
– Detach backrest.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Always clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts using e.g. a thread tap.
– Renew all self-locking bolts.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 255**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.33 Removing and installing head restraint

⇒ "2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment", page 295

⇒ "2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat", page 295

⇒ "2.33.3 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat", page 297

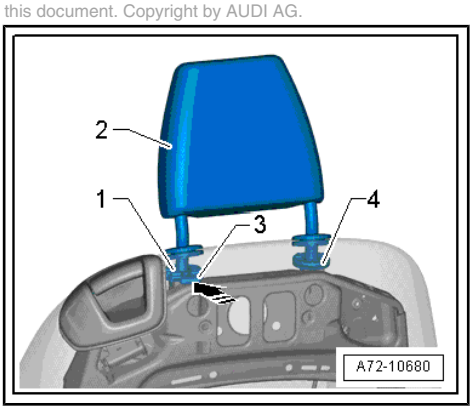
## 2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

**Note**

- *The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.*
- *The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the outer left of the driver seat and on the inner left of the front passenger seat (as seen in direction of travel).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing




- Locate pressure point of release button -3- (located beneath backrest cover).
- Press release button forwards in direction of -arrow-.
- Keep release button pressed in this position.
- Lift head restraint -2- out of head restraint guides -1- and -4-.

**Note**

*If the release button cannot be released in the way described, the backrest cover panel must be removed; two-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ page 305 , one-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ page 308 . Reach underneath backrest cover and locate pressure point of release button.*

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure head restraint is properly engaged in head restraint guides.

## 2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat

**Note**

- *The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.*
- *The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the outer left of the driver seat and on the inner left of the front passenger seat (as seen in direction of travel).*

### Removing

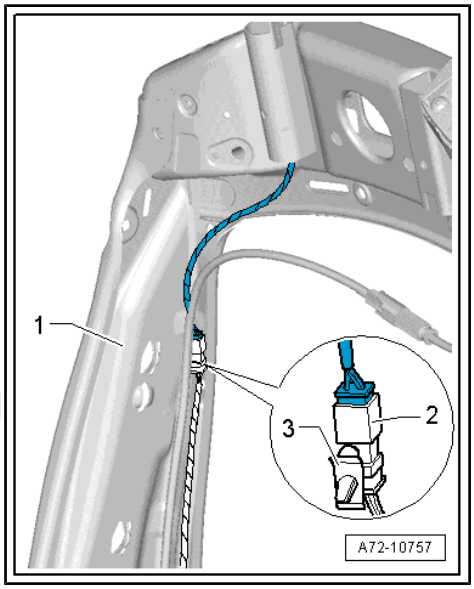
– Remove backrest cover panel:

♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Unfasten cable tie clip -3- at outer backrest frame -1-.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

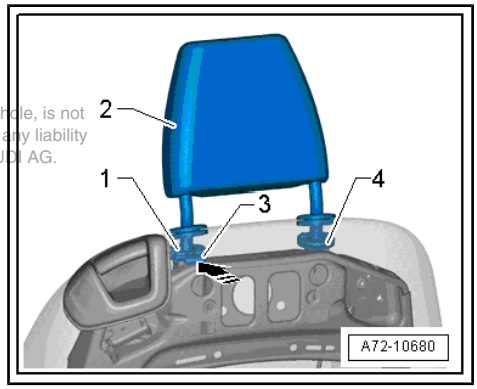



– Reach beneath backrest cover and locate pressure point of release button -3-.

– Press release button forwards in direction of -arrow-.

– Keep release button pressed in this position.

– Lift head restraint -2- out of head restraint guides -1- and -4-.



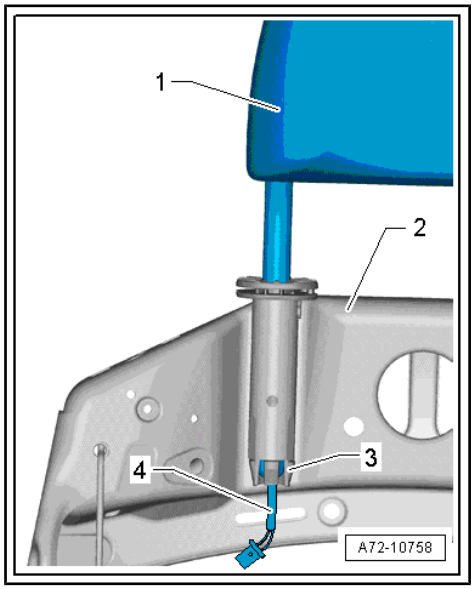

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

***When pulling out the head restraint, make sure the connector at the head restraint does not catch in the head restraint guides or the fixed cap of the cover.***

– When pulling out head restraint -1-, thread wire with connector -4- through head restraint guide -3-.

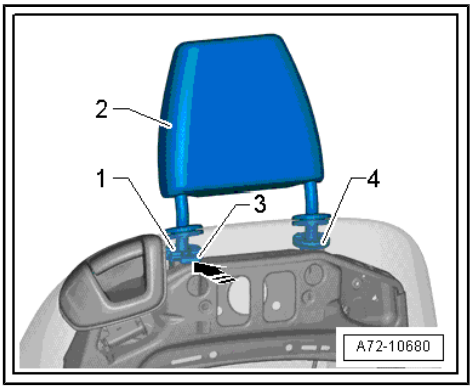
2 - Outer backrest frame



**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Release button -3- does not have to be pressed when installing head restraint.




## 2.33.3 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat

The head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism is permanently attached to the backrest padding. The padding and head restraint cannot be separated. Removing and installing backrest cover and padding/head restraint:

⇒ “1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat”, page 432

## 2.34 Removing and installing head restraint guide

⇒ “2.34.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - all seats except super sports seat”, page 297

⇒ “2.34.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat”, page 299

## 2.34.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - all seats except super sports seat

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

...ole, is not ...any liability ...information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

- Two-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

- One-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 295 .

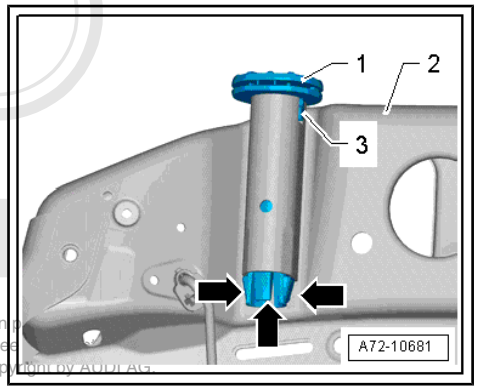
– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 428 .

**Head restraint guide without release button:**

– Press retaining tabs -arrows- on head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tabs pressed.

– Lift head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame -2-.



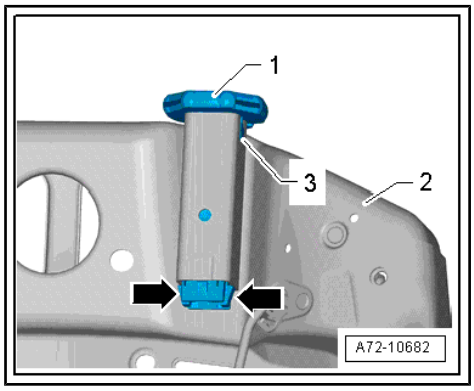

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Head restraint guide with release button:**

– Press retaining tabs -arrows- on head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tabs pressed.

– Lift head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame -2-.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

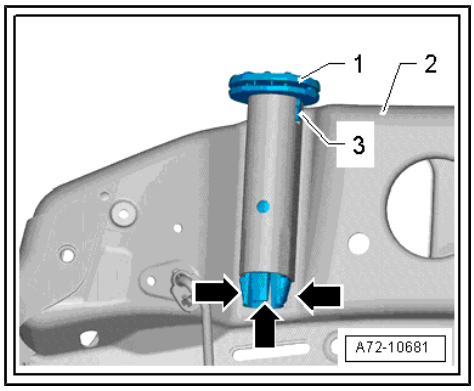
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

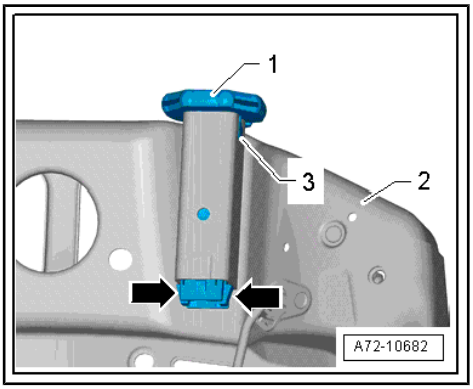
**Head restraint guide without release button:**

**Note**

- *When inserting head restraint guide -1-, observe correct positioning of lug -3- at outer backrest frame -2-.*
- *Make sure retaining tabs -arrows- engage properly with outer backrest frame.*



**Head restraint guide with release button:**




**Note**

- *When inserting head restraint guide -1-, observe correct positioning of lug -3- at outer backrest frame -2-.*
- *Make sure retaining tabs -arrows- engage properly with outer backrest frame.*

**Head restraint guide without and with release button (continued)**

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this copy. © AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.34.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

- Two-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305
- One-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

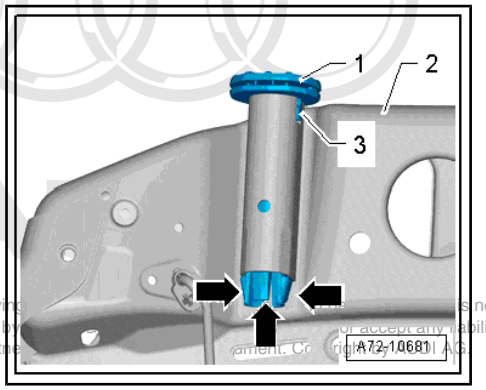
– Remove backrest cover and padding/head restraint ⇒ page 432 .

**Head restraint guide without release button**

– Press retaining tabs -arrows- on head restraint guide towards centre of head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tabs pressed.

– Lift head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



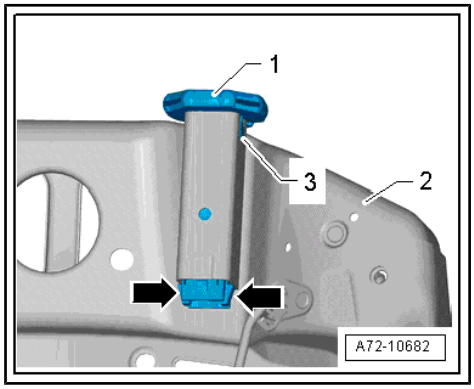

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Head restraint guide with release button**

– Press retaining tabs -arrows- on head restraint guide towards centre of head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tabs pressed.

– Lift head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

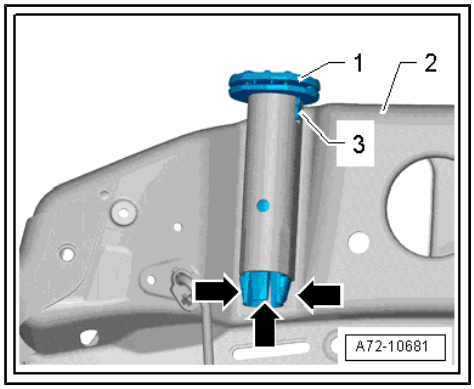
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

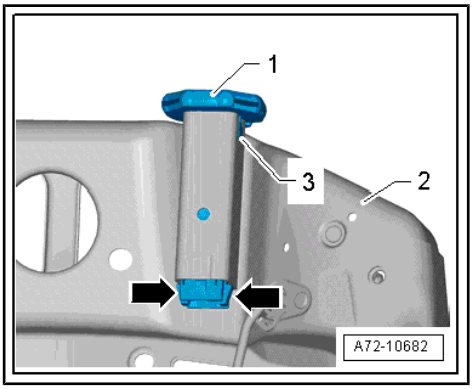
**Head restraint guide without release button**

**Note**

- *When inserting head restraint guide -1-, observe correct positioning of lug -3- at outer backrest frame -2-.*
- *Make sure retaining tabs -arrows- engage properly with outer backrest frame.*



**Head restraint guide with release button**




**Note**

- *When inserting head restraint guide -1-, observe correct positioning of lug -3- at outer backrest frame -2-.*
- *Make sure retaining tabs -arrows- engage properly with outer backrest frame.*

**Head restraint guide without and with release button (continued)**

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document, or any part thereof, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.35 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

**Note**

- *Dismantling and assembly is described for a seat pan without seat depth adjustment. The dismantling and assembly procedures for a seat pan with seat depth adjustment are similar.*
- *When removing the seat pan, take care not to damage bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frames). These bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *It is not possible to separate the upper and lower seat pan frames on the following front seats: standard seat (with manual adjustment) and sports seat (with manual adjustment).*
- *The upper and lower seat pan frames can be separated and renewed separately on the following front seats: standard seat (with electric adjustment), sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat.*

## Dismantling seat pan

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

**Caution**

*Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.*

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

### Separating upper frame and lower frame

– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 73 .

– Unbolt seat position sensor from lower frame ⇒ page 128 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

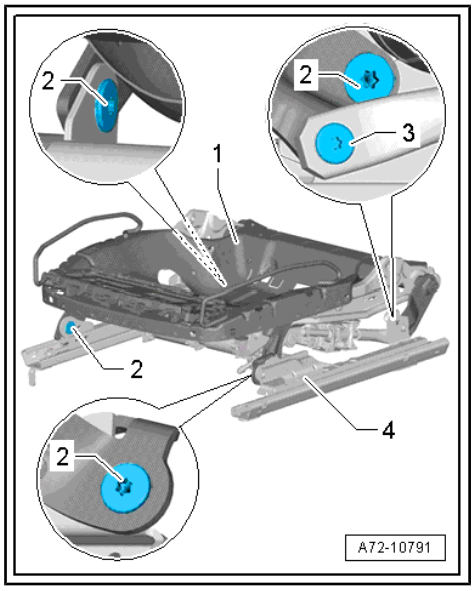
**Caution**

*Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*

*Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.*

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*

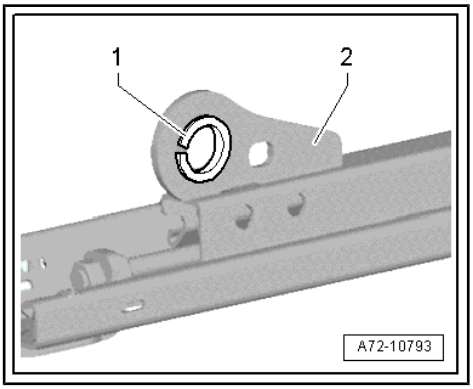



– Remove bolt -3-.

– Remove bolts -2- (4x).

– Lift upper frame -1- off lower frame -4-.

– When doing so, pay attention to bushes -1- in pivot points on lower seat pan frame -2-.




**Caution**

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

### Renewing upper frame

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

– Detach padding from seat pan:

- Standard seat (with electric adjustment) and convenience seat ⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan without seat depth adjustment”, page 422 .
- Sports seat (with electric adjustment) and super sports seat ⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan with seat depth adjustment”, page 424 .

**Note**

*If upper frame is renewed, wiring and electrical and electronic components indicated must be removed and installed in new upper frame.*

– Remove seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function ⇒ page 352 .

– Remove bracket with control unit ⇒ page 354 .

– Remove seat height adjustment motor ⇒ page 361 .

– Remove seat rake adjustment motor ⇒ page 366 .

– Detach wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.

– Install electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame.

### Renewing lower frame

**Note**

*If lower frame is renewed, belt buckle must be removed and installed in new lower frame.*

– Unbolt belt buckle (front) at lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 72 .

– Install components and wiring removed earlier in new lower frame.

### Assembling seat pan

Assemble seat pan in reverse order. Note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Always clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts using e.g. a thread tap.

– Renew all self-locking bolts.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 260

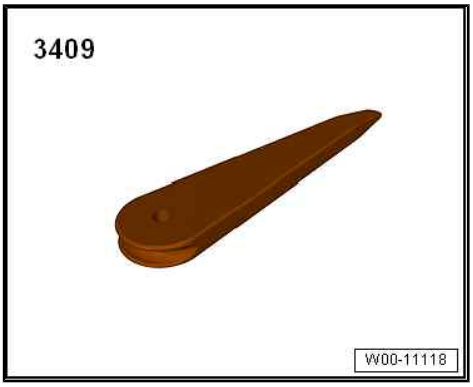
## 2.36 Removing and installing actuator for backrest and head restraint adjustment

**Note**

*Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

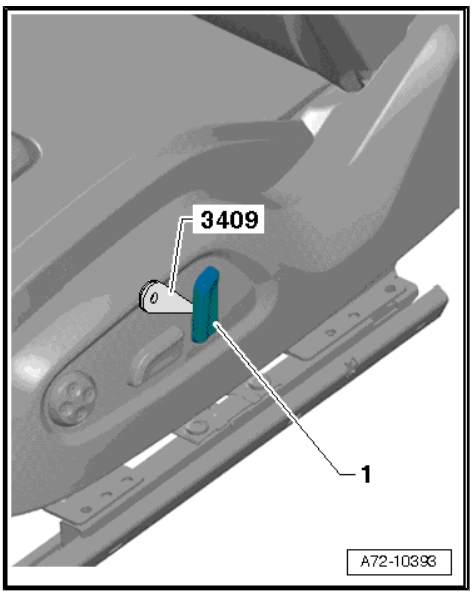



**Removing**

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to carefully prise actuator -1- off catch.

**Installing**

– Press on actuator until it engages audibly.




## 2.37 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

## 2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel

**Note**

♦ *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*

♦ *Removal and installation are described for the standard front seat. The procedures are similar for the other seat versions.*

♦ *The description relates to the equipment version with the backrest cover panel without luggage net.*

♦ *The luggage net cannot be separated from the backrest cover panel and can only be renewed together with the backrest cover panel.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

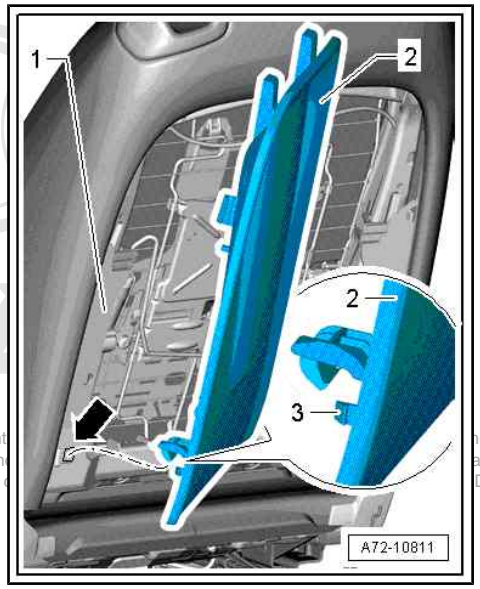
### Removing

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury from burr on backrest cover panel.*

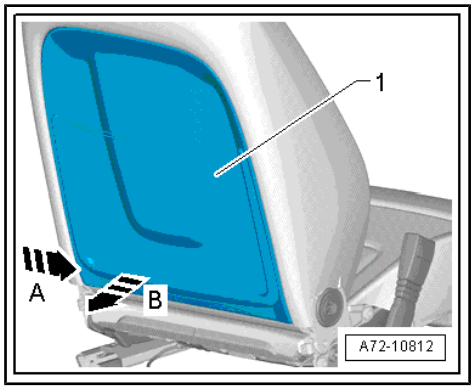
- *Wear protective gloves.*

– Disengage bottom hooks on side -3- (2x) of backrest cover panel -2- from trim for outer backrest frame -1-.

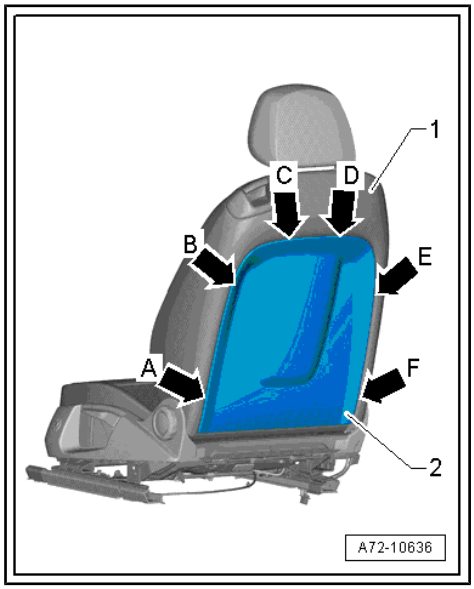



Protected by copyright
permitted unless auth
with respect to the
hole, is not
any liability
DI AG.

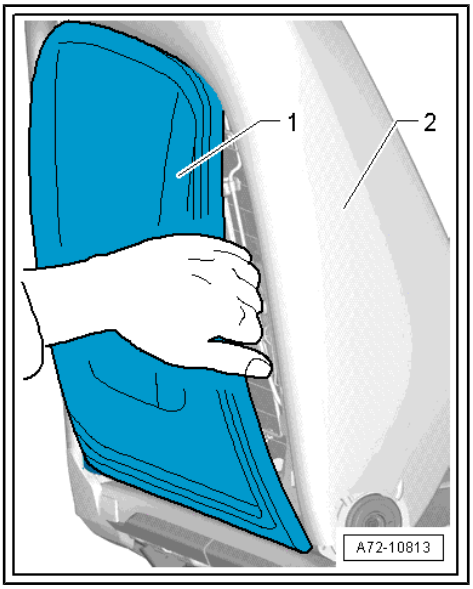
– To do so, press backrest cover panel -1- in direction of -arrow A- towards centre of seat.
– Then pull backrest cover panel in direction of -arrow B- towards rear.
– Proceed in same way on other side.




– Disengage backrest cover panel -2- at side -arrows A, B, E, F-.



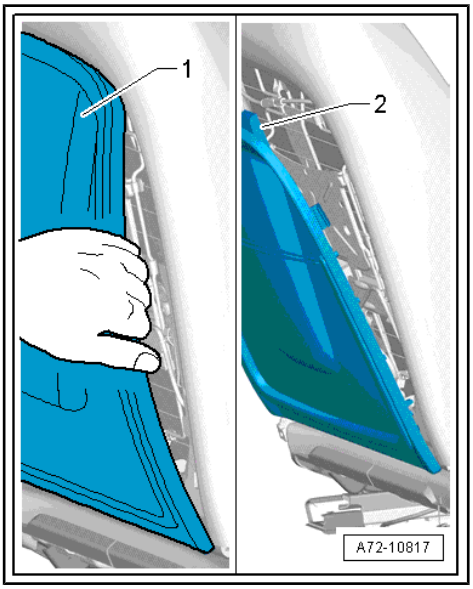
– To do so, reach behind the backrest cover panel -1- and pull it off the backrest -2- sideways to the right.
– Proceed in same way on other side.
– In doing so release retaining hooks -3- or -5- ⇒ page 253 .



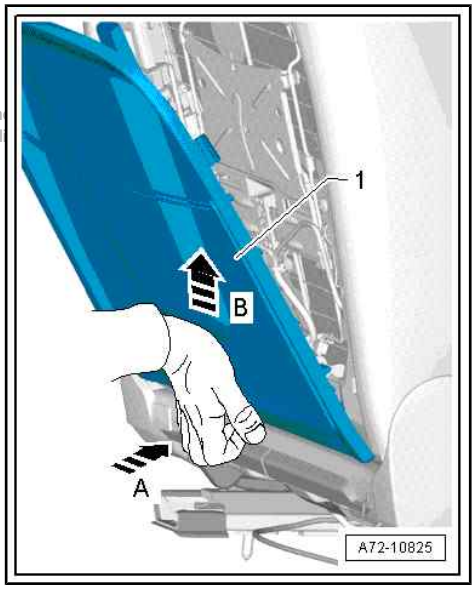

– Pull off backrest cover panel -1- further and bend it until top hooks -2- have disengaged from outer backrest frame.

**Note**

*For greater clarity, the top hooks are not shown in the illustration.*




– Tilt backrest cover panel -1- backwards slightly.
– Press backrest cover panel at bottom in direction of -arrow A-.
– Raise backrest cover panel in direction of -arrow B- and detach from outer backrest frame.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

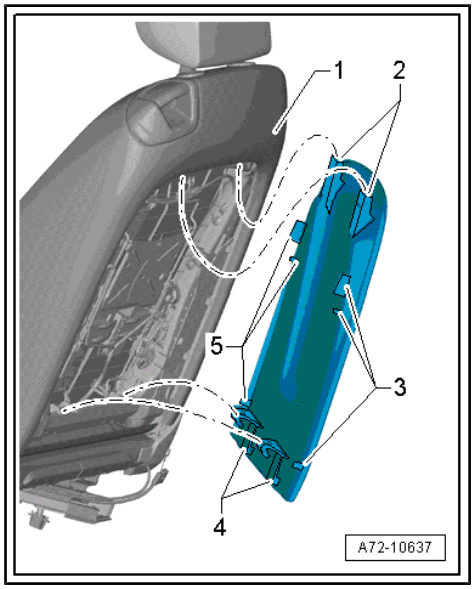
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First push top hooks -2- under top cross plate of outer backrest frame.

– Swivel backrest cover panel down and lock side retaining tabs -3- and -5- and bottom hooks -4-.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly in trim for outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over shoes of trim for outer backrest frame.

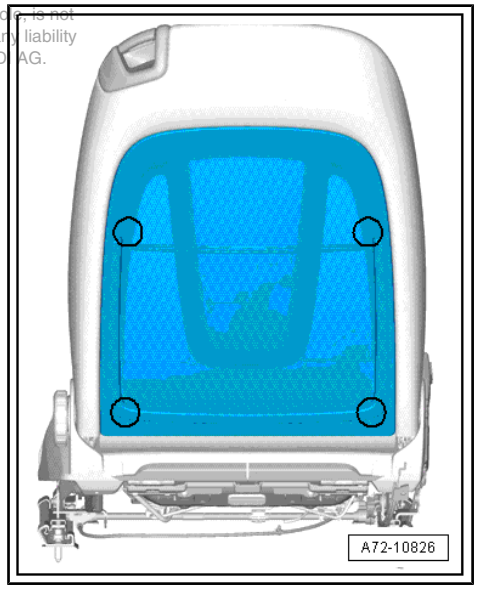



– Press backrest cover panel forcefully towards backrest in areas marked by circles.

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel (bottom) off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




## 2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel

**Note**

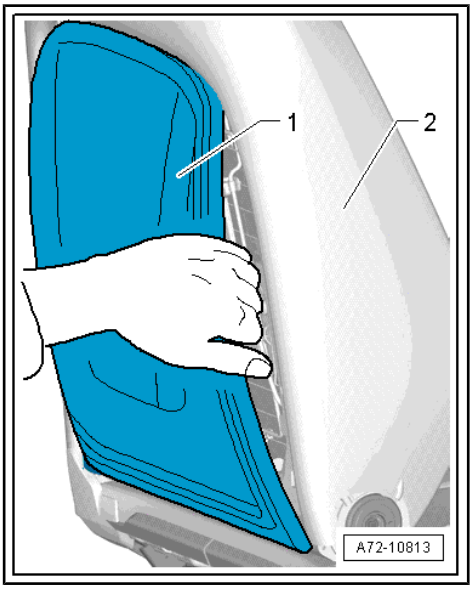
- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are described for the standard front seat. The procedures are similar for the other seat versions.*
- *The description relates to the equipment version with the backrest cover panel without luggage net.*
- *The luggage net cannot be separated from the backrest cover panel and can only be renewed together with the backrest cover panel.*

### Removing

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury from burr on backrest cover panel.*

- *Wear protective gloves.*




– To remove, reach behind right side of backrest cover panel -1- (as shown in illustration) and pull it off backrest -2- towards side.

**Note**

*If it is stiff, use removal lever - 80 - 200- .*

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– This releases the retaining hooks (side).

– Pull off backrest cover panel further and bend it until retaining hooks (top) have disengaged from outer backrest frame.

– Lift off backrest cover panel.

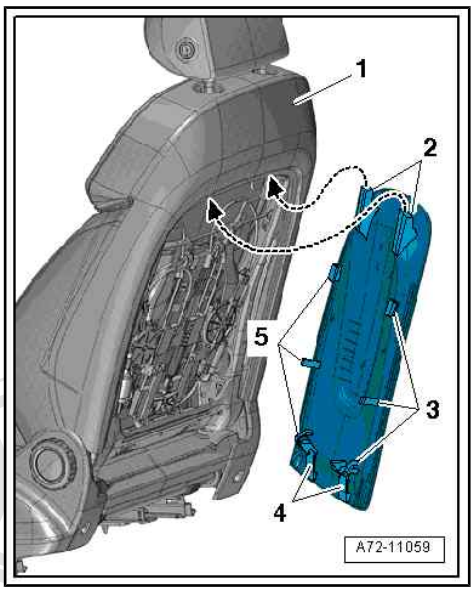
### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First push retaining hooks (top) -2- underneath backrest cross member (top) -1-.

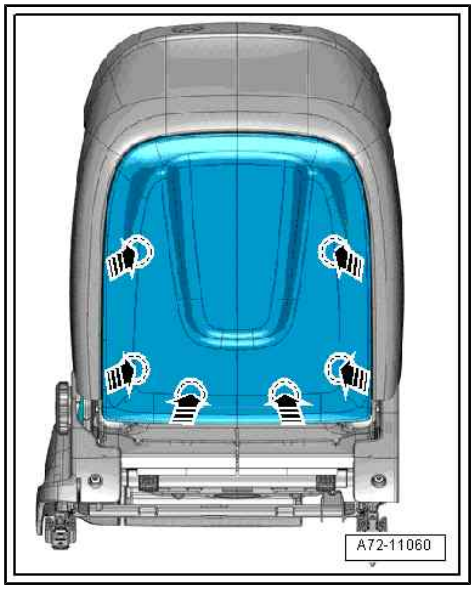
– Swivel backrest cover panel down and engage side retaining tabs -3- and -5- and retaining hooks (bottom) -4-.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press backrest cover panel forcefully towards backrest in areas marked by -arrows-.
– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.
• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel (bottom) off.




## 2.38 Removing and installing trim for outer backrest frame

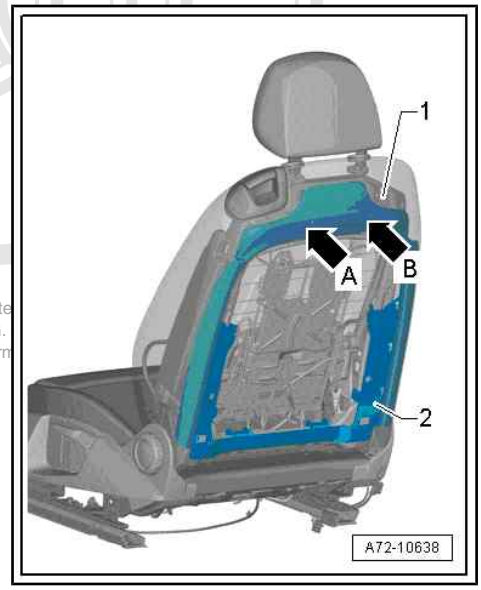
**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the standard front seat. The procedures are similar for the other seat versions.*

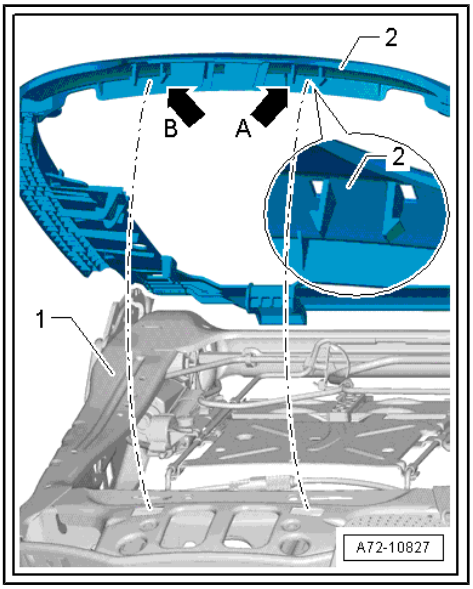
### Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 305 .
– Detach padding from backrest until the two retaining tabs -arrow A- and -arrow B- on each trim -2- for outer backrest frame are visible from rear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform



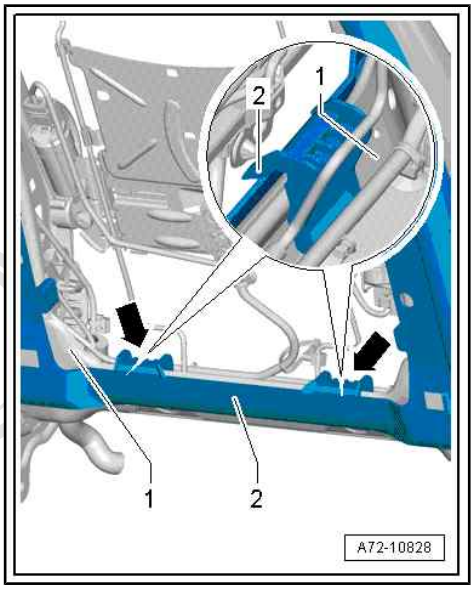
– Disengage retaining tabs -arrow A- and -arrow B- on trim for outer backrest frame -2- at outer backrest frame -1-.




– Lift trim -2- for outer backrest frame off outer backrest frame -1-.

– In doing so, disengage bottom shoes -arrows- (2x) on outer backrest frame.

– Detach trim for outer backrest frame from outer backrest frame.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 2.39 Removing and installing spring mat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

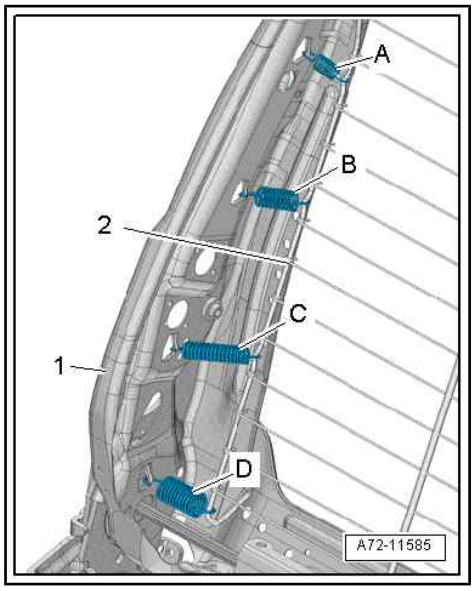
– Remove backrest cover panel:

- Two-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305
- One-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 295 .

– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 428 .

– Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.

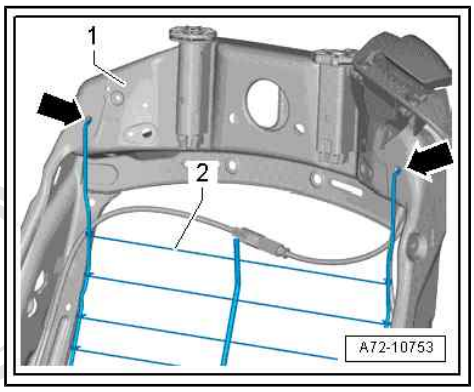



**Note**

*You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.*

– Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.

– Pull spring mat out of openings -arrows- in outer backrest frame -1-.




**Installing**

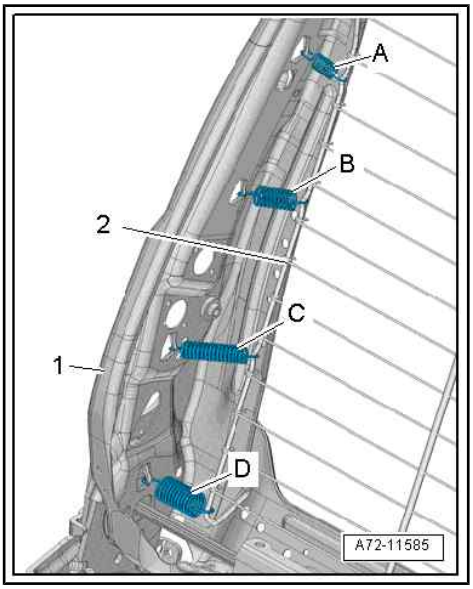
**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach extension springs -A ... D- as shown in illustration.




**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

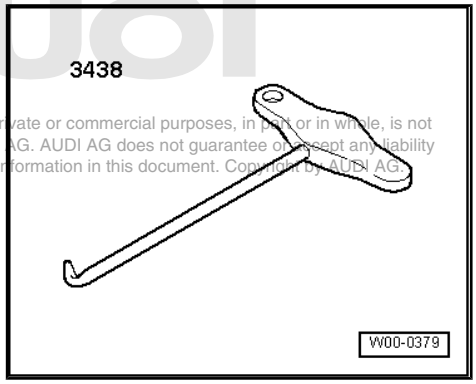
## 2.40 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

**Note**

*The seat height adjuster can be renewed with the front seat in position.*

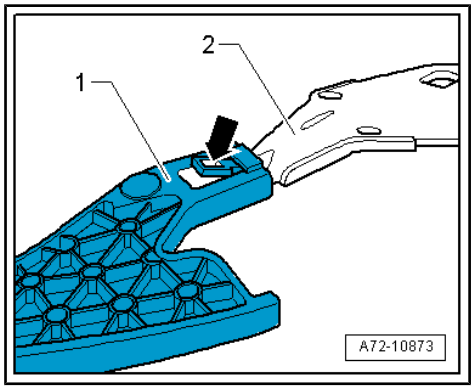
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Hook - 3438-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing




**Note**

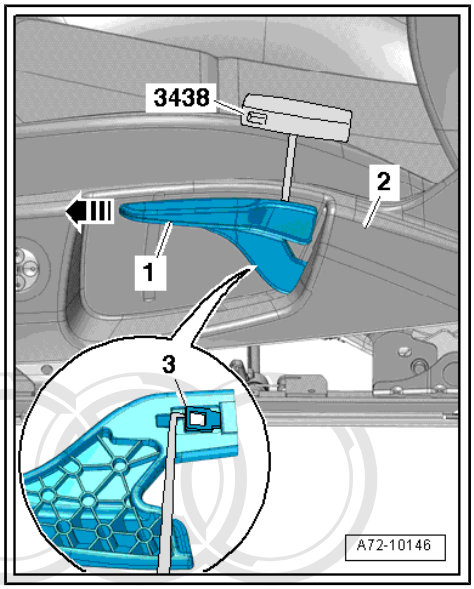
- *Remove seat height adjuster -1- as described; do NOT knock it off lever -2-.*
- *If tab -arrow- is damaged while removing seat height adjuster, adjuster cannot be reinstalled, but it must be renewed.*

– Pull seat height adjuster -1- as far upwards as possible and hold it in this position.

– Carefully pull seat height adjuster slightly off front seat.

– Insert hook - 3438- between seat height adjuster and trim -2-.

– Release tab -3- with hook - 3438- and at the same time pull seat height adjuster off lever in direction of -arrow-.



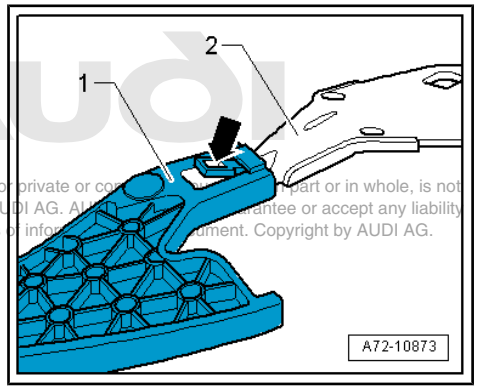

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Perform visual check of tab -arrow-.

• If there is visible damage to the tab, a new seat height adjuster -1- must be installed.

– Make sure that tab on seat height adjuster engages properly in lug on lever.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.41 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

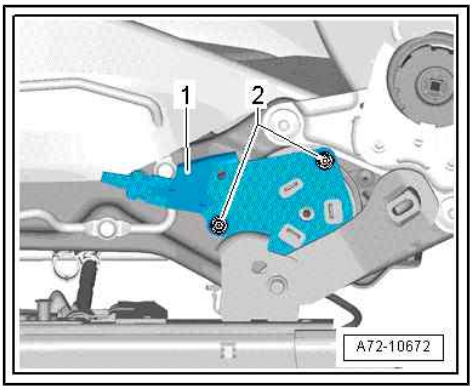
♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment)
⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ page 224 .

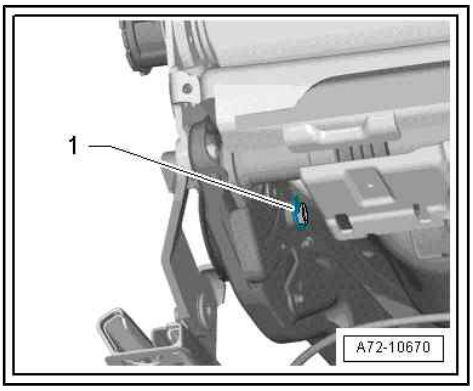
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 336 .

– Remove bolts -2- (2x).

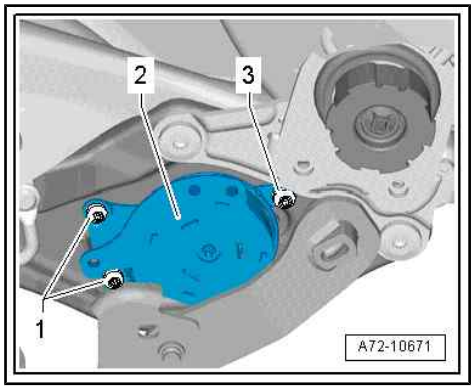
– Detach lever for seat height adjuster -1-.




– Remove securing clip -1-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**Note**

*Bolts -1- and bolt -3- have different lengths.*

– Unscrew bolts -1- (2x) and -3-.
– Detach seat height adjustment unit -2-.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 249**

## 2.42 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Printing, copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

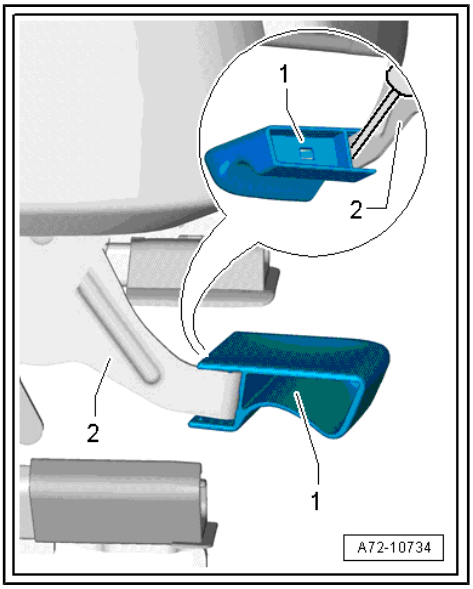
*Removal and installation can be carried out with the seat installed.*

### Removing

– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.

– Operate seat longitudinal adjustment handle and move seat to rear and upwards as far as it will go.

– Lever handle -1- off seat longitudinal adjuster -2-; to do so, press down locking spring of retaining clip with a screwdriver.




**Note**

*If the handle cannot be pulled off as described, the storage compartment must be removed ⇒ page 38 .*

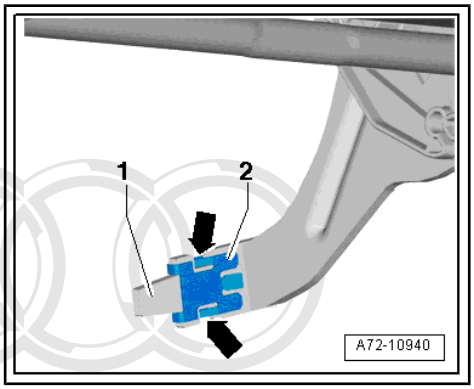
### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip at lever for seat longitudinal adjustment (observe correct installation position).

• Springs -arrows- (2x) of retaining clip -2- must be located on inside of lever -1-.

– Make sure seat longitudinal adjustment handle engages properly with retaining clip.




## 2.43 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

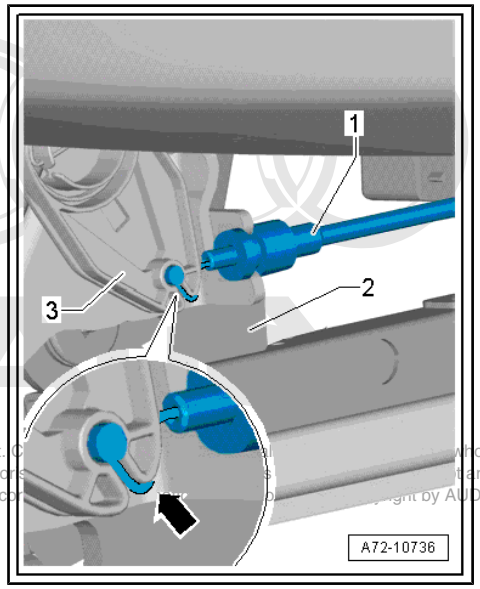
– Remove front seat:

♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

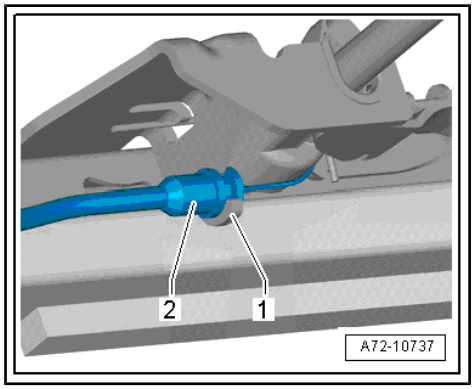
– Unfasten Bowden cable tie or unclip clip at seat pan.

– Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -1- at seat longitudinal adjuster -2-.
– Disengage Bowden cable end piece -arrow- at seat longitudinal adjustment lever -3-.

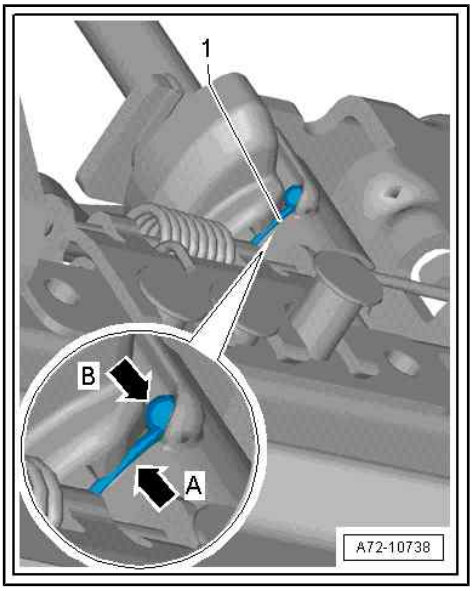



Protected by copyright. C... whole, is not permitted unless author... any liability with respect to the co... ...ght by AUDI AG.

– Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -2- at seat longitudinal adjuster -1-.



– Disengage Bowden cable -1- at mounting for Bowden cable -arrow A- for seat longitudinal adjustment.
– Disengage ball end of Bowden cable -arrow B- at seat longitudinal adjustment slot.
– Take out Bowden cable.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.44 Removing and installing lever for engaging Bowden cable and spring for seat longitudinal adjustment

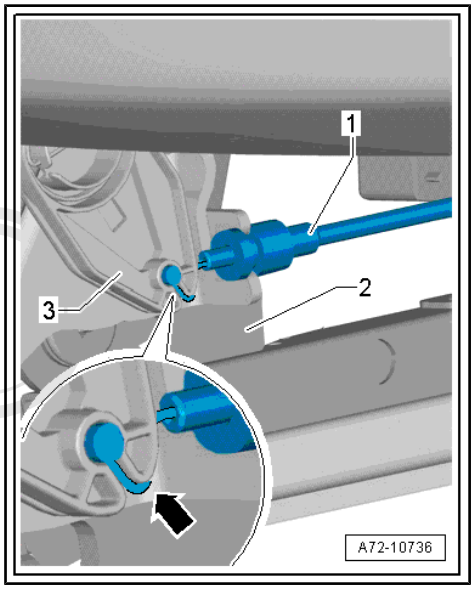
**Removing**

**Note**

*Work steps can be performed with seat installed.*

– Move seat as far towards top and rear as possible.

– Disengage support bracket for Bowden cable -1- at seat longitudinal adjuster -2-.
– Disengage Bowden cable end piece -arrow- at lever for engaging Bowden cable -3- for seat longitudinal adjustment.
– Turn lever for engaging Bowden cable forwards and detach it (key-hole principle).
– Remove spring if necessary.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*The lever for engaging the Bowden cable is identical on the driver's and the front passenger's seats. The spring differs on the driver's and front passenger's seats.*

– Install spring correctly.

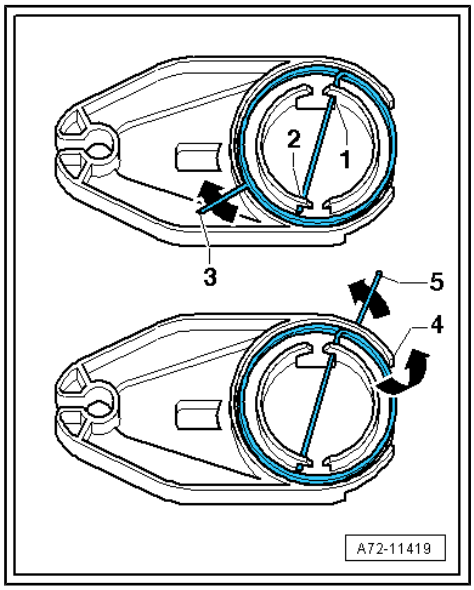
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Engaging Bowden cable with spring assembled (left seat):**

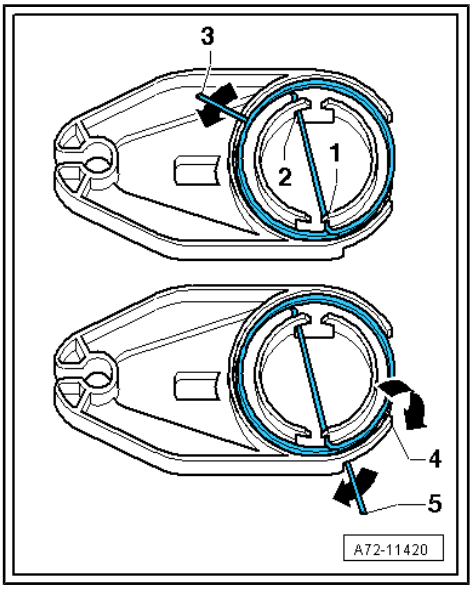
– Engage spring at locations marked -1- and -2-.
– Turn spring at lever -3- in clockwise direction.
– Guide spring around tab -4- and let it make contact at position -5-.

**Engaging Bowden cable with spring assembled (right seat):**

– Engage spring at locations marked -1- and -2-.
– Turn spring at lever -3- in anti-clockwise direction.



– Guide spring around tab -4- and let it make contact at position -5-.




## 2.45 Repairing seat longitudinal adjuster, renewing connecting rod

**Note**

*A repair set is available for repairing the seat longitudinal adjuster ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

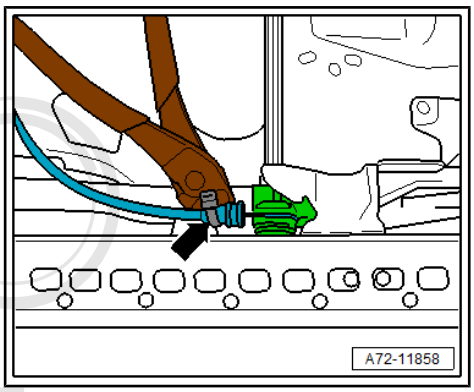
**Procedure**

- Front seat removed ⇒ page 275 and set down on a soft surface.

– Adjust seat height and rake to highest possible position.

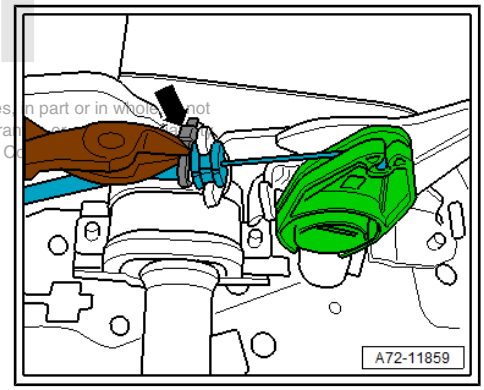
– Cut through cable tie -arrow- at support bracket for Bowden cable.

– Disengage Bowden cable from support bracket and from release lever for seat longitudinal adjuster.




– Cut through cable tie -arrow- at support bracket for Bowden cable.

– Disengage Bowden cable from support bracket and from Bowden cable retainer for seat longitudinal adjuster.



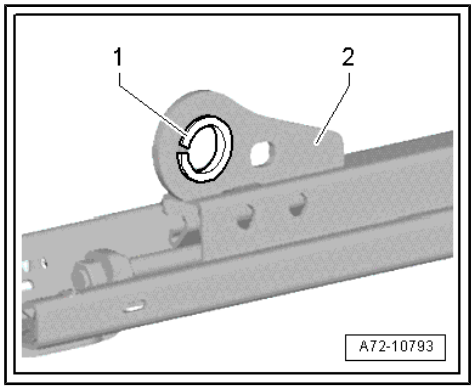

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

**Caution**

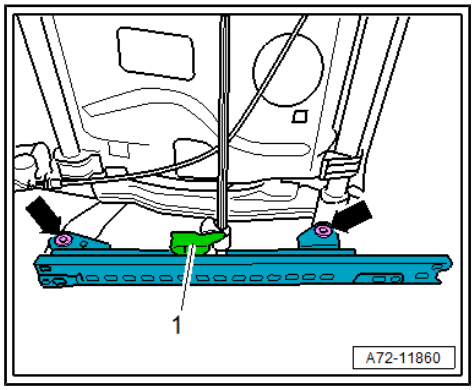
*Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

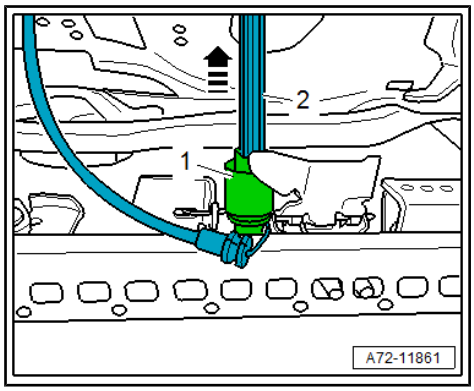
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



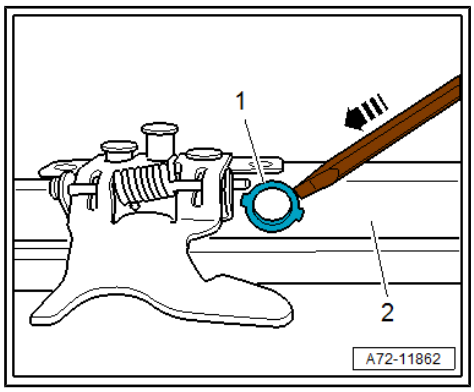

– Remove bolts -arrows- on inside of seat (tunnel side).
– Lift operating lever -1- for lock pin slightly and detach seat rail.




– Pull connecting rod -2- out of release lever -1- on outside of seat (sill side) -arrow-.
– Detach release lever together with spring.

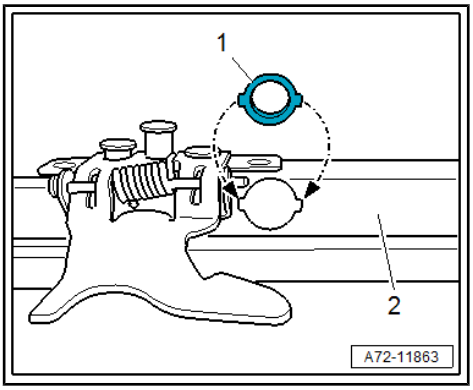



– Lever out bush -1- from both seat rails -2- -arrow-.



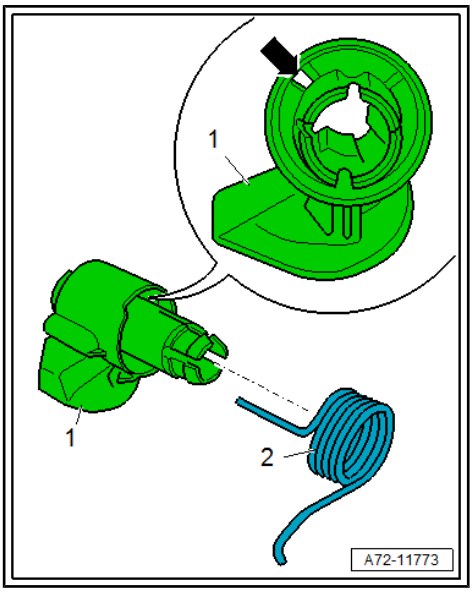
– Insert new bushes -1- in both seat rails -2- and press on.

• Lugs on bushes must face recesses in seat rails.



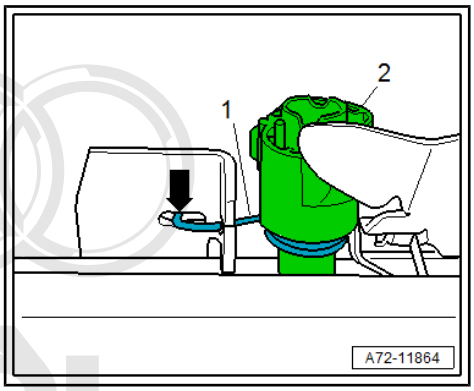

– Insert spring -2- into release lever -1- for outside of seat (sill side).

• Straight end of spring must engage in hole -arrow- on release lever.



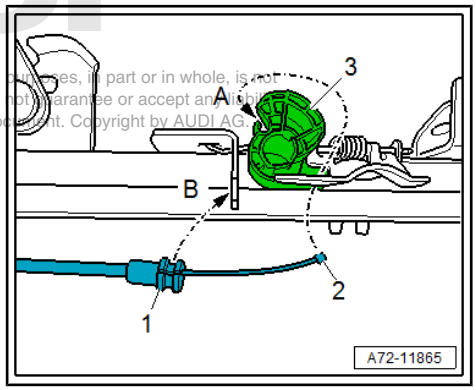

– Insert release lever -2- for outside of seat (sill side) into bush in seat rail.

• Spring -1- must engage in recess -arrow- on outer seat rail.




– Guide Bowden cable -2- for seat longitudinal adjuster around release lever -3- and engage nipple of Bowden cable in release lever -arrow A-.

– Engage Bowden cable sleeve -1- in support bracket -arrow B-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

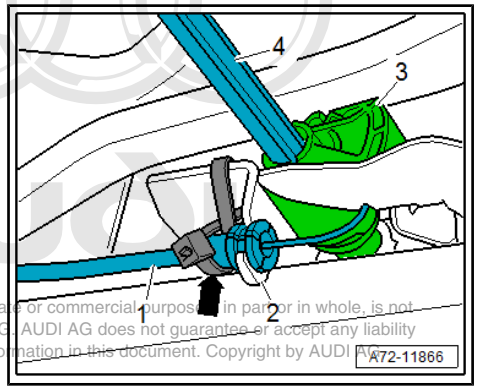
– Secure Bowden cable sleeve -1- with cable tie -arrow- in support bracket -2-.

• Cable tie must be guided in a figure of eight around Bowden cable sleeve and support bracket, as shown in illustration.

– Insert connecting rod -4- as far as it will go into release lever -3- on outer seat rail.

• Connecting rod only fits correctly in one position.

• If connecting rod is difficult to insert, remove burrs at ends of connecting rod.



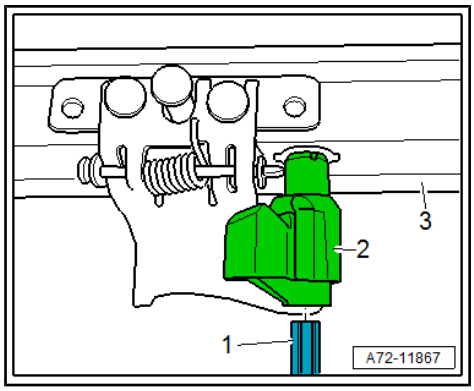

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert release lever -2- for inner seat rail (tunnel side) in seat rail -3-.

– Attach seat rail with release lever to connecting rod -1-.

• Connecting rod only fits correctly in one position.

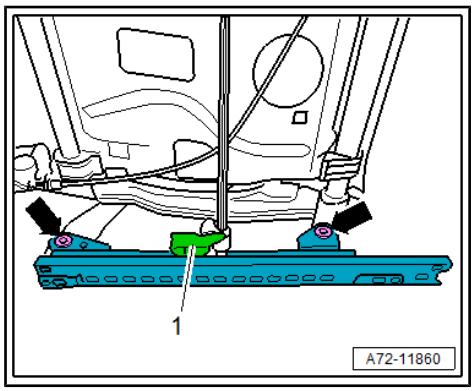
• If connecting rod is difficult to insert, remove burrs at ends of connecting rod.




– Tighten bolts -arrows- on inside of seat (tunnel side) to 22 Nm.

**Note**

*The Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment is guided forwards under the connecting rod to the lever for seat longitudinal adjustment.*




– Engage nipple -4- on Bowden cable retainer for seat longitudinal adjuster -3-.

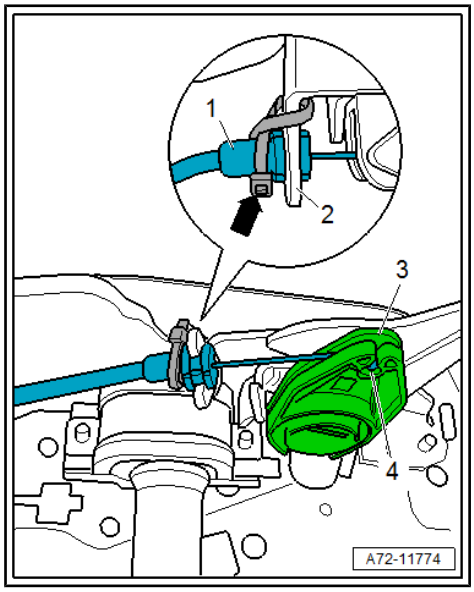
– Engage Bowden cable sleeve -1- in support bracket -2-.

– Attach Bowden cable sleeve to support bracket with cable tie -arrow-.

• Cable tie must be guided in a figure of eight around Bowden cable sleeve and support bracket, as shown in illustration.

– Install front seat ⇒ page 275 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



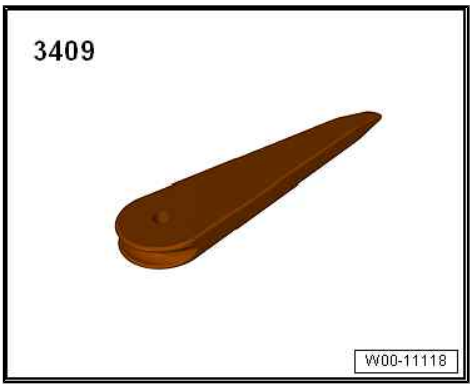
## 2.46 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator

**Note**

*Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-

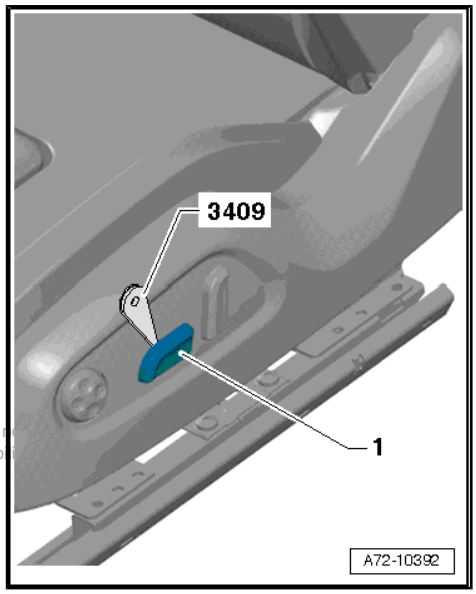



**Removing**

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to carefully prise seat adjustment actuator -1- off catch.

**Installing**

– Press on seat adjustment actuator until it engages audibly.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.47 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle

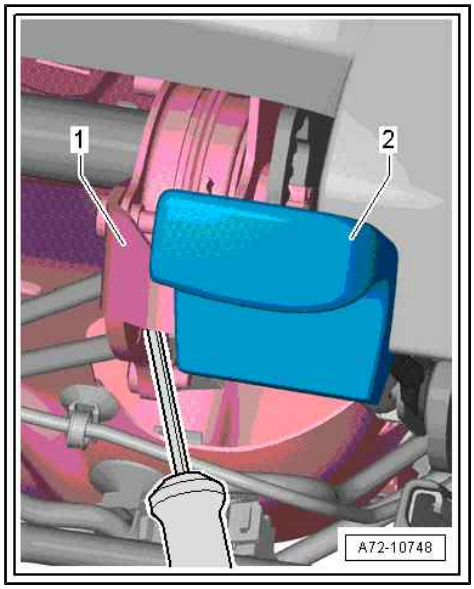
**Note**

*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*

### Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 336 .

– Working from the rear, lever handle -2- off seat rake adjuster -1-; to do so, press down locking spring of retaining clip with a screwdriver.



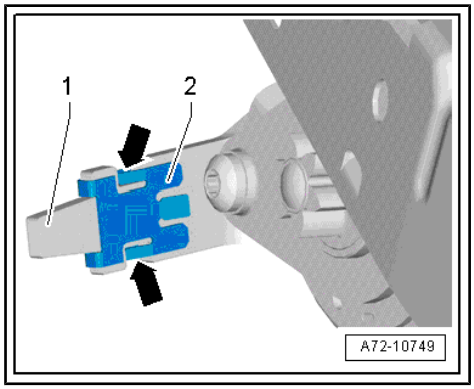

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip at seat rake adjustment lever. When doing so, observe correct installation position.

– Make sure seat rake adjustment handle engages properly with retaining clip.

• Springs -arrows- (2x) of retaining clip -2- must be located on inside of lever -1-.




## 2.48 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster

### Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

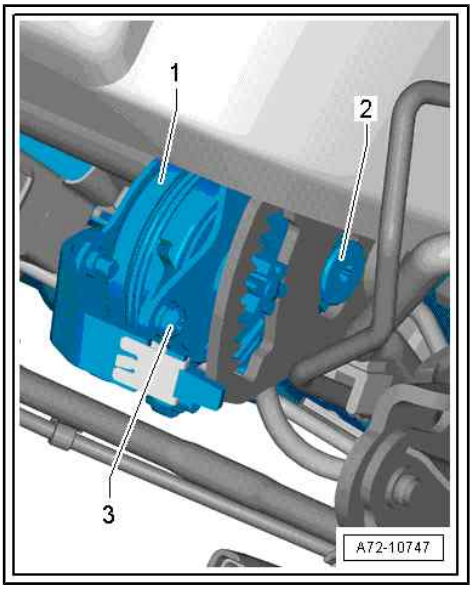
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

Copyright by AUDI AG. Passing on to third parties or commercial exploitation in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 336 .

– Remove seat rake adjustment handle ⇒ page 325 .

– Remove pivot stud -2-.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Take out seat rake adjuster -1-.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Always clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts using e.g. a thread tap.
– Renew pivot stud -2- and bolt -3-.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

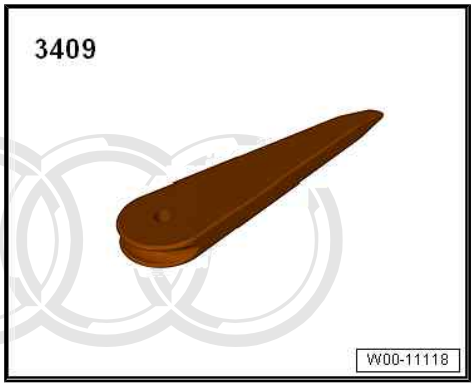
*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torque ⇒ page 263**

## 2.49 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




## Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat:

♦ Sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .

♦ Sports seat (with electric adjustment) and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

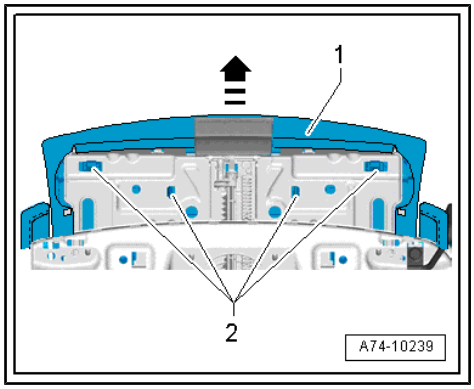
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 350 .

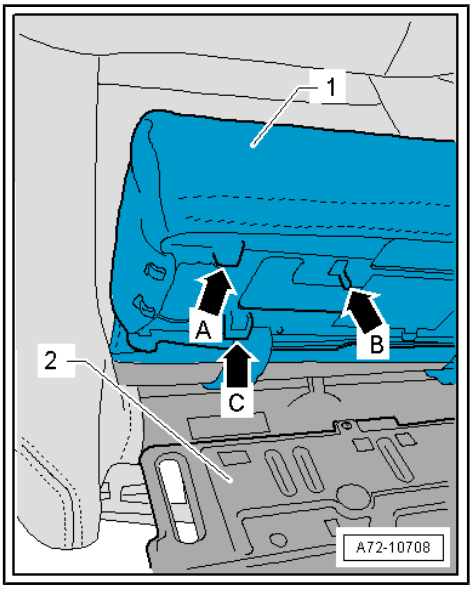
– Remove trim for seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 331 .

– Move seat depth adjuster forwards as far as it will go -arrow-.

– Unclip fasteners -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Swivel mounting bracket with padding and cover -1- for seat depth adjustment upwards so far that fasteners -arrow A- and -arrow B- remain disengaged.



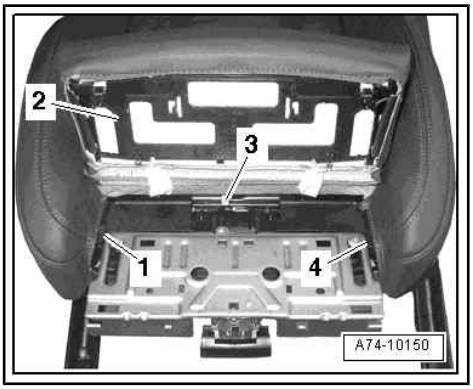

**Note**

*For greater clarity, the padding is shown detached in the illustration.*

– Pull off mounting bracket with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards towards front).

– Disengage lugs -arrow C- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.

– Place mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment on front seat.



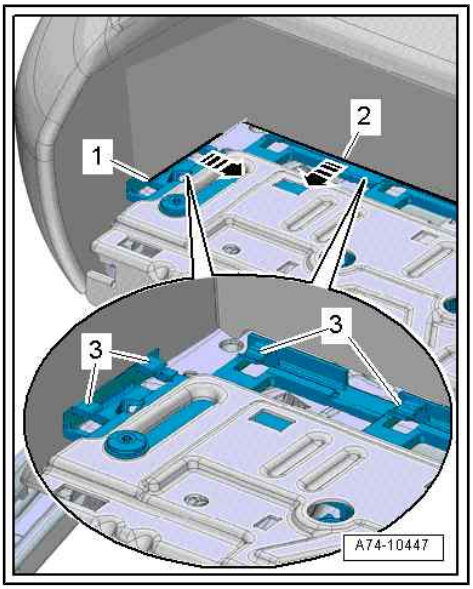

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

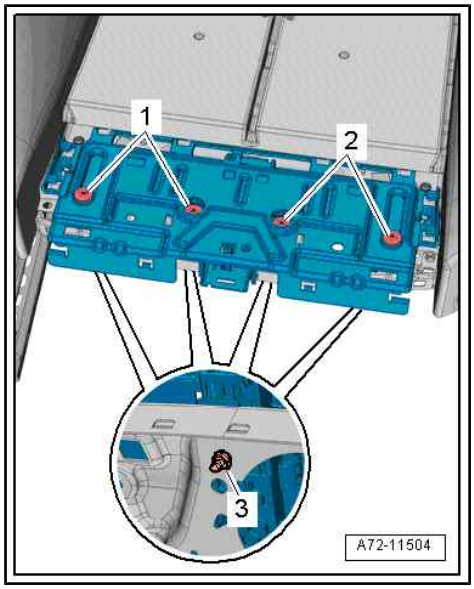
*For greater clarity, lower seat pan frame is not shown in illustration.*

– Remove fastening strips -1, 3, 4- on seat cover from seat depth adjustment unit (diagonally and to side).

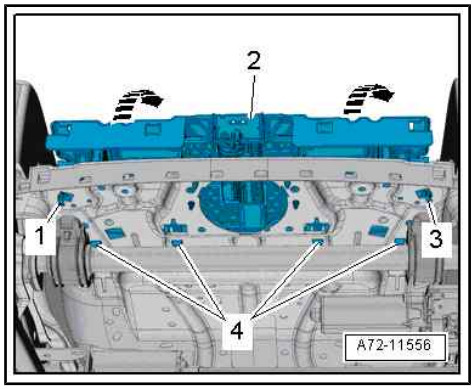
– To do so, unclip fastening strips -1- and -2- from retaining tabs -3- in direction of -arrows-.



– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3- at seat depth adjuster.




– Unclip retaining tabs -1- and -3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull seat depth adjuster -2- off seat pan at an angle (upwards towards front) -arrows-.
– At the same time disengage lugs -4- from seat pan.
– Detach seat depth adjuster from front seat.



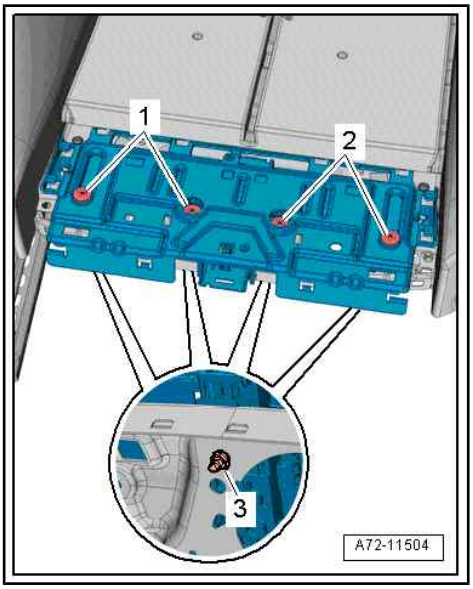

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:




**Caution**

***In addition, fit nuts (seat pan side) to secure new bolts.***

– After screwing in bolts -1 and 2-, secure each bolt additionally by fitting nut -3- (seat pan side).

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

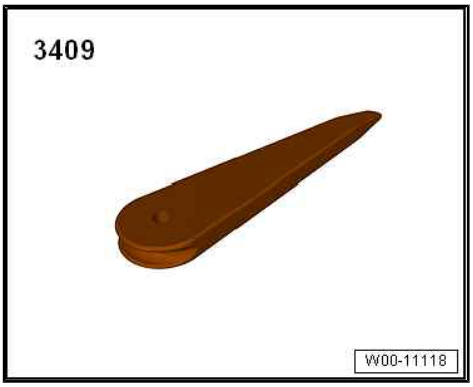
**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 264

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.50 Removing and installing trim for seat depth adjuster

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-



### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

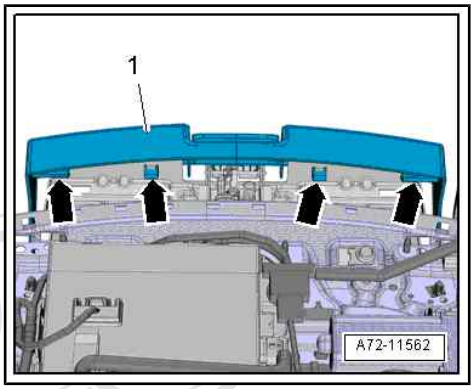
- Sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Sports seat (with electric adjustment) and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 350 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.
– Unclip retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

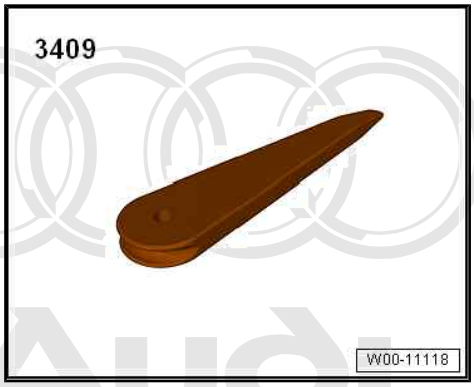
## 2.51 Removing and installing seat rail cover

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the seat rail cover (sill side) of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the seat rail cover (tunnel side).*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




## Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

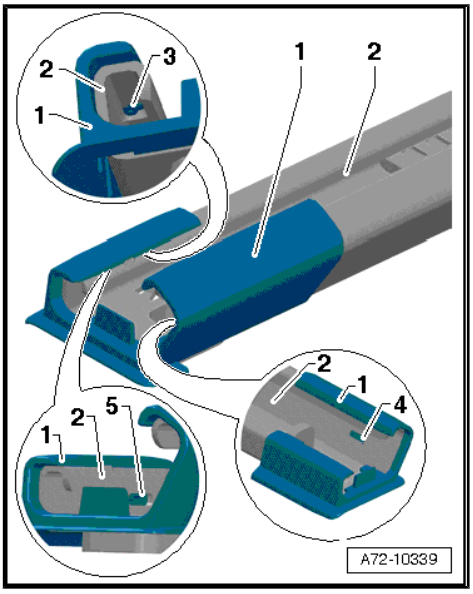
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove bolts for seat rails:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Unclip retaining tabs -3, 4, 5- on cover from seat rail -2-.
– Detach cover -1- to front, keeping it as parallel as possible with seat rail.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

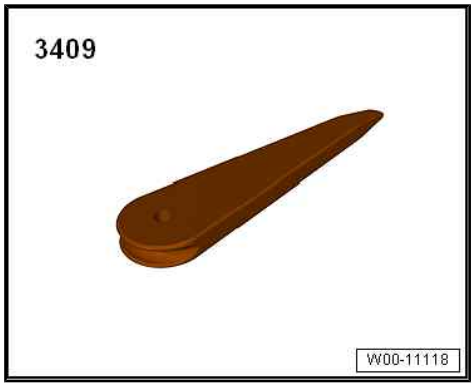
## 2.52 Removing and installing spindle cover (seat rail)

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described on the basis of the driver's seat rail cover (sill side). For greater clarity, the surrounding area is not shown in the illustration.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

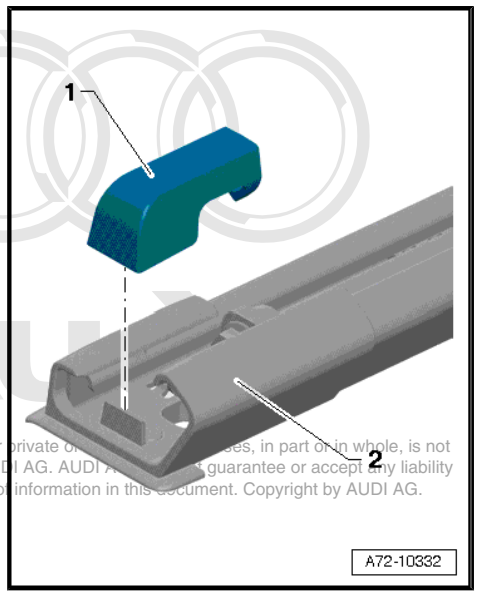
– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.

– Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to prise spindle cover -1- off seat rail cover -2- and seat longitudinal adjustment spindle.

**Installing**

– Make sure the spindle cover is properly engaged.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.53 Removing and installing trim (sill side)

⇒ “2.53.1 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 336

⇒ “2.53.2 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 338

## 2.53.1 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

**Note**

*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*

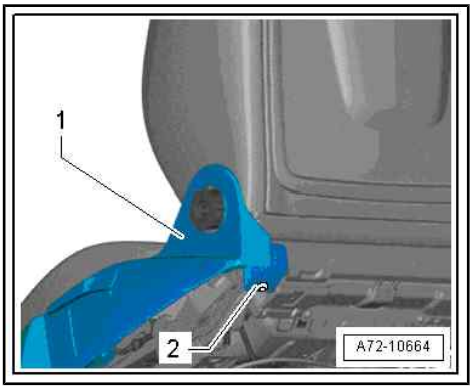
### Removing

– Move seat to highest position.

– Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 291 .

– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 313 .

– Remove spreader rivet -2- for trim -1- (sill side).




– Unfasten clips -4- (2x).

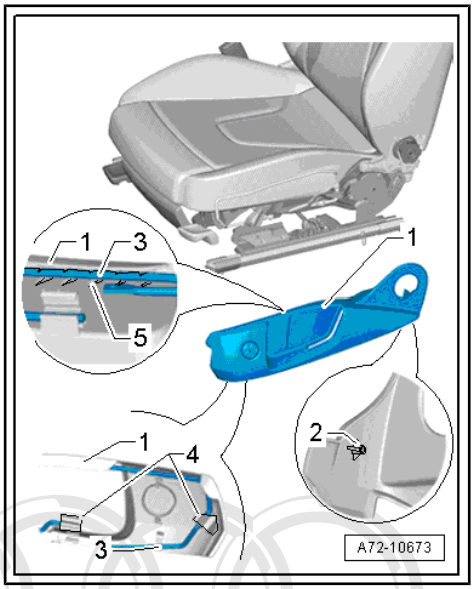
– Unclip trim -1- at retaining bracket -3-.

– Disengage trim in area of backrest adjuster at backrest and seat fitting.

– Detach trim from retaining bracket towards top front.

**Note**

*When detaching trim, take care not to damage retainers -5- and lug -2-.*

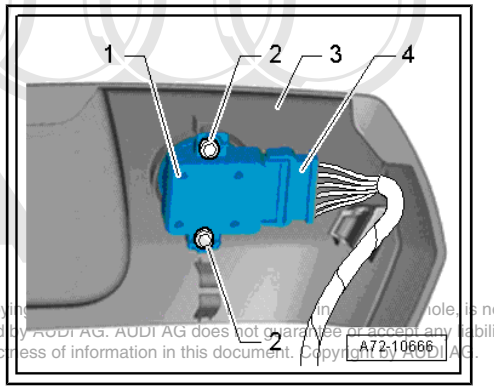



– Equipment version with four-way lumbar support: Unplug electrical connector -4- at lumbar support adjustment switch -1-.

**Note**

*Disregard -item 2-.*

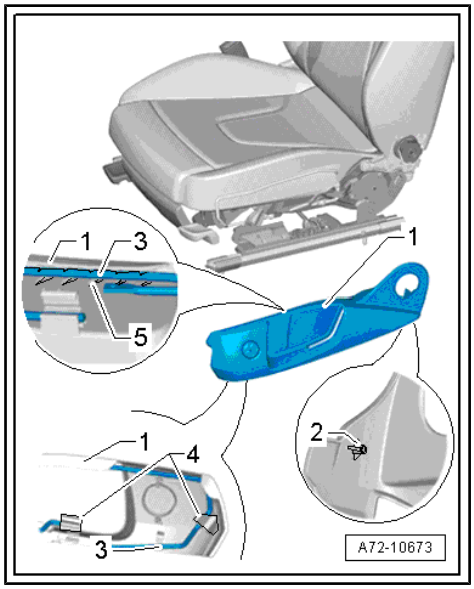
– Detach trim (sill side) -3-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

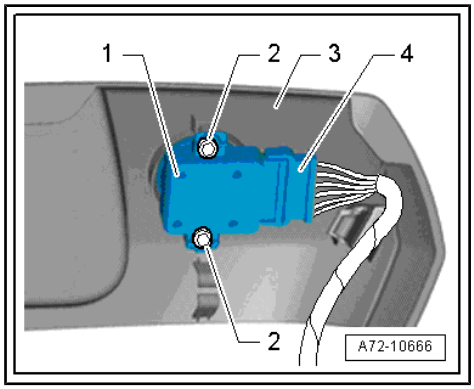



**Note**

- *Make sure lug -2- is correctly positioned.*
- *Make sure trim -1- (sill side) is properly engaged at retaining bracket -3- and that lockable clips -4- are fastened.*

**Note**

*Make sure wire is as close as possible to connector -4-.*




## 2.53.2 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat

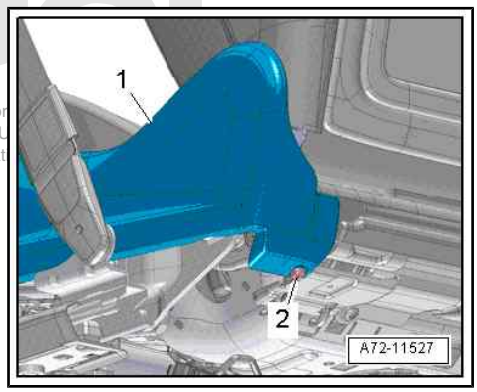
**Note**

*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*

### Removing

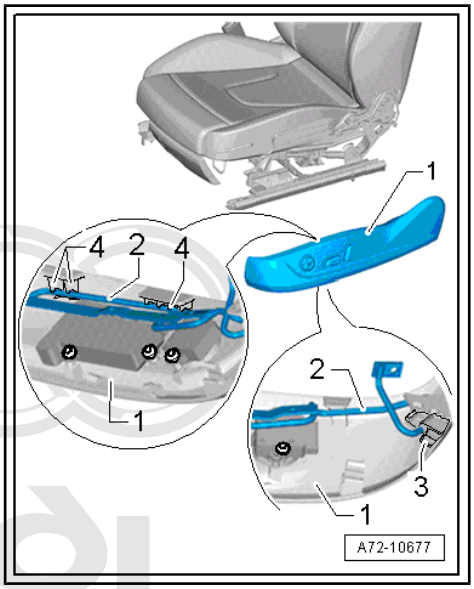
– Move seat to highest position.

– Remove spreader rivet -2- at trim (sill side) -1-.




Copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informat

– Unfasten clip -3-.
– Unclip trim -1- at retaining bracket -2-.
– Disengage trim in area of seat/backrest fittings.

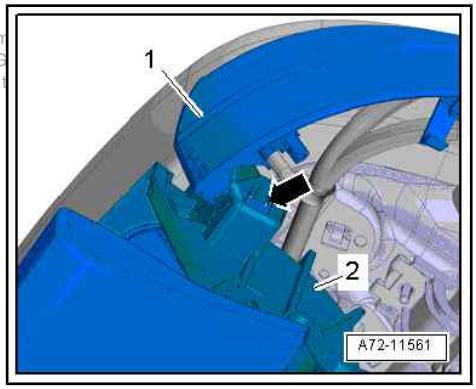



**Note**

*When detaching trim, take care not to damage retainers -4-.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
will respect in the event of infringement in t

– Release catch -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and lift off trim (sill side) -1-.
– Pull trim (sill side) slightly off bracket towards front and lift off.
– Pull trim upwards off retaining bracket to the extent permitted by wiring.

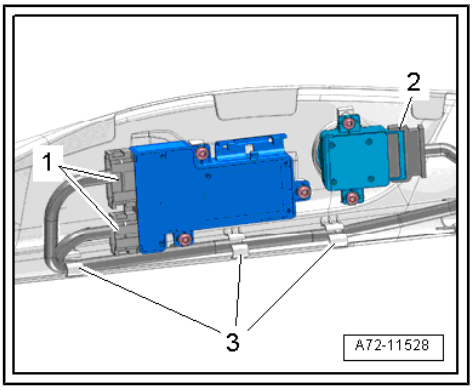



– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

1 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

– Move electrical wiring clear at bracket -3-.
– Detach trim (sill side).




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure trim (sill side) is properly engaged at retaining bracket and that lockable clip is fastened.*
- *Make sure wires are as close as possible to connectors.*

# 2.54 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

**Note**

*Removal and installation can be carried out only with the front seat removed.*

### Removing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat:

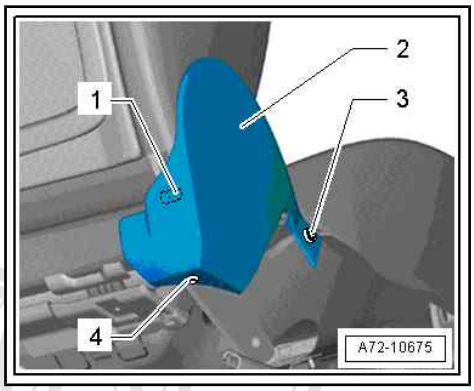
- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Unbolt belt buckle (front) at lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 72 .

– Remove spreader rivets -3- and -4-.

– Lift off trim (tunnel side) -2-.




**Note**

*When detaching trim, take care not to damage lug -1-.*

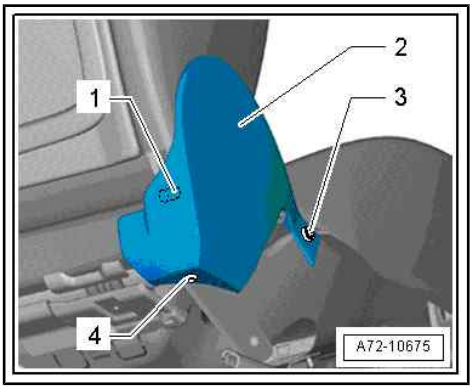
### Installing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**Note**

- *Make sure lug -1- is correctly positioned.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution and reproduction, even of extracts, in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

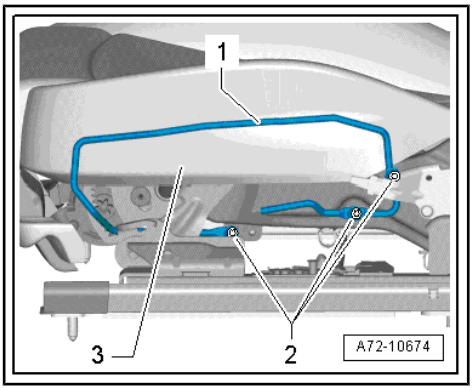
## 2.55 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

⇒ "2.55.1 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 341

⇒ "2.55.2 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat", page 342

## 2.55.1 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment

### Removing




– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove bolts -2- (3x).
– Detach retaining bracket -1- from front seat -3-. When doing so, detach any cable ties from retaining bracket.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 247

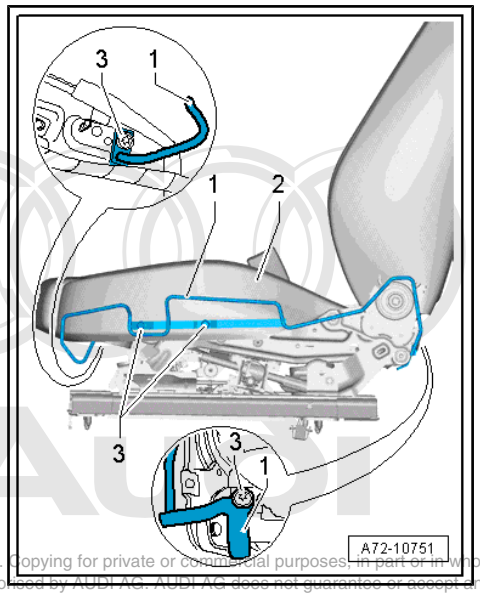
## 2.55.2 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat

**Removing**

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 338 .

– Remove bolts -3- (4x).

– Detach retaining bracket -1- from front seat -2-. When doing so, detach any cable ties from retaining bracket.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

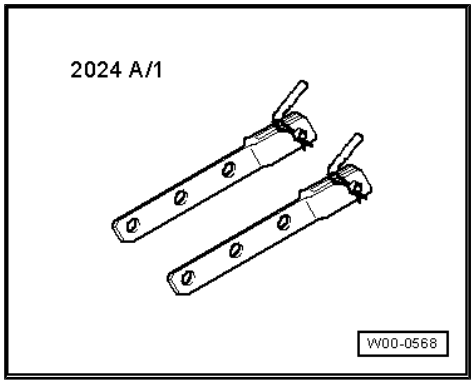
**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 248

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

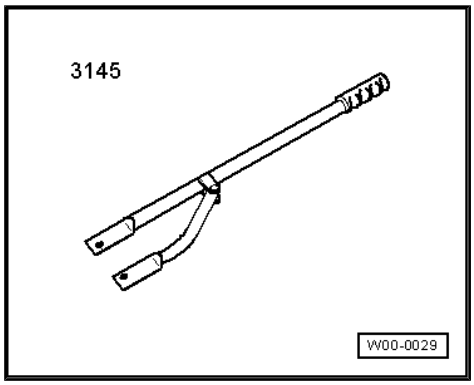
## 2.56 Removing and installing torsion bar

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Extension -2024 A /1-




♦ Counterhold tool - 3145-




♦ M10x30 bolt and nut

## Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

*Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.*

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

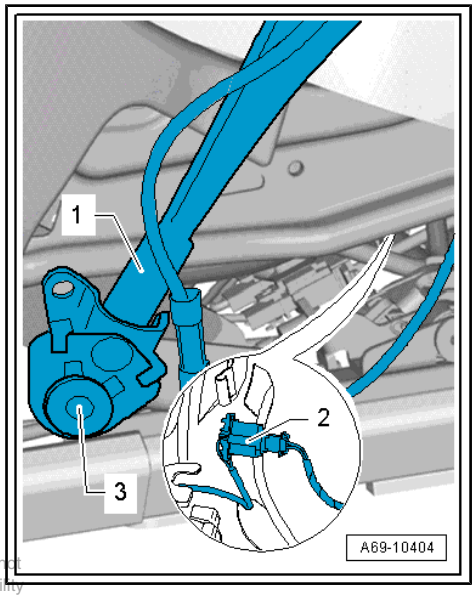
– Remove trim (sill side):

- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.53.1 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 336 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.53.2 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 338 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

– Slacken bolt connection -3- for belt buckle (front) -1-.
– Swivel belt buckle (front) downwards.




**Note**

*The electrical wire -2- does not need to be unplugged or removed.*

**WARNING**

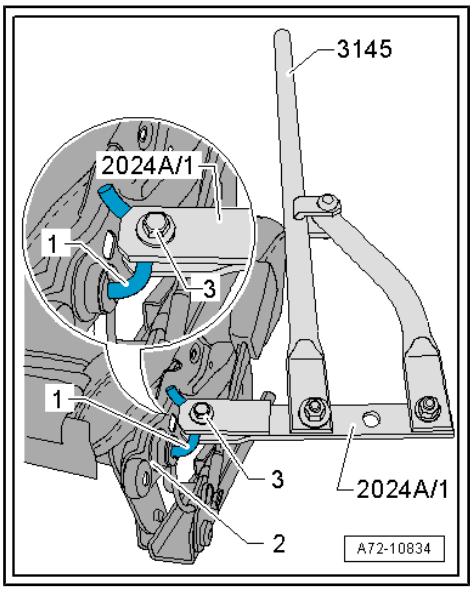
***The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:***

- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

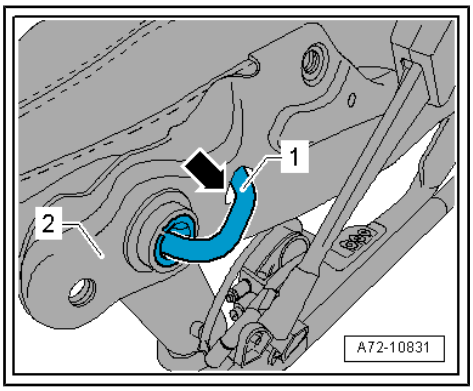
– Secure extension -2024 A /1- with M10x30 bolt -item 3- and nut to prevent the ends from spreading apart.
– Position counterhold tool - 3145- with extension -2024 A /1- at torsion bar -1-.

2 - Seat pan




– Carefully turn torsion bar -1- until it can be disengaged from elongated hole -arrow- in seat pan with a screwdriver.
– Slacken off torsion bar and then pull it out of seat pan -2-.

**Installing**

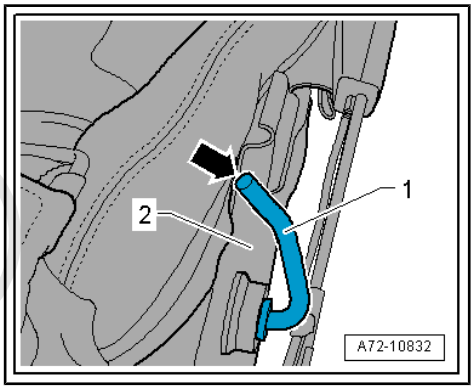



**WARNING**

***The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:***

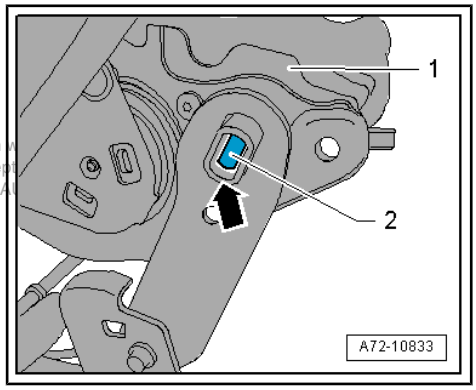
- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

– Push torsion bar -1- into mounting until end -arrow- makes contact with seat pan -2-.




– Make sure torsion bar -2- is positioned correctly in support bracket -arrow- of seat pan -1-.

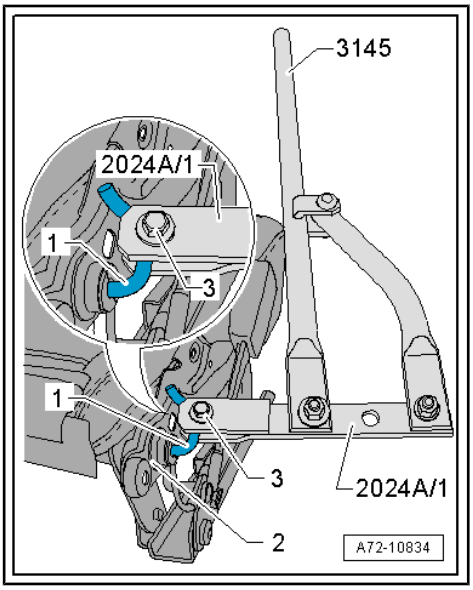
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A



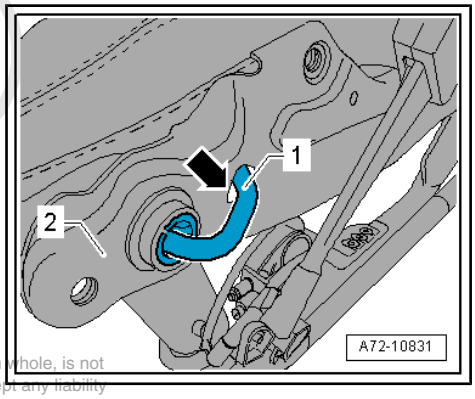

– Secure extension -2024 A /1- with M10x30 bolt -item 3- and nut to prevent the ends from spreading apart.

– Position counterhold tool - 3145- with extension -2024 A /1- at torsion bar -1-.

2 - Seat pan



– Rotate torsion bar -1- and carefully push it until it can be engaged in slot -arrow- in seat pan -2-.




Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.57 Removing and installing bearing for torsion bar

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

**Caution**

*Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.*

**WARNING**

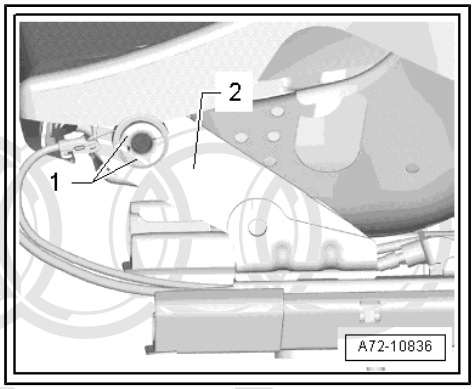
*The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:*

- *Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.*
- *Never use pliers or other levering aids.*
- *Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.*

– Remove torsion bar ⇒ page 342 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull bearing -1- out of guide -2-.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

***The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:***

- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 2*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

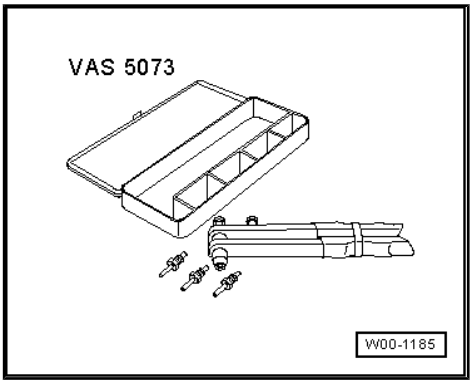
**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.58 Riveting pop rivet nut for retaining plate for DVD player to outer backrest frame

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Pop rivet nut pliers - VAS 5073-




**Procedure**

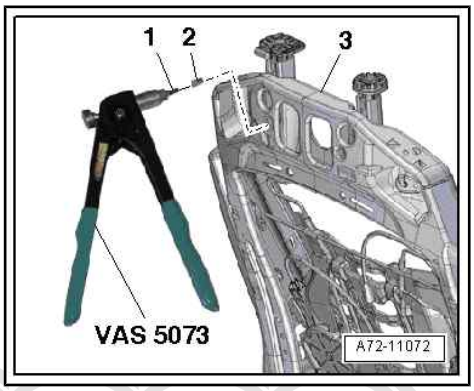
– Remove cover and padding from front seat backrest ⇒ page 428 .

– Screw M6 threaded arbor -item 1- into pop rivet nut pliers - VAS 5073- and screw in pop rivet nut -2- as far as stop.

– Insert pop rivet nut with pop rivet nut pliers as far as possible in hole in outer backrest frame -3- and squeeze pop rivet nut pliers.

– Unscrew threaded arbor again using pop rivet nut pliers.

– Install retaining plate for DVD player ⇒ page 349 .



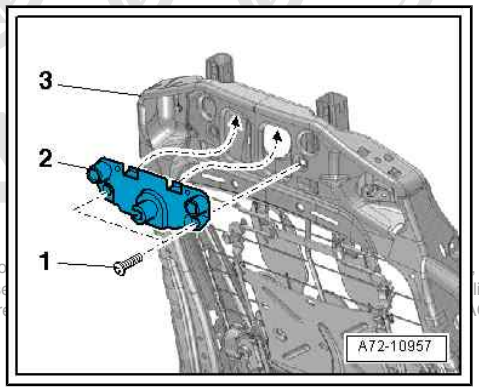

## 2.59 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player

**Removing**

– Remove cover and padding for front seat backrest ⇒ page 428 .

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach retaining plate -2- for screen bracket.




Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authorise
with respect to the corre
is not
liability
AG.

– Loosen nut -2-.

– Guide charger socket -4- with washer -3- out of mounting -1-.

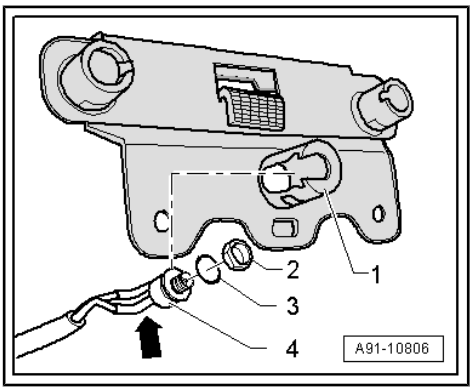
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Pull washer -3- upwards and slide charger socket -4- into mounting -1- from the side.

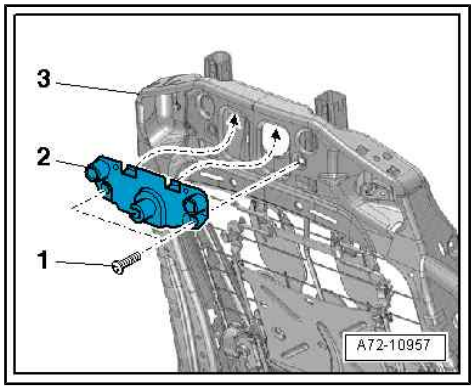
• Charger socket must be positioned centrally in mounting.

– Hold charger socket in this position and tighten nut.



– Engage hooks of retaining plate -2- in outer backrest frame -3- -arrows-.
– Tighten bolts -1-.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 256 , ⇒ page 256




## 2.60 Removing and installing storage compartment

**Removing**

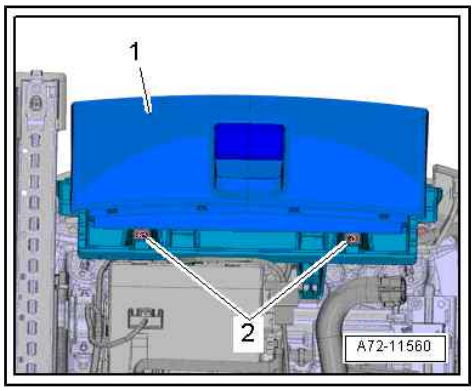
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

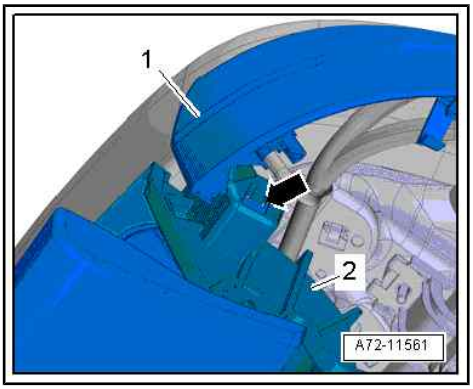
- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .
– Open storage compartment -1- and unscrew bolts -2-.



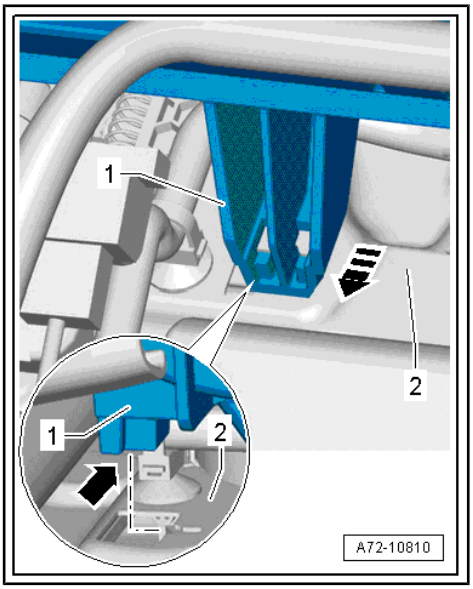

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fastener -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and pull storage compartment slightly downwards off trim (sill side) -1-.




– Push storage compartment -1- in direction of -arrow- and disengage catch -bottom arrow- of storage compartment from upper frame of seat pan -2-.

– Detach storage compartment from upper seat pan frame.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any use, also for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

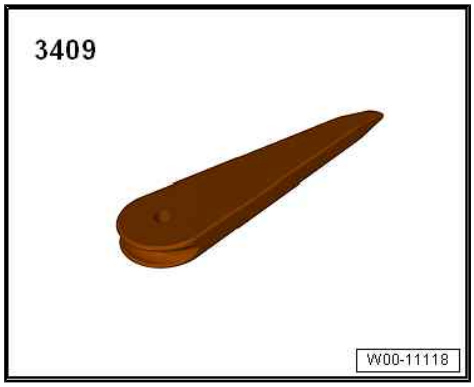
*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques ⇒ page 265**

# 2.61 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat
  ⇒ "2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat", page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
  ⇒ page 224 .

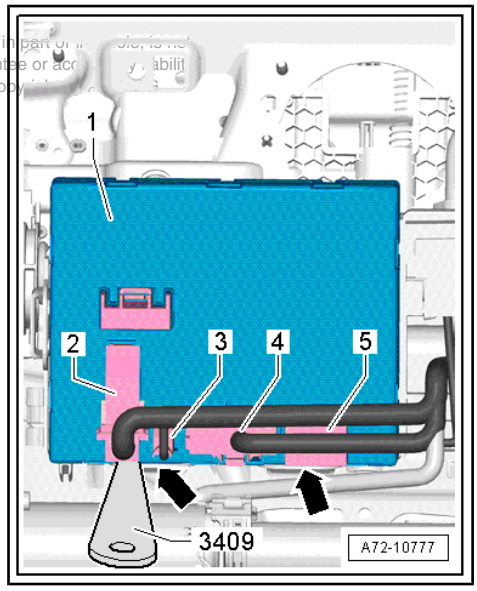
– Unplug electrical connectors -2 ... 5- at control unit -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part of ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co...

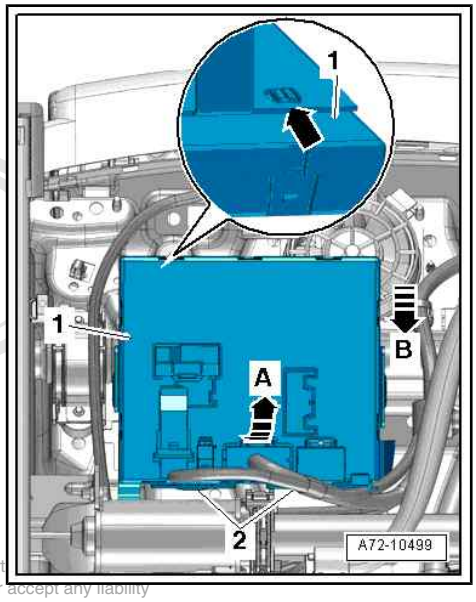
**Note**

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.*
*The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip fasteners -arrows-.



– Carefully swivel control unit -1- in direction of -arrow A- out of fasteners -2-.
– Move control unit in direction of -arrow B-.
– When doing so, disengage hooks -arrow- of control unit at retainer.
– Detach control unit from retainer.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure seat adjustment control unit with memory function engages audibly in retainer.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.62 Removing and installing retainer for seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function

### Removing

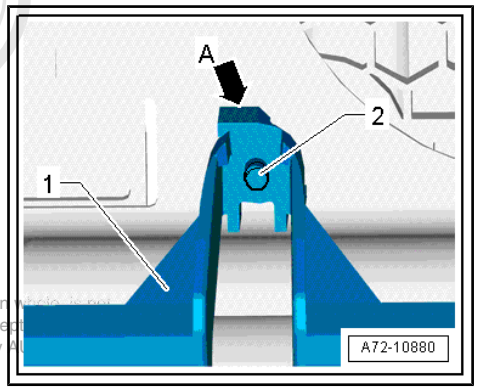
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory function ⇒ page 352 .

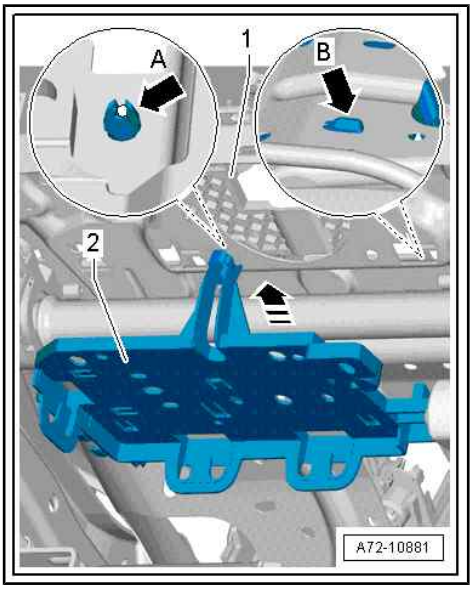
– Use e.g. an upholstery needle to press pin -2- towards padding and out of clip -arrow A- on retainer -1-.

– Remove pin (pressed out) from seat pan.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull support for retainer -2- off upper seat pan frame.
– When doing so, unfasten clip -arrow A- at upper seat pan frame -1-.
– Disengage retaining tabs -arrow B- (2x).
– Carefully detach retainer from seat pan in direction of -arrow-.
– Remove retainer from seat pan.




**Installing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

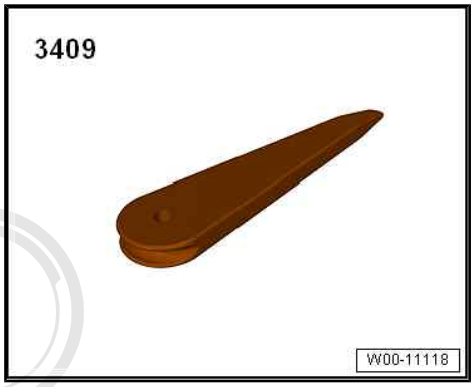
**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.63 Removing and installing control unit for seat ventilation and seat heating

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-




## Removing

**WARNING**

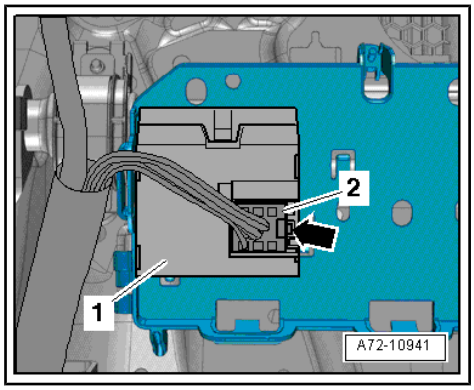
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

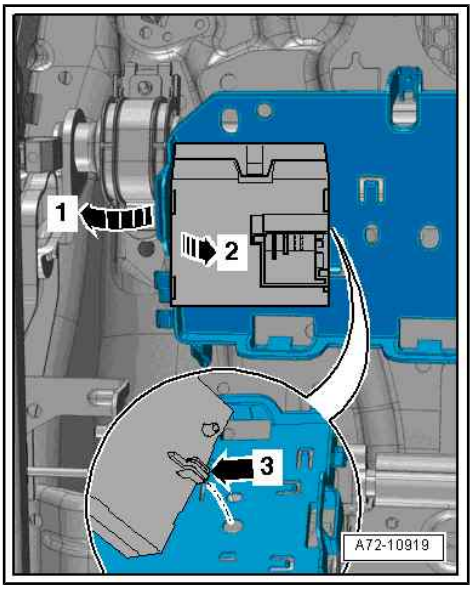
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Press release mechanism -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit for seat ventilation -J799- / -J800- -item 1-.



– Using removal wedge - 3409- , release retaining tab -arrow 1-.
– Swivel control unit downwards -arrow 2-.
– Disengage hook -arrow 3- of control unit at retainer.
– Detach control unit.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- *Make sure control unit for seat ventilation engages audibly in retainer.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution to third parties, publication or duplication of this Service Manual or any part thereof, in whole or in part, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.64 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor

The seat longitudinal adjustment motor can only be renewed together with the lower seat pan frame.

⇒ page 301

## 2.65 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

♦ Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat
⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ page 224 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 338 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

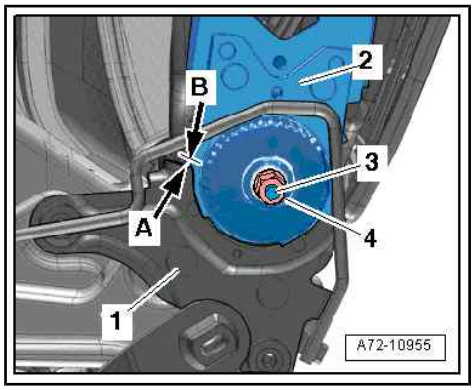
♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Mark angularity of backrest fittings (left and right) on seat as follows:

– Use an indelible pen to make mark (line) -arrow B- on backrest -2- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -1-.

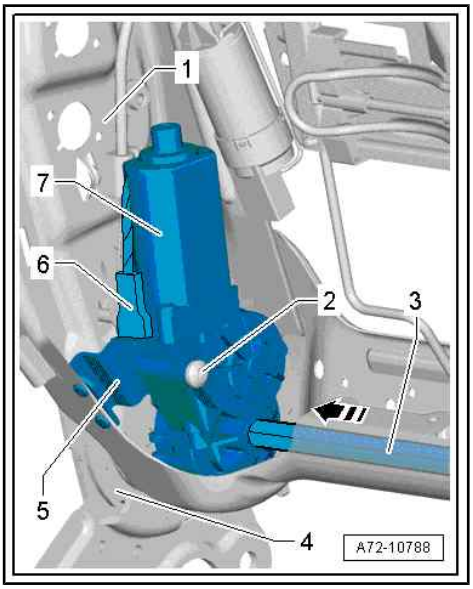



**Caution**

*When making mark, take care not to damage surface of fitting (scratching or scoring).*

– Remove nut -4- from shaft -3-.

– Detach padding from outer backrest frame in area of backrest fitting ⇒ page 428 .
– Pull shaft -3- out of outer backrest frame -1- in direction of -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -6- at backrest adjustment motor -7-.
– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach backrest adjustment motor from bracket -5-. To do so, press lumbar support motor forwards slightly.

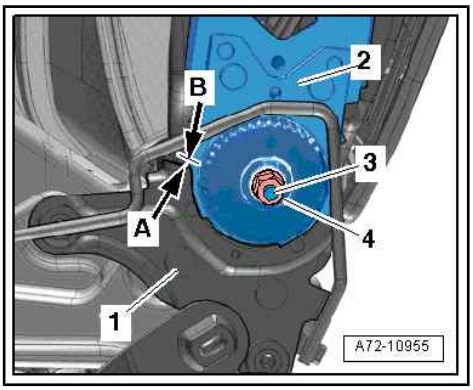



## Installing

**WARNING**

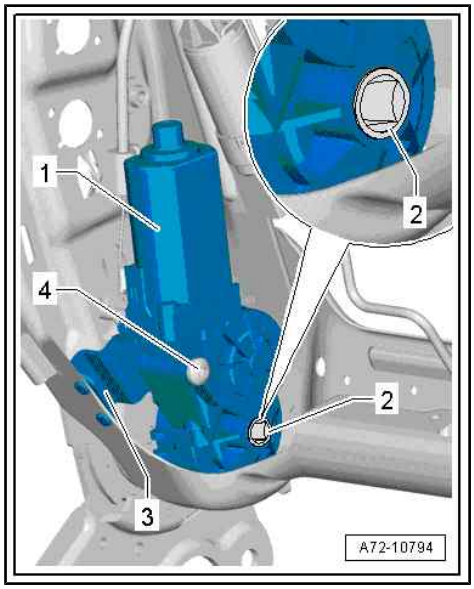
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

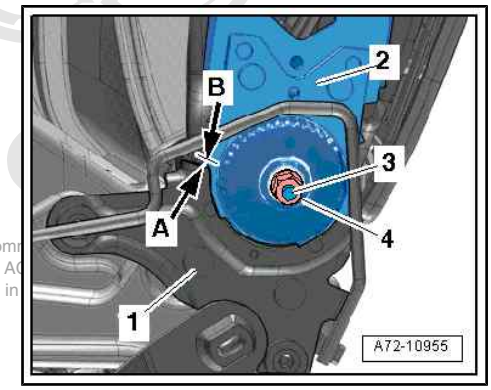
– Clean shaft thread -3- before installing, e.g. using a thread tap.
– Check position of outer backrest frame -2- and fitting -1- on left and right side of backrest.
• The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on left and right side) -arrows A and B-.
– If the outer backrest frame is not in the position marked before removal (on left and right side), make adjustments as required.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Position backrest adjustment motor -1- on retainer -3-.
– Renew bolt -4-, coat with locking fluid (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ) and hand-tighten only.
• It must still be possible to move the backrest adjustment motor.
– First slide shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting -2- in backrest adjustment motor.
– Check that profiles of inserted shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.
• Profiles of shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line:
– Push shaft through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as stop (sill side).
• Profiles of shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are not in line:
– Apply an external power source (12 V) to backrest adjustment motor -1-.
– Rotate mounting -2- until profiles of shaft and mounting are in line.
– Push shaft through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as stop (sill side).
– Apply locking fluid (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ) to threaded section of shaft.
– Fit new nut -4- on shaft -3- and tighten.

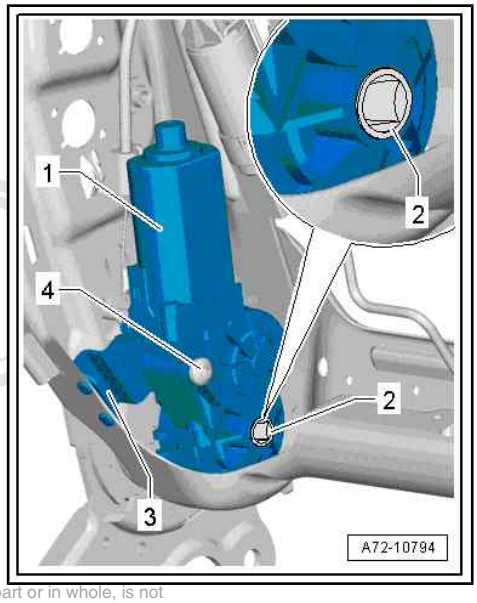



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

– Secure backrest adjustment motor to retainer -3- (with specified torque).

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:




**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 271

## 2.66 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor

**Removing**

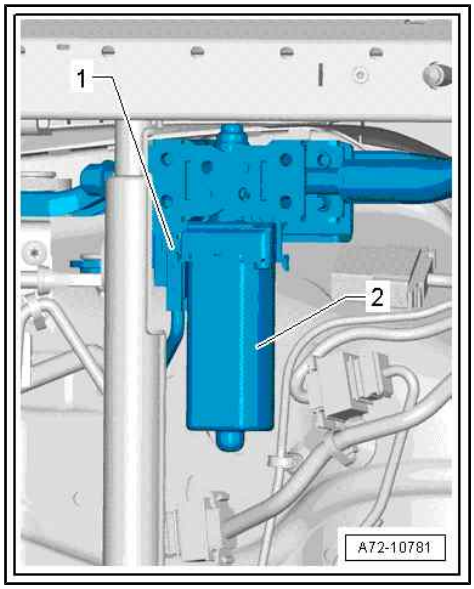
**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 2*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 338 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at seat height adjustment motor -2-.
– Slacken off torsion bar. ⇒ page 342




**Caution**

*Risk of (irreparable) damage to threaded hole in seat pan.*

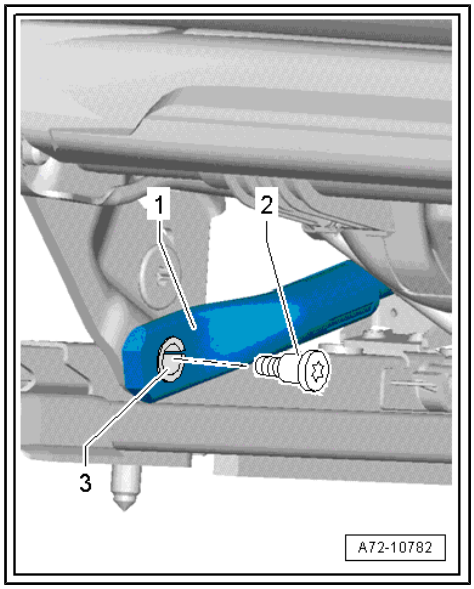
- *Bolted connection for adjustment spindle to seat pan must be free of strain when fitting/removing bolt.*

*Risk of damage to bush -3- in pivot point (bolted connection between adjustment spindle and seat pan).*

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*

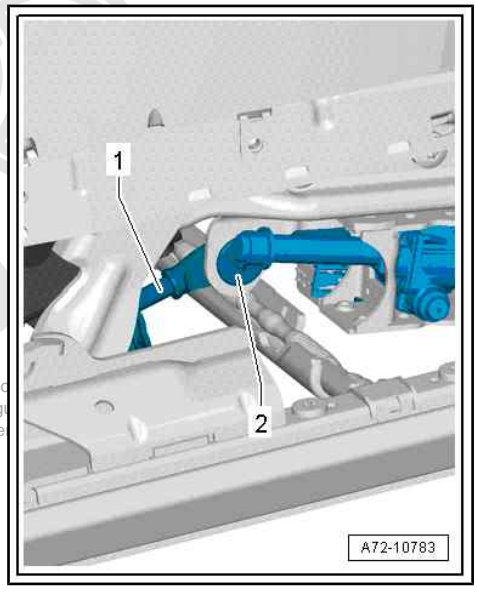
*Risk of damage to thread of bolt -2-.*

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



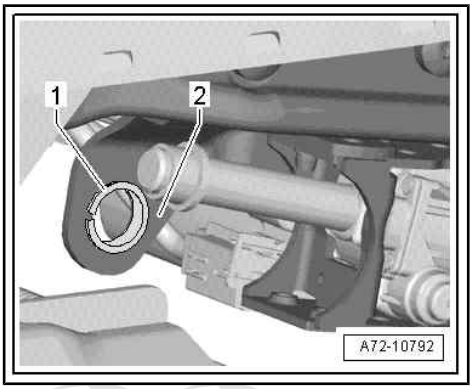

– Unscrew bolt -2- at adjustment spindle -1- of seat height adjustment motor.

– Unscrew bolt -2- for adjustment spindle -1- of seat rake adjustment motor (pre-set at factory).




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

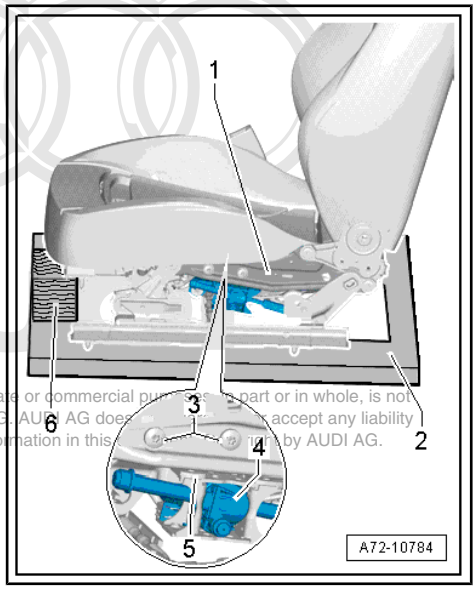
– When removing bolt -2-, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in pivot points.




**Caution**

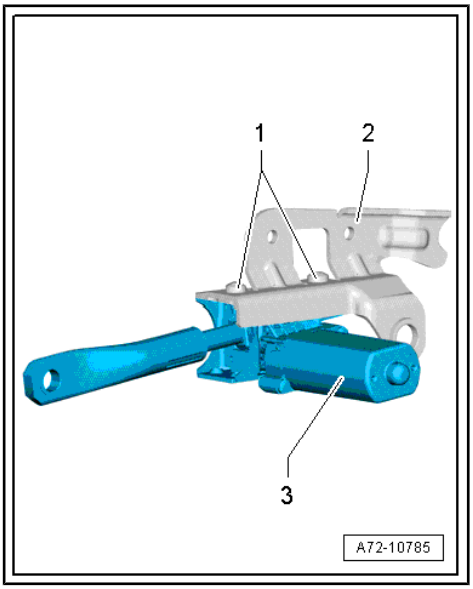
- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

– Swivel up upper seat pan frame -1- as far as possible.
– Use a suitable block of wood -6- to support upper seat pan frame on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- -item 2-.
– Remove bolts -3- (2x).
– Detach retainer -5- with seat height adjustment motor -4- from seat pan.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1-.
– Separate retainer -2- and seat height adjustment motor -3-.



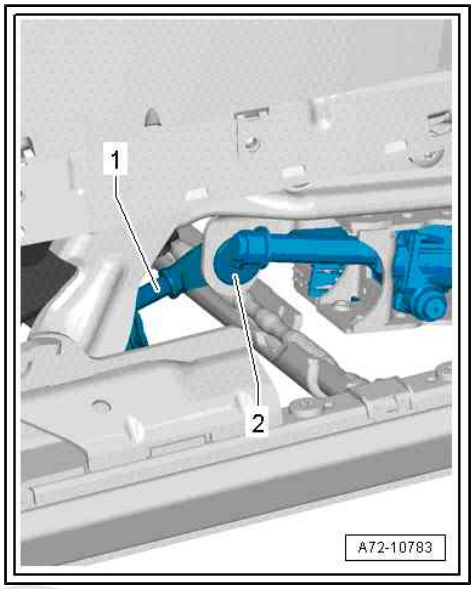

**Installing**

**WARNING**

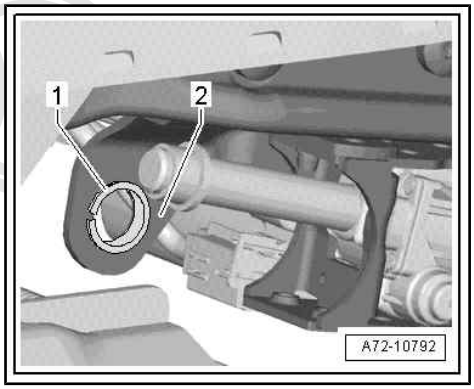
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Always clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts using e.g. a thread tap.
– Renew all self-locking bolts.

– Secure adjustment spindle -1- of seat rake adjustment motor (pre-set at factory) with bolt -2-.




– Take care not to damage bush -1- when inserting bolt.



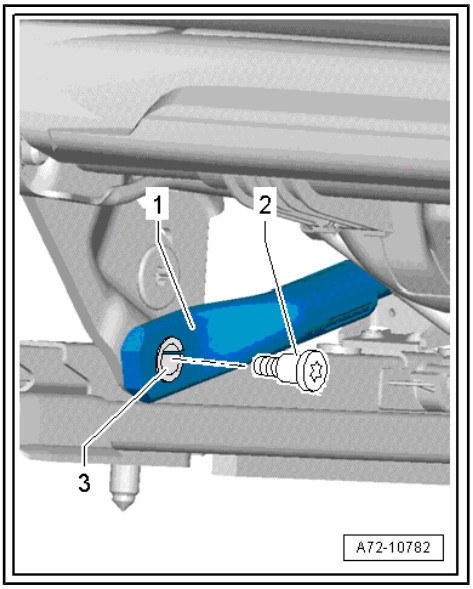

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

*If strain on bolt connection adjustment spindle/seat pan is not relieved when unscrewing or bolting on, threaded hole in seat pan will be damaged or destroyed.*

*Risk of damage to thread of bolt -2-.*

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*




– Take care not to damage bush -3- when inserting bolt -2-.

**Caution**

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

*The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 272

# 2.67 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor

## Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

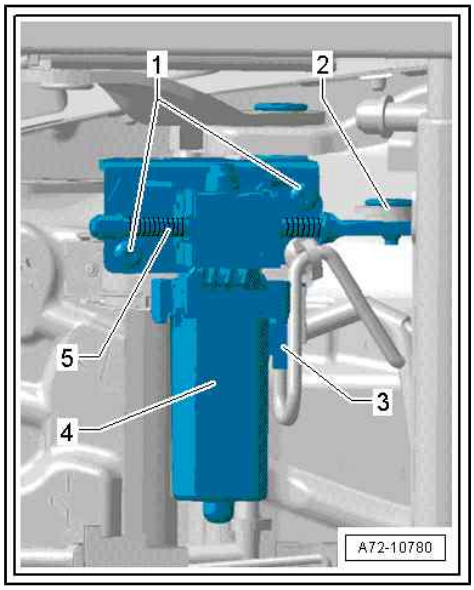
– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat
⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

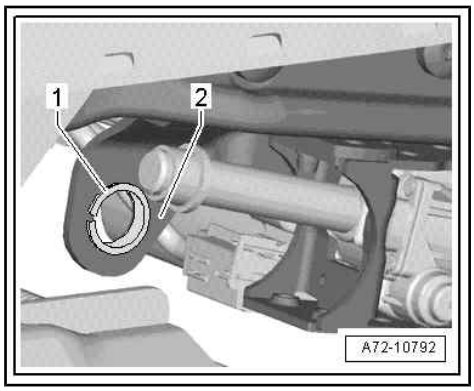
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ page 224 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat rake adjustment motor -4-.

– Unscrew bolt -2- for adjustment spindle -5- (pre-set at factory).




– When removing bolt -2-, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in pivot points.

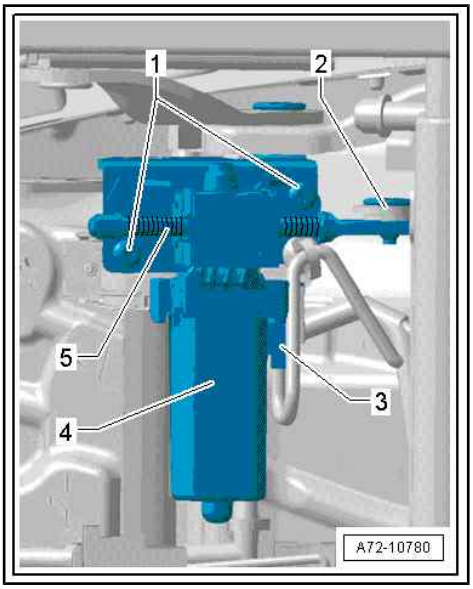



**Caution**

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Take seat rake adjustment motor out of front seat.




**Installing**

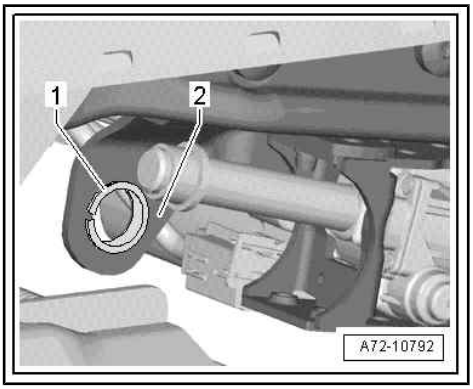
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

– Renew all self-locking bolts.

– Take care not to damage bush -1- when inserting bolt.




**Caution**

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

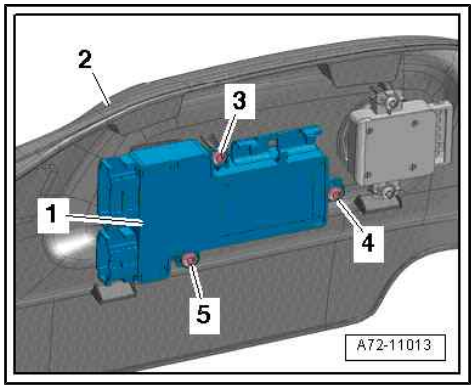
***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.68 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit




### Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 338 .
– Remove backrest adjustment actuator ⇒ page 304 .
– Remove seat adjustment actuator ⇒ page 325 .
– Remove bolts -3, 4, 5-.
– Detach operating unit -1- from trim (sill side) -2-.

### Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 250

## 2.69 Removing and installing lumbar support

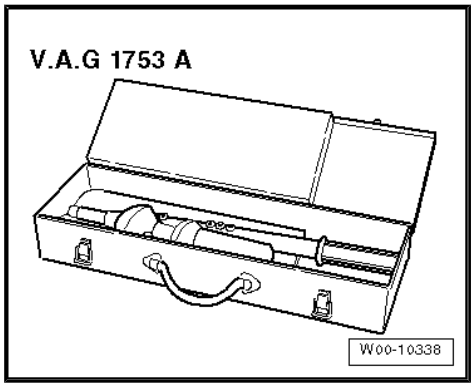
⇒ “2.69.1 Removing and installing lumbar support - all seats except convenience seat”, page 368

⇒ “2.69.2 Removing and installing lumbar support - convenience seat”, page 372

## 2.69.1 Removing and installing lumbar support - all seats except convenience seat

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-




♦ Drill
♦ Safety goggles

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

- ♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment)
  ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- ♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with electric adjustment), super sports seat
  ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ page 224 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

- ♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305
- ♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
  ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– If fitted, remove trim for outer backrest frame ⇒ page 310 .

– Remove head restraint:

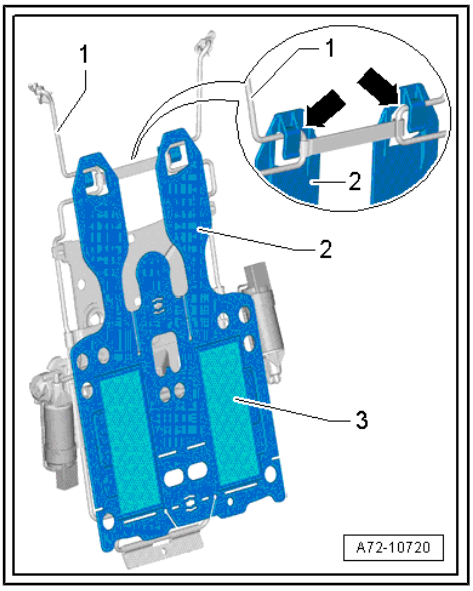
- ♦ ⇒ “2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 295
- ♦ ⇒ “2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat”, page 295

– Remove seat cover with padding:

- ♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment)
  ⇒ “1.7.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - all seats except super sports seat”, page 428 .
- ♦ Super sports seat
  ⇒ “1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat”, page 432

– In doing so, unfasten Velcro strip -3- between mount -2- and padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**Note**

*A good deal of force is required to unfasten the Velcro strip.*

– If applicable, disengage mount at four-way lumbar support -1- -arrows-.

**Note**

*As protection against metal swarf, place plastic foil between seat pan cover and outer backrest frame.*

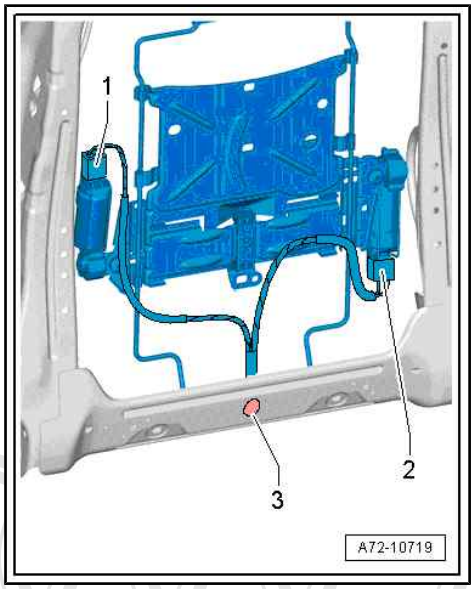
**WARNING**

*Risk of injury!*

- *Put on safety goggles.*

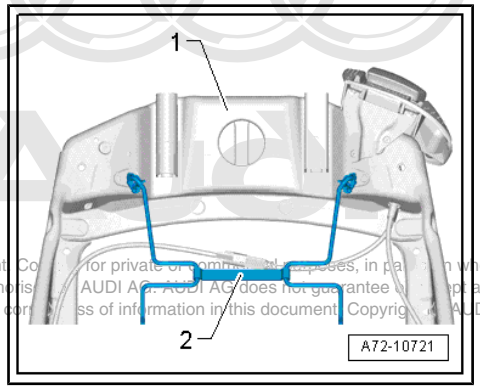
– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of four-way lumbar support.




– Disengage four-way lumbar support -2- at outer backrest frame -1-.

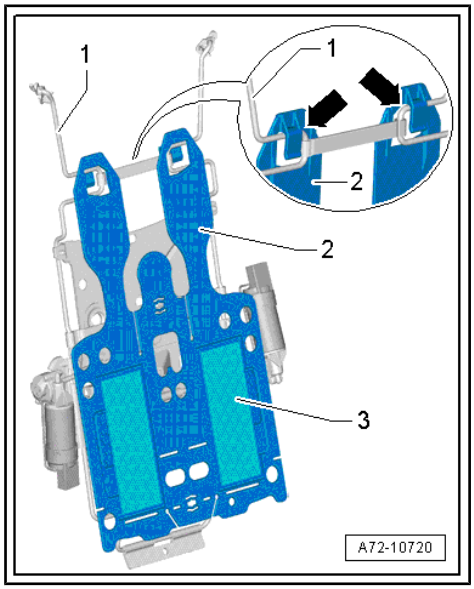
– Take four-way lumbar support out of outer backrest frame.



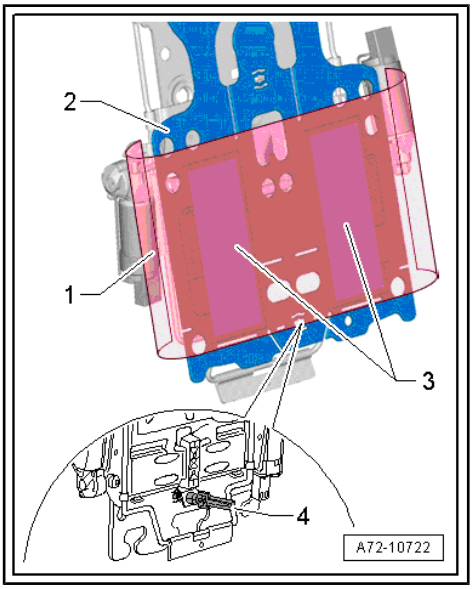

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

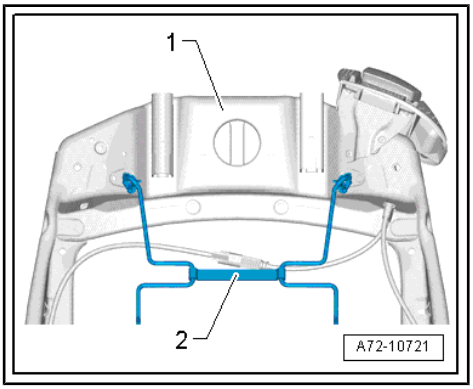
– If applicable, engage mount -2- at four-way lumbar support -1- -arrows-.



– Place plastic foil -1- over Velcro strips -3- of mount -2-.
– Secure plastic foil at mount.
– Make sure lumbar support is connected to mount with locking element -4- or a suitable pin.

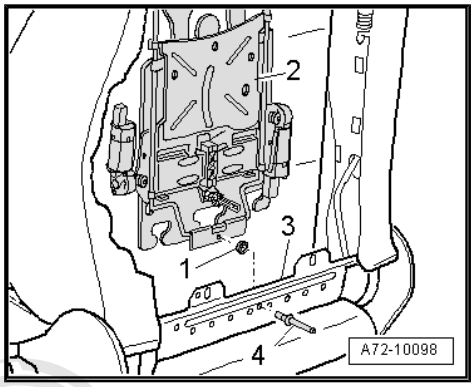



– Check that both clips for four-way lumbar support are inserted in outer backrest frame.
– Engage four-way lumbar support -2- at outer backrest frame -1-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before setting rivet -4-, fit a plastic washer -1- between lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.
– Rivet four-way lumbar support to outer backrest frame.
– Fold seat padding with cover over outer backrest frame.
– Pull out plastic foil between mount and padding.
– Fasten Velcro strip of mount at padding.
– Plug in electrical connectors at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.




**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

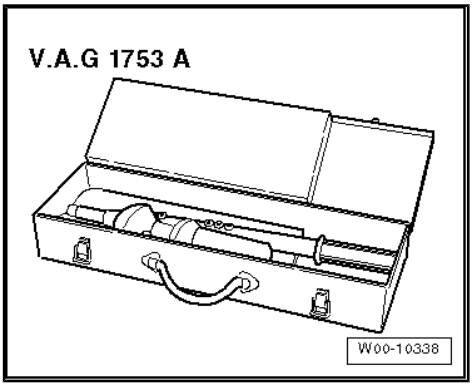
**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 2.69.2 Removing and installing lumbar support - convenience seat

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-




- Drill
- Safety goggles

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove backrest cover panel:

- Two-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305
- One-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– If fitted, remove trim for outer backrest frame ⇒ page 310 .

– Remove head restraint:

- ⇒ “2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint, standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 295
- ⇒ “2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat”, page 295

– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 428 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

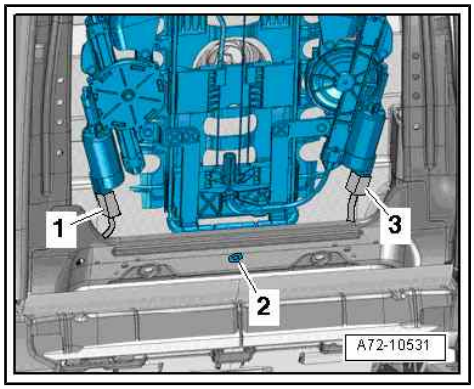
**Note**

*As protection against metal swarf, place plastic foil between seat pan cover and outer backrest frame.*

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury!*

- *Put on safety goggles.*



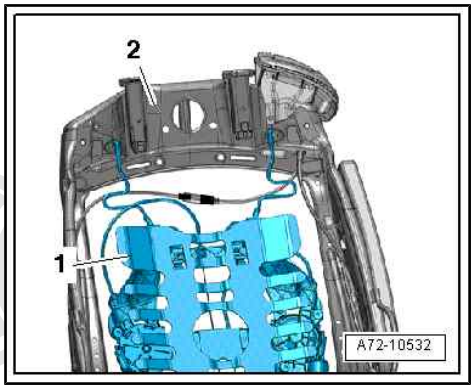

– Drill out rivet -2-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -3- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of four-way lumbar support.

– Move electrical wiring harness clear at four-way lumbar support -1-.

– Disengage four-way lumbar support at outer backrest frame -2-.

– Take four-way lumbar support out of outer backrest frame.

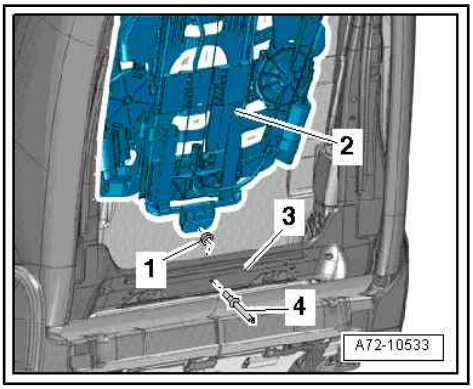



**Installing**

– Engage four-way lumbar support -1- at outer backrest frame -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before setting rivet -4-, fit a plastic washer -1- between lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.
– Rivet four-way lumbar support to outer backrest frame.




**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.70 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the lumbar support height adjustment motor. The removal and installation procedure for the lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor is similar.*

**Removing**

– Remove backrest cover panel:

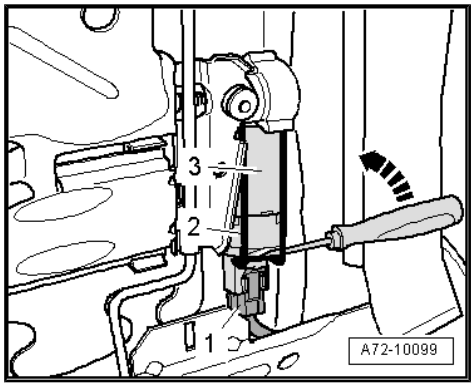
♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Release retaining clip -2- using a screwdriver -arrow-.

– Take out lumbar support height adjustment motor -3-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 2.71 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove trim (sill side):

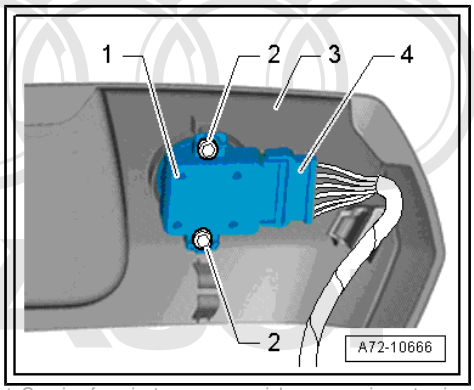
♦ Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment)
⇒ “2.53.1 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 336 .

♦ Standard seat, sports seat (with electric adjustment), convenience seat and super sports seat
⇒ “2.53.2 Removing and installing trim (sill side) - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 338 .

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach switch -1- for adjusting lumbar support from trim -3-.




**Installing**

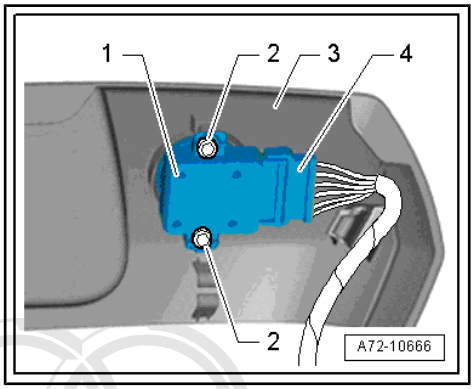
**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Route wiring as close as possible to connector -4-.




**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

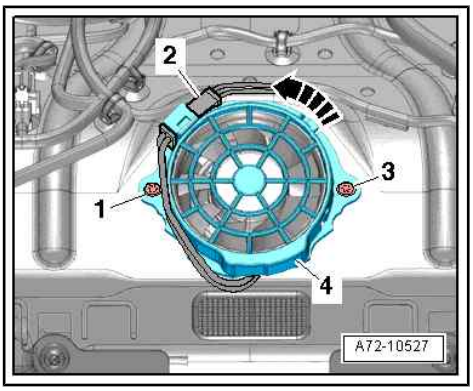
Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 250

## 2.72 Removing and installing seat cushion fan

**Removing**

– Detach padding from seat pan ⇒ page 422 .
– Move clear and unplug electrical connectors -2-.
– Remove bolts -1- and -3-.
– Turn cover grille -4- slightly in direction of -arrow- and detach fan.



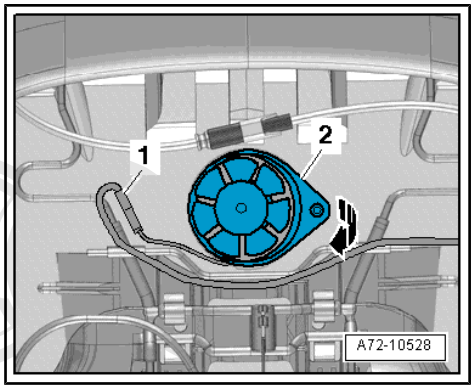

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 274

## 2.73 Removing and installing backrest fan (top)

### Removing




– Remove backrest cover panel:

♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Carefully swivel backrest fan -2- out of backrest padding -arrow-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

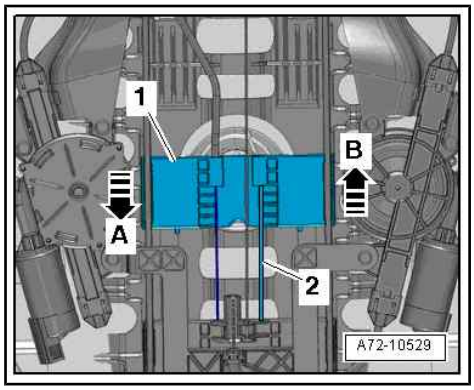
Installation position for fan (top):

- Electrical wire faces downwards.
- Securing lugs on fan housing face sideward.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.74 Removing and installing backrest fan (bottom)

### Removing




– Remove backrest cover panel:

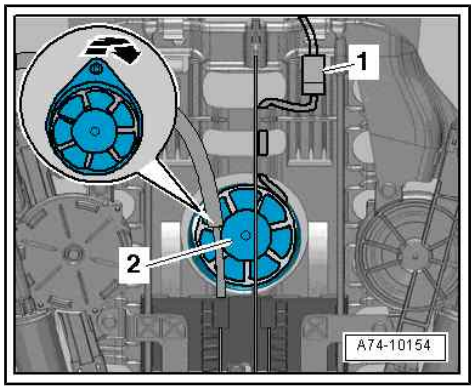
♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Move slider -1- downwards as far as it will go -arrow A- to set lumbar support to maximum curvature.

**Note**

*Disregard -item 2-.*



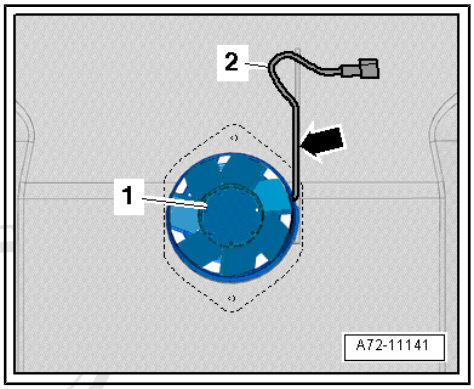

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Carefully swivel backrest fan -2- out of backrest padding -arrow-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Securing lugs on fan housing -1- face upwards and downwards.
- Route electrical wire -2- in gap in backrest padding -arrow-; it should face outwards towards the side.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 380

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 382

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 383

⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 384

⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 386

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 389

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 391

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 391

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 392

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 393

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 394

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 395

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch”, page 396

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch”, page 396

⇒ “3.15 Checking floor panel for retainers and wire frame of seat bench and correcting any deformations”, page 397

⇒ “3.16 Removing and installing cover for centre bracket”, page 397

⇒ “3.17 Removing and installing retaining clip”, page 398

⇒ “3.18 Removing and installing centre bracket”, page 399

⇒ “3.19 Removing and installing outer bearing”, page 399

⇒ “3.20 Removing and installing inner bearing”, page 400

⇒ “3.21 Removing and installing side padding”, page 400

⇒ “3.22 Removing and installing trim frame”, page 400

⇒ “3.23 Removing and installing intermediate padding”, page 401

⇒ “3.24 Removing and installing trim for cup holder”, page 401

⇒ “3.25 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 402

⇒ “3.26 Removing and installing storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)”, page 403

⇒ “3.27 Removing and installing cover”, page 404

⇒ “3.28 Removing and installing bracket”, page 405

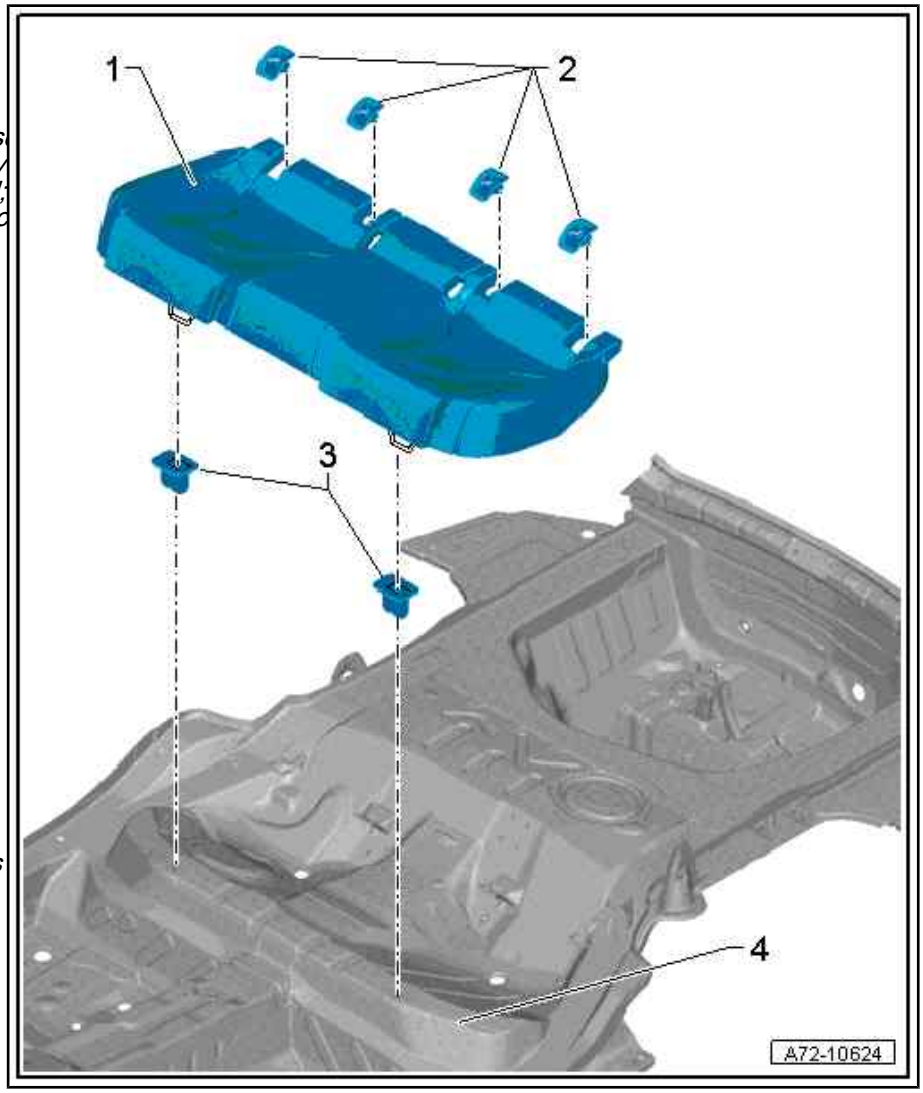
⇒ “3.29 Removing and installing lid”, page 406

⇒ “3.30 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest bracket”, page 407

⇒ “3.31 Removing and installing cover for rear seat backrest bracket”, page 408

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats




**1 - Seat bench**

**Note**

*The wire frame of the s must be checked every seat bench is removed; mations must be correc*

- One-piece
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 389
- Checking and correction wire frame ⇒ page 397

**2 - Cover**

- For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- Depending on version
- 4x
- Clipped onto child seat anchor brackets (ISOFIX) welded to floor

**3 - Retainer**

**Note**

*Always renew retainers ing seat bench.*

- 2x
- For securing seat bench
- Clipped into vehicle floor
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 390

**4 - Vehicle floor**

**Note**

*The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in must be checked every time the seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected.*

- Checking and correction floor panel ⇒ page 397

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism

**Note**

*The exploded view refers to the locking mechanism for the 1/3 section (left-side) of the backrest. The locking mechanism for the 2/3 section (right-side) of the backrest is similar.*

**1 - Backrest pan**

**2 - Trim**

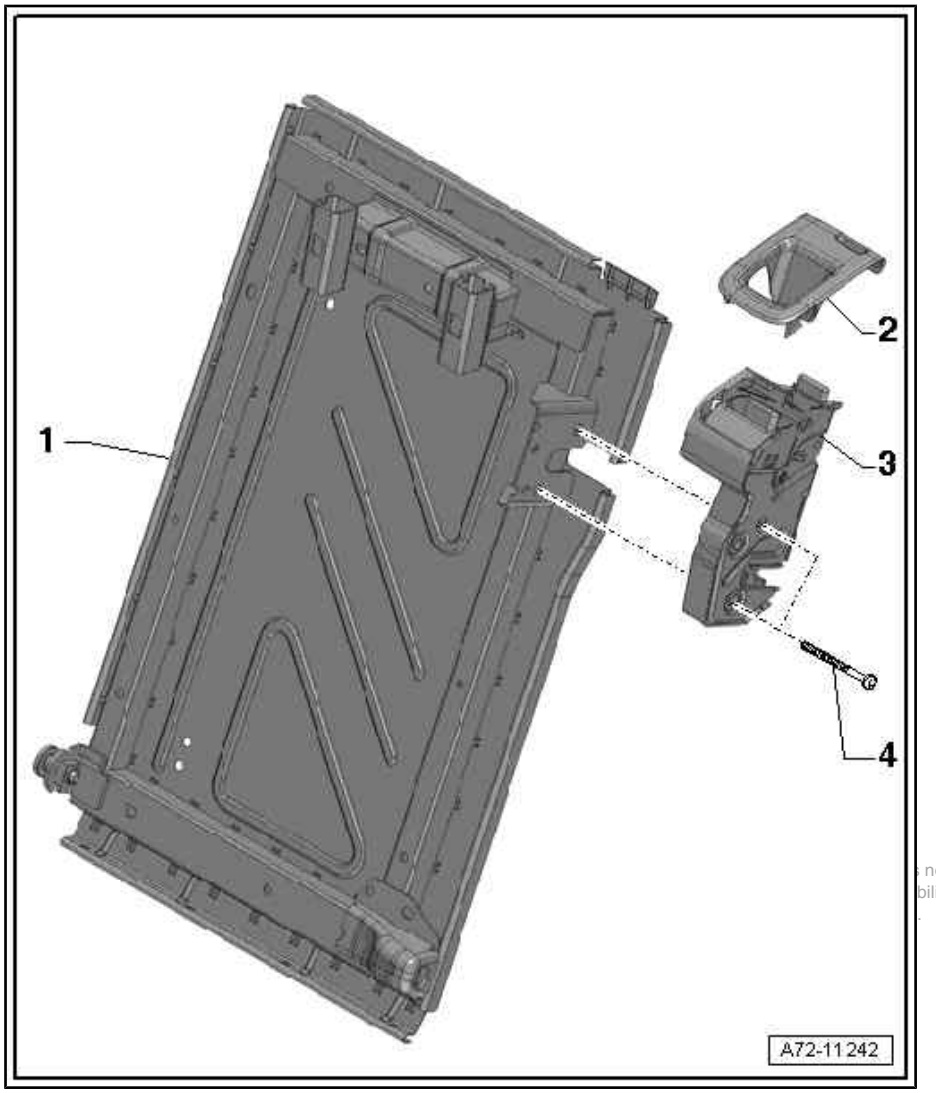
- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 393

**3 - Locking mechanism**

- ❑ For backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 394

**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2x per locking mechanism
- ❑ 25 Nm




not
bility

## 3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide

**1 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ With retaining clip -arrow A-
- ❑ Always fitted on right side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

**2 - Head restraint guide**

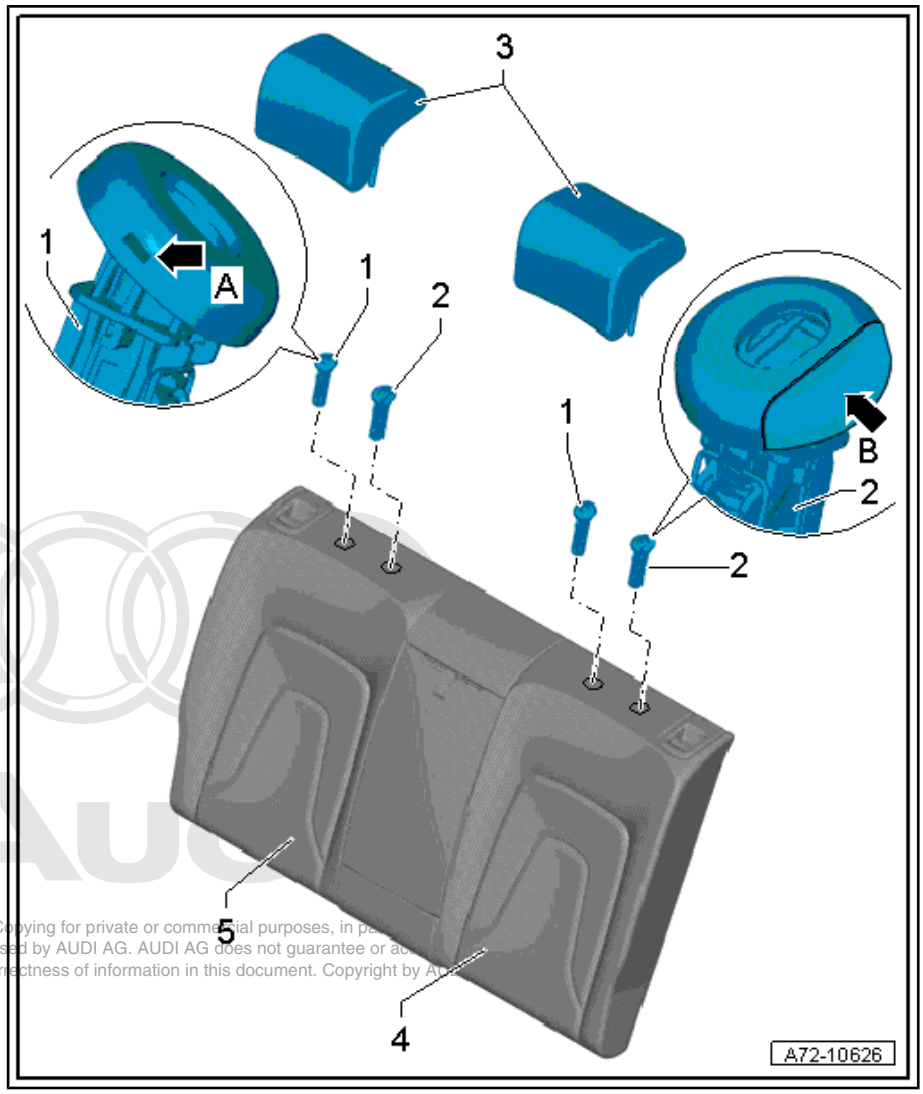
- ❑ With button for head restraint height adjustment -arrow B-
- ❑ Always fitted on left side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

**3 - Head restraint**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

**4 - 1/3 section of backrest (left-side)**

**5 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)**



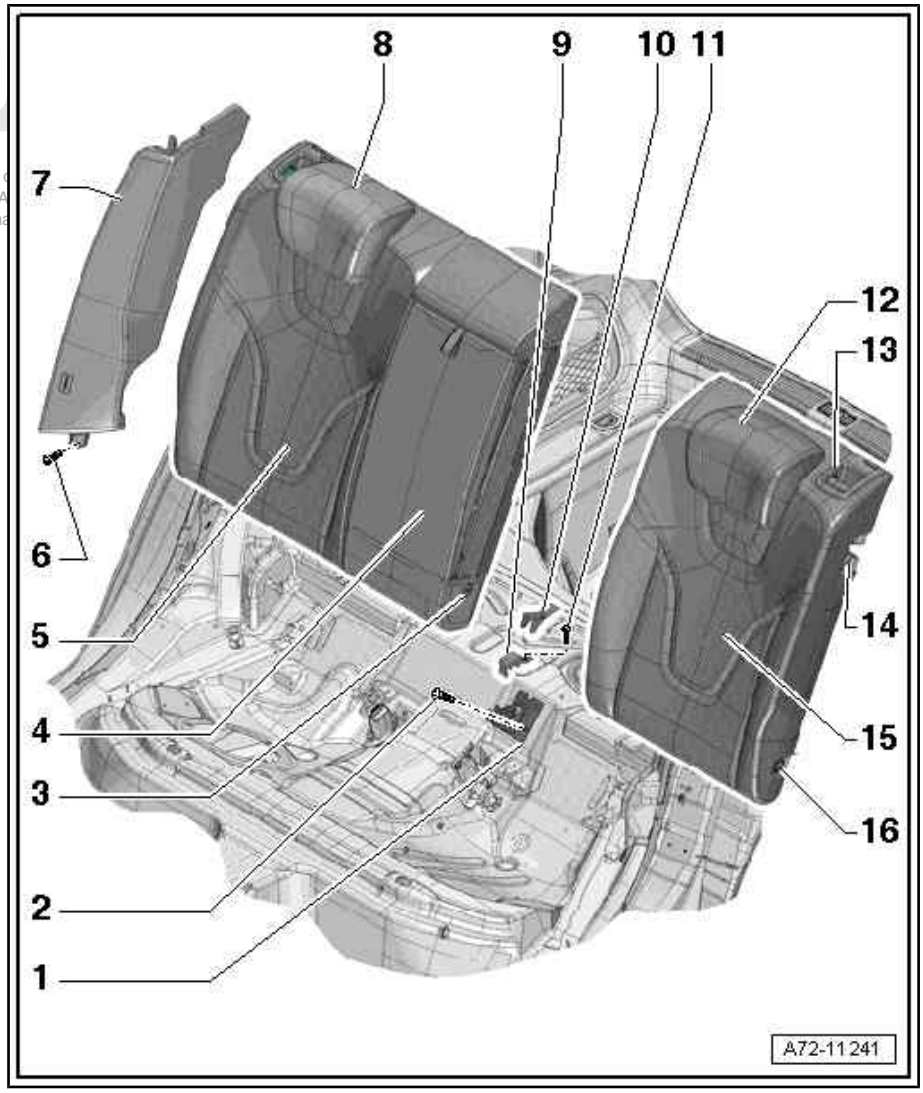

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest

**Note**

*The backrest is split into a right (2/3) section and a left (1/3) section.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information




**1 - Centre bracket**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 399

**2 - Bolts**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 16.5 Nm

**3 - Inner bearing**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

**4 - Centre armrest**

Equipment version with flap for load-through hatch

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 386

Equipment version with storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 387
- ❑ Centre armrest and storage compartment can only be removed and installed separately

Equipment version without storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket and trim for backrest bracket)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 388
- ❑ Centre armrest, cover for backrest bracket and trim for backrest bracket can only be removed and installed separately

**5 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)**

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Without centre armrest and storage compartment and without centre armrest and flap for load-through hatch (solid foam version)
- ♦ With centre armrest and storage compartment
- ♦ With centre armrest and flap for load-through hatch
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 392

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ 9 Nm (for side padding with side airbag)
- ❑ 3 Nm (for side padding without side airbag)

**7 - Side padding**

Equipment version without side airbag

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

Equipment version with side airbag

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 107

**8 - Head restraint (right-side)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 383

**9 - Retaining clip**

- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 398

**10 - Cover for centre bracket**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 397

**11 - Bolt**

- ❑ 9 Nm

**12 - Head restraint (left-side)**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 383

**13 - Trim**

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 382

**14 - Locking mechanism**

- ❑ For backrest
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 382

**15 - 1/3 section of backrest (left-side)**

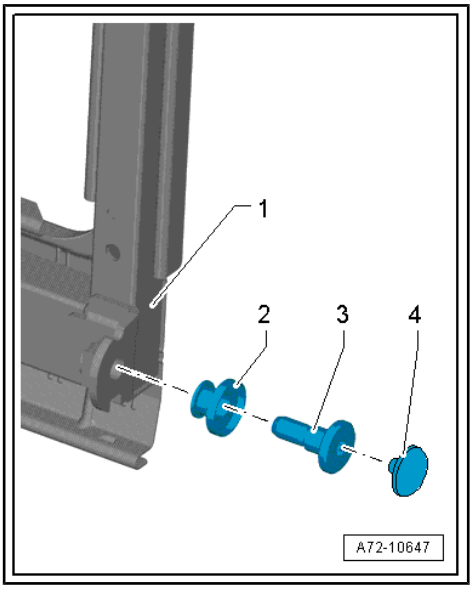
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 392

**16 - Outer bearing**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clipped into backrest pan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 399

**Exploded view of inner bearing**

1 - Backrest pan
2 - Grommet
3 - Bolt, 15 Nm
4 - Cover




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

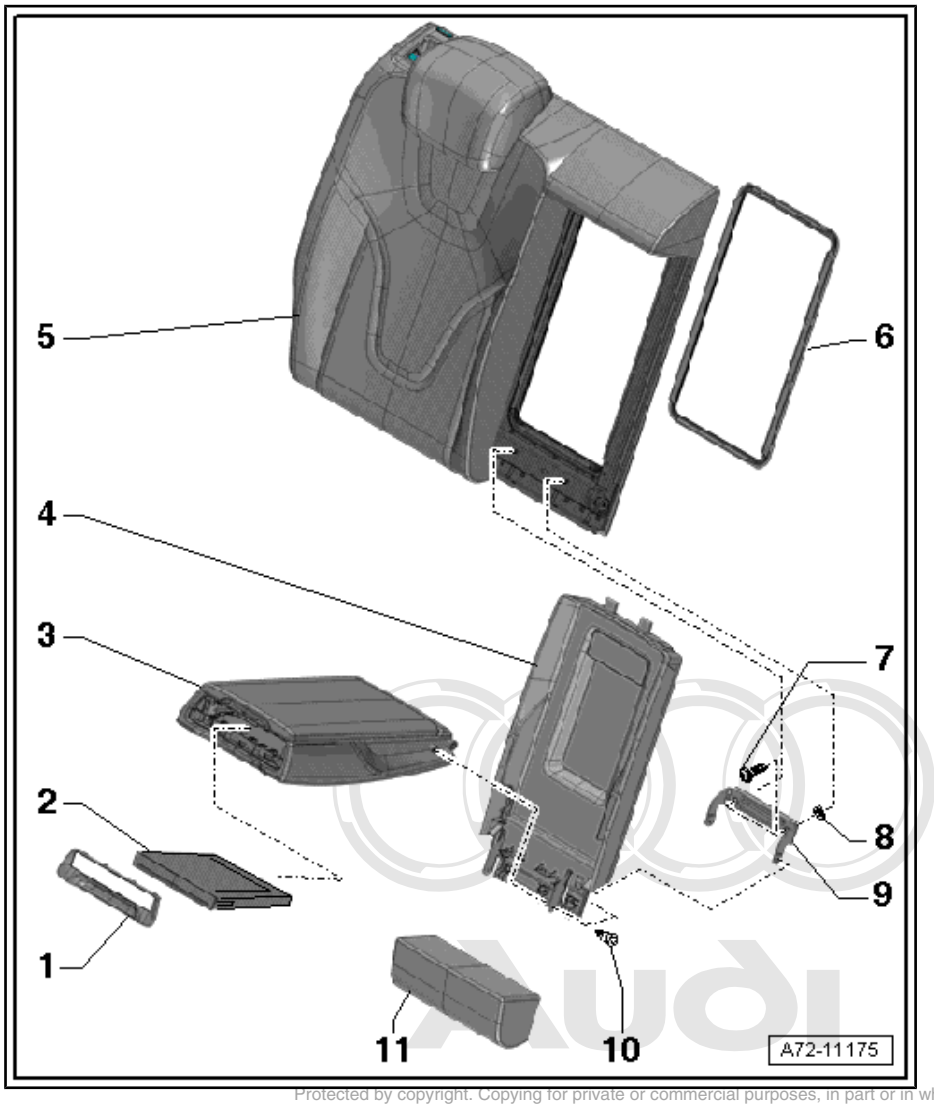
## 3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest

⇒ “3.5.1 Exploded view - centre armrest with load-through hatch”, page 386

⇒ “3.5.2 Exploded view - centre armrest with storage compartment”, page 387

⇒ “3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest without storage compartment”, page 388

### 3.5.1 Exploded view - centre armrest with load-through hatch




**1 - Trim**
- ❑ For cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 401

**2 - Cup holder**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 402

**3 - Centre armrest**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 395

**4 - Flap**
- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 396

**5 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)**
- ❑ With load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on version

**6 - Trim frame**
- ❑ Clipped into rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

**7 - Bolt**
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

**8 - Securing clip**
- ❑ For bolt -item 7-
- ❑ 2x

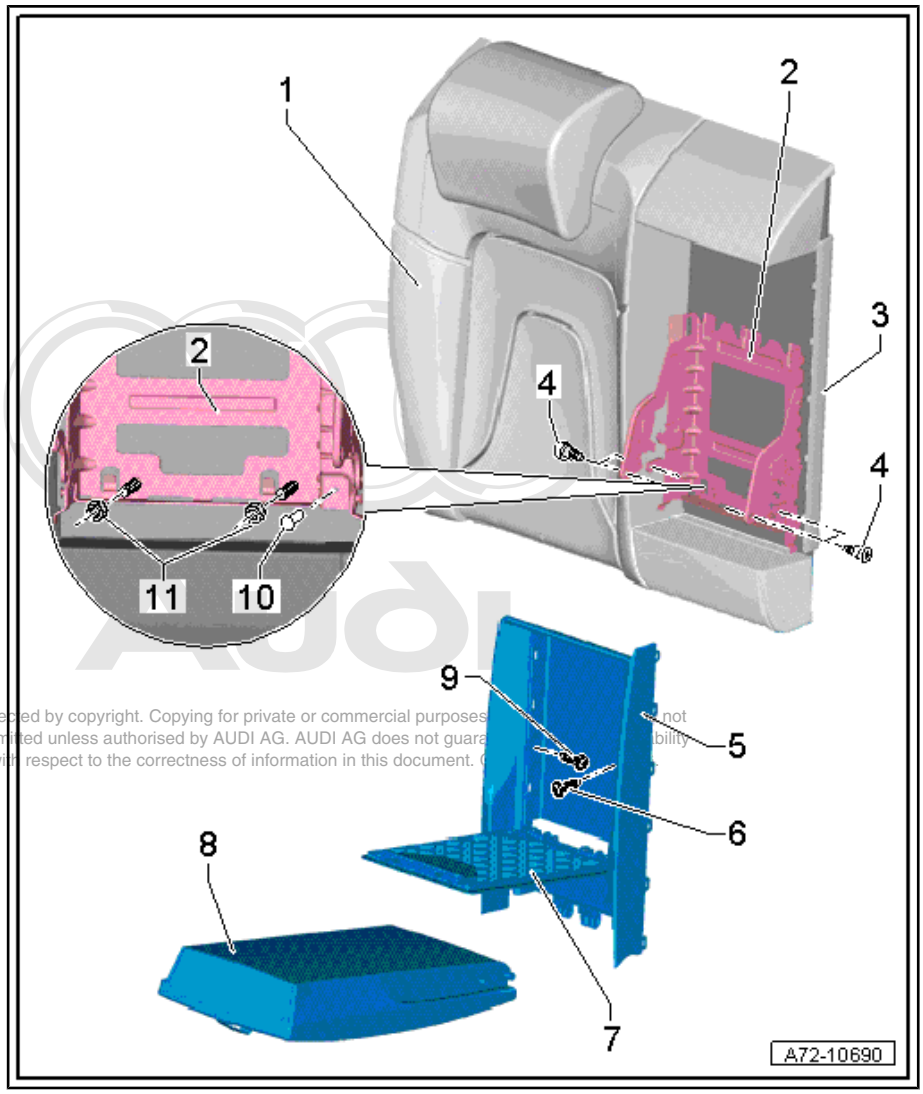
**9 - Bracket**
- ❑ Is supplied together with centre armrest and flap for load-through hatch
- ❑ Do not remove separately

**10 - Bolt**
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 11 Nm

**11 - Intermediate padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 401

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.5.2 Exploded view - centre armrest with storage compartment




**1 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)**

- ❑ Without load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Centre armrest with storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)

**2 - Bracket**

- ❑ With hinges
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405

**3 - Cover**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

**4 - Bolts**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 11 Nm

**5 - Storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403

**6 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4 Nm

**7 - Lid**

- ❑ For storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket)
- ❑ Can only be removed together with storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket)
- ❑ Cannot be separated from storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket)

**8 - Centre armrest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 395

**9 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4 Nm

**10 - Rivet**

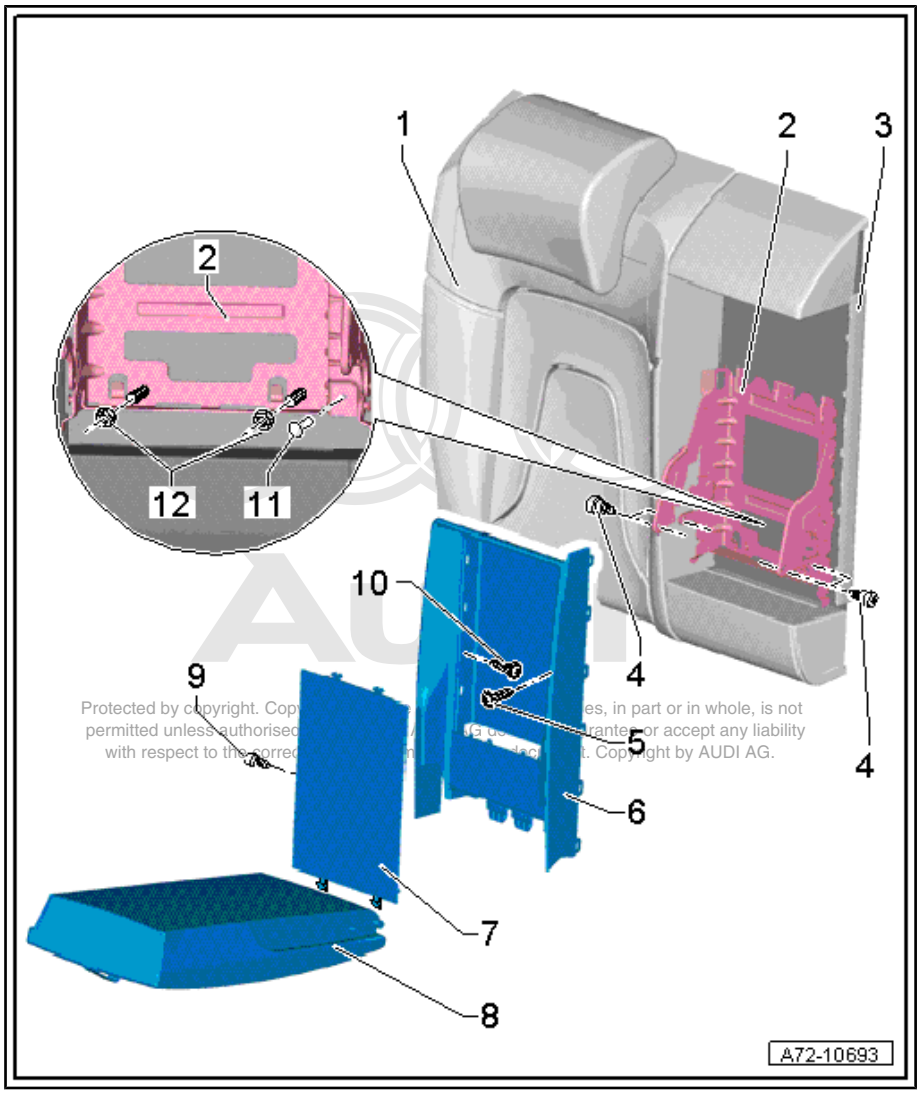
- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-

**11 - Nuts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara... bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ...

## 3.5.3 Exploded view - centre armrest without storage compartment




**1 - 2/3 section (right-side) of backrest without load-through hatch**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Centre armrest and cover for backrest bracket with trim for backrest bracket

**2 - Bracket with hinges**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405

**3 - Cover**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

**4 - Bolts**

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 11 Nm

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4 Nm

**6 - Cover**

- ❑ For backrest bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 408

**7 - Trim**

- ❑ For backrest bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

**8 - Centre armrest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 395

**9 - Bolt**

- ❑ 0.9 Nm

**10 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4 Nm

**11 - Rivet**

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-

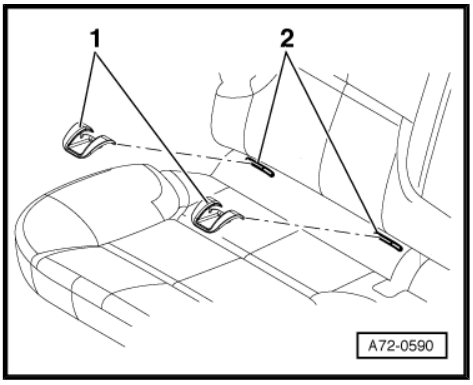
**12 - Nuts**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

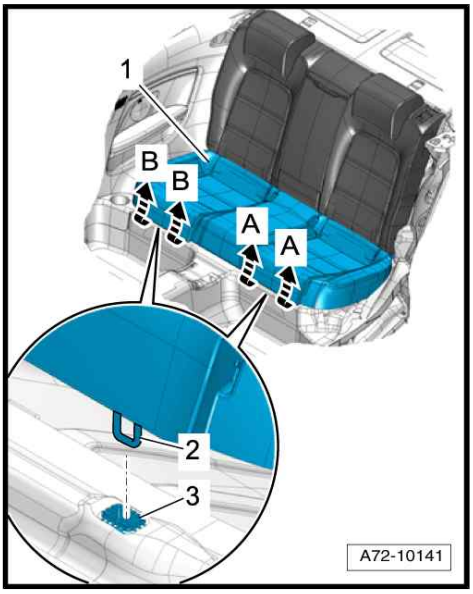
Protected by copyright. Copy... es, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised ... rantee or accept any liability with respect to the correc... t. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

### Removing




– Move front seats as far forwards as possible.
– Unclip child seat anchor covers (ISOFIX, 4x) -1- from anchors -2-.




– Reach beneath seat frame on one side of seat with both hands -arrows A-.
– Using both hands, pull seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards -arrows A- to disengage wire hook -2- for seat bench from retainer -3-.
– Repeat procedure on other side -arrows B-.
– Equipment version with seat heating: Unplug electrical connector for seat heating.
– Take seat bench out of vehicle.

### Installing

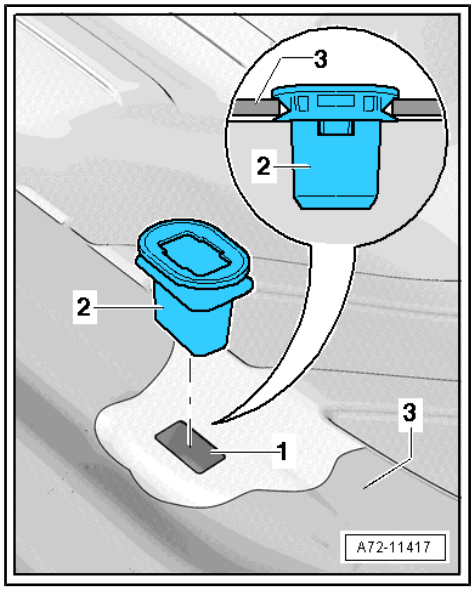
**Note**

- *The floor panel that the retainers are inserted in must be checked every time the seat bench is removed; any deformations must be corrected.*
- *The wire frame of the seat bench must be checked every time it is removed; any deformations must be corrected.*
- *The retainers must always be renewed after removing seat bench.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

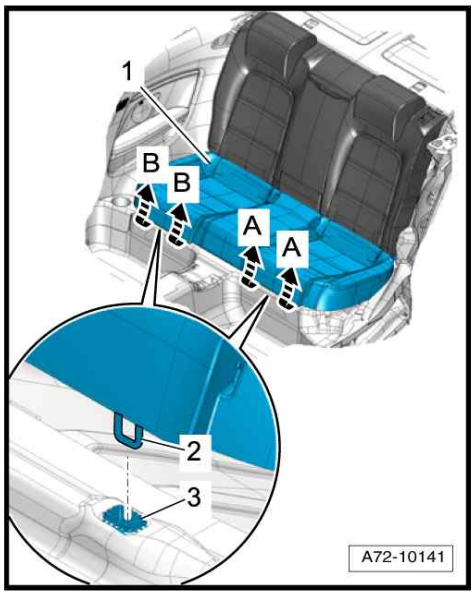
– Take retainers -2- out of cut-out in body and dispose of them.
– Check floor panel and correct any deformations ⇒ page 397 .
– Check wire frame and correct any deformations ⇒ page 397 .
– Lift floor covering -3- and press new retainers -2- into body cut-out -1- until they engage audibly.
– Fit floor covering -3- around retainer -2-, as illustrated.




**Note**

- *Floor covering -3- must not lie on top of retainer -2-.*
- *Make sure electrical connector for seat heating is pressed on as far as it will go and engages audibly.*

– Insert seat bench -1- and press wire frame -2- firmly into retainers -3-.
– Make sure that wire frame -2- has engaged properly in retainers -3-.




**Note**

*After completing work steps, check that seat bench is seated firmly.*

– To do so, reach underneath seat bench on one side with both hands -arrows A- and pull it up evenly (do not pull abruptly) with approx. 100 to 150 N (i.e. approx. 10 to 15 kg).
– Repeat procedure on other side -arrows B-.

**Note**

*Seat bench should NOT disengage from retainers.*

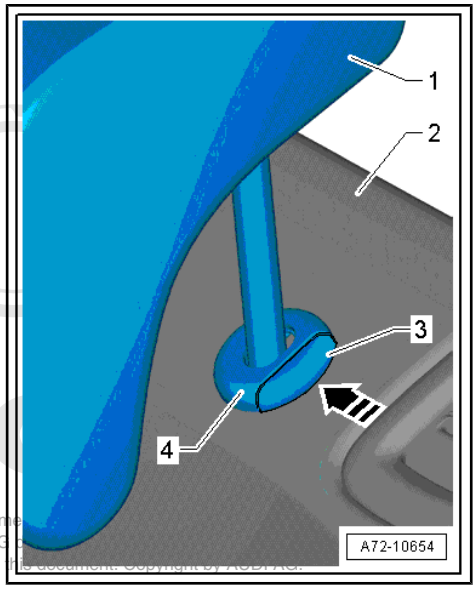
– If seat bench disengages, entire process must be repeated ⇒ page 389 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.7 Removing and installing head restraint

### Removing

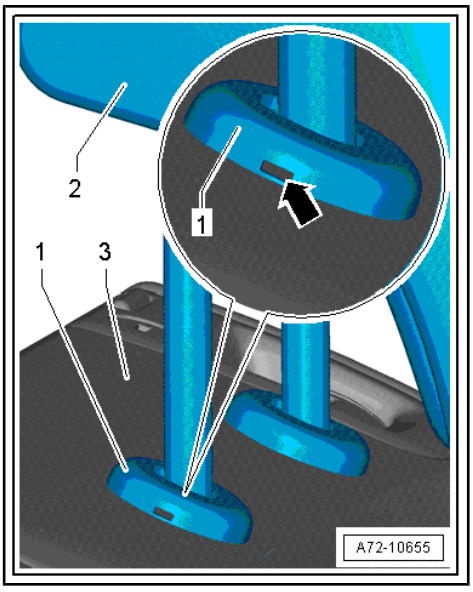
– Press button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- as far as possible out of rear seat backrest -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow- of head restraint guide -1-.

– Pull head restraint -2- out of rear seat backrest -3-.




### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide head restraint into rear seat backrest to lowest position.

– Check whether head restraint is properly locked.

• It should no longer be possible to pull head restraint out of rear seat backrest.

## 3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide

### Removing

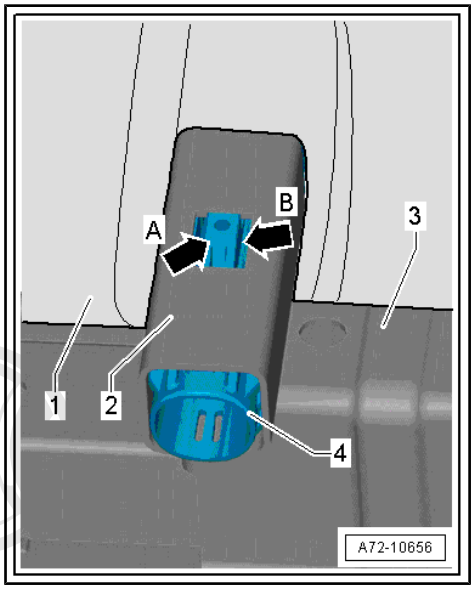
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .

– Detach cover with padding from backrest pan:

♦ ⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 463

♦ ⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with cover for rear seat backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 465

– Fold up padding with cover -1- until head restraint post -2- welded into backrest pan -3- with head restraint guides -4- are visible.
– Press down retaining tab -arrow A- until head restraint guide is no longer locked.




**Note**

*-Arrow B- can be ignored.*

– Lift head restraint guide out of head restraint post.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide head restraint guide -4- into head restraint post -2- until retaining tab -arrow A- engages in opening -arrow B-.
– Prior to further installation of padding with cover, check whether the two head restraint guides are engaged in head restraint posts and can no longer be pulled out.

## 3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

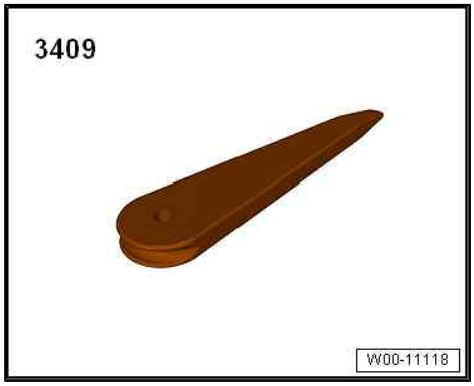
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

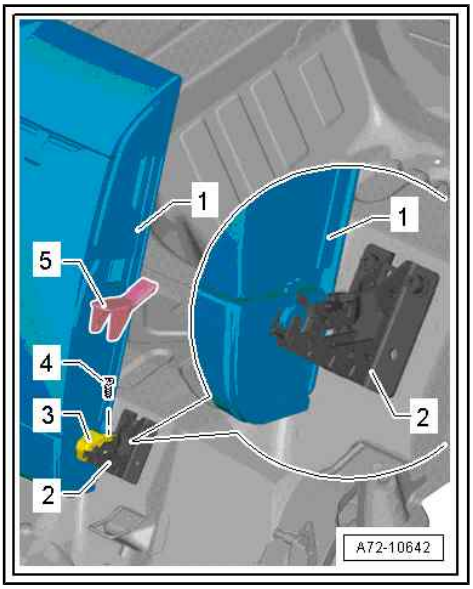
*Removal and installation are described for the 2/3 section of the backrest (right-side). The procedures are similar for the 1/3 section of the backrest (left-side).*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



### Removing




- Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .
- Equipment version with backrest heating: Unplug electrical connector for backrest heating.
- Remove cover for centre bracket -5- ⇒ page 397 .
- Remove bolt -4-.
- Detach retaining clip -3- from centre bracket.
- Release backrest.
- Lift backrest -1- out of centre bracket -2-.
- Pull rear seat backrest out of outer bearing towards centre of vehicle.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

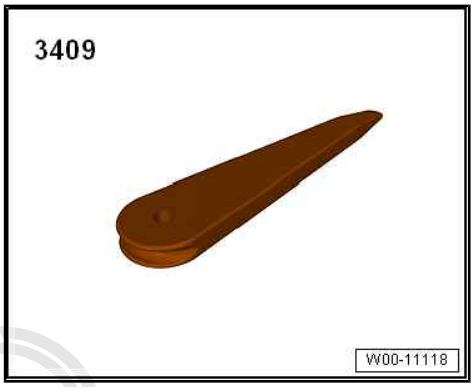
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 384

## 3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Release backrest.

– Make sure button -2- (indicator) is in »top« position.

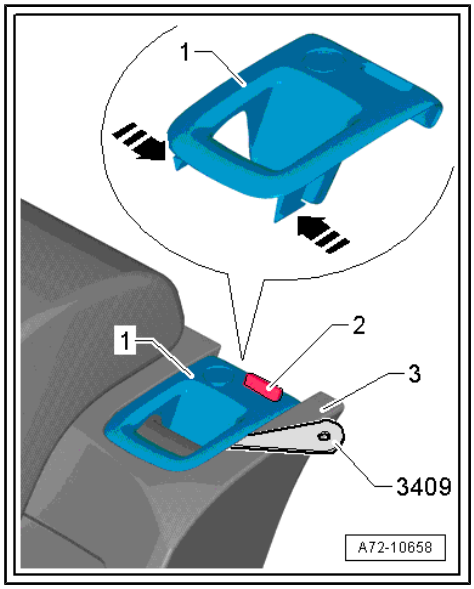
– Use removal wedge - 3409- to press fasteners in direction of -arrows- on both sides of trim.

– Lift trim -1- off rear seat backrest -3-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure button -2- moves freely after fitting trim.




## 3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

**Note**

*Removal and installation are described for the locking mechanism (left-side). The procedures are similar for the locking mechanism (right-side).*

**Removing**

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .

– Remove seat cover with padding:

◆ ⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 463

◆ ⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with cover for rear seat backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 465

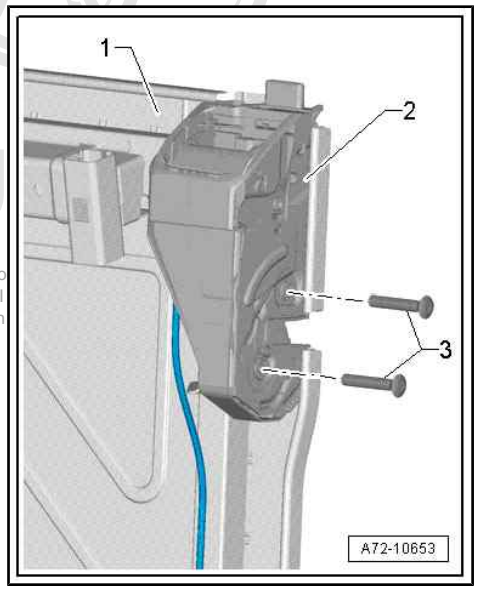
– Remove bolts -3- (2x).

– Detach locking mechanism -2- from backrest pan -1-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torque** ⇒ page 382




Copyright by AUDI AG.
Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
not liable for correctness and completeness of information

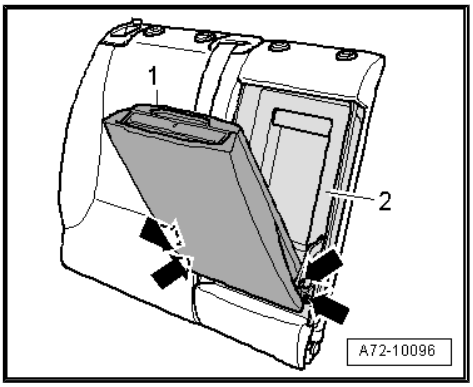
## 3.12 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ “3.12.1 Removing and installing centre armrest with load-through hatch”, page 395

⇒ “3.12.2 Removing and installing centre armrest with/without storage compartment”, page 395

### 3.12.1 Removing and installing centre armrest with load-through hatch

**Removing**




– Fold up centre armrest -1- so that it is $^{2}/_{3}$ open.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach centre armrest from flap of load-through hatch -2-.

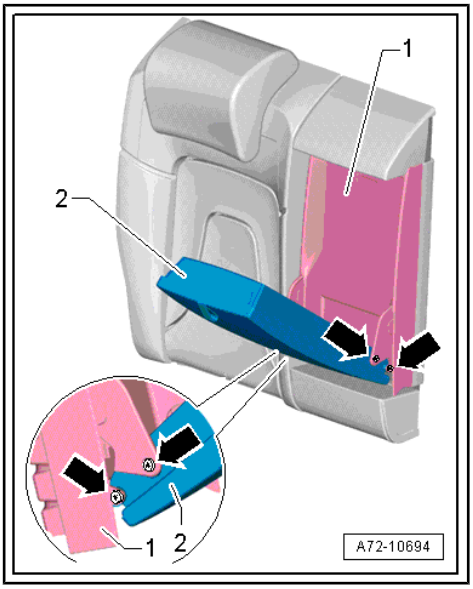
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 386

### 3.12.2 Removing and installing centre armrest with/without storage compartment

**Removing**




– Fold up centre armrest -2- so that it is $^{2}/_{3}$ open.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- (4x).
– Detach centre armrest from storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) -1-.

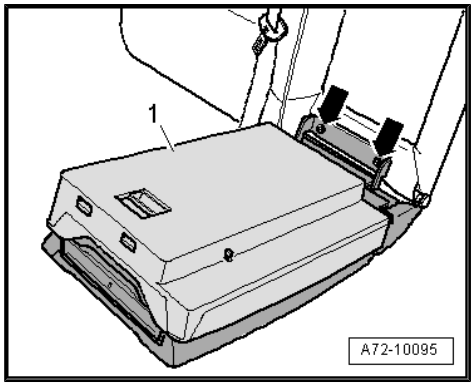
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 387

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch




### Removing

– Fold open centre armrest.
– Open flap -1- of load-through hatch.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch.

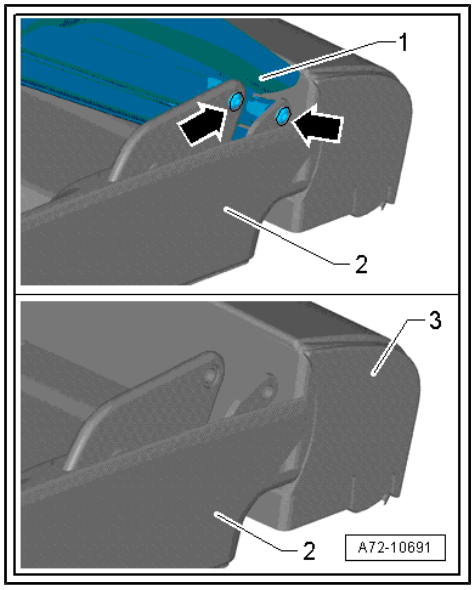
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 386

## 3.14 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch




### Removing

– Remove centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 396 .
– Fold up centre armrest -1- so that it is $^{2}/_{3}$ open.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- (4x).
– Detach flap of load-through hatch -2- from centre armrest.
– Remove intermediate padding -3- ⇒ page 401 .

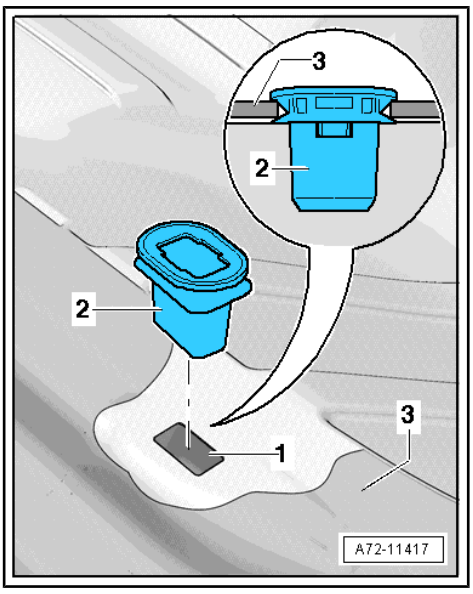
### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 386

## 3.15 Checking floor panel for retainers and wire frame of seat bench and correcting any deformations

**Check floor panel and correct any deformations.**

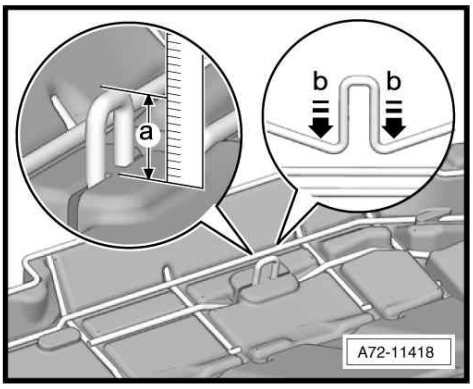



- Check body cut-outs -1- for deformation.
- If there are deformations, correct them by knocking back panel with a plastic hammer.

**Note**

*Minor remaining deformations are permissible.*

**Check wire frame of seat bench and correct any deformations.**




**Note**

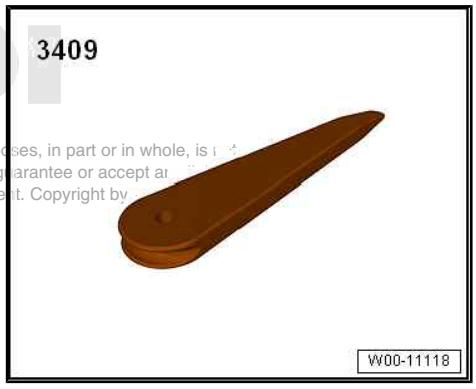
*The seat padding may differ from the one illustrated. Dimension -a- must be measured between the top of the seat padding and the top edge of the wire frame, irrelevant of the form of the seat padding.*

- Set down seat bench with seat cover on a clean, solid surface.
- Check dimension -a- on both sides of seat frame (from padding to top edge of wire frame). Dimension -a- must be between 16 and 22 mm.
- If dimension -a- is not as specified, wire frame must be corrected accordingly. To do so, press wire frame evenly into shape in area of -arrows-.

## 3.16 Removing and installing cover for centre bracket

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Removal wedge - 3409-



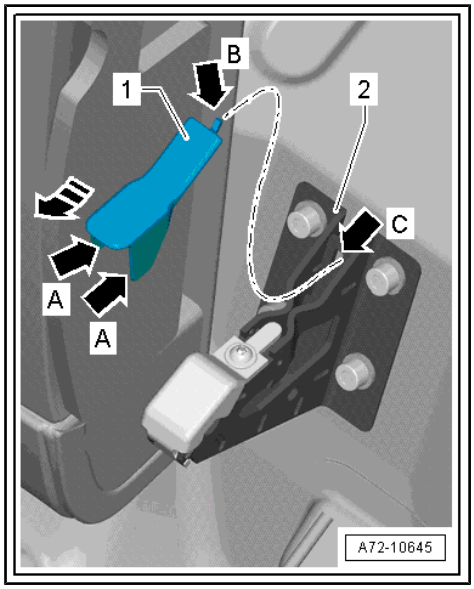

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .
– Unclip side fasteners -arrows A- of cover -1-.
– Detach cover from centre bracket -2- in direction of -arrow-.
– When doing so, disengage hook -arrow B- from opening -arrow C-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.




## 3.17 Removing and installing retaining clip

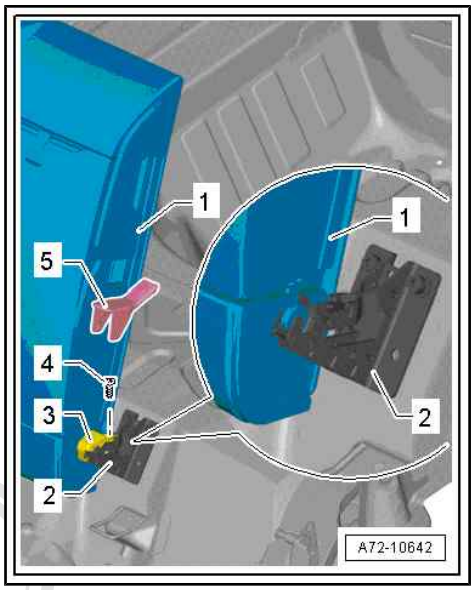
**Removing**

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .
– Remove cover -5- for centre bracket ⇒ page 397 .
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Detach retaining clip -3- from centre bracket -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

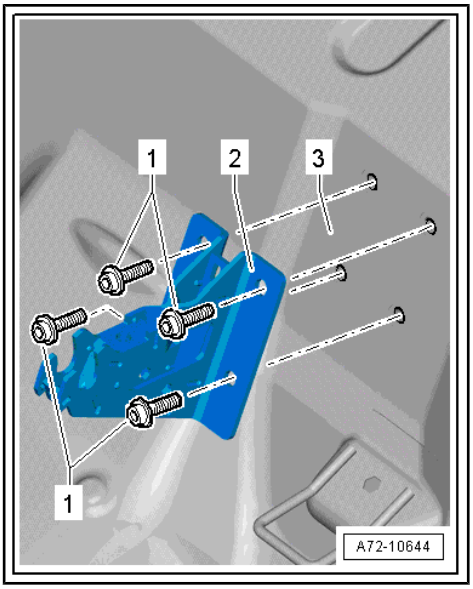
**Tightening torques ⇒ page 384**




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.18 Removing and installing centre bracket

### Removing




**Note**

*To remove and install centre bracket, rear seat backrest must only be disengaged from brackets.*

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .
– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) and 1/3 section (left-side) of backrest ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove bolts -1- (4x).
– Detach centre bracket -2- from vehicle floor -3-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

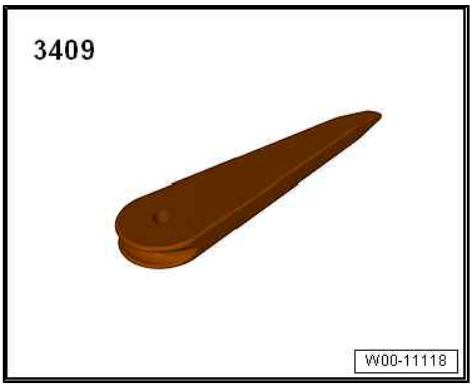
**Tightening torques ⇒ page 384**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

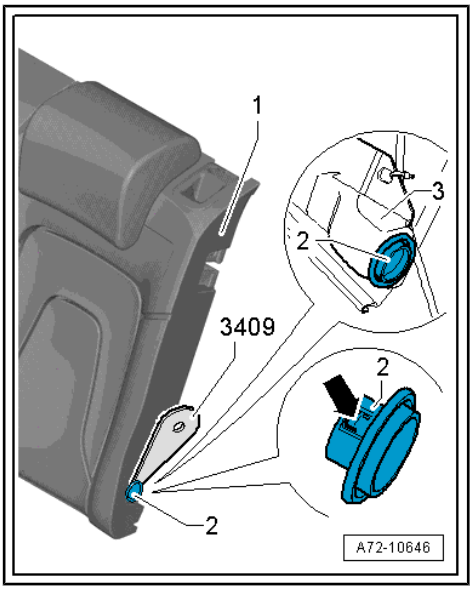
## 3.19 Removing and installing outer bearing

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




### Removing




– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) or 1/3 section (left-side) of backrest ⇒ page 392 .
– Unclip bracket -2- from backrest -1-.

**Caution**

***Take care not to damage backrest cover when unclipping bracket.***

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure all retaining tabs -arrow- are fully engaged in bracket -3- of backrest -1-.

## 3.20 Removing and installing inner bearing

**Removing**

– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) and 1/3 section (left-side) of backrest ⇒ page 392 .

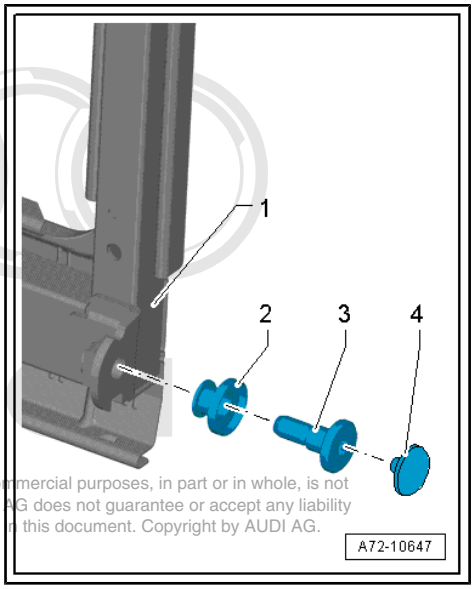
– Prise off cover -4-.

**Note**

*For greater clarity, padding with cover is not shown in illustration.*

– Unscrew bolt -3- from backrest pan -1-.

– Pull grommet -2- off bolt.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 385

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.21 Removing and installing side padding

**Removing**

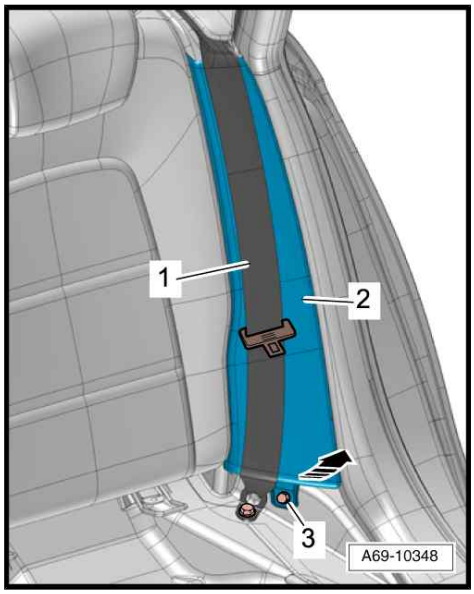
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Fold backrest down.

– Hold belt -1- to one side and pull side padding (bottom) -3- forwards -arrow-.

– Pull side padding downwards and out of belt guide and detach.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

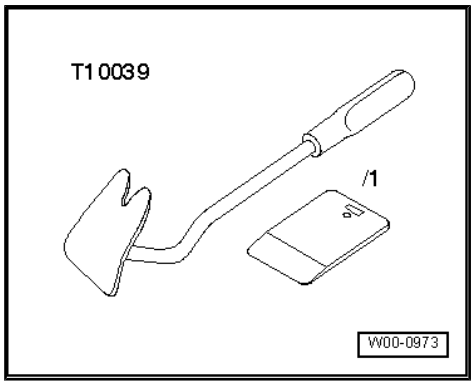
– Engage side padding first in top of belt guide.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 384

## 3.22 Removing and installing trim frame

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Release lever - T10039-



**Removing**

– Open load-through hatch.

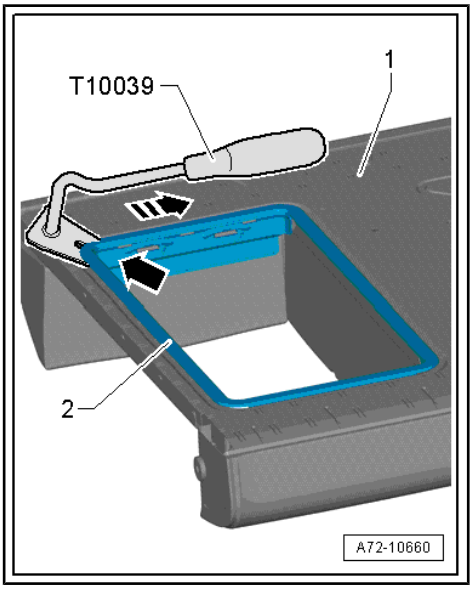
– Prise trim frame -2- off rear seat backrest -1- using release lever - T10039- .

– Start prising off in top left corner -arrow- and then proceed in direction of -arrow-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure trim frame engages fully in rear seat backrest.




## 3.23 Removing and installing intermediate padding

**Removing**

– Remove centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 396 .

– Release retaining clips -arrows-.

– Pull off intermediate padding -1- away from centre armrest.

– When pulling off, simultaneously swivel intermediate padding upwards so that retaining hooks -2, 3, 4- are disengaged from lugs -5, 6- and recess -7-.

– Detach intermediate padding from centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch -8-.

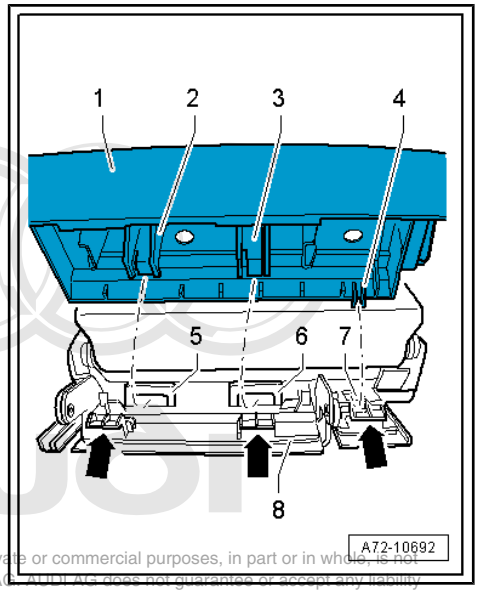
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Swivel down intermediate padding -1- and at the same time insert retaining hooks -2, 3, 4- in lugs -5, 6- as well as in recess -7-.

– On underside, press intermediate padding onto retaining clips -arrows- of flap of load-through hatch.

– If intermediate padding cannot be pressed on, use a screwdriver to carefully press in retaining clips until intermediate padding engages in locking mechanism.

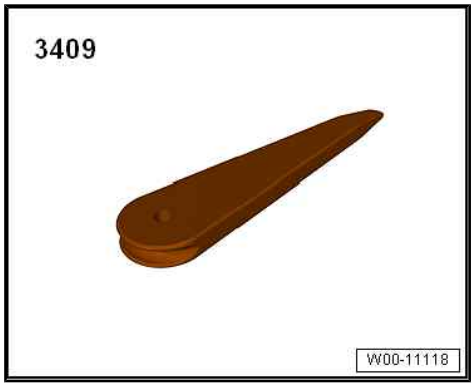



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.24 Removing and installing trim for cup holder

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

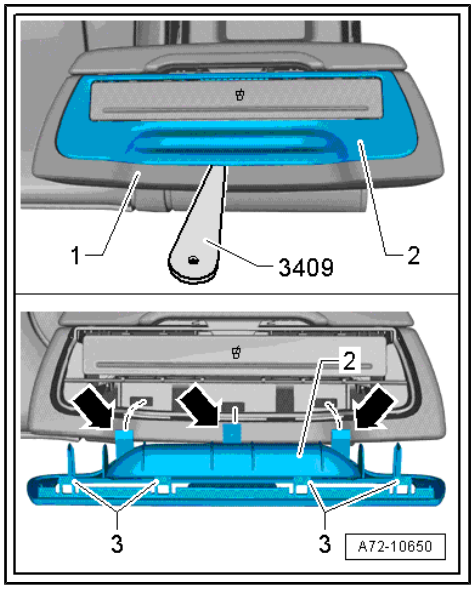



**Removing**

– Open centre armrest -1-.
– Prise off trim -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– To do so, start at bottom edge and first disengage retaining tabs -arrows-.
– Then disengage lugs -3-.
– Detach trim from centre armrest.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



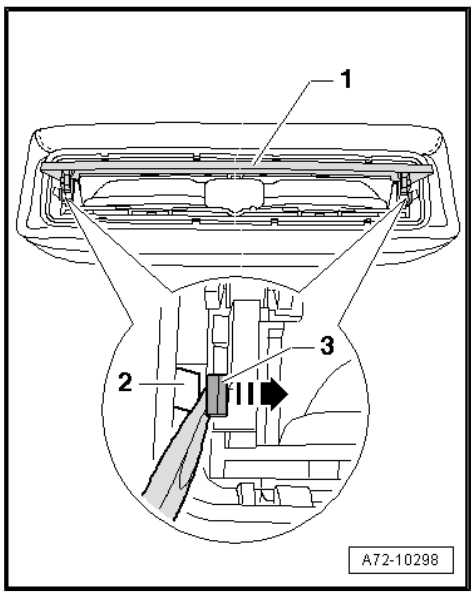

## 3.25 Removing and installing cup holder

**Removing**

– Remove trim for cup holder ⇒ page 401 .
– Open flap -1- of cup holder.
– Use a screwdriver to press clip -3- in direction of -arrow- on one side and carefully pull cup holder at trim off centre armrest by way of retaining tab -2-.
– Proceed in same way on other side.
– Take out cup holder.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3.26 Removing and installing storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)

**Note**

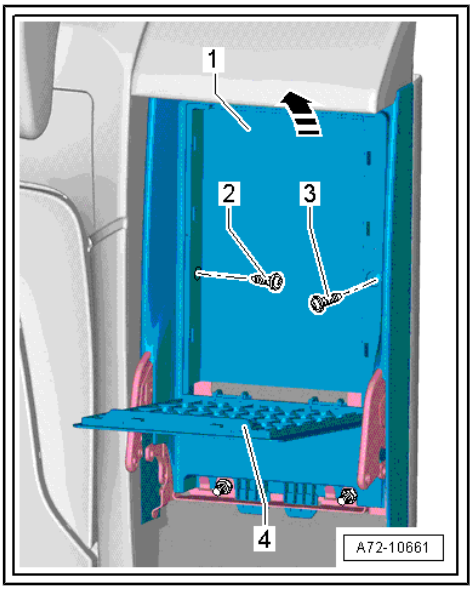
*The lid can only be renewed together with the storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket).*

### Removing

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 395 .

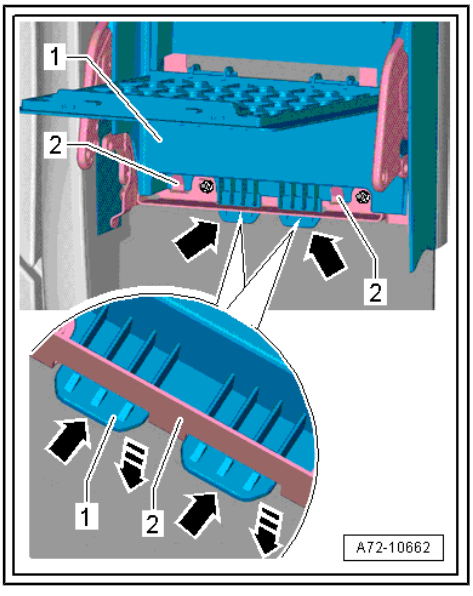
– Open lid -4- of storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket) -1-.

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press lugs -arrows- on storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) -1- in direction of -arrow- until retaining tabs of lugs are disengaged at bracket -2-.

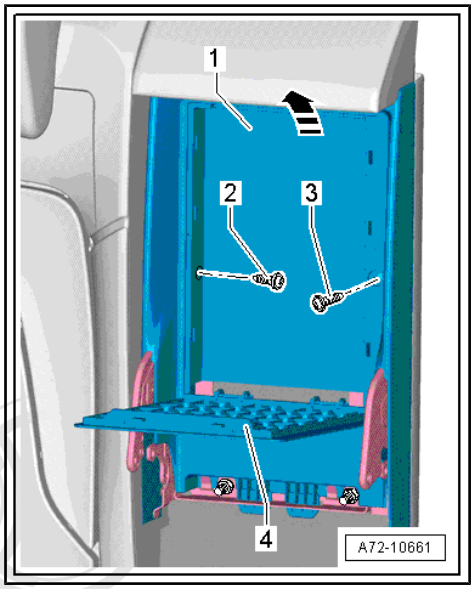


– Detach storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) -1- in direction of -arrow- (upwards and to front at an angle) from bracket.
– Take out storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid).

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 387




## 3.27 Removing and installing cover

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



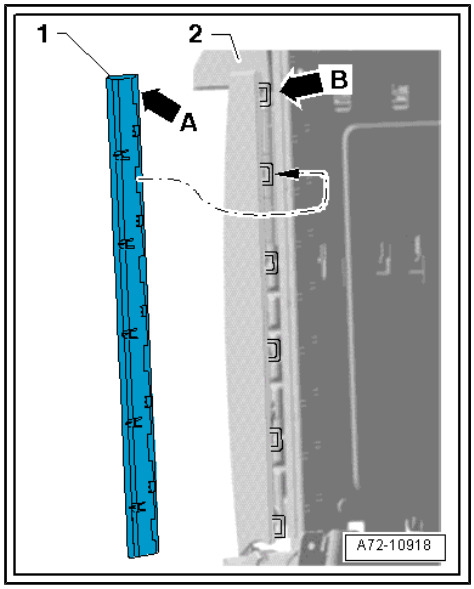

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

– Unclip retaining tabs -arrow B- from lugs -arrow A- and prise cover -1- off storage compartment -2-.
– Detach cover from storage compartment.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



## 3.28 Removing and installing bracket

⇒ "3.28.1 Removing and installing bracket - centre armrest with storage compartment", page 405

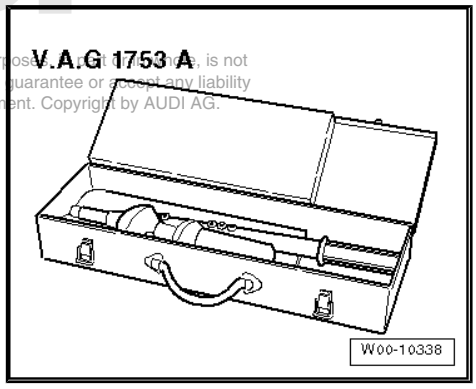
⇒ "3.28.2 Removing and installing bracket - centre armrest without storage compartment", page 405

## 3.28.1 Removing and installing bracket - centre armrest with storage compartment

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




- Drill
- Safety goggles

**Removing**

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 395 .

– Remove storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) ⇒ page 403 .

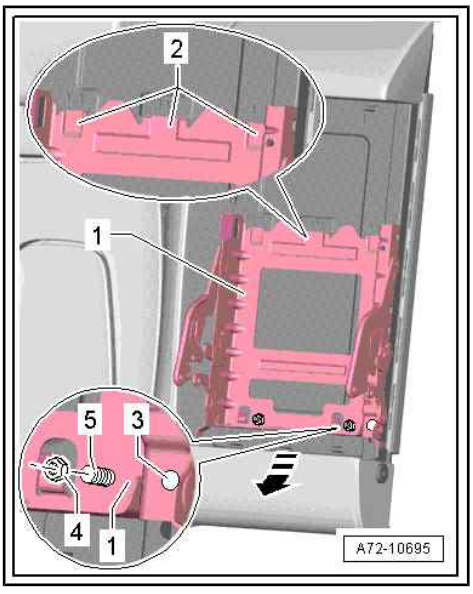
**Note**

*Place plastic foil between seat bench and backrest as protection against swarf.*

**WARNING**

***Risk of injury!***

- ***Put on safety goggles.***




– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Unscrew nuts -4- (2x).

– Detach bracket -1- from studs -5- and pull in direction of -arrow- out of section -2-.

**Installing**

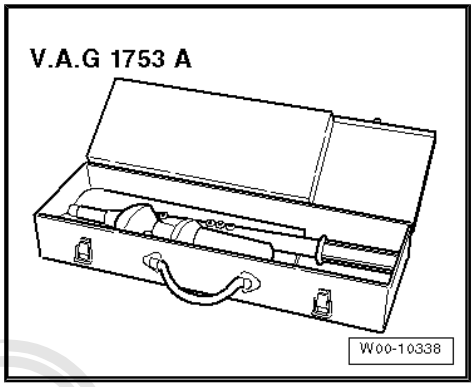
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 387

## 3.28.2 Removing and installing bracket - centre armrest without storage compartment

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-




- Drill
- Safety goggles

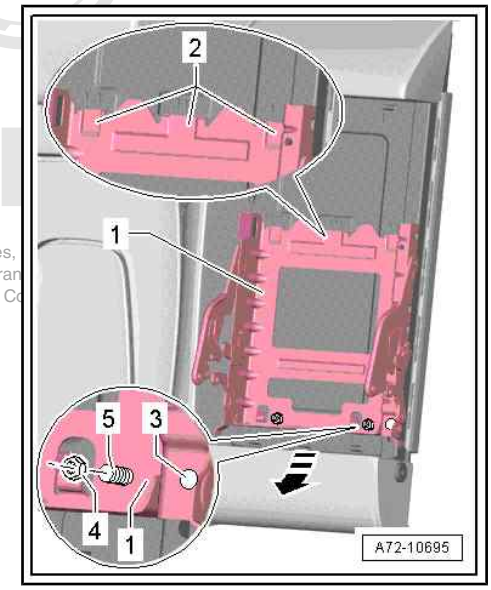
**Removing**

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 395 .
– Remove trim for backrest bracket ⇒ page 407 .
– Remove cover for backrest bracket ⇒ page 408 .

**Note**

*Place plastic foil between seat bench and backrest as protection against swarf.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran




**WARNING**

*Risk of injury!*

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.
– Unscrew nuts -4- (2x).
– Detach bracket -1- from studs -5- and pull in direction of -arrow- out of section -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 388

## 3.29 Removing and installing lid

The lid cannot be removed and installed separately. The lid can only be renewed together with the storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket).

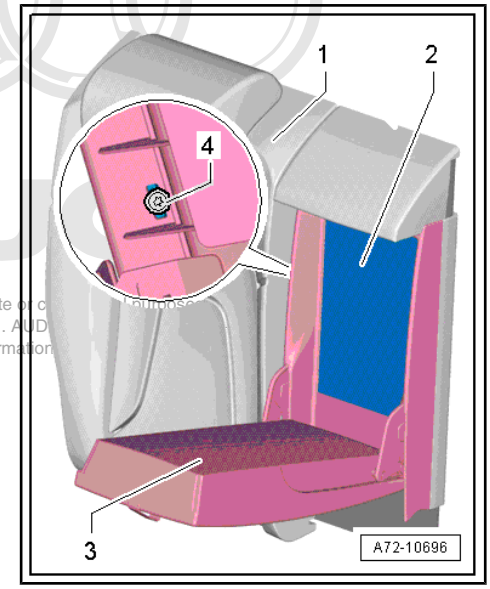
⇒ “3.26 Removing and installing storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)”, page 403

## 3.30 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest bracket

### Removing

– Remove centre armrest -3- ⇒ page 395 .

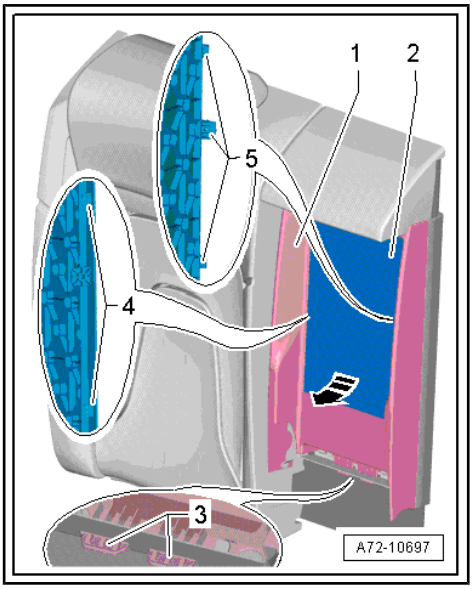
– Press padding with cover -1- to side and unscrew bolt -4- for trim for backrest bracket -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of information

– Grasp hold of bottom edge of trim for backrest bracket -2- and pull it as far as possible off cover for backrest bracket -1- in direction of -arrow-.

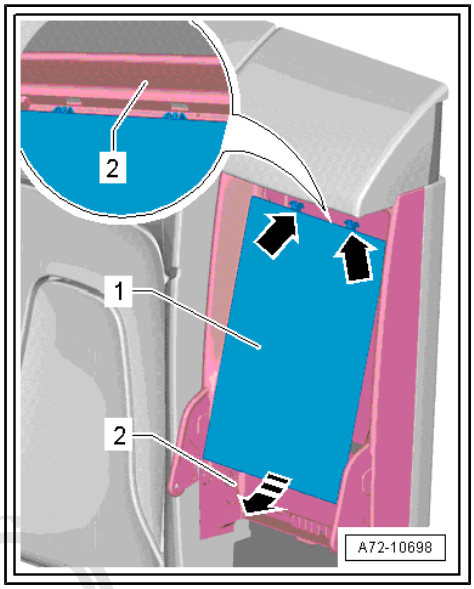
– When doing so, disengage retaining tabs -4- and -5-.




**Note**

*Disregard -item 3-.*

– Pull trim for backrest bracket -1- off cover for backrest bracket -2- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time disengage catches -top arrows-.
– Take out trim for backrest bracket.




**Installing**

> **Caution**
>
> ***Catches on top of trim for backrest bracket could be damaged during removal.***

– Check trim for backrest bracket -1- for damage in area of catches -top arrows- and renew if necessary.

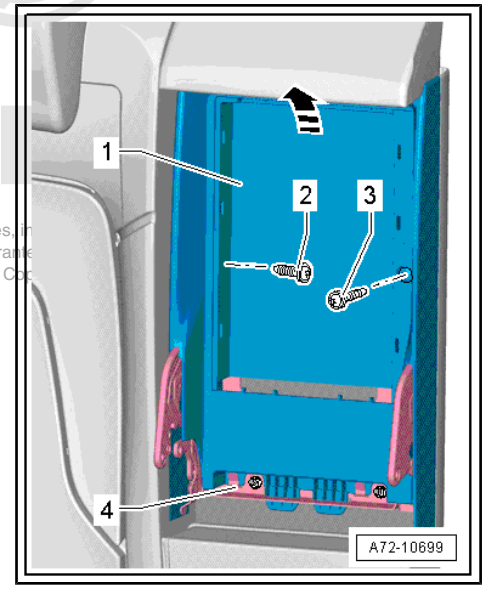
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 388

## 3.31 Removing and installing cover for rear seat backrest bracket

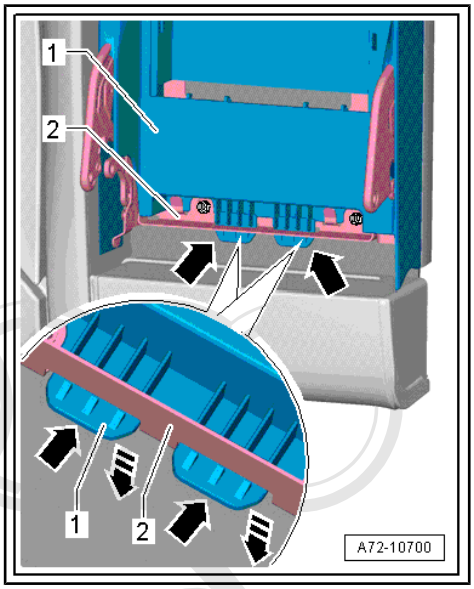
**Removing**

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 395 .
– Remove trim for backrest bracket ⇒ page 407 .
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3- at cover for backrest bracket -1-.



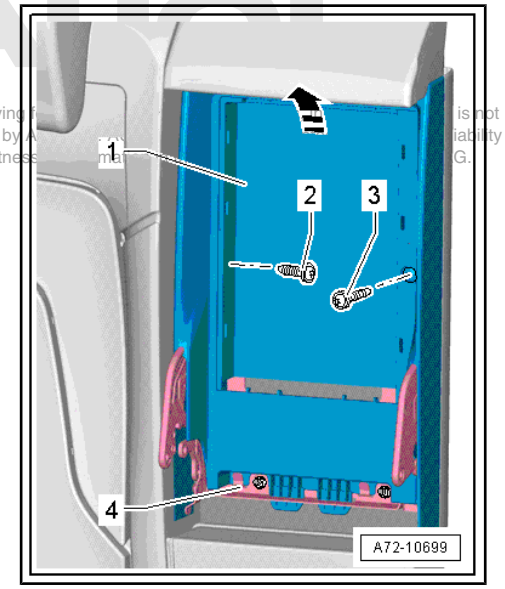

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

– Press lugs -arrows- in direction of -arrow- until retaining tabs of lugs for cover for backrest bracket -1- are disengaged at bracket -2-.




– Detach cover for backrest bracket -1- in direction of -arrow- (upwards and to front at an angle) from bracket -4-.

– Take out cover for backrest bracket.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Tightening torques** ⇒ page 388

# 74 – Seat - padding, covers

## 1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 410

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 414

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 416

⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 417

⇒ “1.5 Overview - backrest heating elements”, page 421

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 422

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 428

⇒ “1.8 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 436

⇒ “1.9 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 441

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 444

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 447

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 452

### 1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, seat pan without seat depth adjustment”, page 410

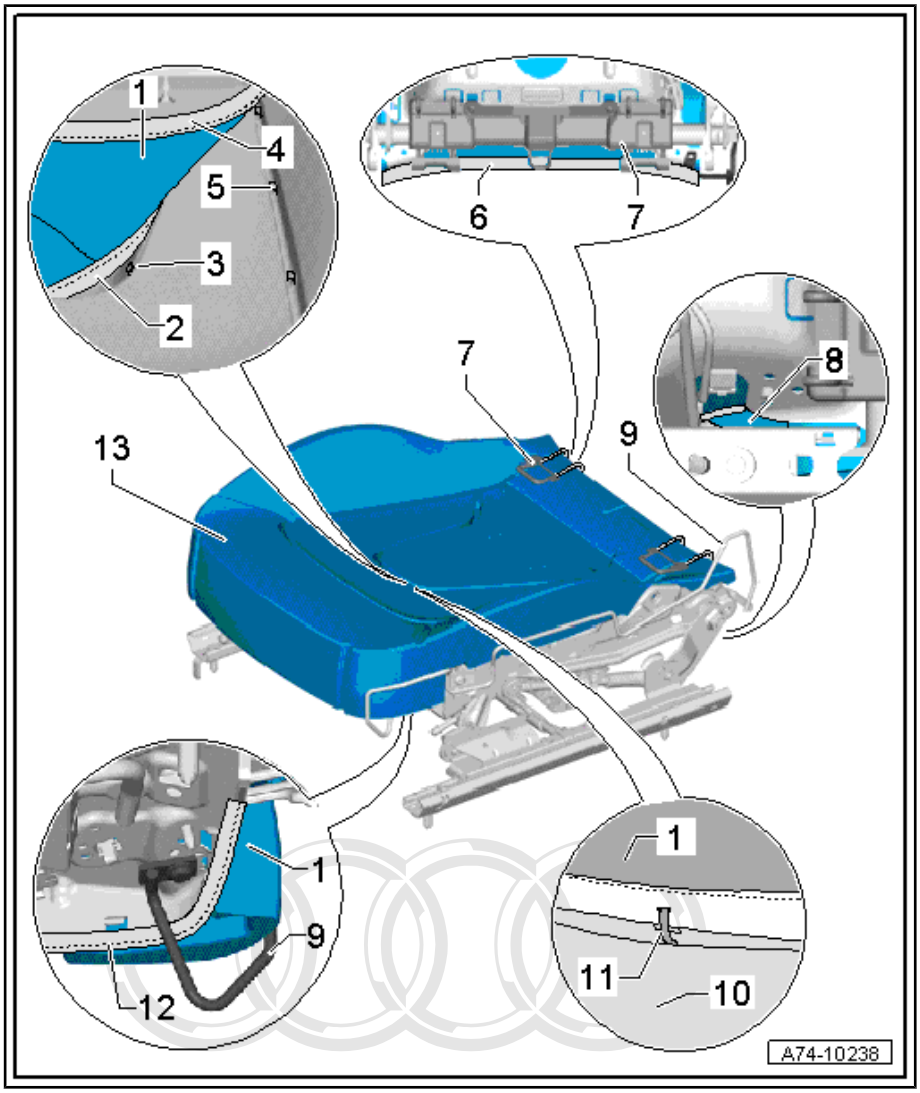
⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, seat pan with seat depth adjustment”, page 412

#### 1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, seat pan without seat depth adjustment

**Note**

*The exploded view relates to the standard front seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the convenience front seat.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**1 - Cover**

**2 - Contour wire**

- ❑ Inserted into pouch on seat cover
- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 3- (only on seats with fabric cover)

**3 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding (only on seats with fabric cover)

**4 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 5-
- ❑ Stitched to cover

**5 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

**6 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame (at rear)

**7 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**

- ❑ Equipment version: Only on front passenger seat
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

**8 - Cover tab**

- ❑ With fastening strip
- ❑ Fastening strip stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame (at side)

**9 - Retaining bracket**

- ❑ For trim (sill side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Front standard seat (with manual adjustment)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341 (retaining bracket not shown in illustration)

Front standard seat (with electric adjustment)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

**10 - Padding**

- ❑ With foam-fitted wire (only on seats with leather cover)

**11 - Upholstery clip**

- ❑ Only on seats with leather cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

**12 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame (at front and side)

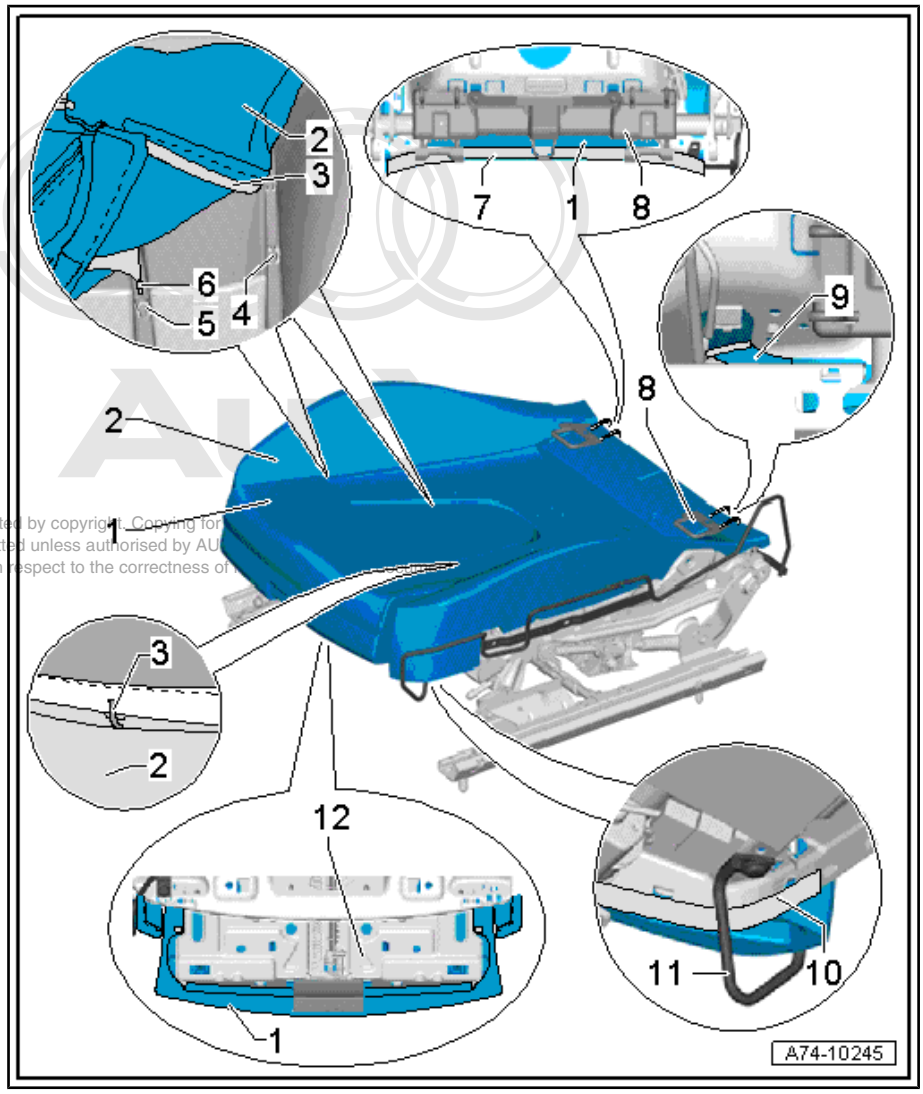
**13 - Cover**

- ❑ With padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 436

## 1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, seat pan with seat depth adjustment

**Note**

*The exploded view relates to the front sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the front super sports seat.*




**1 - Cover**

- ❑ With padding for seat depth adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 438

**2 - Cover**

- ❑ With padding for seat cushion
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 438

**3 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 4-
- ❑ Stitched to cover

**Upholstery clip**

- ❑ Only on seats with leather cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

**4 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

**5 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Only on seats with fabric cover

**6 - Contour wire**

- ❑ Inserted into pouch on seat cover
- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 5-

Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness of

**7 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame (at rear)

**8 - ISOFIX child seat anchor**

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

**9 - Tab**

- ❑ With fastening strip
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame (at side)

**10 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover on upper seat pan frame (at front and side), except area of seat depth adjustment cushion

**11 - Retaining bracket**

- ❑ For trim (sill side)

Front sports seat (with manual adjustment)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341 (retaining bracket not shown in illustration)

Front sports seat (with electric adjustment) and front super sports seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

**12 - Seat depth adjuster**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, all seats except super sports seat", page 414

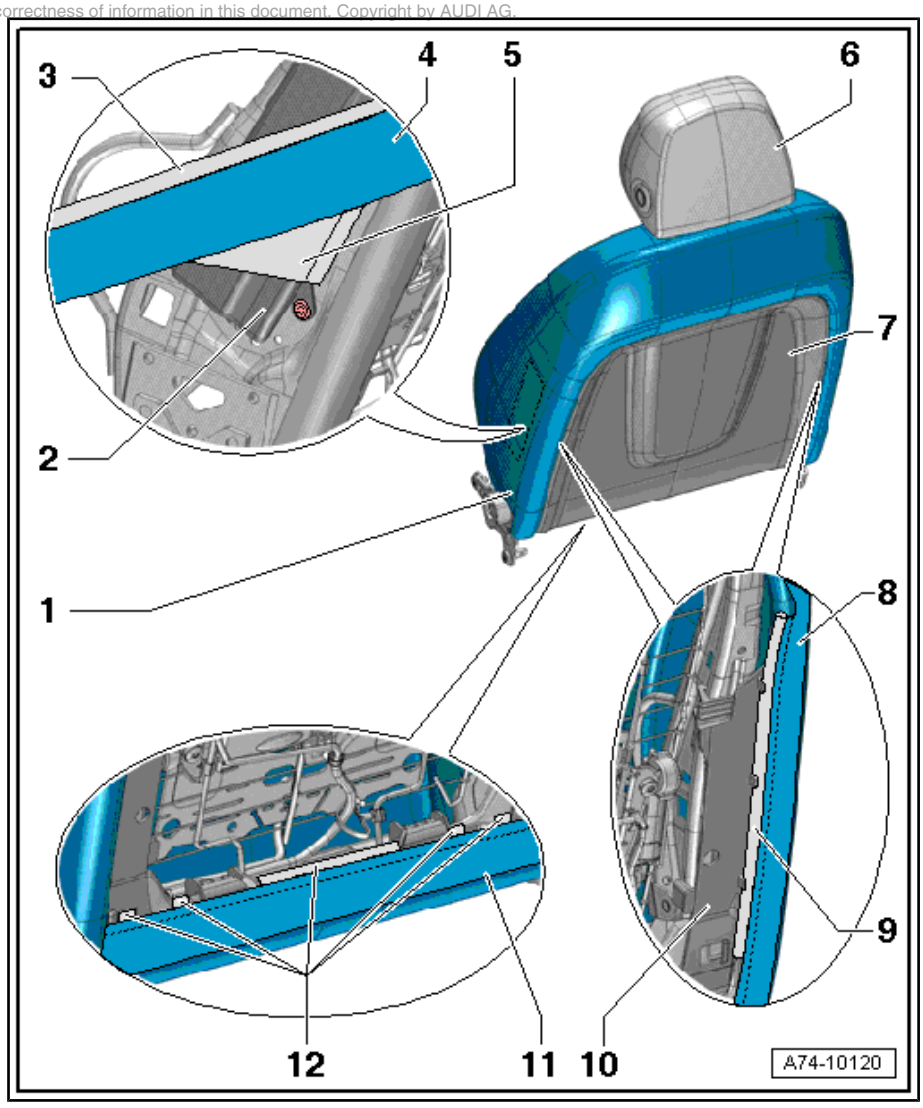
⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 415

### 1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, all seats except super sports seat

**Note**

*The exploded view relates to the standard or sports seat (front, with manual or electric adjustment) and the convenience seat (front).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




**1 - Cover**

- ❑ With padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 428
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 441

**2 - Side airbag**

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107

**3 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at side)

**4 - Cover**

**5 - Pouch**

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Stitched to cover

**6 - Head restraint**

With manual adjustment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

With electric adjustment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

**7 - Backrest cover panel**

- ❑ Equipment version with/ without luggage net
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

**8 - Cover**

**9 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover

- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at side)

**10 - Trim**

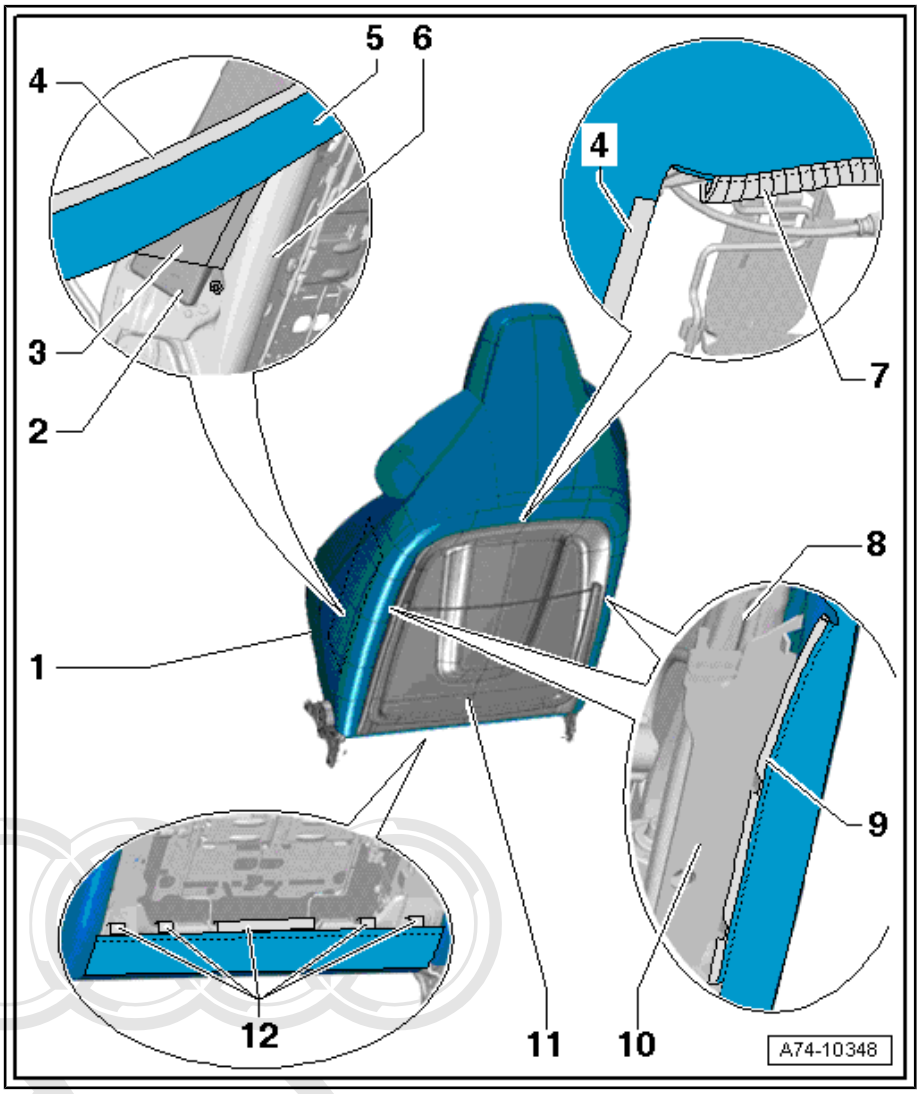
- ❑ For outer backrest frame
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Clipped to outer backrest frame

**11 - Cover**

**12 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at bottom)

## 1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat




**1 - Cover with padding**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 443

**2 - Side airbag**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107

**3 - Pouch**

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ Stitched to cover

**4 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at side)

**5 - Cover**

- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 443

**6 - Padding**

- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 443

**7 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame (top)

**8 - Outer backrest frame**

**9 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at side)

**10 - Trim for outer backrest frame**

- ❑ Clipped to outer backrest frame

**11 - Backrest cover panel**

- ❑ Equipment version with/without luggage net
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Luggage net can only be renewed together with backrest cover panel

**12 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in trim for outer backrest frame (at bottom)

## 1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

**Note**

*The illustration shows the head restraint version with leather cover. As the head restraint with fabric cover cannot be dismantled, this version is not shown in the exploded view.*

**1 - Fastening strip**

- ❑ Flat strip and U-strip

**2 - Cover**

- ❑ Equipment version: leather cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

**Caution**

***The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with leather cover. On the version with fabric cover, the cover cannot be renewed as it is foam-filled and also serves as a sheath for the padding.***

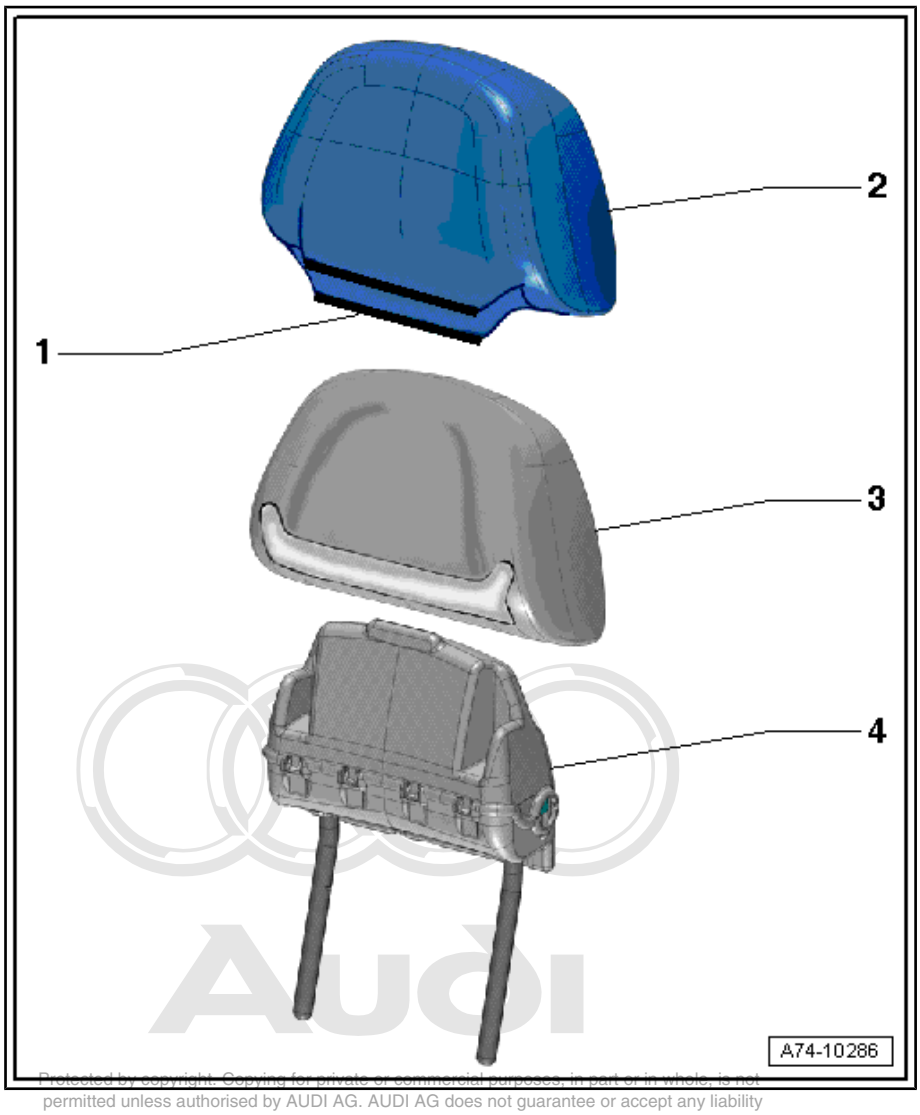
**3 - Padding**

- ❑ Equipment version: leather cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

**4 - Mounting bracket for head restraint**

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Head restraint with manual adjustment
- ♦ Head restraint with electric adjustment




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.4 Overview - seat heating elements

⇒ “1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat”, page 417

⇒ “1.4.2 Overview - seat heating element, convenience seat”, page 418

⇒ “1.4.3 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat”, page 419

⇒ “1.4.4 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat”, page 420

### 1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat

**1 - Padding**

- ❑ For seat pan

**2 - Seat heating element**

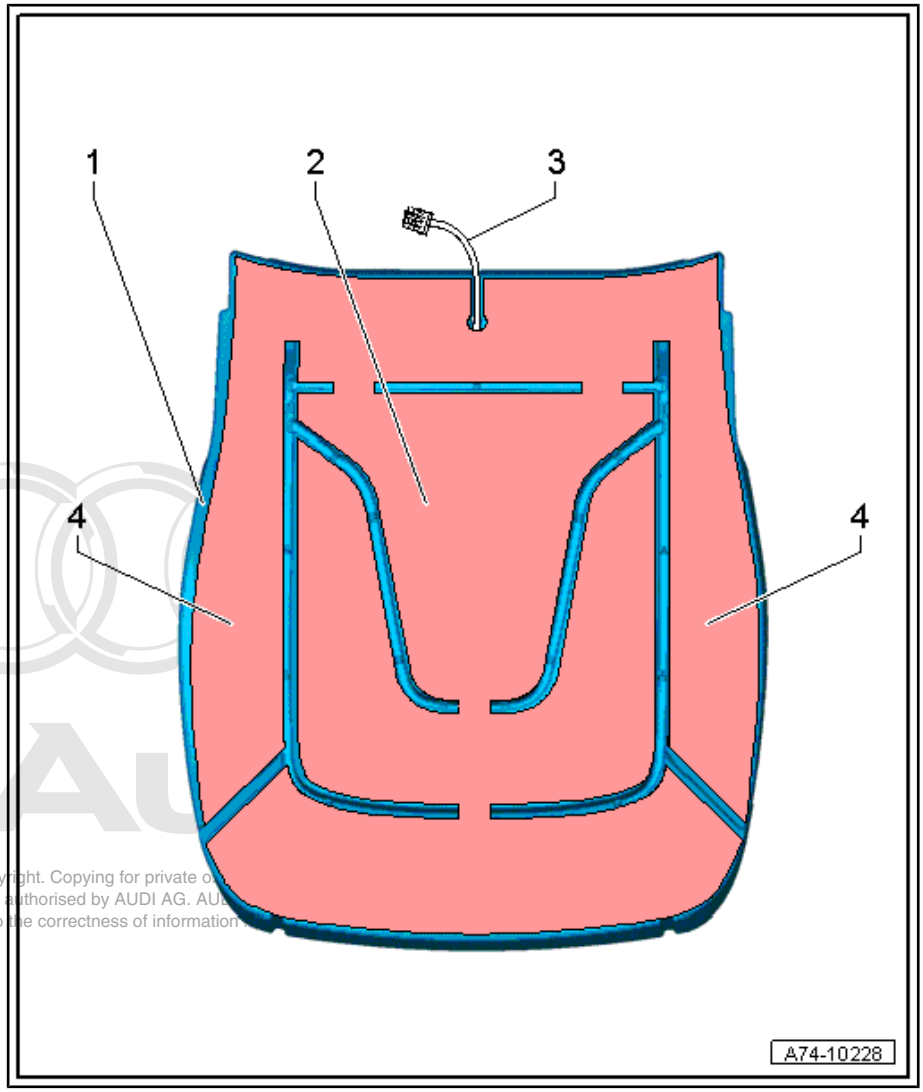
- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 447

**3 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

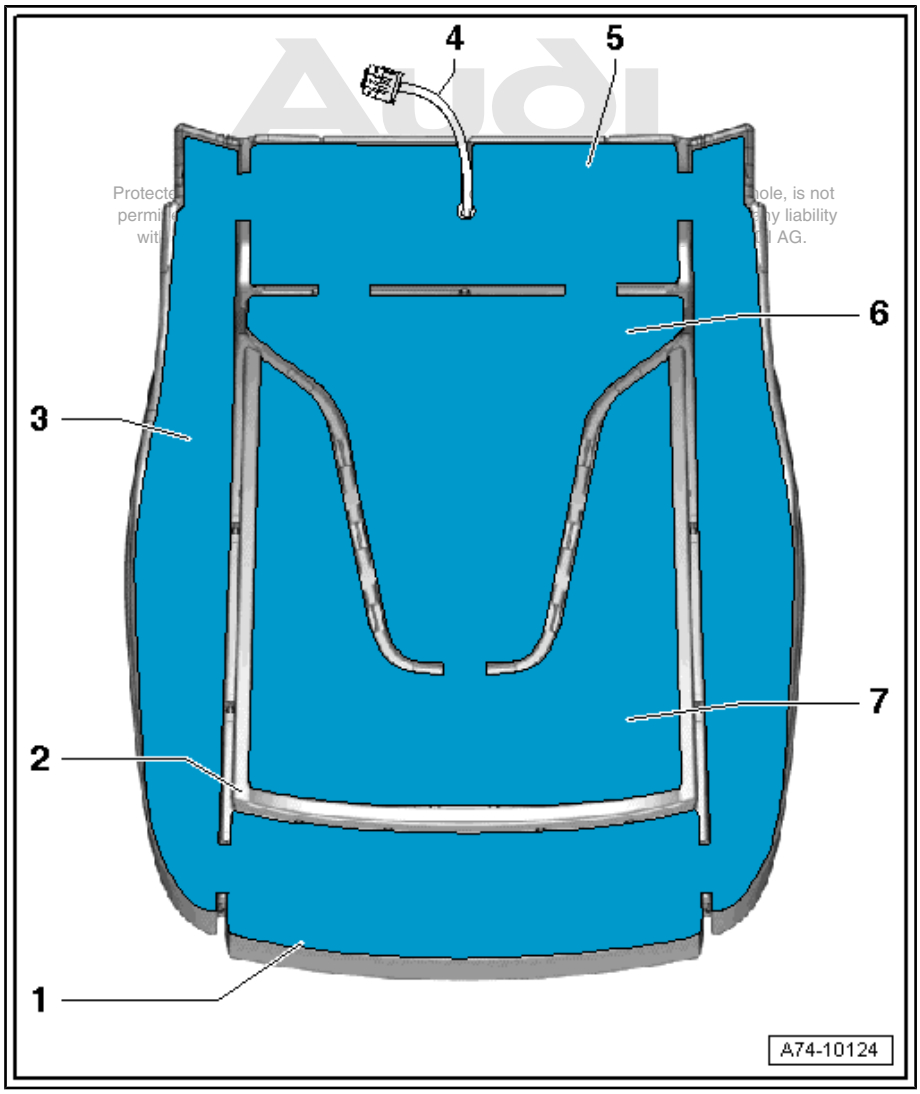
**4 - Seat bolster heating element**

- ❑ On all cover versions except standard seat with fabric cover (basic)
- ❑ Connected to seat heating element




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

## 1.4.2 Overview - seat heating element, convenience seat




**1 - Seat heating element (front)**

- ❑ Connected to seat bolster heating elements
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

**2 - Padding**

- ❑ For seat pan

**3 - Seat bolster heating element**

- ❑ Connected to seat heating elements (front and rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

**4 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

**5 - Seat heating element (rear)**

- ❑ Connected to seat bolster heating elements
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

**6 - Seat heating element (centre rear)**

- ❑ Connected to seat heating element (rear)
- ❑ Only bonded at edges to spacers
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

**7 - Seat heating element (centre front)**

- ❑ Connected to seat heating element (centre rear)
- ❑ Only bonded at edges to spacers
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

## 1.4.3 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat

**1 - Padding**

- ❑ For seat pan

**2 - Seat heating element**

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 450

**3 - Electrical wire**

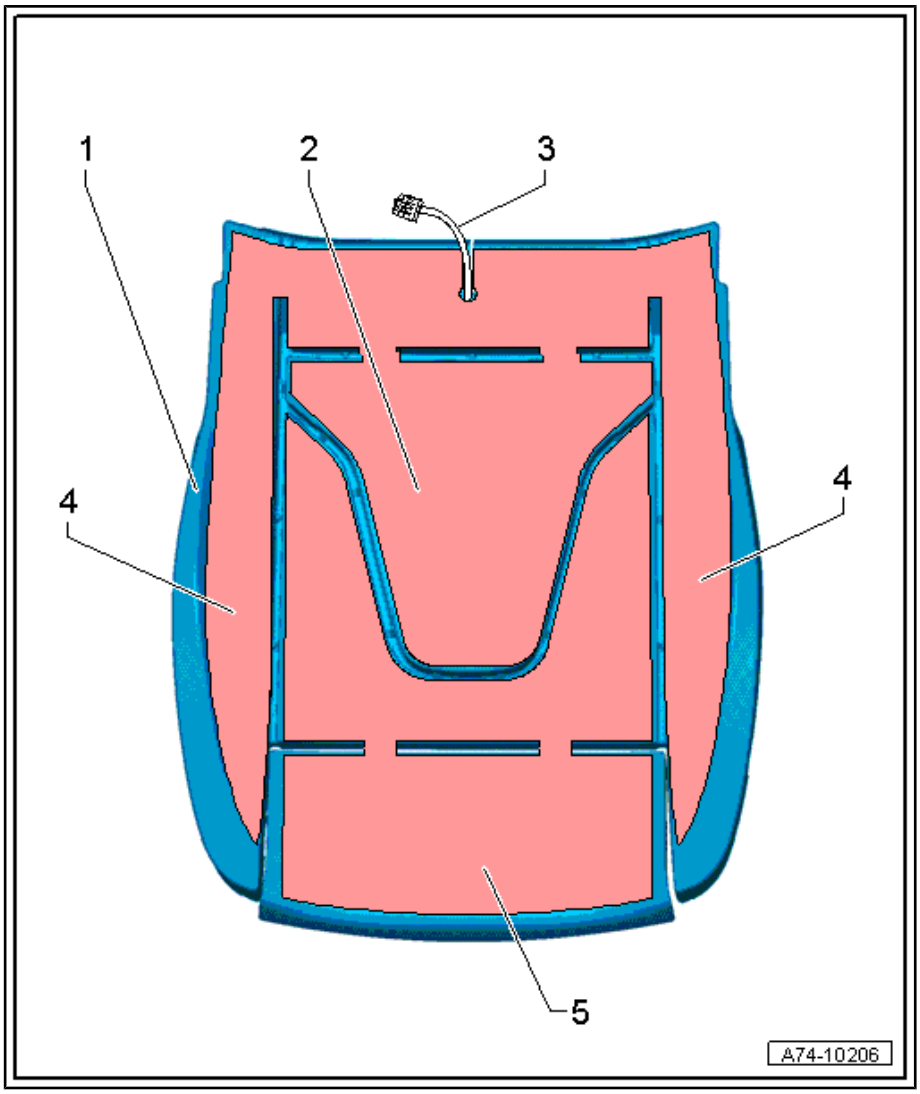
- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

**4 - Seat bolster heating element**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

**5 - Heating element for seat depth adjustment**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.4.4 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat

**1 - Padding**

- ❑ For seat pan

**2 - Seat heating element**

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 451

**3 - Electrical wire**

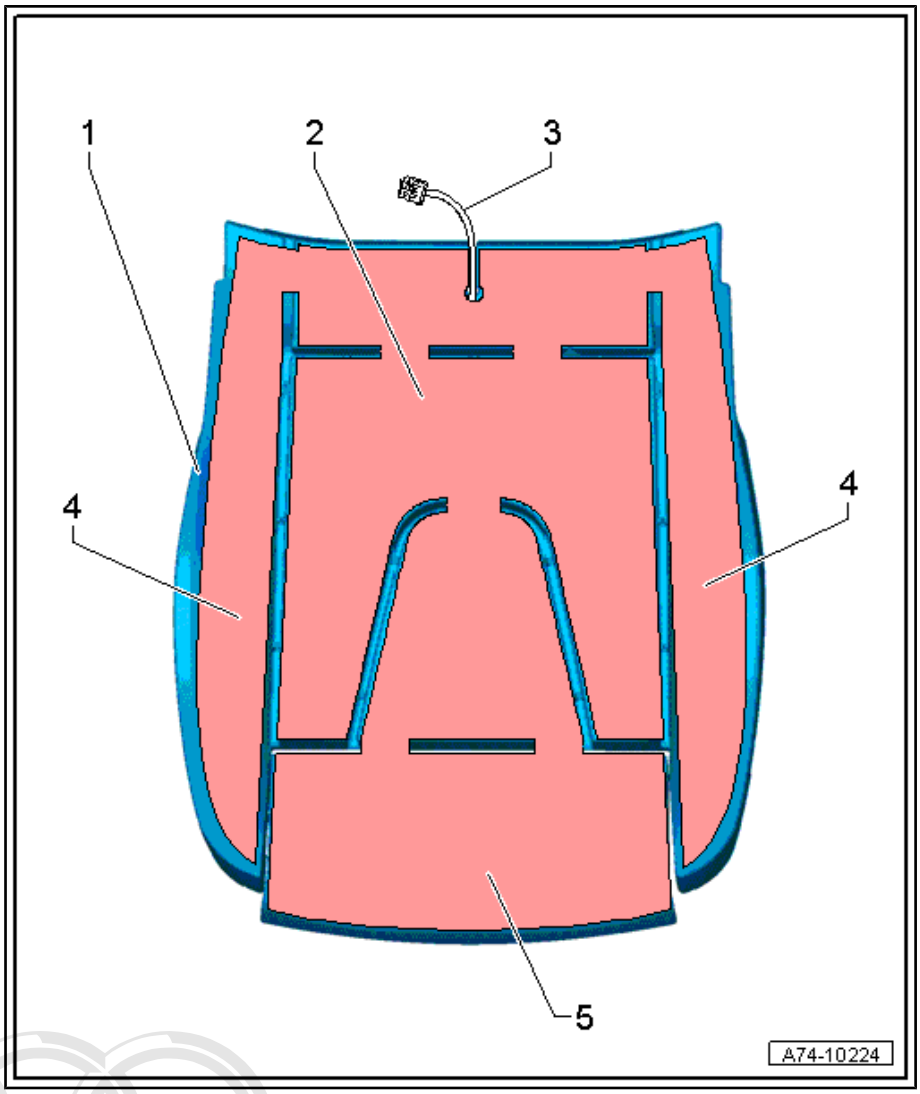
- ❑ Connected to seat heating element

**4 - Seat bolster heating element**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

**5 - Heating element for seat depth adjustment**

- ❑ Connected to seat heating element




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.5 Overview - backrest heating elements

⇒ “1.5.1 Overview - backrest heating element, standard seat, sports seat”, page 421

⇒ “1.5.2 Overview - backrest heating elements, convenience seat”, page 422

### 1.5.1 Overview - backrest heating element, standard seat, sports seat

**1 - Padding**

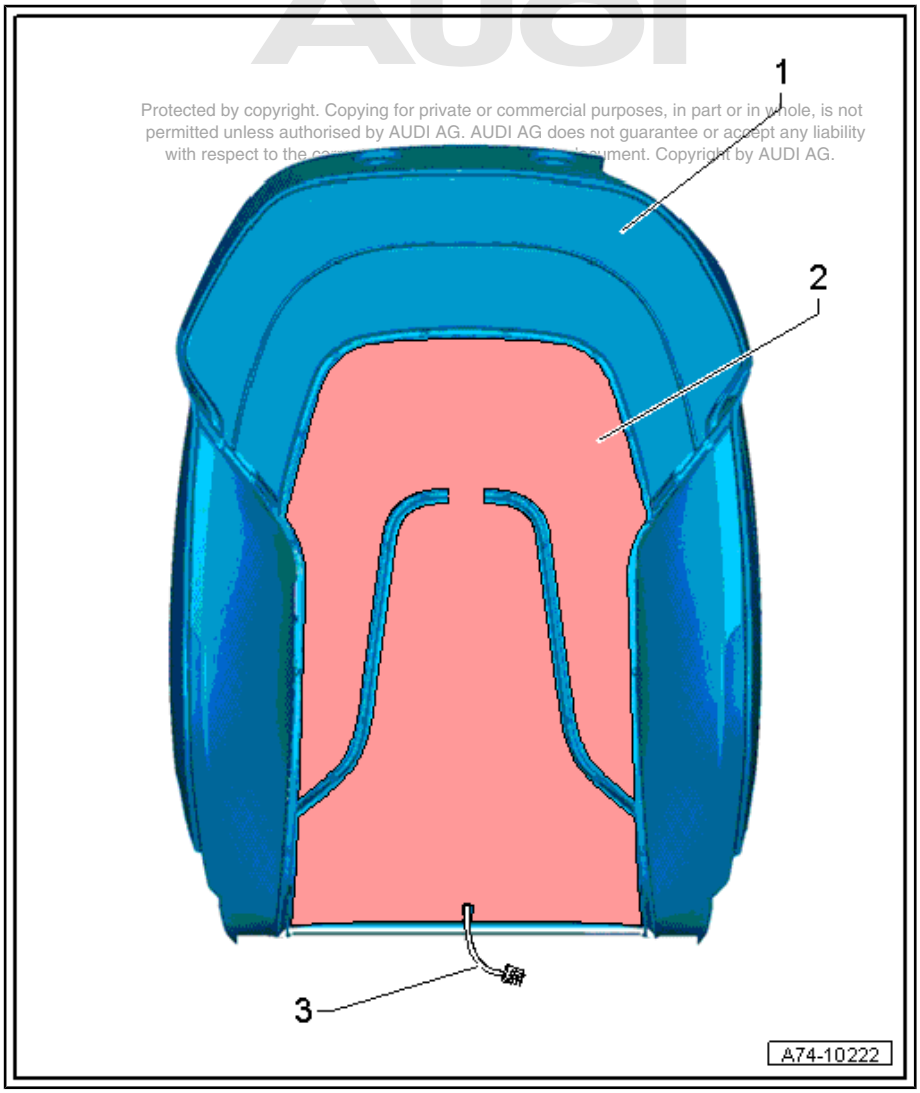
- ❑ For backrest

**2 - Backrest heating element**

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452

**3 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to backrest heating element




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.5.2 Overview - backrest heating elements, convenience seat

**1 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to backrest heating element

**2 - Backrest bolster heating element**

- ❑ Bonded
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 453

**3 - Padding**

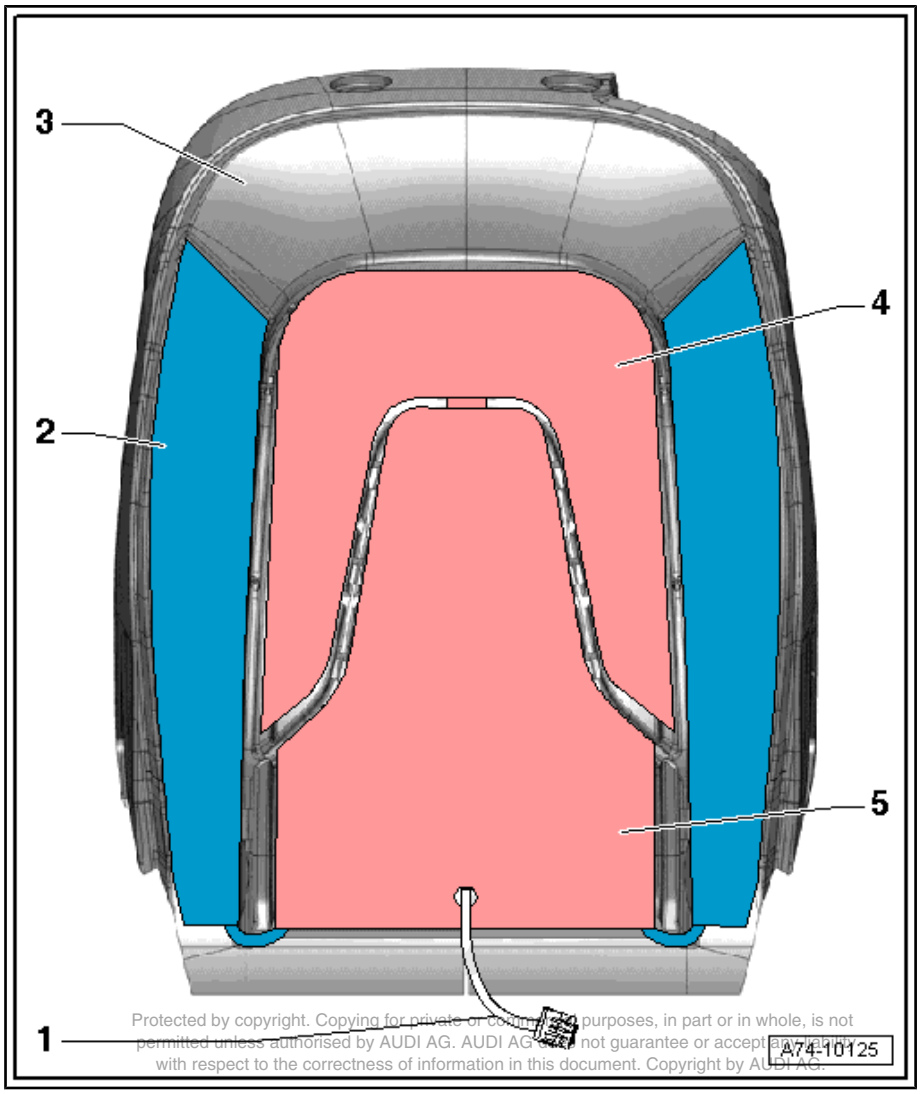
- ❑ For backrest

**4 - Backrest heating element (top)**

- ❑ Only bonded at edges to spacers
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 453

**5 - Backrest heating element (bottom)**

- ❑ Only bonded at edges to spacers
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 453



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.6 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

⇒ "1.6.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan without seat depth adjustment", page 422

⇒ "1.6.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan with seat depth adjustment", page 424

## 1.6.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan without seat depth adjustment

**Note**

*The procedures described relate to the standard front seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the convenience front seat.*

## Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

- Standard seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat (with electric adjustment) and convenience seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

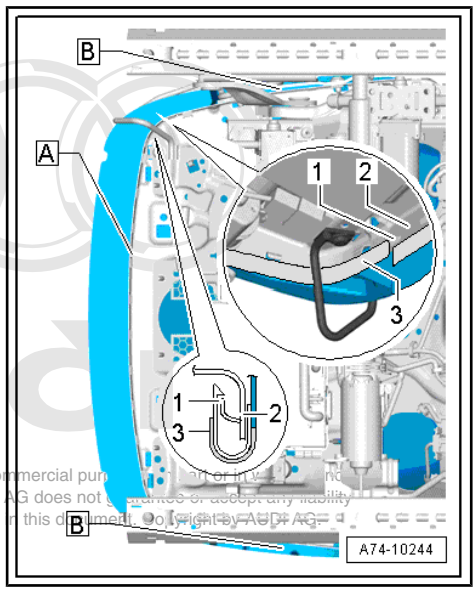
– Remove retaining bracket for trim (sill side):

- Standard seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.55.1 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 341 .
- Standard seat (with electric adjustment) and convenience seat ⇒ “2.55.2 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 342 .

– Equipment version with ISOFIX child seat anchor (only on front passenger seat): Remove ISOFIX child seat anchor ⇒ page 77 .

– Disengage fastening strips -3- of cover at front and side -A- and -B-.

– When disengaging cover, observe catches -1- on rim -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

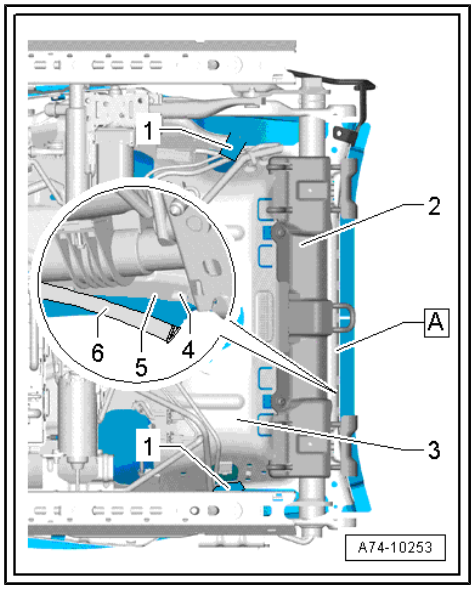
– Disengage fastening strips of lugs -1- on both sides at seat pan -3-.

• ISOFIX child seat anchor -2- removed.

– Disengage fastening strip -6- of cover in area -A-.

– When disengaging cover, observe catches -4- on rim -5-.

– Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 1.6.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - seat pan with seat depth adjustment

**Note**

*The procedures described relate to the front sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the front super sports seat.*

## Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

- Sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Sports seat (with electric adjustment) and super sports seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

– Remove retaining bracket for trim (sill side):

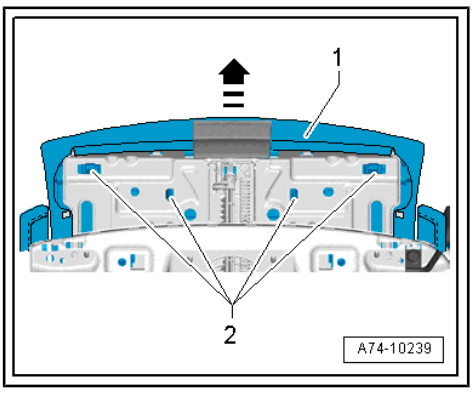
- Sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.55.1 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 341 .
- Sports seat (with electric adjustment) and super sports seat ⇒ “2.55.2 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) - standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat, super sports seat”, page 342 .

– Equipment version with ISOFIX child seat anchor (only on front passenger seat): Remove ISOFIX child seat anchor ⇒ page 77 .

– Pull out seat depth adjuster as far as possible.

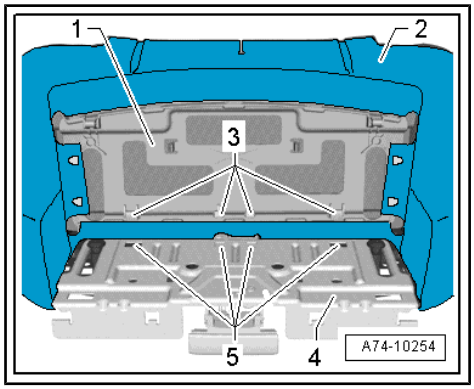
– Unclip fasteners -2-.

– Swivel mounting bracket with padding and cover -1- for seat depth adjustment upwards in direction of -arrow- so far that fasteners remain disengaged.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover -2- of seat depth adjustment upwards at an angle towards front.

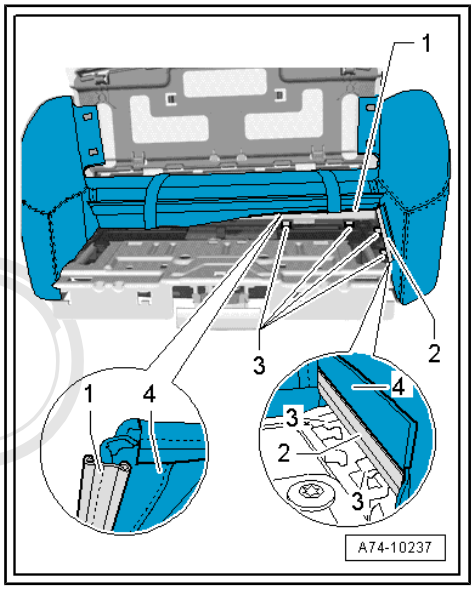



**Note**

*For greater clarity, lower seat pan frame is not shown in illustration.*

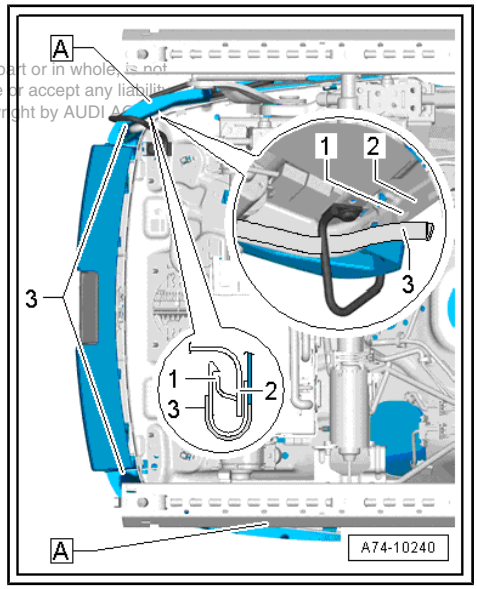
– Disengage lugs -3- from penetrations -5- of bottom section -4- of seat depth adjuster.

– Unclip fastening strips -1- and -2- on cover with padding -4- from retaining tabs -3- (at rear diagonally and to side).




– Disengage fastening strips -3- on cover at sides -A- of upper seat pan frame.

– When disengaging fastening strips, observe catches -1- on rim -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

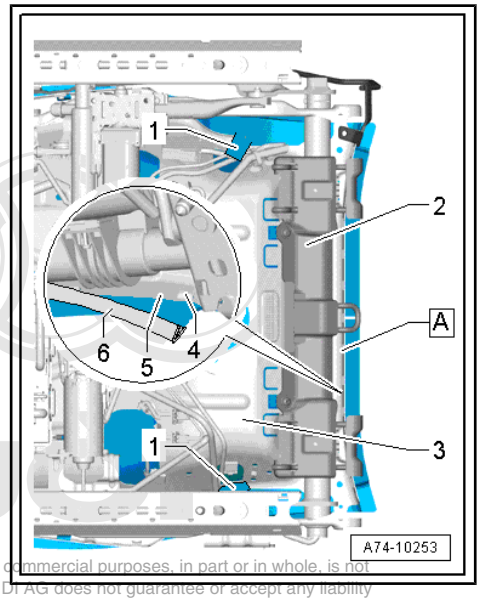
– Disengage fastening strips of lugs -1- on both sides at seat pan -3-.

• ISOFIX child seat anchor -2- removed

– Disengage fastening strips -6- of cover in area -A-.

– When disengaging cover, observe catches -4- on rim -5-.

– Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan and seat depth adjuster.




**Note**

*(Plastic) mounting bracket of seat depth adjuster remains on padding.*

### Installing

**WARNING**

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

# 1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

⇒ “1.7.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - all seats except super sports seat”, page 428

⇒ “1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat”, page 432

## 1.7.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - all seats except super sports seat

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*The procedures described relate to the standard front seat or front sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the front convenience seat.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Drill (for vehicles with DVD player)
- Safety goggles (for vehicles with DVD player)
- ∅ 12 mm drill bit (for vehicles with DVD player)

**Removing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat:

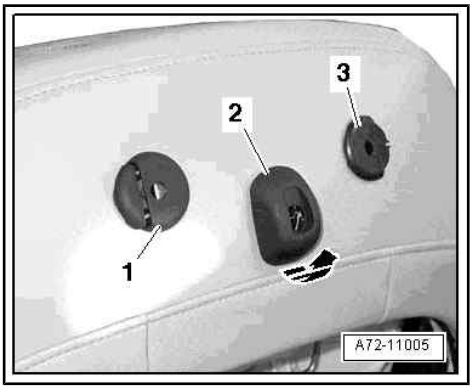
- Standard seat and sports seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 275 .
- Standard seat and sports seat (with electric adjustment), and convenience seat ⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment, front convenience seat, front super sports seat”, page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

**Vehicles with mounting for DVD player:**

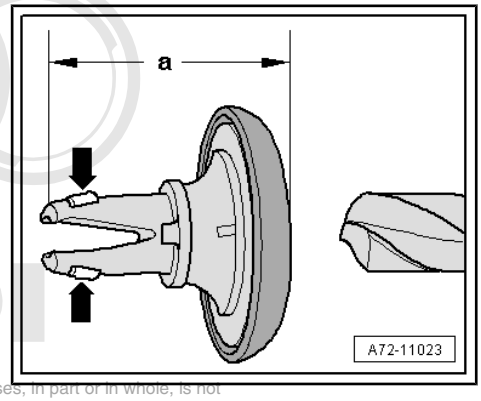
- DVD player removed.

– Unclip trim -2- for electrical connector -arrow-.




> **WARNING**
>
> *Risk of eye injuries.*
>
> ♦ *Put on safety goggles.*

– Use ∅ 12 mm bit to drill out guides -1- and -3- for DVD player.




> **Caution**
>
> *Danger of damaging backrest cover and padding irreparably.*
>
> ♦ *Guides are only held in position in backrest frame by retaining tabs -arrows-.*
>
> ♦ *Therefore only drill out up to 35 mm (dimension -a-) to remove.*

**Continued for all vehicles:**

– Remove backrest cover panel:

♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

♦ One-piece backrest cover panel
⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Remove head restraint:

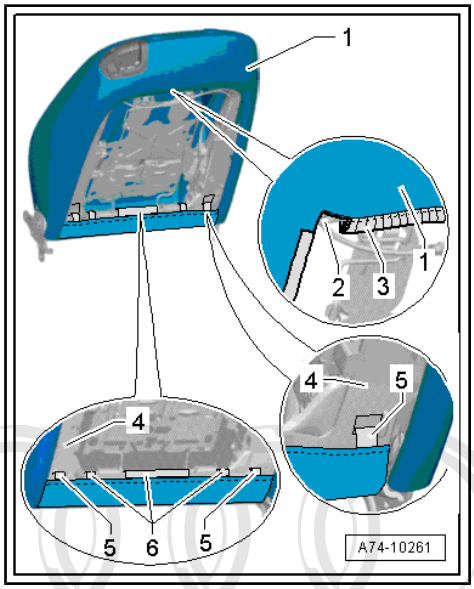
♦ ⇒ “2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 295

♦ ⇒ “2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat”, page 295

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage bottom fastening strips -5- and -6- at trim for outer backrest frame -4-.
– Disengage top fastening strip -3- of cover -1- at outer backrest frame -2-.



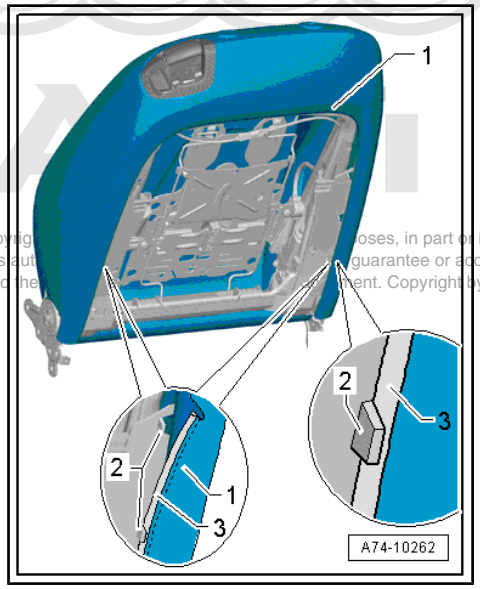

– Disengage side fastening strips -3- from fasteners of trim for outer backrest frame -2-.
– Detach backrest padding far enough so that side airbag can be removed.
– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 107 .

**Equipment version with seat with manual adjustment:**

– Disengage hook of side airbag from outer backrest frame, take airbag downwards out of pouch (stitched to cover) and re-engage in outer backrest frame.

**Equipment version with seat with electric adjustment:**

– Disengage hook of side airbag from outer backrest frame and leave in pouch (sewn into cover).




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

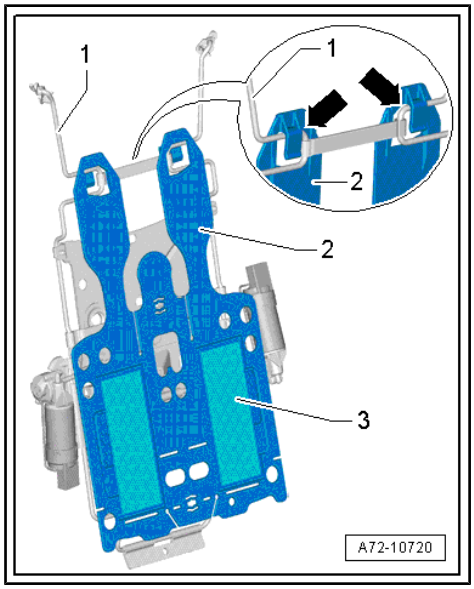
**All equipment versions (continued):**

– On seats with lumbar support (not on convenience seat), detach padding from Velcro fastener -3- on lumbar support -2-; otherwise hooks -arrows- of lumbar support will be damaged during removal.
– Take cover and padding upwards off outer backrest frame, at the same time guiding out wiring harness of side airbag.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



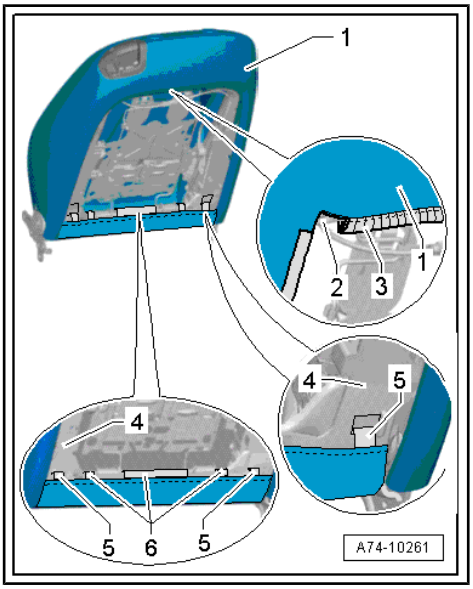

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that fastening strips -3, 5, 6- and side fastening strips lock correctly in place and that cover -1- is not creased.

**Caution**

***The three centre fastening strips -6- must be hooked over trim for outer backrest frame -4- and over outer backrest frame -2-.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**Vehicles with mounting for DVD player:**

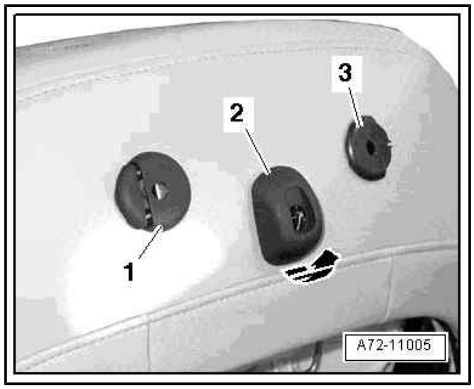
- Mountings for guides -1- and -3- on backrest must be clean.

– Align backrest cover and insert guides in mountings.

- Guides -1- and -3- can only be inserted in one position.
- Release buttons must face outwards.

– Clip on trim -2-.

- Trim can only be clipped on in one position.




**Note**

*-Arrow- can be ignored.*

**Continued for all vehicles:**

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Drill (for vehicles with DVD player)
- Safety goggles (for vehicles with DVD player)
- ∅ 12 mm drill bit (for vehicles with DVD player)

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication or distribution, for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

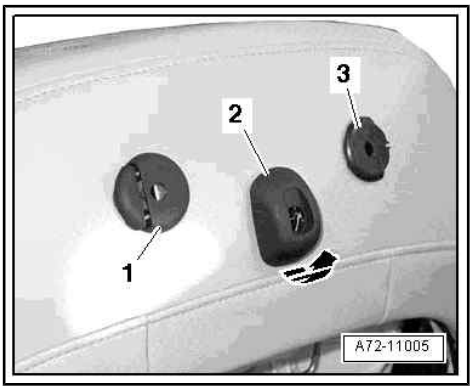
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 277 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 224 .

**Vehicles with mounting for DVD player:**

• DVD player removed.

– Unclip trim -2- for electrical connector -arrow-.

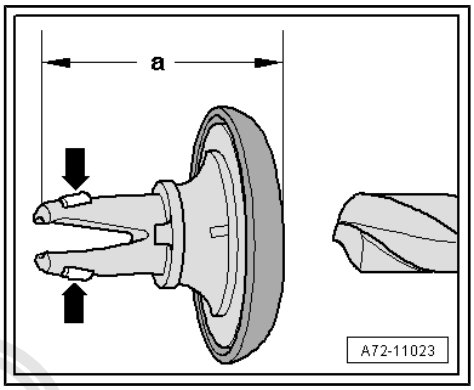



**WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries.*

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Use ∅ 12 mm bit to drill out guides -1- and -3- for DVD player.




**Caution**

*Danger of damaging backrest cover and padding irreparably.*

- *Guides are only held in position in backrest frame by retaining tabs -arrows-.*
- *Therefore only drill out up to 35 mm (dimension -a-) to remove.*

**Continued for all vehicles:**

– Remove backrest cover panel:

♦ Two-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ “2.37.1 Removing and installing two-piece backrest cover panel”, page 305

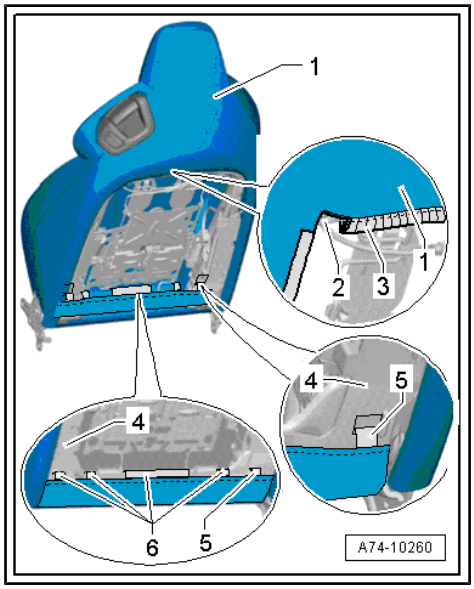
♦ One-piece backrest cover panel ⇒ “2.37.2 Removing and installing one-piece backrest cover panel”, page 308

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 292 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage fastening strips (bottom) -5- and -6-.
– Disengage fastening strip (top) -3-.

1 - Cover
2 - Outer backrest frame
4 - Trim for outer backrest frame

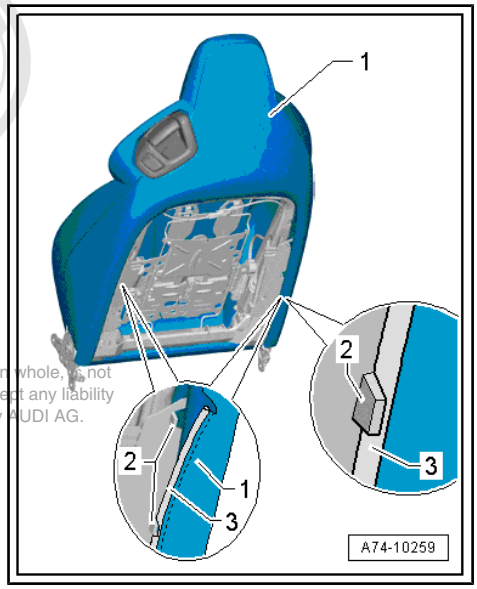



– Disengage side fastening strips -3- from fasteners of trim for outer backrest frame -2-.

1 - Cover

**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

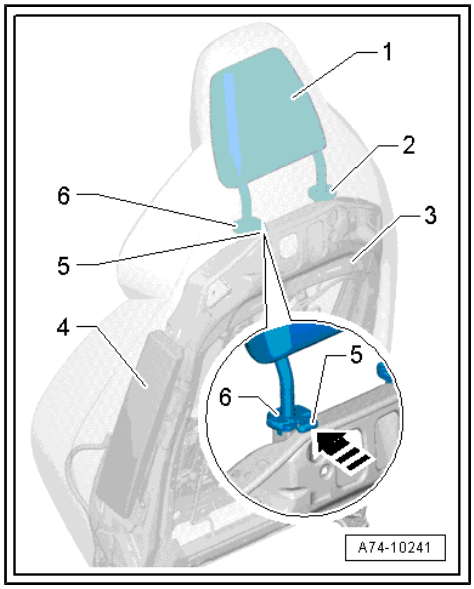



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– In area of side airbag, pull cover as far forwards as possible so that side airbag can be removed.
– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 107 .
– Take airbag out of the pouch sewn into cover and re-engage airbag in outer backrest frame.

– Working from rear of backrest, reach beneath padding and locate release button -5-.
– Press release button in direction of -arrow-.
– Keep release button -5- pressed in this position.
– Lift padding with foam-fitted head restraint -1- off outer backrest frame -3-.

2 - Head restraint guide without release button
4 - Side airbag
6 - Head restraint guide with release button




**Note**

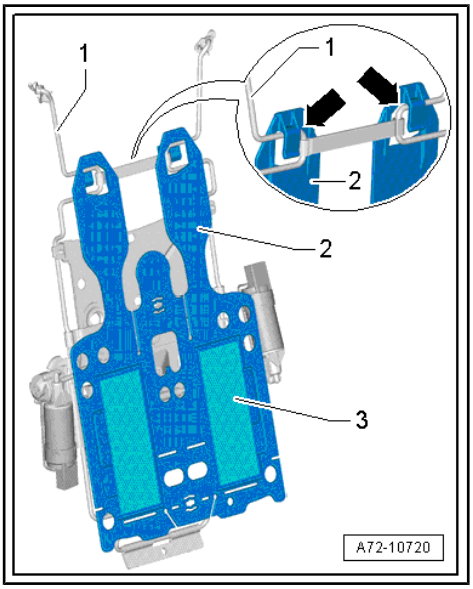
*The help of a second mechanic is required for detaching the padding with the head restraint from the outer backrest frame.*

**Equipment version with lumbar support:**

– Detach padding from Velcro fastener -3- on lumbar support -2-; otherwise hooks -arrows- of lumbar support will be damaged during removal.

**All equipment versions (continued):**

– Detach cover with padding from outer backrest frame.




**Installing**

**WARNING**

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 2 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

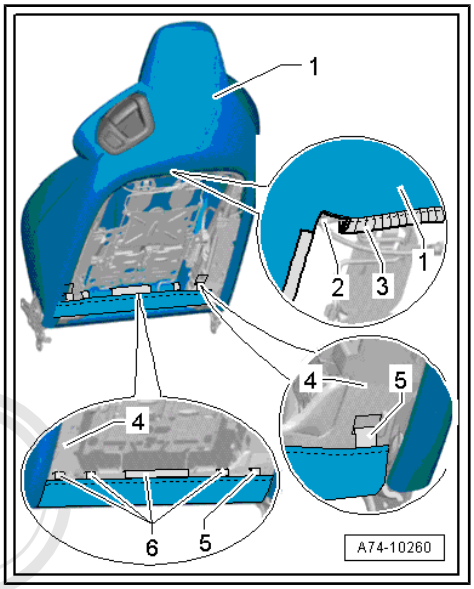
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– After attaching padding to outer backrest frame, make sure that head restraint is properly locked in head restraint guides.

– Make sure fastening strips -3-, -5-, -6- and side fastening strips lock correctly in place and cover is not creased.

**Caution**

*The three centre fastening strips -6- must be hooked over trim for outer backrest frame -4- and over outer backrest frame -2-.*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Vehicles with mounting for DVD player:**

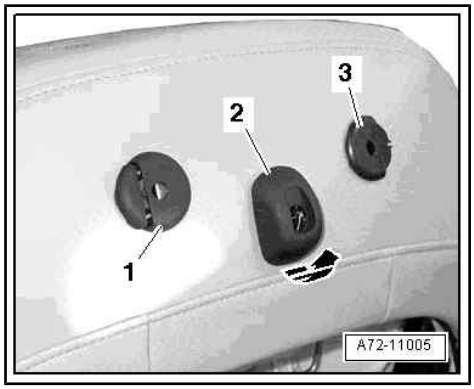
- Mountings for guides -1- and -3- on backrest must be clean.

– Align backrest cover and insert guides in mountings.

- Guides -1- and -3- can only be inserted in one position.
- Release buttons must face outwards.

– Clip on trim -2-.

- Trim can only be clipped on in one position.




**Note**

*-Arrow- can be ignored.*

**Continued for all vehicles:**

**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**WARNING**

***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 1.8 Separating seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.8.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - seat pan without seat depth adjustment”, page 436

⇒ “1.8.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - seat pan with seat depth adjustment”, page 438

### 1.8.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - seat pan without seat depth adjustment

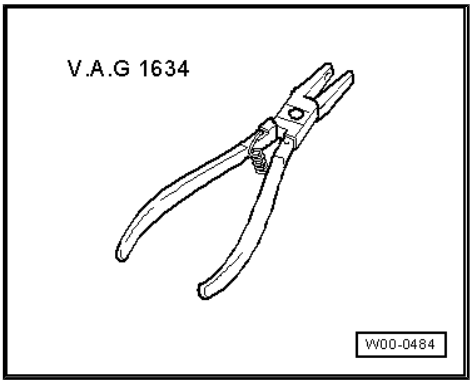
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

*The procedures described relate to the standard front seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the convenience front seat.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

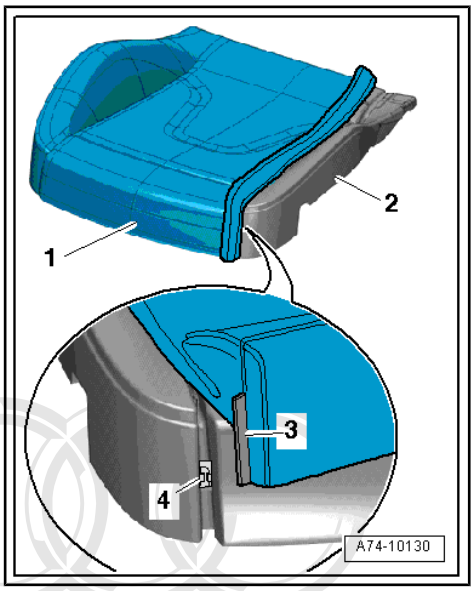



## Removing

– Detach seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 422 .

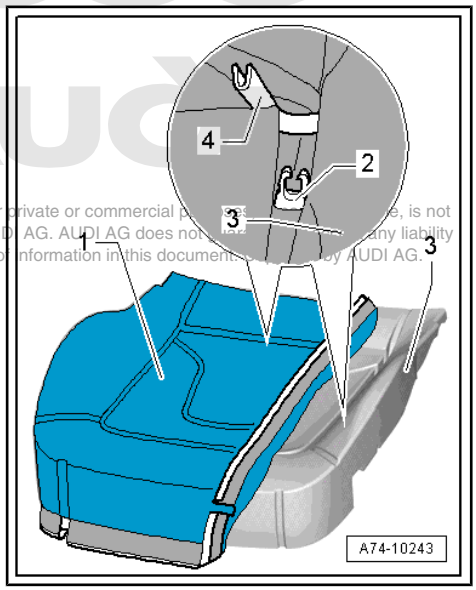
– Detach cover -1- at rear and side from padding -2-.

– On vehicles with convenience seat, unclip fastening strip -3- at front face of padding from clips -4-.




– Unclip fastening strip -4- of cover -1- on padding -3- from clips -2-.

– Detach cover from padding.

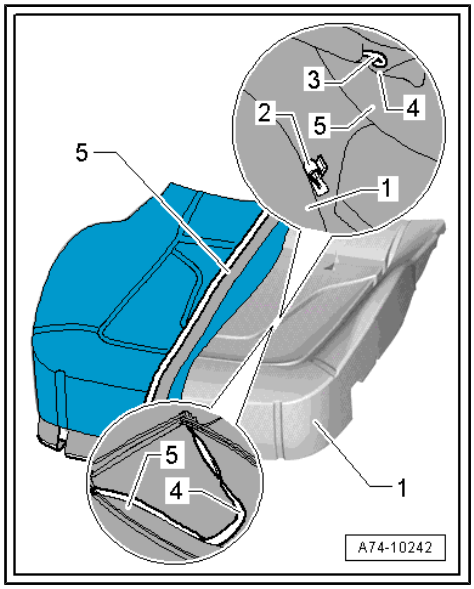



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.

– Detach cover from padding -1-.




**Equipment version with leather covers:**

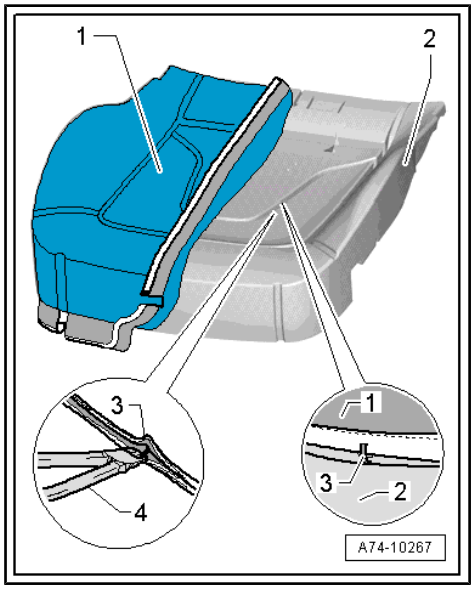
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.




## 1.8.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - seat pan with seat depth adjustment

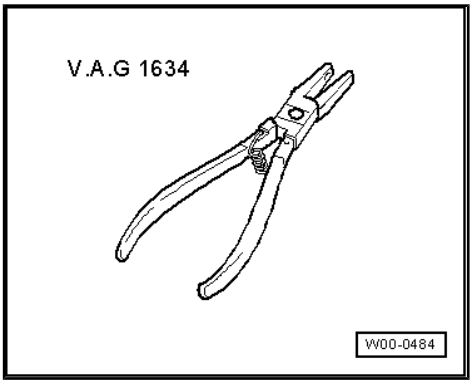
**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*The procedures described relate to the front sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the front super sports seat.*

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



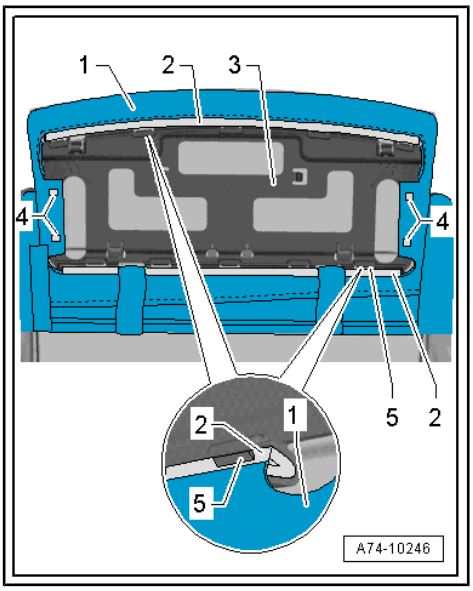

## Removing

– Remove cover and padding from seat pan and seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 424 .

– Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.

– Disengage cover from lugs -4- on both sides.

– Detach mounting bracket -3- with padding for seat depth adjustment from cover -1-.

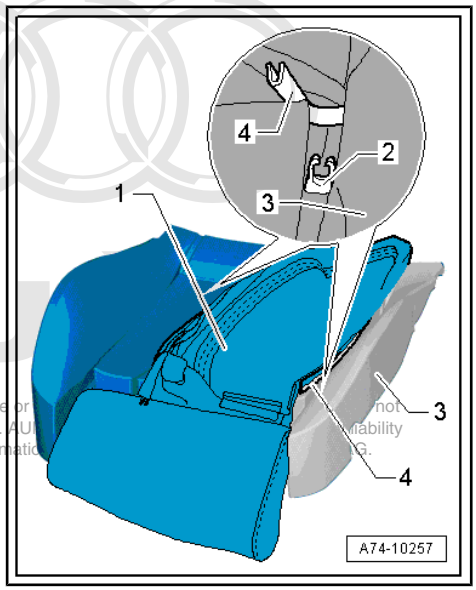



## Detaching cover from padding - sports seat

– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.

– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.

– Detach cover from padding.

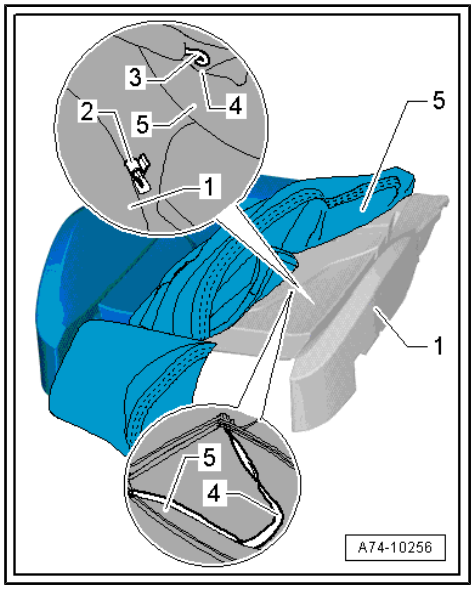



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati
not
liability
G.

**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.

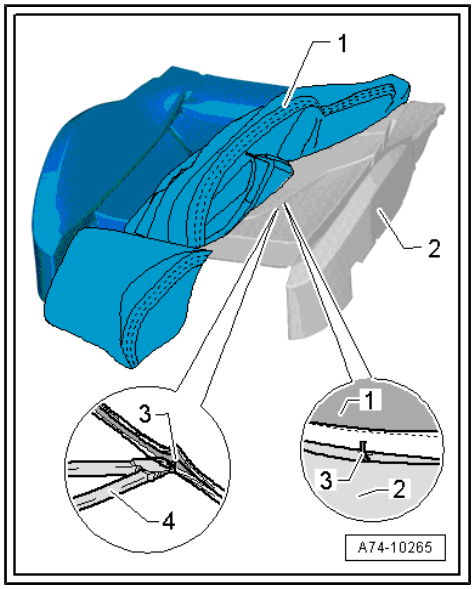
– Detach cover from padding -1-.




**Equipment version with leather covers:**

– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

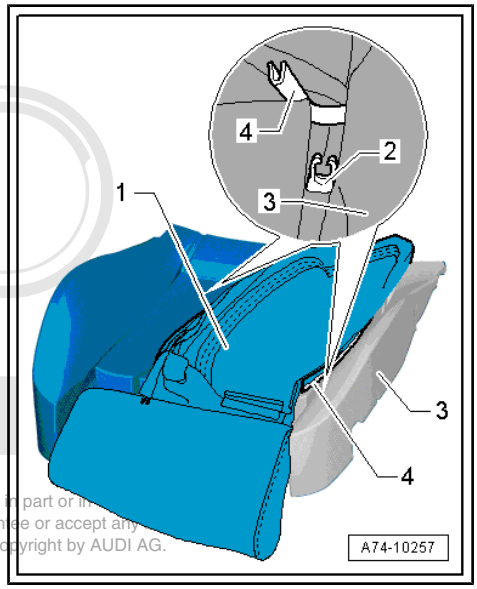
– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.




**Detaching cover from padding - super sports seat**

– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.

– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.

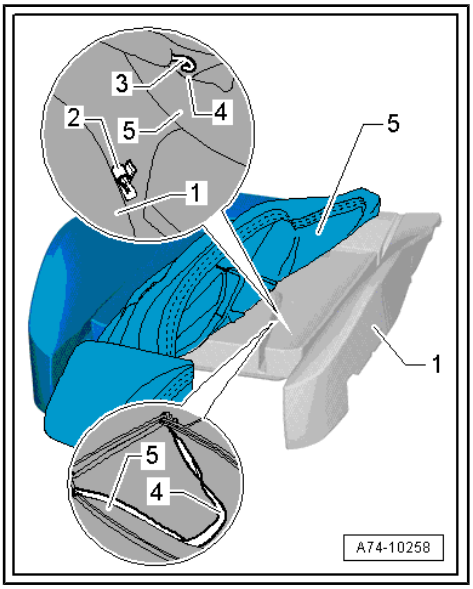



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.

– Detach cover from padding -1-.




**Equipment version with leather covers:**

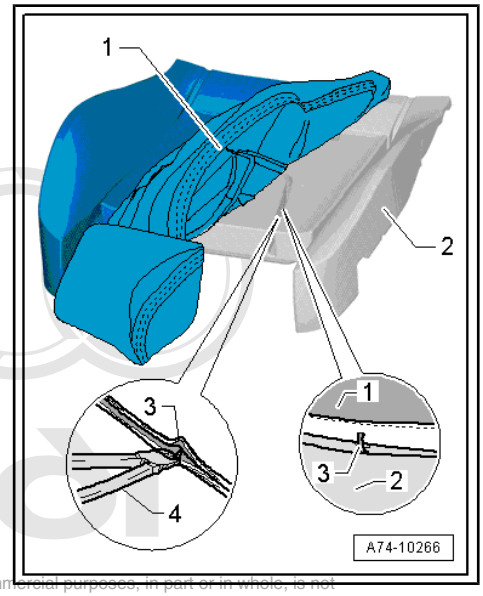
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.9 Separating backrest cover and padding

⇒ “1.9.1 Separating backrest cover and padding - all seats except super sports seat”, page 441

⇒ “1.9.2 Separating backrest cover and padding - super sports seat”, page 443

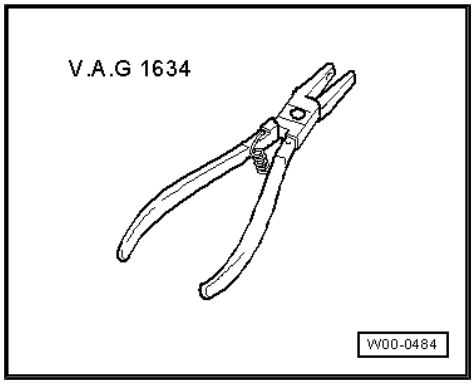
## 1.9.1 Separating backrest cover and padding - all seats except super sports seat

**Note**

*The procedures described relate to the standard front seat or front sports seat (with manual or electric adjustment) and the front convenience seat.*

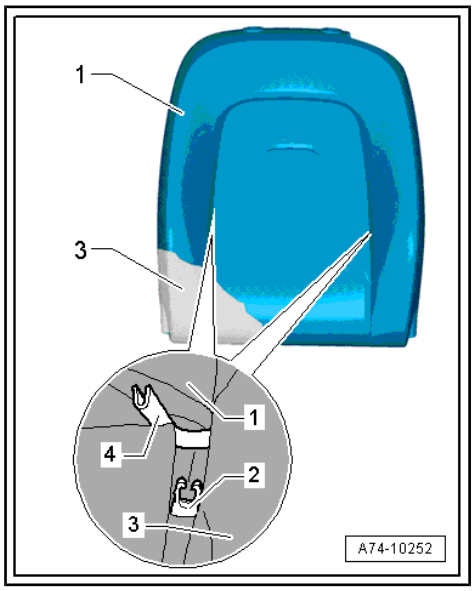
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



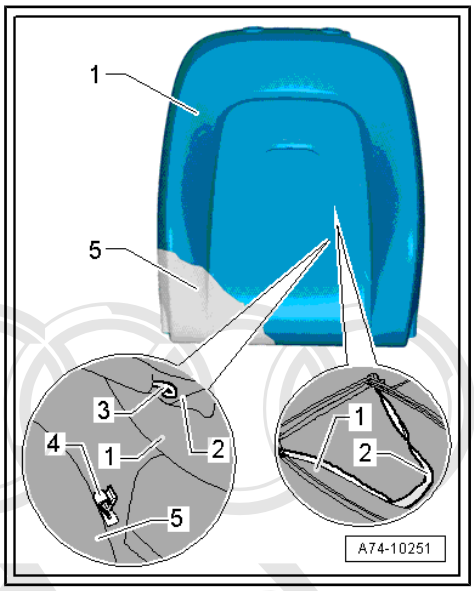

**Removing**

– Detach cover and padding from backrest ⇒ page 428 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.
– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.
– Detach cover from padding.




**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -2- of cover -1-) from clips -4-.
– Detach cover from padding -5-.

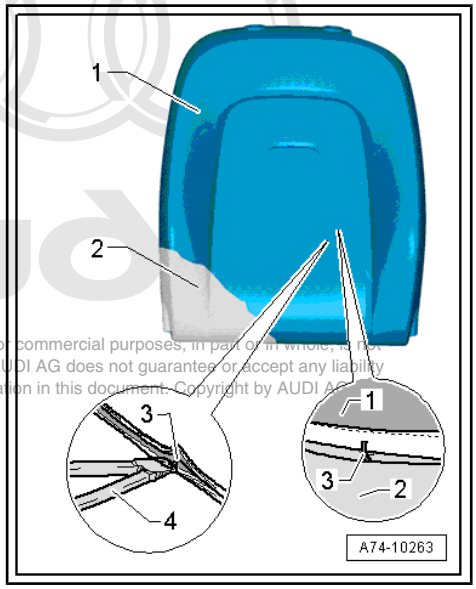



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with leather covers:**

– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.




**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

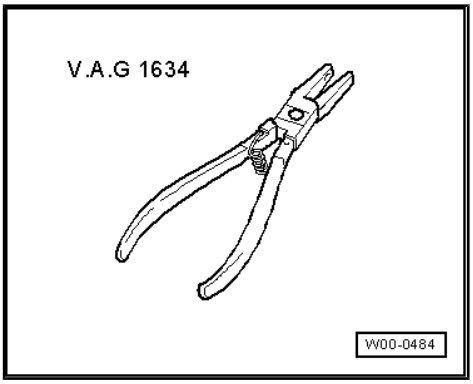
– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.9.2 Separating backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

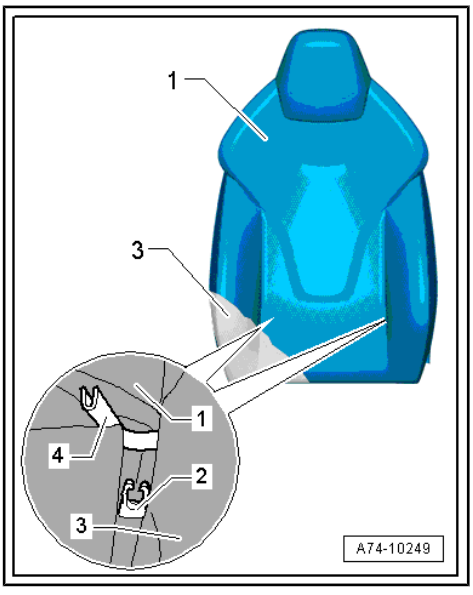



**Removing**

– Detach cover and padding from backrest ⇒ page 432 .

– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.

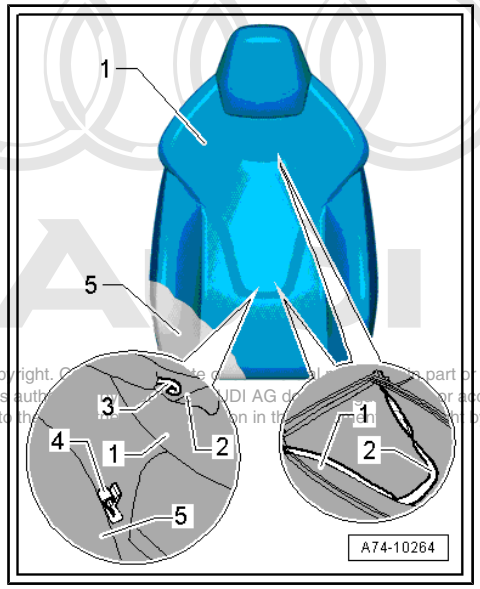
– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.



**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -2- of cover -1-) from clips -4-.

– Detach cover from padding -5-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with leather covers:**

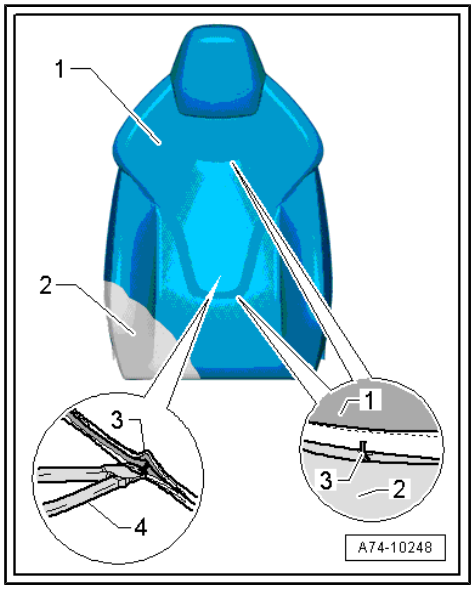
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

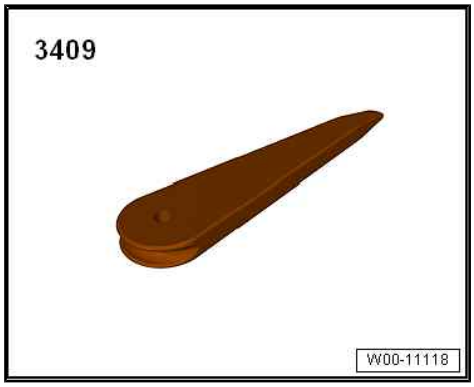
– Use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.




## 1.10 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



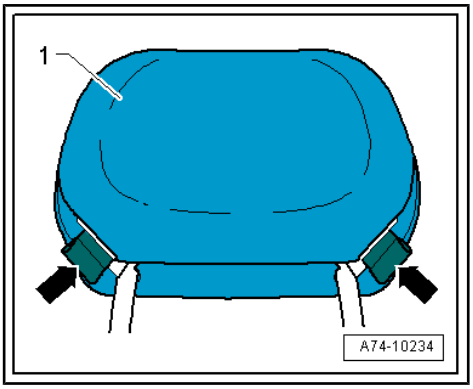

**Removing**

– Remove head restraint:

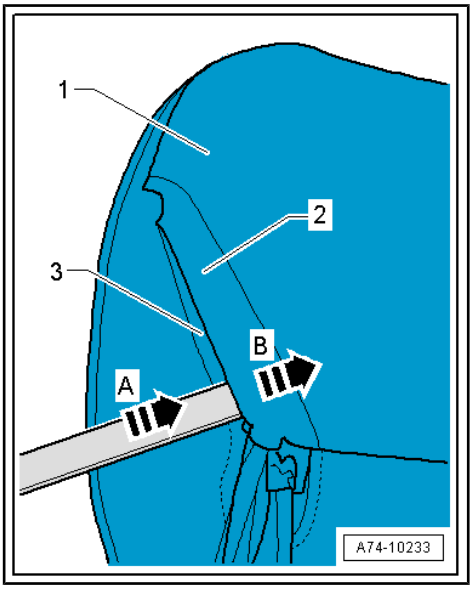
- ⇒ “2.33.1 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 295
- ⇒ “2.33.2 Removing and installing head restraint - standard/ sports seat with electric adjustment, convenience seat”, page 295

### Opening fasteners (side)

– Open side fasteners -arrows- on cover -1-.




– Insert removal wedge - 3409- or a flat screwdriver in between cover fastening -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -3- in direction of -arrow B-.
– Pull upper side of cover out of U-profile with flat profile -2-.

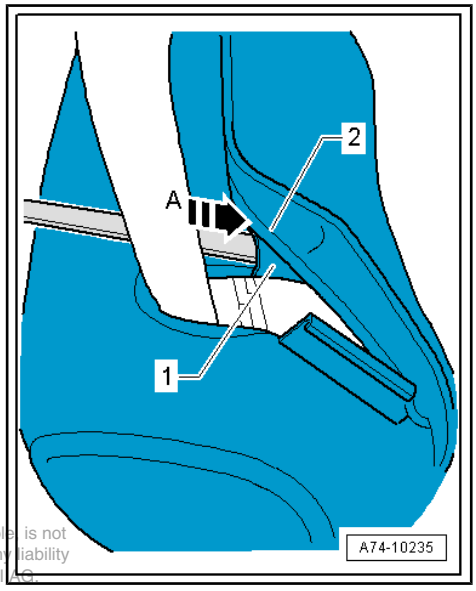



### Opening main fastener

– Insert removal wedge - 3409- or a flat screwdriver in between cover fastening.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Pull upper side of cover out of U-profile -1- with flat profile -2-.

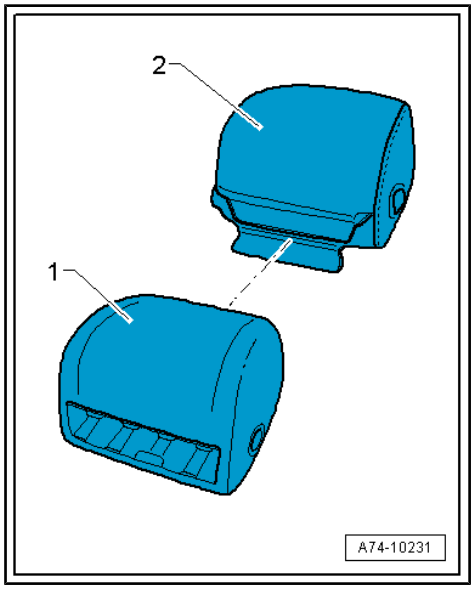
**Note**

*To take out padding cover must be fully open.*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Take padding -1- out of cover -2-.

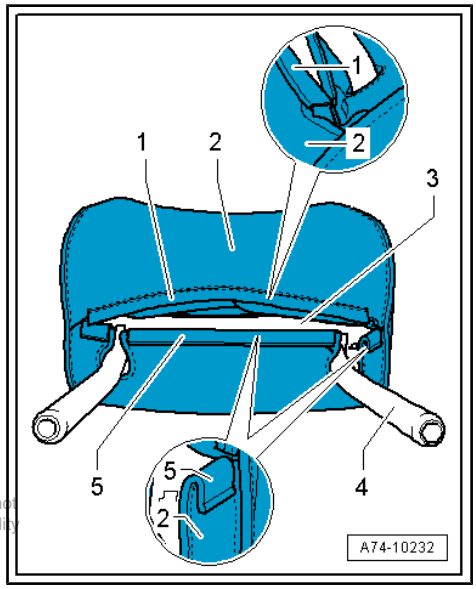



**Installing**

– Insert padding -1- in cover -2-, making sure that it fits correctly.
– Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.

**Closing main fastener**

– Turn over upper flat profile -1- of cover -2-.
– Insert edge of fabric into U-profile -5- with flat profile.




**Closing fasteners (side)**

– The procedure for closing the side fasteners is similar to that for closing the main fastener.

**Continuation after closing main fastener and side fasteners**

– Align cover and profiles using a needle or another sharp object.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding -3- without creases or seam marks.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.11 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

⇒ "1.11.1 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - standard seat", page 447

⇒ "1.11.2 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - convenience seat", page 449

⇒ "1.11.3 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - sports seat", page 450

⇒ "1.11.4 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - super sports seat", page 451

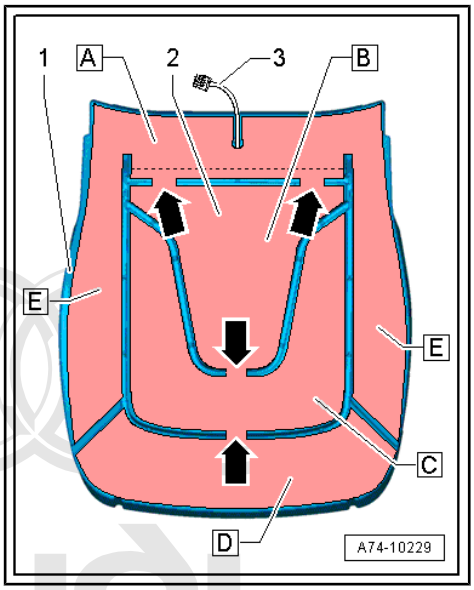
## 1.11.1 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - standard seat

### Removing

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 422 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 436 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old seat heating element -2-.




**Note**

- *Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.*
- *-Items A ... E- and -arrows- can be disregarded.*

### Installing

– Align new seat heating element on padding.

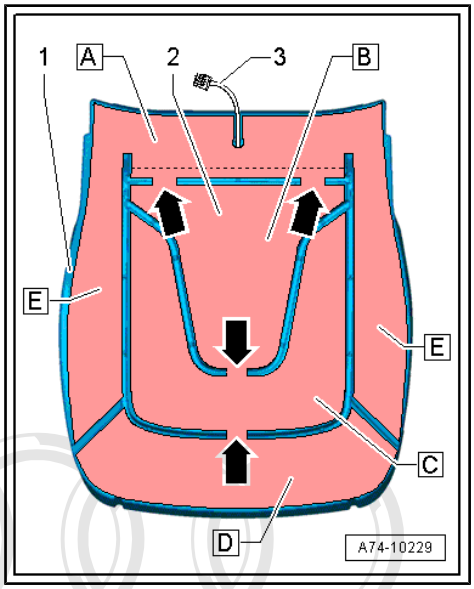
**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

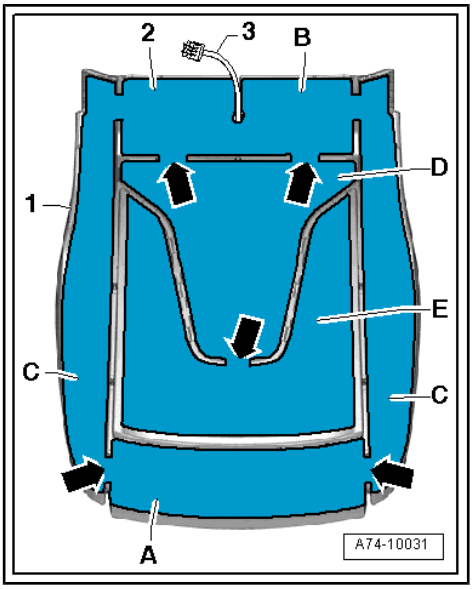
– Bond individual areas of heating element in the sequence -A, B, C, D-.
– Finally, on all cover versions except seats with basic fabric cover, bond bolster areas -E-.
– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottoms of openings -arrows-.
– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.11.2 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - convenience seat




### Removing

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 424 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 438 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old seat heating element -2-.

– Cut through connecting webs -arrows-.

– Carefully release seat heating elements -D- and -E- from adhesive bond and detach.

**Note**

- *Take care not to damage spacers.*
- *Old seat heating elements -A, B, C- remain on padding; new seat heating element is bonded over old element.*

### Installing

– Align new seat heating element on padding.

**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

– Bond individual areas of heating element in the sequence -A, B, C, D, E-.

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottoms of openings -arrows-.

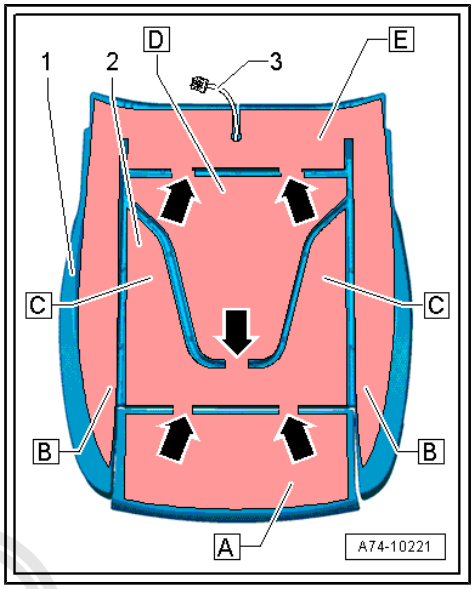
– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.11.3 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - sports seat

### Removing




– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 424 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 438 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old seat heating element -2-.

**Note**

- *Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.*
- *-Items A ... E- and -arrows- can be disregarded.*

### Installing

– Align new seat heating element on padding.

**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

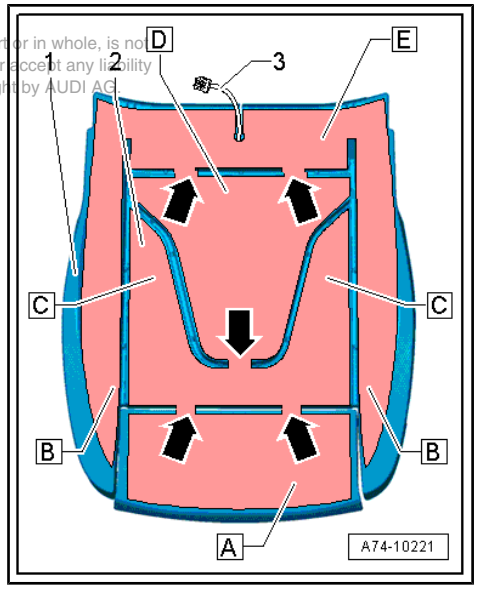
– Bond individual areas of heating element in the sequence -A, C, D, E-.

– Finally, on all cover versions except seats with basic fabric cover, bond bolster areas -B-.

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottoms of openings -arrows-.

– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

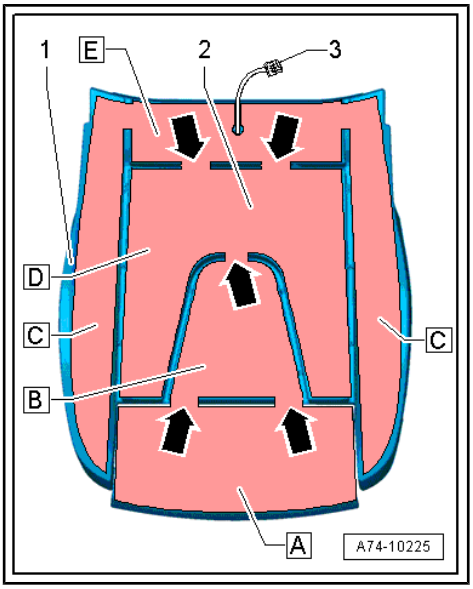
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.11.4 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - super sports seat

### Removing




– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 424 .
– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 438 .
– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old seat heating element -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

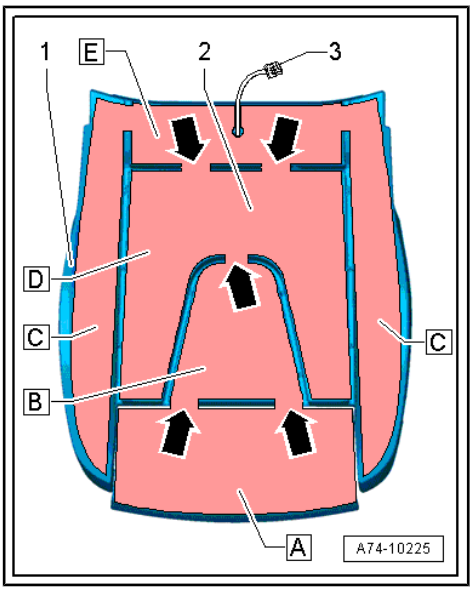
*Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.*

### Installing

– Align new seat heating element on padding.

**Caution**

- *Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.*
- *Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.*
- *When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.*




– Bond individual sections of heating element in sequence -A-, -B-, -D-, -E- and -C-.
– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottoms of openings -arrows-.
– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

## 1.12 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

⇒ "1.12.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - standard seat, sports seat", page 452

⇒ "1.12.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - convenience seat", page 453

## 1.12.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - standard seat, sports seat

### Removing

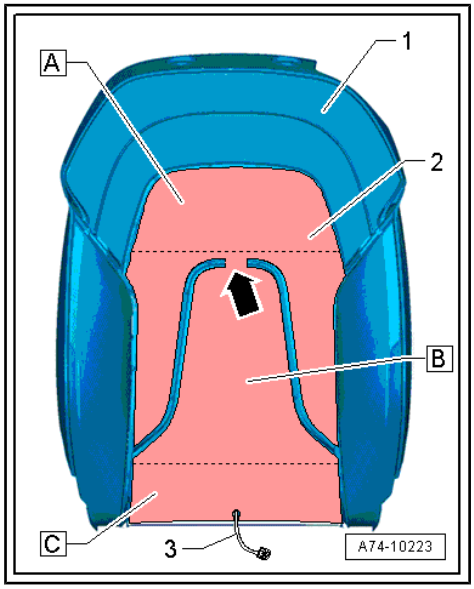
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 428 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 441 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old backrest heating element -2-.

**Note**

- *Leave old backrest heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new backrest heating element.*
- *-Items A, B, C- and -arrow- can be disregarded.*




### Installing

– Align new backrest heating element on padding.

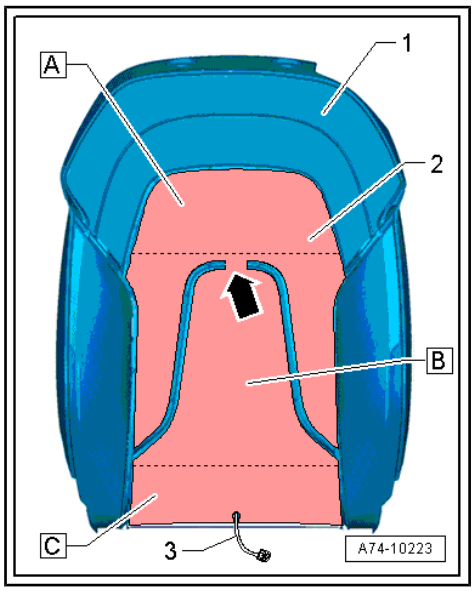
**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach new backrest heating element in such a way that it covers old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

– Bond individual areas of heating element in the sequence -A, B, C-.

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottom of openings -arrow-.

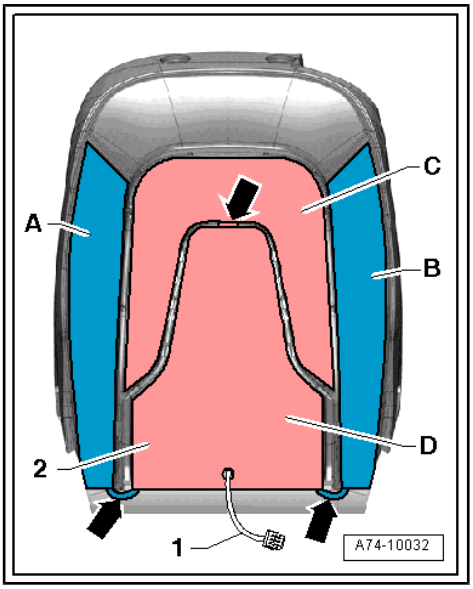
– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.




The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

ed by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.12.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - convenience seat




### Removing

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 428 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 441 .

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at bottom of old backrest heating element -2-.

– Cut through connecting webs and wiring -arrows-.

– Carefully detach backrest heating elements (top and bottom) -C- and -D- from adhesive and remove.

**Note**

- *Take care not to damage spacers.*
- *The heating elements -A- and -B- remain on the backrest bolsters and are covered with the new backrest heating element.*

### Installing

– Align new backrest heating element on padding -1-.

**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach new backrest bolster heating elements in such a way that they cover the old seat heating elements exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Bond individual areas of heating element in the sequence -A, B, C, D-.

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones in bottoms of openings -arrows-.

– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit in padding.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

# 2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 454

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 460

⇒ “2.3 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 461

⇒ “2.4 Overview - backrest heating elements”, page 462

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing cover and padding”, page 463

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch”, page 467

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing upper and lower padding (backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment)”, page 467

⇒ “2.8 Detaching cover from padding”, page 468

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 472

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing head restraint trim”, page 475

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing long-arm spring for head restraint”, page 475

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing seat heating elements”, page 475

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing backrest heating element”, page 476

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding”, page 454

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 456

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 458

### 2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding

**1 - Cover**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 468

**2 - Contour wire**

- ❑ Inserted into pouch on seat cover

**3 - Padding**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 468

**4 - Piping**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in seat frame

**5 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Only on seats with fabric cover

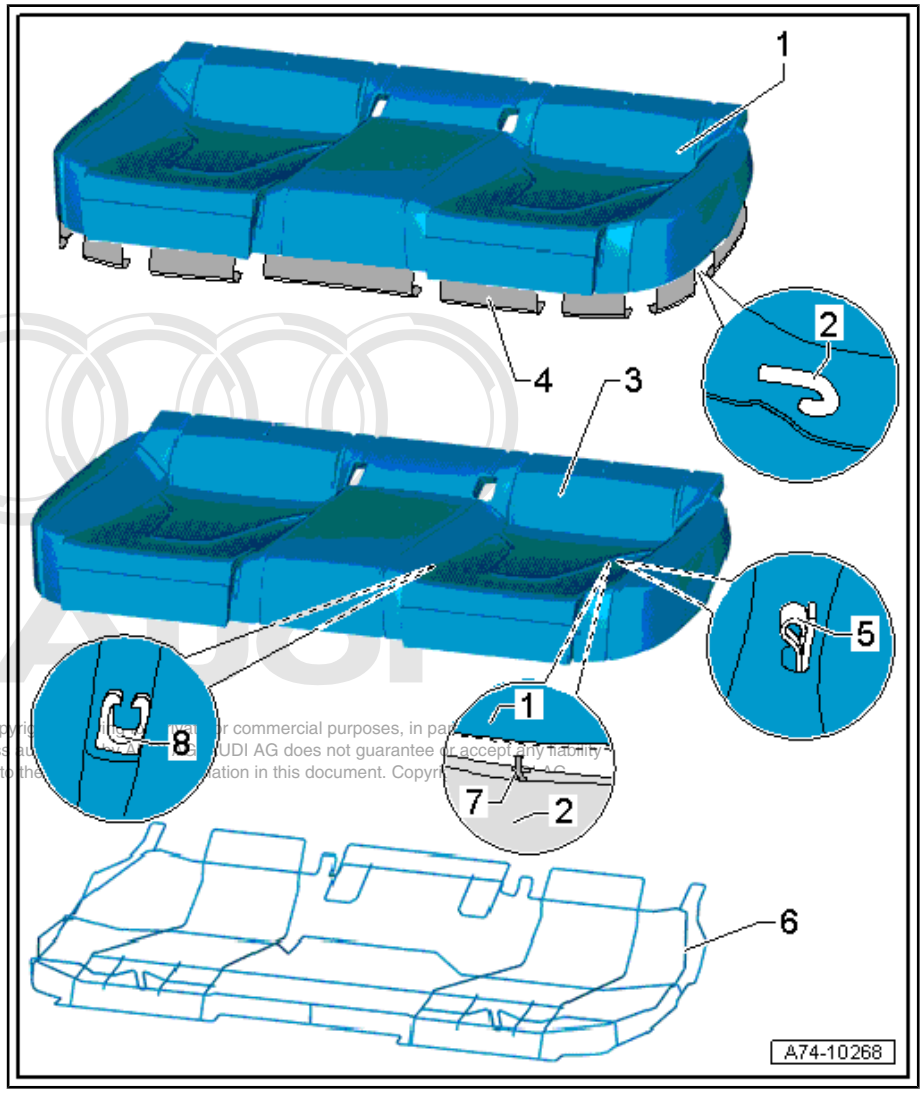
**6 - Seat frame**

**7 - Upholstery clip**

- ❑ Only on seats with leather cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

**8 - Clip**

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

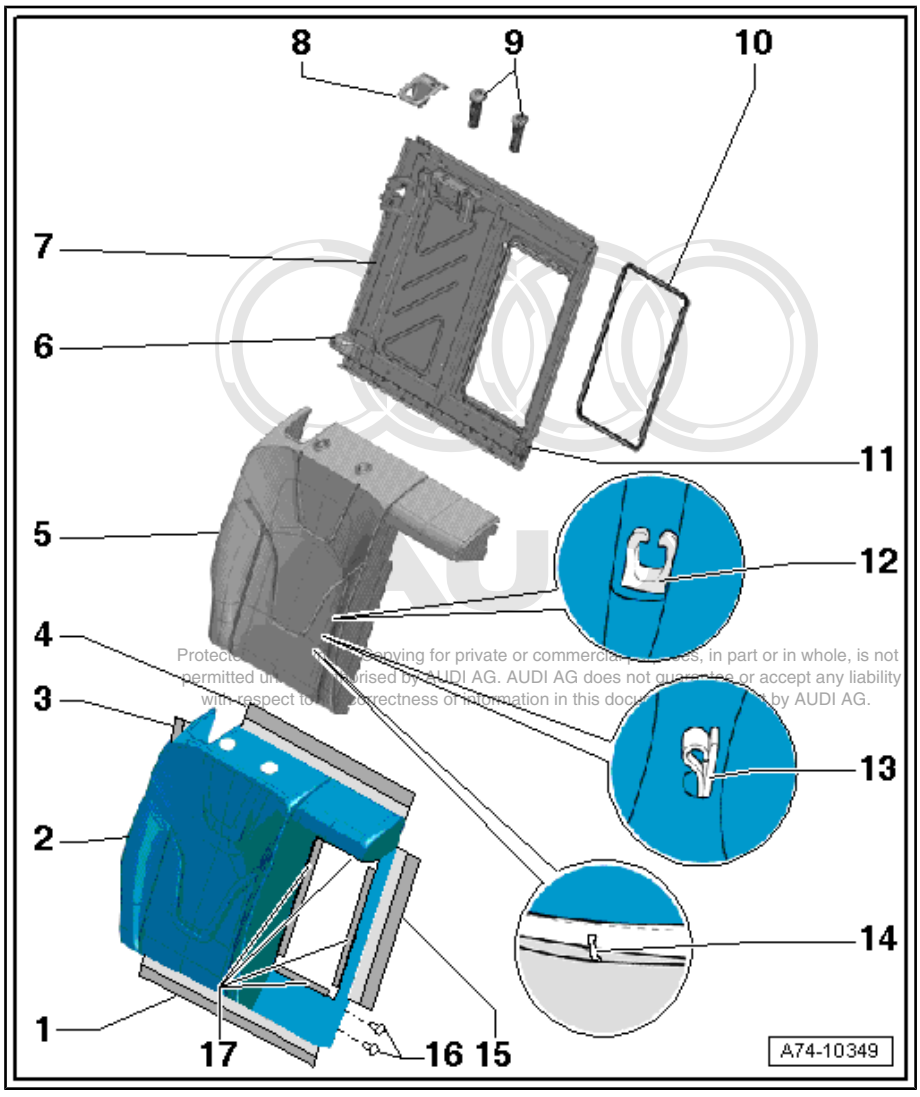



Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with load-through hatch

**Note**

*For greater clarity, only the design of the 2/3 section (right-side) of the backrest is shown in the illustration. The design of the 1/3 section (left-side) of the backrest is similar.*




**1 - Piping**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**2 - Cover**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 469

**3 - Piping**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**4 - Fastening strip**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**5 - Padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 469

**6 - Outer bearing**

**7 - Backrest pan**

**8 - Trim**
- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 393

**9 - Head restraint guide**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

**10 - Trim frame**
- ❑ Only for 2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

**11 - Inner bearing**

**12 - Clip**
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

**13 - Clip**
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Only on seats with fabric cover

**14 - Upholstery clip**

- ❑ Only on seats with leather cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

**15 - Piping**

- ❑ Only for 2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with load-through hatch
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in recess of load-through hatch

**16 - Plug**

- ❑ For securing cover
- ❑ 2x

**17 - Piping**

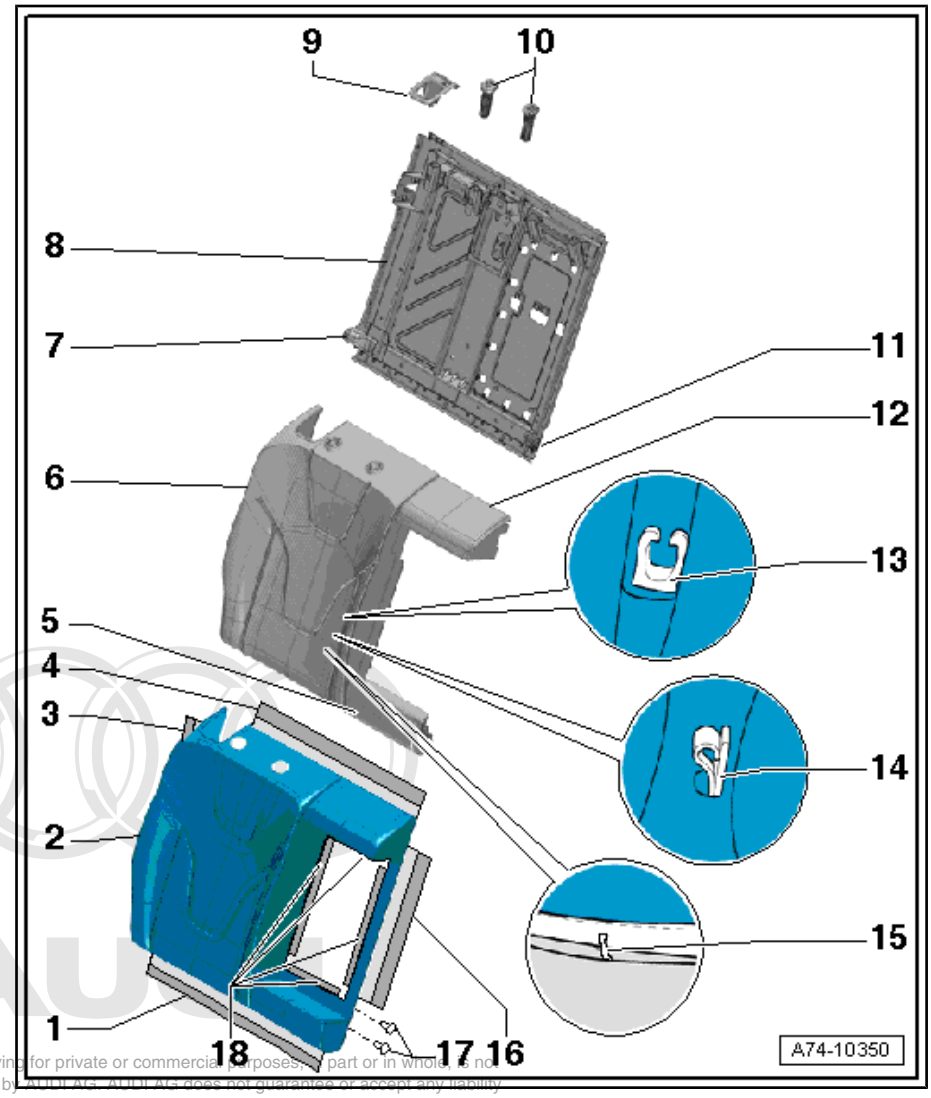
- ❑ Only for 2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with load-through hatch
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in recess of load-through hatch

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment

**Note**

*For greater clarity, only the design of the 2/3 section (right-side) of the backrest is shown in the illustration. The design of the 1/3 section (left-side) of the backrest is similar.*




**1 - Piping**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**2 - Cover**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 471

**3 - Piping**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**4 - Fastening strip**
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**5 - Lower padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467

**6 - Padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 471

**7 - Outer bearing**

**8 - Backrest pan**

**9 - Trim**
- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 393

**10 - Head restraint guide**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

**11 - Inner bearing**

**12 - Upper padding**
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 467

**13 - Clip**
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

**14 - Clip**
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Only on seats with fabric cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**15 - Upholstery clip**

- ❑ Only on seats with leather cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

**16 - Piping**

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest pan

**17 - Plug**

- ❑ For securing cover
- ❑ 2x

**18 - Piping**

- ❑ Only for 2/3 section (right-side) of split backrest with storage compartment or cover for backrest bracket
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in opening of storage compartment or cover for backrest bracket

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.2 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

**Note**

*The illustration shows the head restraint version with leather cover. As the head restraint with fabric cover is not dismantled, this version is not shown in the exploded view.*

**1 - Cover**

- ❑ Equipment version: leather cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 472

**Caution**

***The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with leather cover. On the version with fabric cover, the cover cannot be renewed as it is foam-filled and also serves as a sheath for the padding.***

**2 - Mounting bracket**

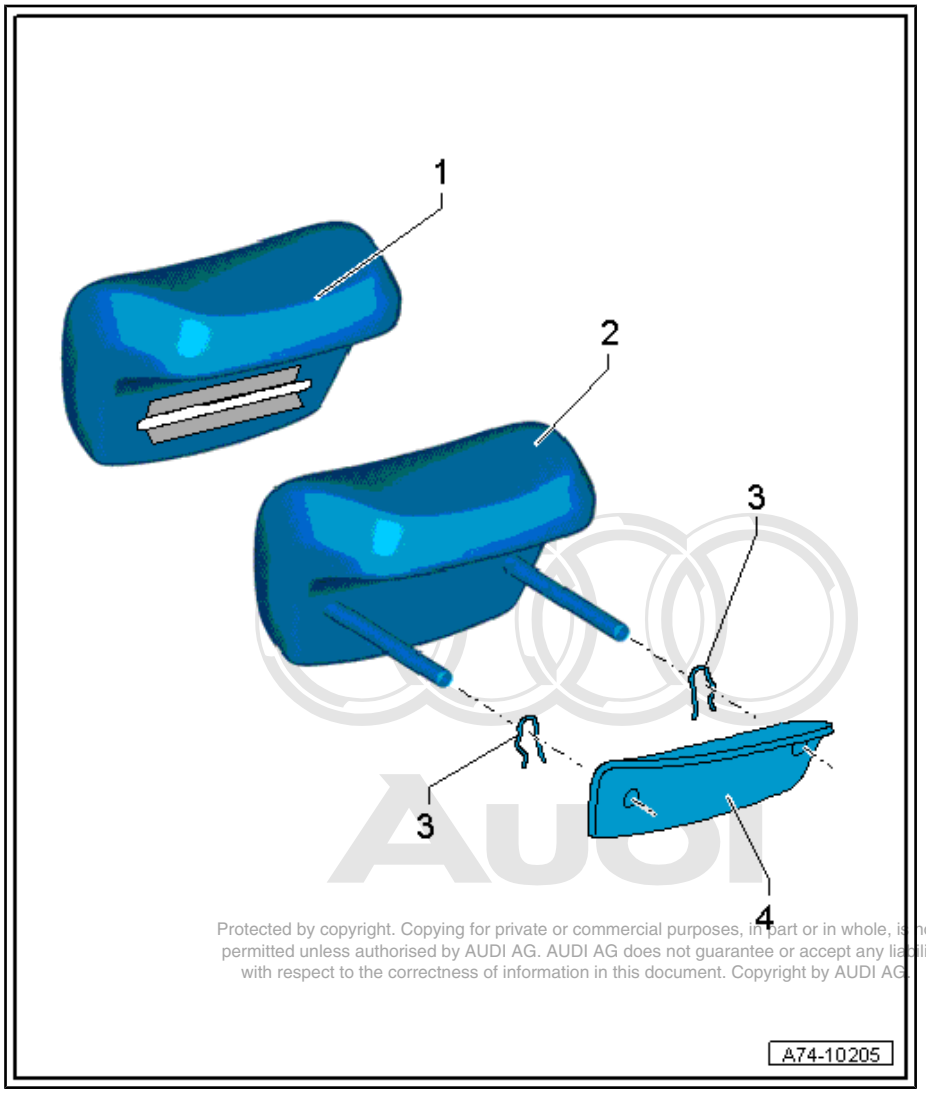
- ❑ With padding
- ❑ Equipment version: leather cover
- ❑ Mounting bracket for head restraint is foam-fitted in padding and cannot be detached

**3 - Long-arm spring**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

**4 - Trim**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.3 Overview - seat heating elements

**1 - Seat heating element**

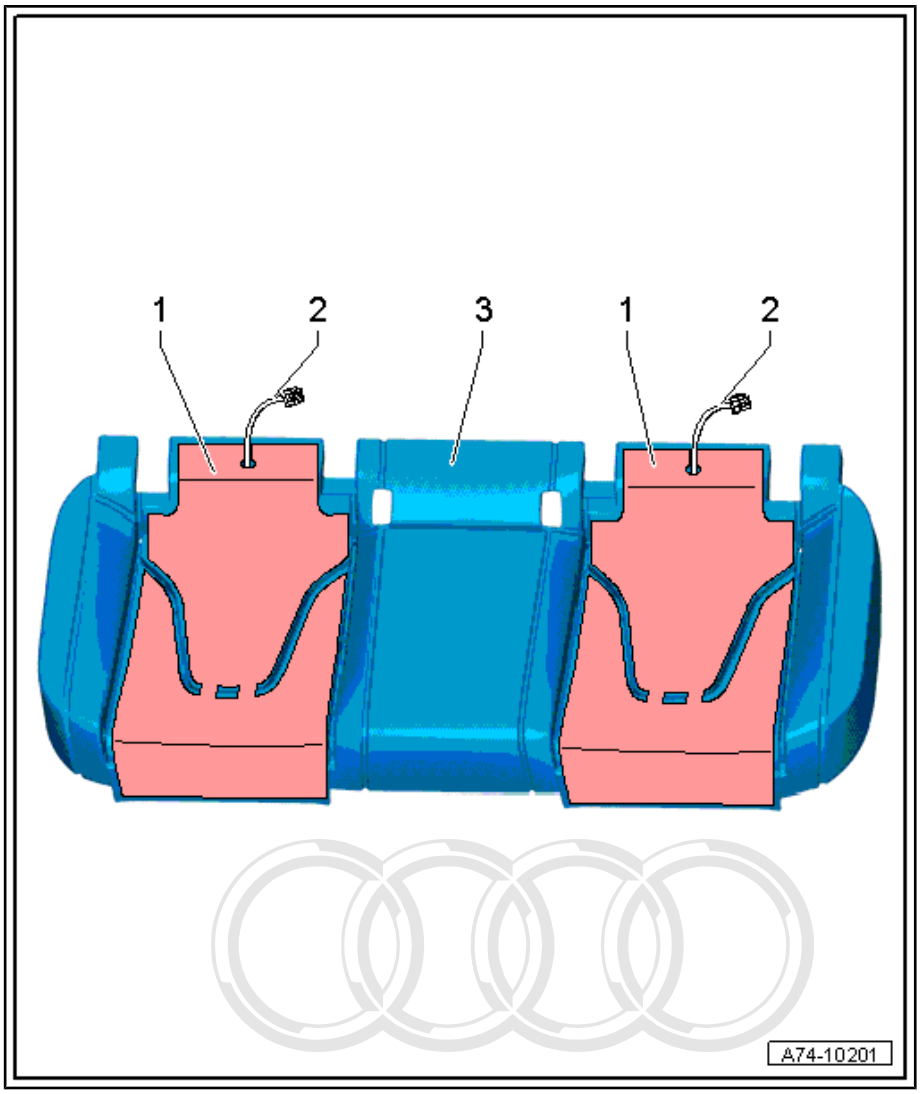
- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

**2 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

**3 - Padding**

- ❑ For seat bench




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.4 Overview - backrest heating elements

**1 - Backrest heating element**

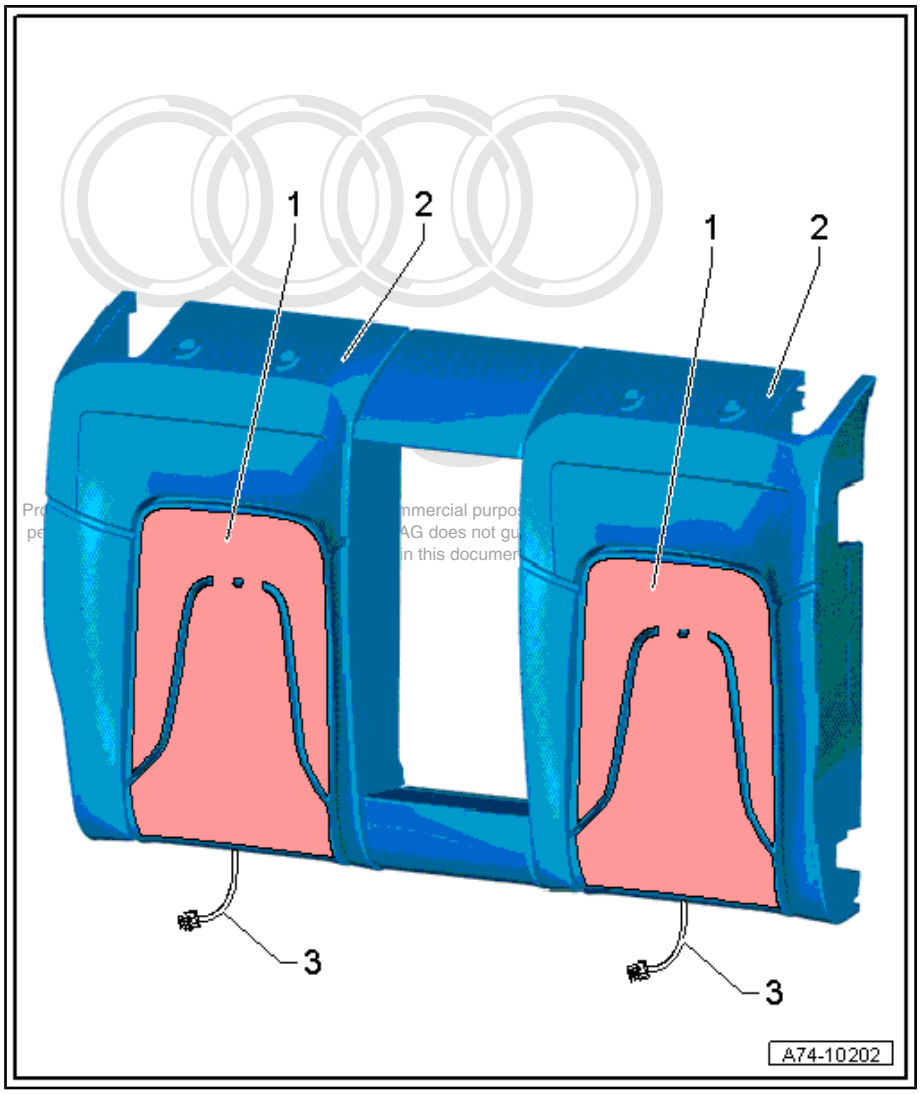
- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476

**2 - Padding**

- ❑ For backrest

**3 - Electrical wire**

- ❑ Permanently connected to backrest heating element



## 2.5 Removing and installing cover and padding

⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing cover and padding - seat bench”, page 463

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 463

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with cover for rear seat backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 465

## 2.5.1 Removing and installing cover and padding - seat bench

**Removing**

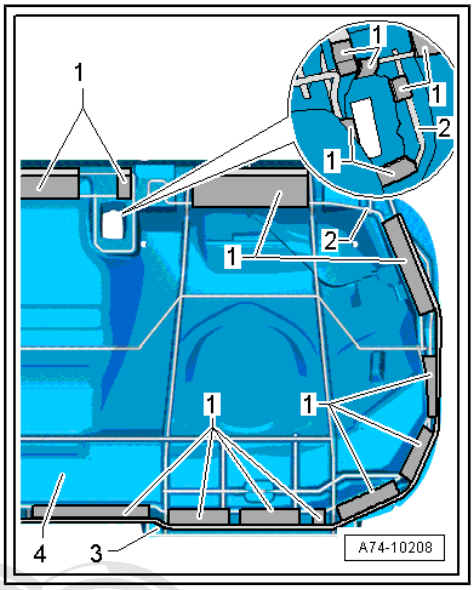
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Disengage piping -1- all around seat frame -2-.

– Detach cover -3- with padding -4- from seat frame.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.




## 2.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch

**Removing**

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .

**2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with load-through hatch:**

– Remove centre armrest with flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 396 .

– Remove trim frame ⇒ page 400 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Continuation for rear seat backrest (left and right):**

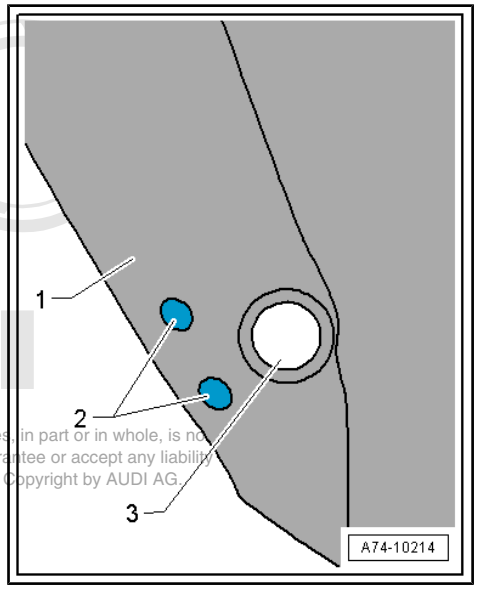
– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 393 .

– Remove head restraint guides ⇒ page 391 .

– Unclip plugs -2-.

1 - Cover

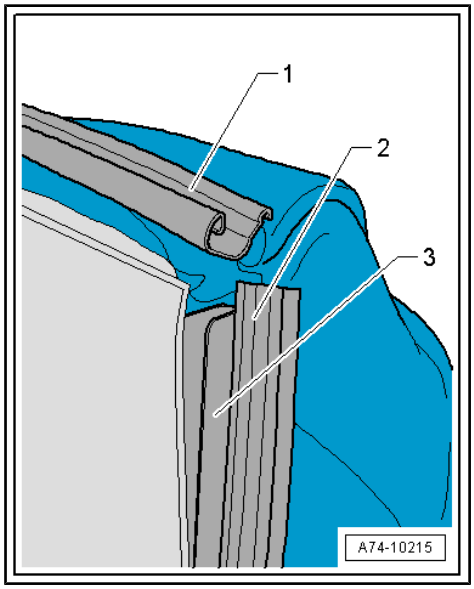
3 - Inner bearing




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Prise fastening strip (top) -1- off backrest pan -3-.

– Prise piping -2- at side and bottom off backrest pan -3-.




**2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with load-through hatch:**

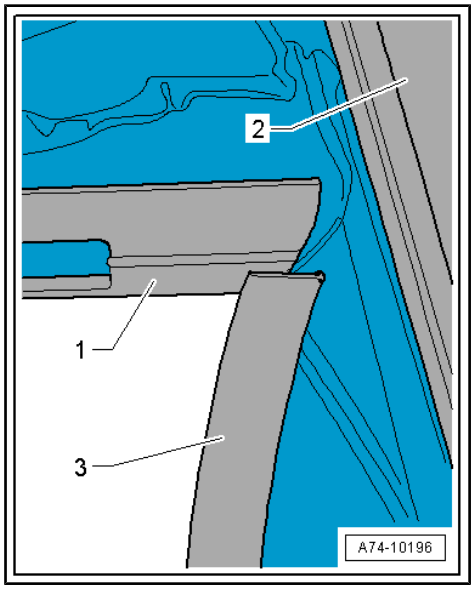
– Prise out piping -1- and -3- in load-through hatch of backrest -2-.

**Continuation for rear seat backrest (left and right):**

– Prise cover over inner bearing.

– Prise cover over outer bearing.

– Detach cover with padding from backrest pan.

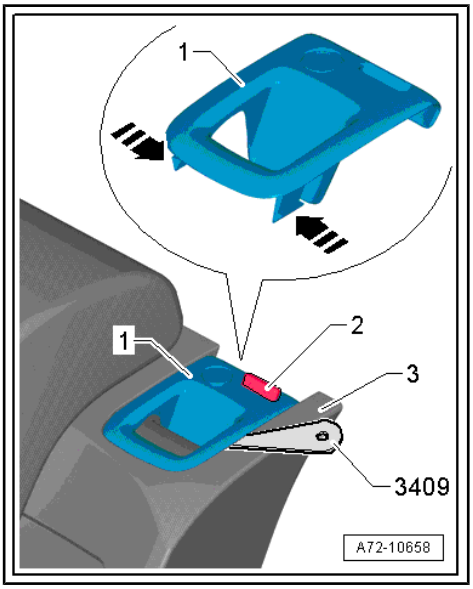


**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install head restraint guide with button (left-side).

– Make sure button -2- moves freely after fitting trim -1-.




## 2.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with cover for rear seat backrest bracket / storage compartment

**Removing**

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 389 .

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .

**2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with storage compartment or cover for backrest bracket:**

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 395 .

– Remove storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid) or cover for backrest bracket with trim for backrest bracket:

◆ ⇒ “3.26 Removing and installing storage compartment (cover for backrest bracket with lid)”, page 403

◆ ⇒ “3.30 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest bracket”, page 407

◆ ⇒ “3.31 Removing and installing cover for rear seat backrest bracket”, page 408

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Continuation for rear seat backrest (left and right):**

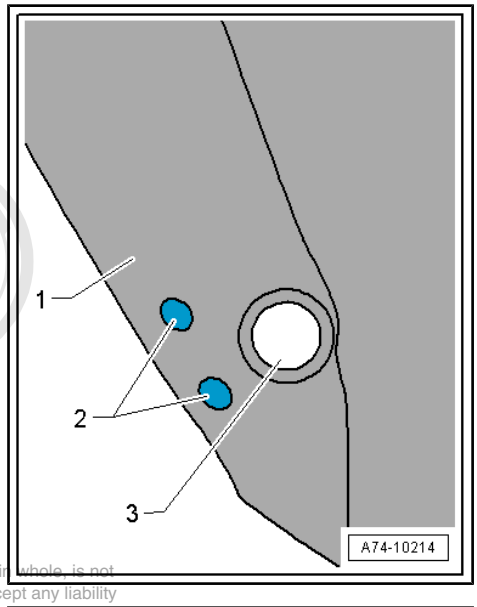
– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 393 .

– Remove head restraint guides ⇒ page 391 .

– Unclip plugs -2-.

1 - Cover

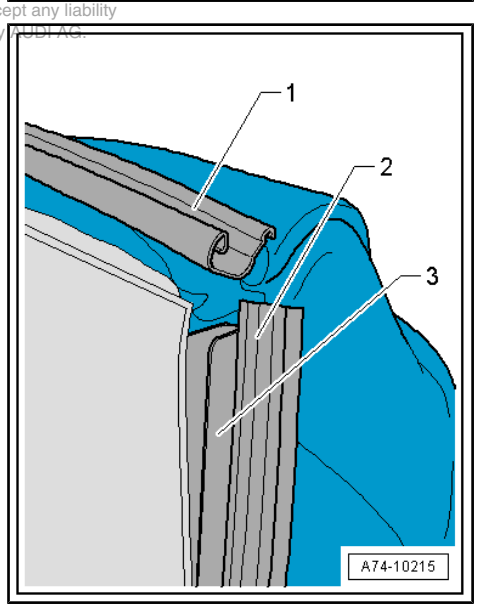
3 - Inner bearing




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Prise fastening strip (top) -1- off backrest pan -3-.

– Prise piping -2- at side and bottom off backrest pan.




**2/3 section (right-side) of backrest with storage compartment or cover for backrest bracket:**

– Prise piping -2- out of lugs -arrow- on backrest pan -1-.

**Continuation for rear seat backrest (left and right):**

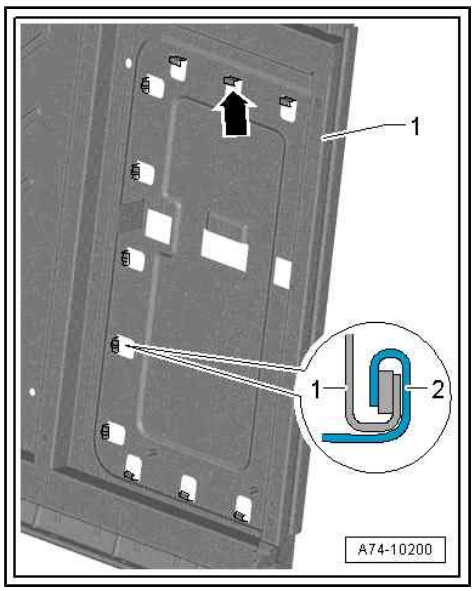
– Prise cover over inner bearing.

– Prise cover over outer bearing.

– Thread Bowden cable with connector point through slit in cover.

– Detach cover with padding from backrest pan.

– Detach upper and lower padding from backrest pan.

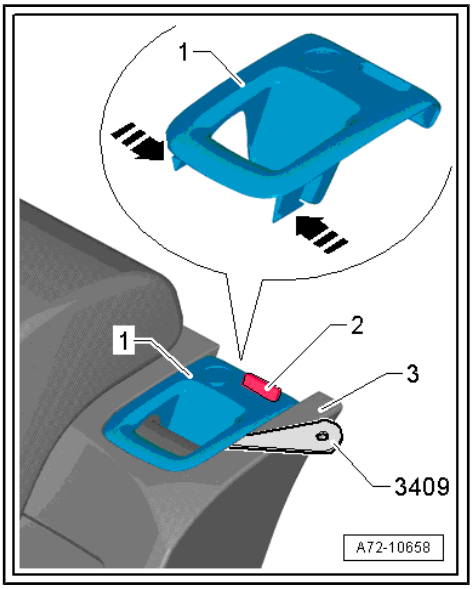


**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install head restraint guide with button (left-side).

– Make sure button -2- moves freely after fitting trim -1-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.6 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch

The intermediate padding can only be removed and installed after taking out the centre armrest with the flap for the load-through hatch. Padding/cover cannot be separated. These components can only be renewed together.

⇒ “3.23 Removing and installing intermediate padding”, page 401

## 2.7 Removing and installing upper and lower padding (backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment)

**Removing upper padding**

– Disengage cover at top and side at backrest pan.

– Fold back cover until upper padding section can be detached from backrest pan.

**Fitting upper padding**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Removing lower padding**

– Disengage cover at bottom and side at backrest pan.

– Fold back cover until the lower padding section can be detached from backrest pan.

**Fitting lower padding**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 2.8 Detaching cover from padding

⇒ “2.8.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding”, page 468

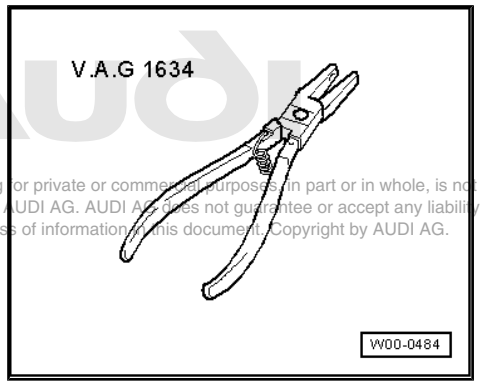
⇒ “2.8.2 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 469

⇒ “2.8.3 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 471

## 2.8.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

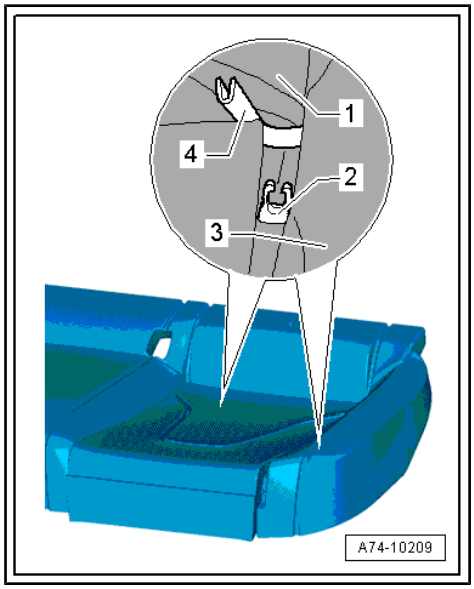
- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Removing**

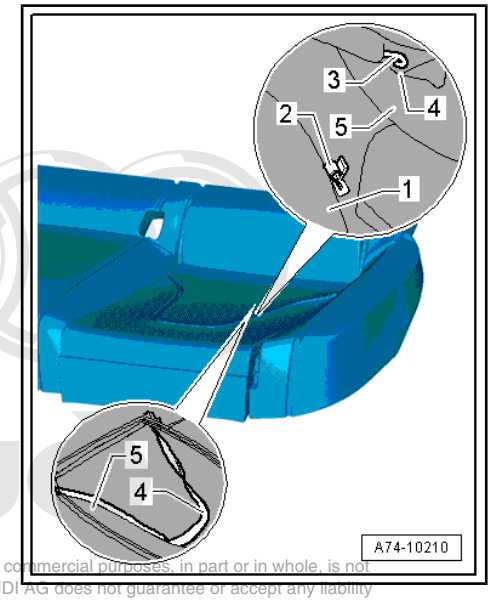
– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 463 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.
– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.
– Detach cover as far as possible from padding.



**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.

– Detach cover from padding -1-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Equipment version with leather covers:**

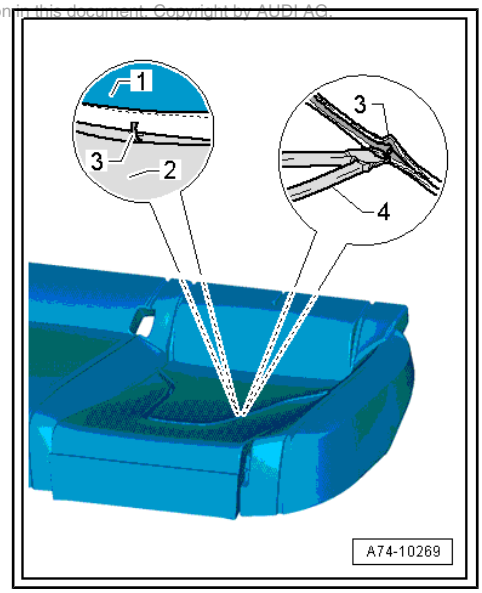
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

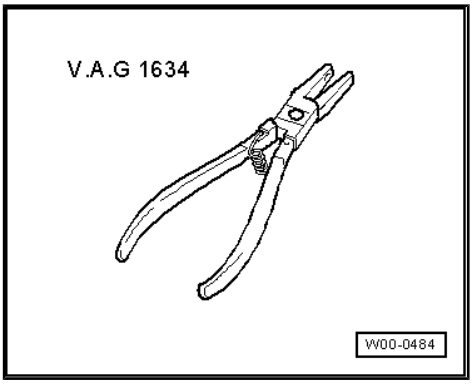
– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.




## 2.8.2 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch

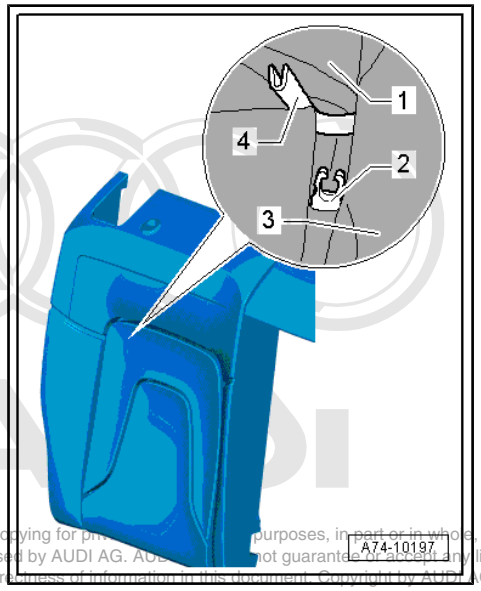
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



### Removing

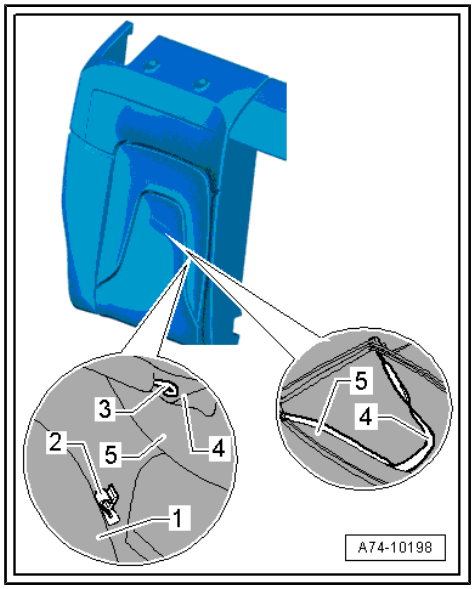
– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 463 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.
– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.
– Detach cover from padding.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Equipment version with fabric covers:

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.
– Detach cover from padding -1-.



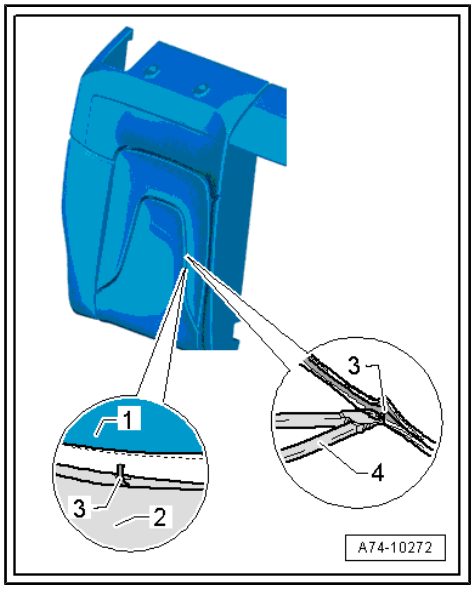

### Equipment version with leather covers:

– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.
– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

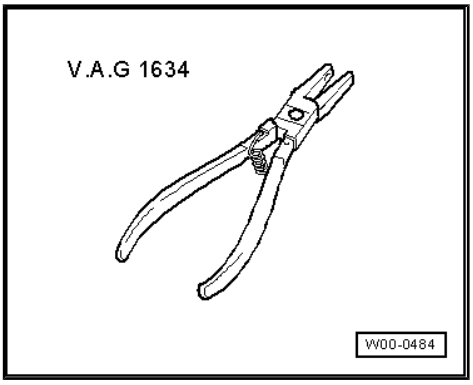
– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.



## 2.8.3 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment

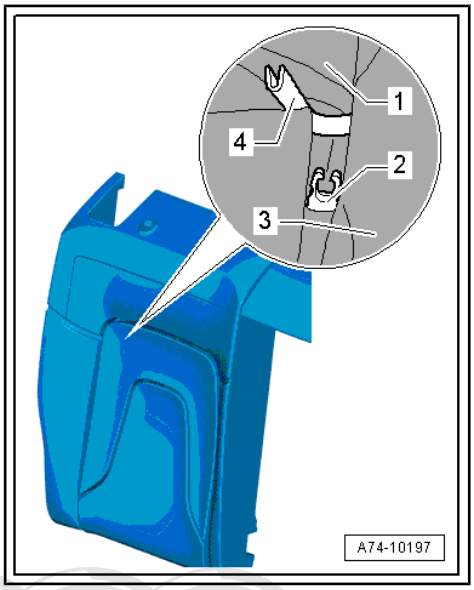
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



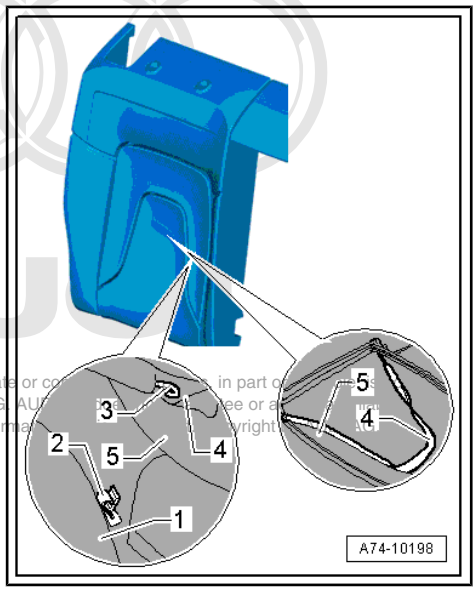

**Removing**

– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 465 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -3-.
– Release fastening strip -4- from clips -2-.
– Detach cover from padding.




**Equipment version with fabric covers:**

– Unclip contour wire -3- (inserted in pouch -4- of cover -5-) from clips -2-.
– Detach cover from padding -1-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... in part o... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU... ee or a... with respect to the correctness of inform... yright...

**Equipment version with leather covers:**

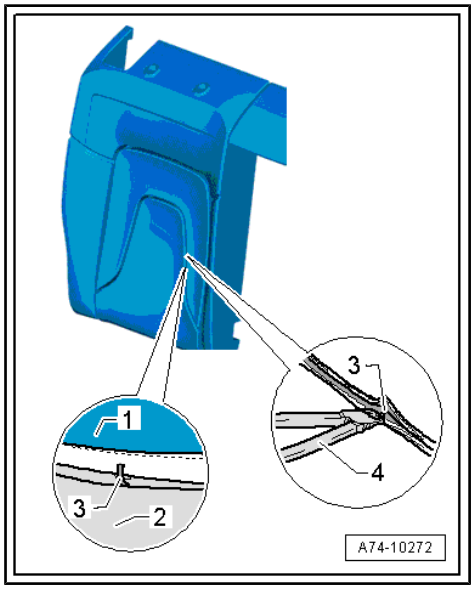
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

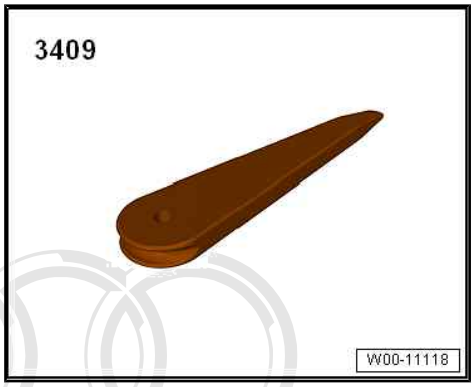
– On equipment version with leather seats, use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- to fit new upholstery clips.




## 2.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-




**Caution**

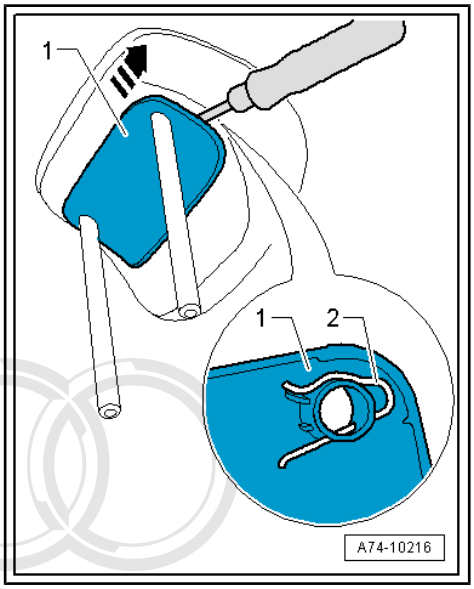
♦ *The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with leather cover. On the version with fabric cover, the cover cannot be renewed as it is foam-filled and also serves as a sheath for the padding.*

♦ *Mounting bracket for head restraint is foam-fitted in padding. The two components are permanently connected.*

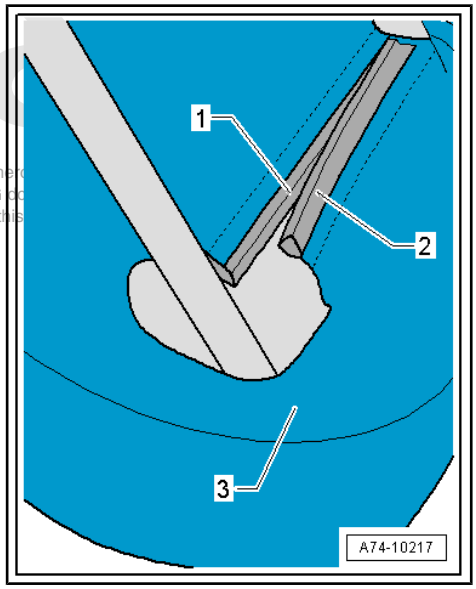
Copyright Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

- Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .
- Press padding to side in direction of -arrow- on side of trim -1-.
- When doing so, use a wide screwdriver to slightly bend open long-arm spring -2-.
- At the same time, pull off trim on one side until it is released on one side.
- Repeat procedure on other side.
- Detach trim while at the same time bending open long-arm springs.



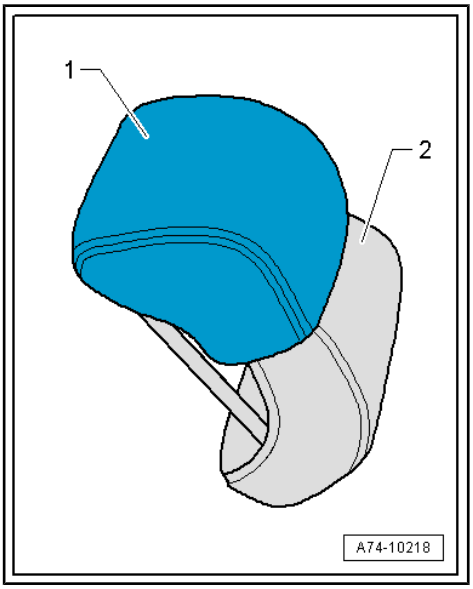

- Open end sections -1- and -2-.
- Detach cover -3- from mounting bracket with padding.



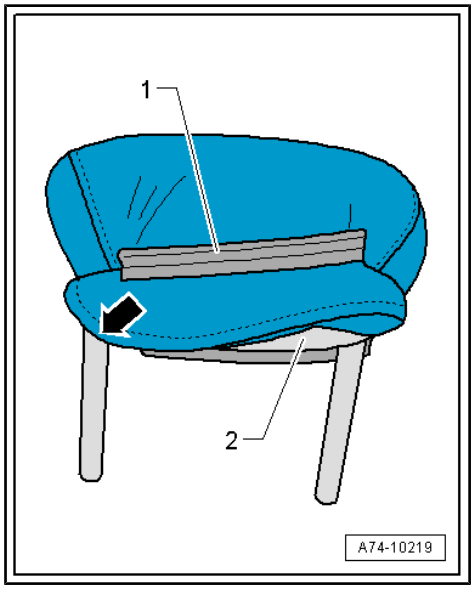

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

### Installing

- Fold back cover -1-.
- Position cover and slide it over mounting bracket with padding -2-.

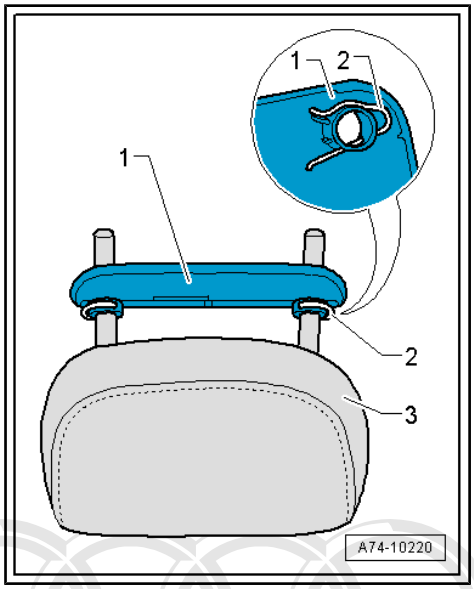


– Pull left and right corners of cover -arrow- separately over mounting bracket with padding -2-.
– Smooth down cover.
– Engage end section -1-.



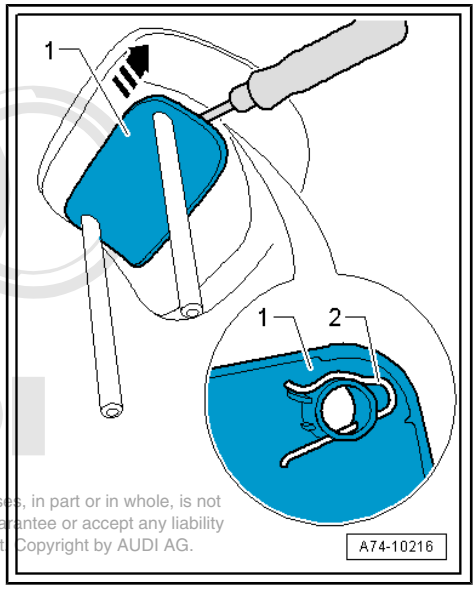

– While fitting trim -1-, bend open long-arm springs -2-.
– Hold long-arm springs -2- open until trim -1- has been slipped over notches into detent position.
– Firmly press on trim until it engages.
– Finish aligning cover -3- and smooth it down.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding without creases or seam marks.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.10 Removing and installing head restraint trim




### Removing

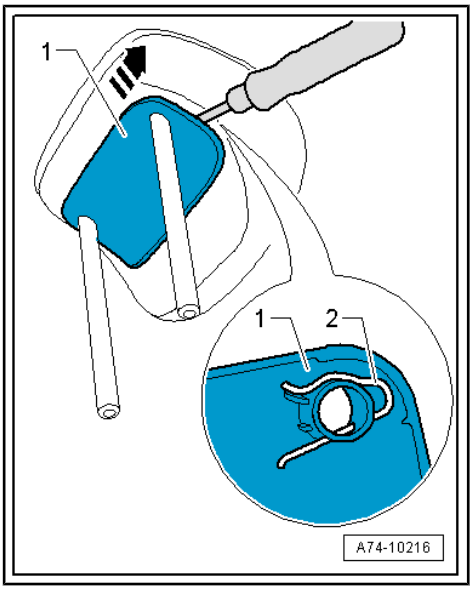
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .
– Press padding to side in direction of -arrow- on side of trim -1-.
– When doing so, use a wide screwdriver to slightly bend open long-arm spring -2-.
– At the same time, pull off trim on one side until it is released on one side.
– Repeat procedure on other side.
– Detach trim while at the same time bending open long-arm springs.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2.11 Removing and installing long-arm spring for head restraint




### Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 391 .
– Remove trim ⇒ page 475 .
– Detach long-arm spring -2- from connection of trim -1-.

### Installing

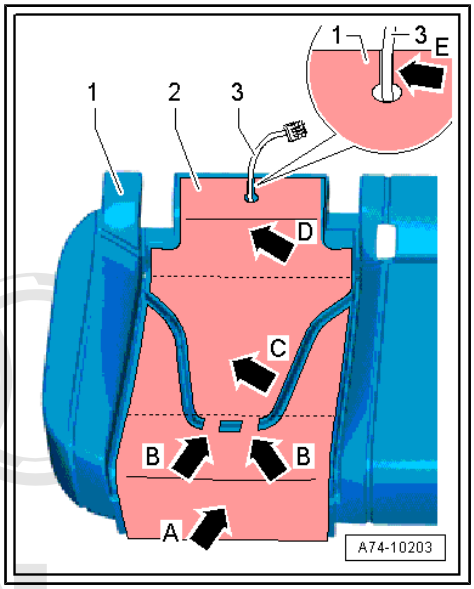
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

## 2.12 Removing and installing seat heating elements

### Removing

– Remove seat bench cover and padding ⇒ page 463 .
– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 468 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old seat heating element -2-.




**Note**

- *Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.*
- *-Arrows A ... E- can be disregarded.*

**Installing**

– Align new seat heating element on padding.

**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Start bonding in centre section -arrow C- of seat heating element.

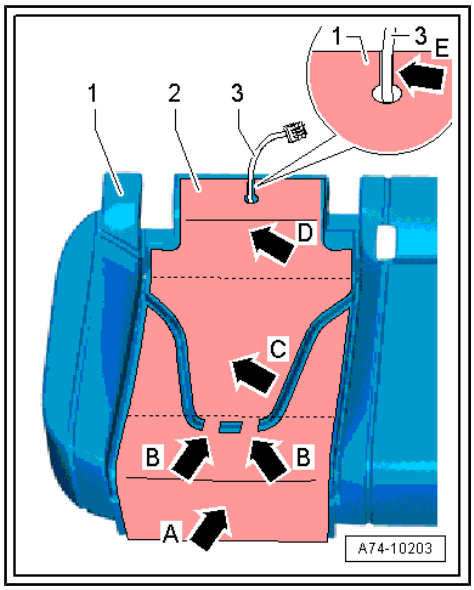
– Then bond front section -arrow A-.

– Route wiring leading from front to rear heating surface in bottom of gaps -arrows B-.

– Bond rear section -arrow D- of heating surface.

– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit -arrow E- in padding.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.




## 2.13 Removing and installing backrest heating element

**Removing**

– Remove cover and padding for rear seat backrest:

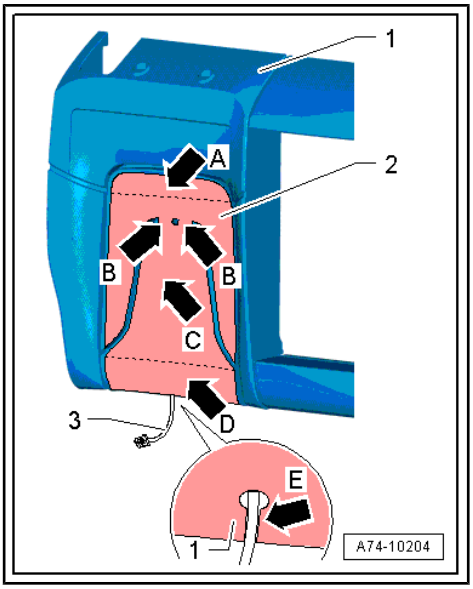
- ⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 463
- ⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - rear seat backrest with cover for rear seat backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 465

– Detach cover from padding:

- ⇒ “2.8.2 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 469

- ⇒ “2.8.3 Detaching backrest cover from padding - rear seat backrest with cover for backrest bracket / storage compartment”, page 471

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old backrest heating element -2-.




**Note**

- *Leave old backrest heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new backrest heating element.*
- *-Arrows A ... E- can be disregarded.*

### Installing

– Align new backrest heating element on padding.

**Caution**

- ***Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.***
- ***Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.***
- ***When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.***

– Start bonding in centre section -arrow C- of backrest heating element.

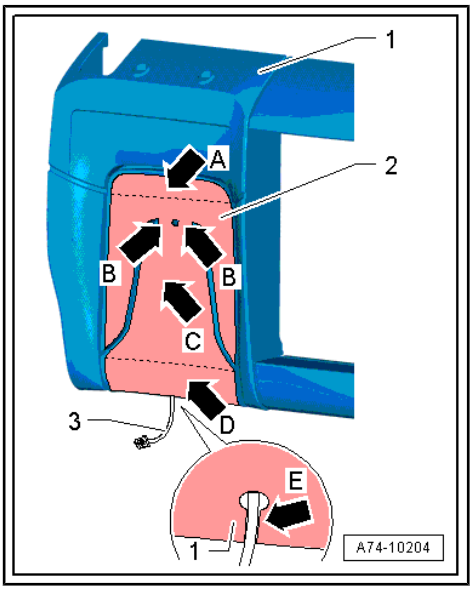
– Then bond upper section -arrow A-.

– Route wiring leading from upper heating surface to lower heating surface in bottom of gaps -arrows B-.

– Bond lower section -arrow D- of heating surface.

– Pull electrical wire -3- through slit -arrow E- in padding.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.